MHI

Manual No. '06·SRK-T·050

TECHNICAL MANUAL

Collection data

MITSUBISHI HEAVY INDUSTRIES, LTD.

INVERTER WALL MOUNTED TYPE ROOM AIR-CONDITIONER
(Split system, air to air heat pump type)

SRK20ZD-S1, SRK25ZD-S1, SRK35ZD-S1, SRK50ZD-S1
SRK63ZE-S1, SRK71ZE-S1

WALL MOUNTED TYPE ROOM AIR-CONDITIONER
(Split system, air to air heat pump type)

SRK20HD-S1, SRK28HD-S1, SRK40HD-S1
SRK20HC-S2, SRK28HC-S2, SRK40HC-S2
SRK50HE-S1, SRK56HE-S1
SRK63HE-S1, SRK71HE-S1

WALL MOUNTED TYPE ROOM AIR-CONDITIONER
(Split system, air cooled cooling only type)

SRK20CD-S1, SRK28CD-S1, SRK40CD-S1
SRK20CC-S1, SRK28CC-S1, SRK40CC-S1
SRK50CE-S1, SRK56CE-S1
SRK63CE-S1, SRK71CE-S1

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. INVERTER WALL MOUNTED TYPE ROOM AIR-CONDITIONER

(Split system, air to air heat pump type)

CONTENTS

1.1.1 GENERAL INFORMATION

(1) Specific features

The “MITSUBISHI HEAVY INDUSTRIES, LTD” room air-conditioner: SRK series are of split and wall mounted type and the unit consists of indoor unit and outdoor unit with refrigerant precharged in factory. The indoor unit is composed of room air cooling or heating equipment with operation control switch and the outdoor unit is composed of condensing unit with compressor.

(a) Inverter (Frequency converter) for multi-steps power control

- Heating/Cooling

  The rotational speed of a compressor is changed in step in relation to varying load, interlocked with the indoor and outdoor unit fans controlled to change frequency, thus controlling the capacity.
- Allowing quick heating/cooling operation during start-up period. Constant room temperature by fine-tuned control after the unit has stabilized.

(b) Fuzzy control

- Fuzzy control calculates the amount of variation in the difference between the return air temperature and the setting temperature in compliance with the fuzzy rules in order to control the air capacity and the inverter frequency.

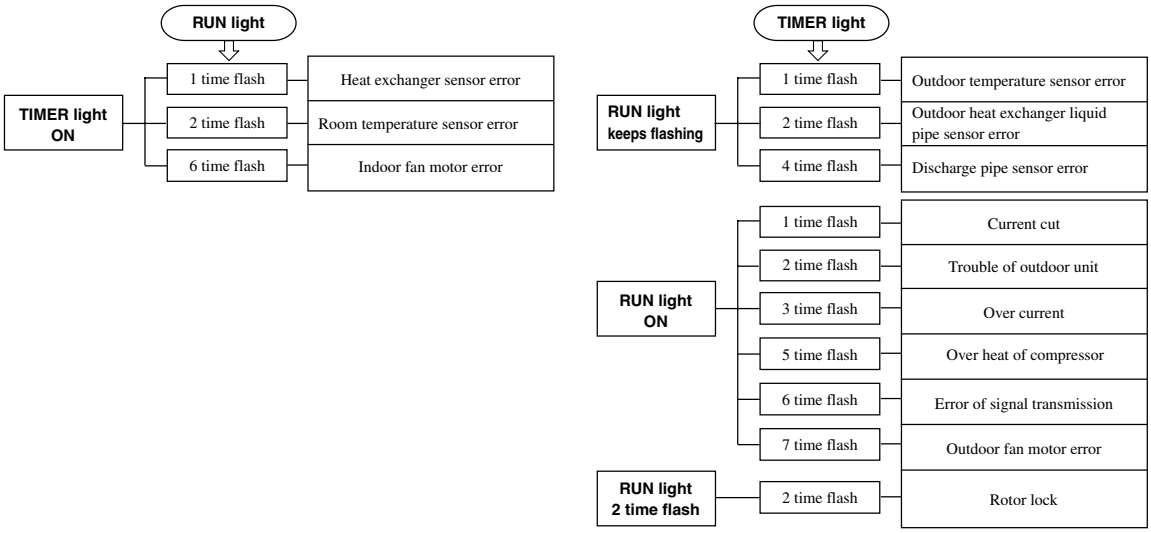
(c) Remote control flap

The flap can be automatically controlled by operating wireless remote control.

- Air scroll (AUTO): Flap operation is automatically control.
- Swing: This will swing the flap up and down.
- Memory flap: Once the flap position is set, the unit memorizes the position and continues to operate at the same position from the next time.

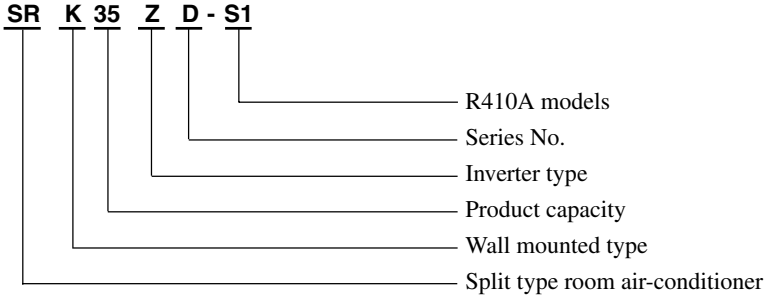
(d) Self diagnosis function

- We are constantly trying to do better service to our customers by installing such judges that show abnormality of operation as follows.



(2) How to read the model name

Example : SR K 35 Z D - S1



1.1.2 SELECTION DATA

(1) Specifications

Model SRK20ZD-S1 (Indoor unit)
SRC20ZD-S1 (Outdoor unit)

(220/230/240V)

Item				Model	SRK20ZD-S1	SRC20ZD-S1
Cooling capacity(1)				W	2000 (500~2800)	
Heating capacity(1)				W	2700 (500~4600)	
Power source					1 Phase, 220-240V, 50Hz	
Operation data(1)	Cooling input			kW	0.44 (0.1~0.91)	
	Running current (Cooling)			A	2.4/2.3/2.2	
	Heating input			kW	0.62 (0.09~1.27)	
	Running current (Heating)			A	3.0/2.9/2.8	
	Inrush current			A	3.0/2.9/2.8	
	COP				Cooling: 4.55 Heating: 4.35	
	Noise level	Cooling	Sound level	dB	Hi 36, Me 29, Lo 21	44
			Power level		52	58
		Heating	Sound level		Hi 38, Me 32, Lo 25	47
			Power level		54	61
Exterior dimensions Height × Width × Depth				mm	250 × 815 × 249	540 × 720 × 290
Color					Cool white	Stucco white
Net weight				kg	9.0	32
Refrigerant equipment Compressor type & Q'ty					–	RM-B5077MD1 (Rotary type) × 1
Motor				kW	–	0.75
Starting method					–	Line starting
Heat exchanger					Louver fins & inner grooved tubing	Straight fins & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control					Capillary tubes + Electronic expansion valve	
Refrigerant(3)				kg	R410A 0.9 (Pre-Charged up to the piping length of 15m)	
Refrigerant oil				ℓ	0.35 (MA68)	
Deice control					Microcomputer control	
Air handling equipment Fan type & Q'ty					Tangential fan × 1	Propeller fan × 1
Motor				W	29	24
Air flow (at High)			(Cooling)	CMM	7.2	30
			(Heating)		8.3	25
Air filter, Q'ty					Polypropylene net (washable) × 2	–
Shock & vibration absorber					–	Cushion rubber (for compressor)
Electric heater					–	–
Operation control Operation switch					Wireless-Remote controller	–
Room temperature control					Microcomputer thermostat	–
Pilot lamp					RUN (Green), TIMER (Yellow), HI POWER (Green), ECONO (Orange)	
Safety equipment					Compressor overheat protection, Heating overload protection (High pressure control), Overcurrent protection, Frost protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection, Cooling overload protection	
Refrigerant piping	O.D			mm (in)	Liquid line: ϕ6.35 (1/4″) Gas line: ϕ9.52 (3/8″)	
	Connecting method				Flare connecting	
	Attached length of piping				Liquid line: 0.47 m Gas line : 0.40 m	–
	Insulation				Necessary (Both sides)	
Drain hose					Connectable	
Power source cord					2.5 m (3 cores with Earth)	
Connection wiring	Size × Core number				1.5 mm² × 4 cores (Including earth cable)	
	Connecting method				Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Accessories (included)					Mounting kit, Clean filter (Natural enzyme filter x1, Photocatalytic washable deodorizing filter x1)	
Optional parts					–	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	Standards
Cooling	27ºC	19ºC	35ºC	24ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612
Heating	20ºC	–	7ºC	6ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612

The piping length is 7.5m.

(2) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively.

(3) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 15 m connecting piping.
(Purging is not required even for the short piping.)

Model SRK25ZD-S1 (Indoor unit)
SRC25ZD-S1 (Outdoor unit)

(220/230/240V)

Item				Model	SRK25ZD-S1	SRC25ZD-S1
Cooling capacity(1)				W	2500 (500~3000)	
Heating capacity(1)				W	3400 (500~4800)	
Power source					1 Phase, 220-240V, 50Hz	
Operation data(1)	Cooling input			kW	0.62 (0.1~0.97)	
	Running current (Cooling)			A	3.1/3.0/2.9	
	Heating input			kW	0.94 (0.09~1.30)	
	Running current (Heating)			A	4.5/4.3/4.1	
	Inrush current			A	4.5/4.3/4.1	
	COP				Cooling: 4.03 Heating: 3.62	
	Noise level	Cooling	Sound level	dB	Hi 37, Me 30, Lo 22	44
			Power level		53	58
		Heating	Sound level		Hi 39, Me 33, Lo 26	47
			Power level		55	61
Exterior dimensions Height × Width × Depth				mm	250 × 815 × 249	540 × 720 × 290
Color					Cool white	Stucco white
Net weight				kg	9.0	32
Refrigerant equipment Compressor type & Q'ty					–	RM-B5077MD1 (Rotary type) × 1
Motor				kW	–	0.75
Starting method					–	Line starting
Heat exchanger					Louver fins & inner grooved tubing	Straight fins & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control					Capillary tubes + Electronic expansion valve	
Refrigerant(3)				kg	R410A 0.9 (Pre-Charged up to the piping length of 15m)	
Refrigerant oil				ℓ	0.35 (MA68)	
Deice control					Microcomputer control	
Air handling equipment Fan type & Q'ty					Tangential fan × 1	Propeller fan × 1
Motor				W	29	24
Air flow (at High)			(Cooling)	CMM	8.0	30
			(Heating)		8.7	25
Air filter, Q'ty					Polypropylene net (washable) × 2	–
Shock & vibration absorber					–	Cushion rubber (for compressor)
Electric heater					–	–
Operation control Operation switch					Wireless-Remote controller	–
Room temperature control					Microcomputer thermostat	–
Pilot lamp					RUN (Green), TIMER (Yellow), HI POWER (Green), ECONO (Orange)	
Safety equipment					Compressor overheat protection, Heating overload protection (High pressure control), Overcurrent protection, Frost protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection, Cooling overload protection	
Refrigerant piping	O.D			mm (in)	Liquid line: ϕ6.35 (1/4″) Gas line: ϕ9.52 (3/8″)	
	Connecting method				Flare connecting	
	Attached length of piping				Liquid line: 0.47 m Gas line : 0.40 m	–
	Insulation				Necessary (Both sides)	
Drain hose					Connectable	
Power source cord					2.5 m (3 cores with Earth)	
Connection wiring	Size × Core number				1.5 mm² × 4 cores (Including earth cable)	
	Connecting method				Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Accessories (included)					Mounting kit, Clean filter (Natural enzyme filter x1, Photocatalytic washable deodorizing filter x1)	
Optional parts					–	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	Standards
Cooling	27ºC	19ºC	35ºC	24ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612
Heating	20ºC	–	7ºC	6ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612

The piping length is 7.5m.

(2) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively.

(3) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 15 m connecting piping.
(Purging is not required even for the short piping.)

Model SRK35ZD-S1 (Indoor unit)
SRC35ZD-S1 (Outdoor unit)

(220/230/240V)

Item				Model	SRK35ZD-S1	SRC35ZD-S1
Cooling capacity(1)				W	3500 (500~3900)	
Heating capacity(1)				W	4500 (500~5100)	
Power source					1 Phase, 220-240V, 50Hz	
Operation data(1)	Cooling input			kW	1.09 (0.1~1.22)	
	Running current (Cooling)			A	5.4/5.2/5.0	
	Heating input			kW	1.24 (0.09~1.32)	
	Running current (Heating)			A	5.9/5.7/5.4	
	Inrush current			A	5.9/5.7/5.4	
	COP				Cooling: 3.21 Heating: 3.63	
	Noise level	Cooling	Sound level	dB	Hi 41, Me 32, Lo 23	48
			Power level		58	62
		Heating	Sound level		Hi 45, Me 36, Lo 27	50
			Power level		59	64
Exterior dimensions Height × Width × Depth				mm	250 × 815 × 249	540 × 720 × 290
Color					Cool white	Stucco white
Net weight				kg	9.0	35
Refrigerant equipment Compressor type & Q'ty					–	RM-B5077MD1 [Rotary type] × 1
Motor				kW	–	0.90
Starting method					–	Line starting
Heat exchanger					Louver fins & inner grooved tubing	Straight fins & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control					Capillary tubes + Electronic expansion valve	
Refrigerant(3)				kg	R410A 1.1 (Pre-Charged up to the piping length of 15m)	
Refrigerant oil				ℓ	0.35 (MA68)	
Deice control					Microcomputer control	
Air handling equipment Fan type & Q'ty					Tangential fan × 1	Propeller fan × 1
Motor				W	29	24
Air flow (at High)			(Cooling)	CMM	8.9	34
			(Heating)		10.3	34
Air filter, Q'ty					Polypropylene net (washable) × 2	–
Shock & vibration absorber					–	Cushion rubber (for compressor)
Electric heater					–	–
Operation control Operation switch					Wireless-Remote controller	–
Room temperature control					Microcomputer thermostat	–
Pilot lamp					RUN (Green), TIMER (Yellow), HI POWER (Green), ECONO (Orange)	
Safety equipment					Compressor overheat protection, Heating overload protection (High pressure control), Overcurrent protection, Frost protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection, Cooling overload protection	
Refrigerant piping	O.D			mm (in)	Liquid line: ϕ6.35 (1/4″) Gas line: ϕ9.52 (3/8″)	
	Connecting method				Flare connecting	
	Attached length of piping				Liquid line: 0.47 m Gas line : 0.40 m	–
	Insulation				Necessary (Both sides)	
Drain hose					Connectable	
Power source cord					2.5 m (3 cores with Earth)	
Connection wiring	Size × Core number				1.5 mm² × 4 cores (Including earth cable)	
	Connecting method				Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Accessories (included)					Mounting kit, Clean filter (Natural enzyme filter x1, Photocatalytic washable deodorizing filter x1)	
Optional parts					–	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	Standards
Cooling	27ºC	19ºC	35ºC	24ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612
Heating	20ºC	–	7ºC	6ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612

The piping length is 7.5m.

(2) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively.

(3) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 15 m connecting piping.
(Purging is not required even for the short piping.)

Model SRK50ZD-S1 (Indoor unit)
SRC50ZD-S1 (Outdoor unit)

(220/230/240V)

Item				Model	SRK50ZD-S1	SRC50ZD-S1
Cooling capacity(1)				W	5000 (600~5300)	
Heating capacity(1)				W	6300 (600~7900)	
Power source					1 Phase, 220-240V, 50Hz	
Operation data(1)	Cooling input			kW	1.66 (0.12~2.1)	
	Running current (Cooling)			A	7.6/7.3/7.0	
	Heating input			kW	1.96 (0.11~2.71)	
	Running current (Heating)			A	9.0/8.6/8.2	
	Inrush current			A	9.0/8.6/8.2	
	COP				Cooling: 3.01 Heating: 3.21	
	Noise level	Cooling	Sound level	dB	Hi 48, Me 42, Lo 26	48
			Power level		61	61
		Heating	Sound level		Hi 46, Me 40, Lo 34	50
			Power level		62	64
Exterior dimensions Height × Width × Depth				mm	250 × 815 × 249	640 × 850 × 290
Color					Cool white	Stucco white
Net weight				kg	9.0	43
Refrigerant equipment Compressor type & Q'ty					–	5CS102XFA [Scroll type] × 1
Motor				kW	–	1.5
Starting method					–	Line starting
Heat exchanger					Slit fins + Louver fins & inner grooved tubing	Straight fins & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control					Capillary tubes + Electronic expansion valve	
Refrigerant(3)				kg	R410A 1.35 (Pre-Charged up to the piping length of 15m)	
Refrigerant oil				ℓ	0.36 (RB68A)	
Deice control					Microcomputer control	
Air handling equipment Fan type & Q'ty					Tangential fan × 1	Propeller fan × 1
Motor				W	29	34
Air flow (at High)			(Cooling)	CMM	11.5	42
			(Heating)		13.0	42
Air filter, Q'ty					Polypropylene net (washable) × 2	–
Shock & vibration absorber					–	Cushion rubber (for compressor)
Electric heater					–	–
Operation control Operation switch					Wireless-Remote controller	–
Room temperature control					Microcomputer thermostat	–
Pilot lamp					RUN (Green), TIMER (Yellow), HI POWER (Green), ECONO (Orange)	
Safety equipment					Compressor overheat protection, Heating overload protection (High pressure control), Overcurrent protection, Frost protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection, Cooling overload protection	
Refrigerant piping	O.D			mm (in)	Liquid line: ϕ6.35 (1/4″) Gas line: ϕ12.7 (1/2″)	
	Connecting method				Flare connecting	
	Attached length of piping				Liquid line: 0.47 m Gas line : 0.40 m	–
	Insulation				Necessary (Both sides)	
Drain hose					Connectable	
Power source cord					2.5 m (3 cores with Earth)	
Connection wiring	Size × Core number				1.5 mm² × 4 cores (Including earth cable)	
	Connecting method				Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Accessories (included)					Mounting kit, Clean filter (Natural enzyme filter x1, Photocatalytic washable deodorizing filter x1)	
Optional parts					–	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	Standards
Cooling	27ºC	19ºC	35ºC	24ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612
Heating	20ºC	–	7ºC	6ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612

The piping length is 7.5m.

(2) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively.

(3) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 15 m connecting piping.
(Purging is not required even for the short piping.)
If the piping length is longer, when it is 15 to 25m, add 20 g refrigerant per meter.

(2) Range of usage & limitations

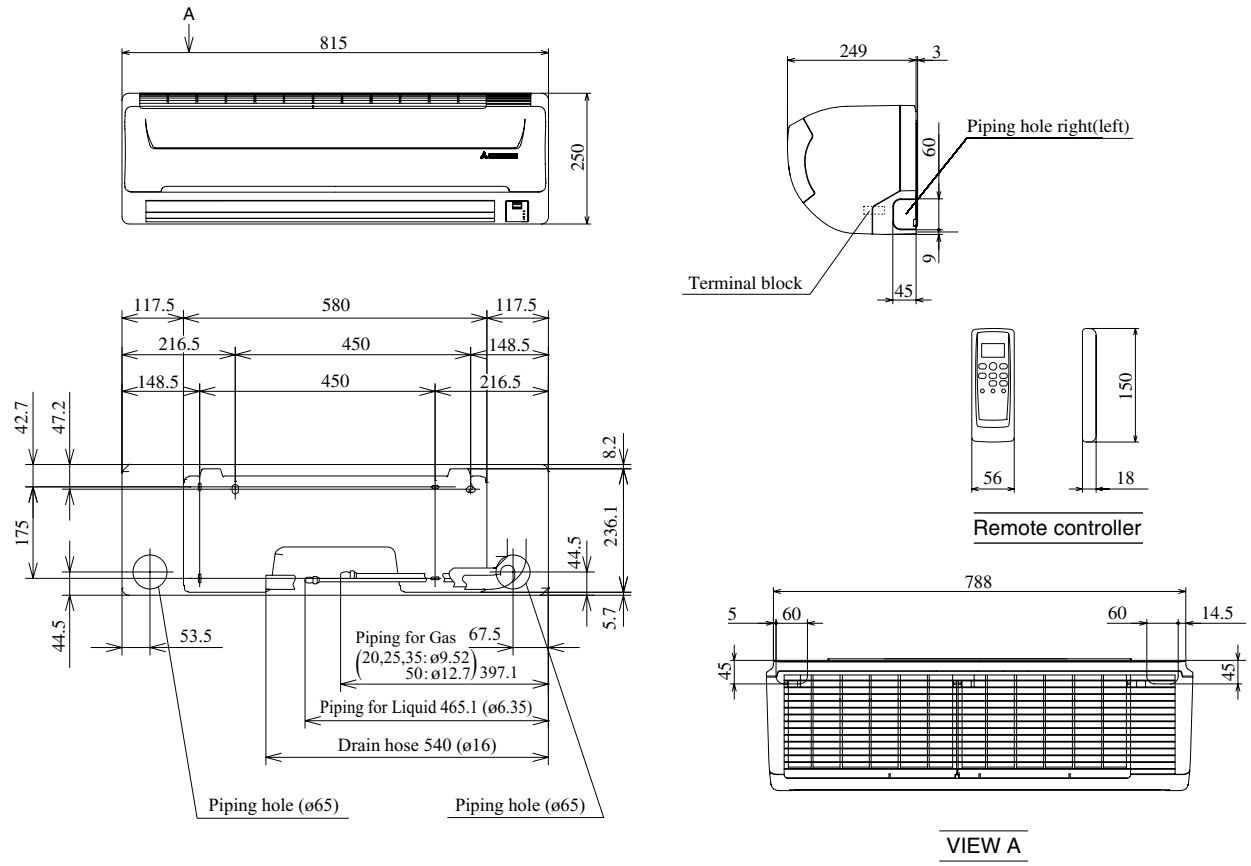
Item \ Models	SRK20ZD-S1, 25ZD-S1, 35ZD-S1	SRK50ZD-S1
Indoor return air temperature (Upper, lower limits)	Cooling operation : Approximately 21 to 32˚C Heating operation : Approximately 15 to 30˚C	
Outdoor air temperature (Upper, lower limits)	Cooling operation : Approximately 21 to 43˚C Heating operation : Approximately −5 to 21˚C	
Refrigerant line (one way) length	Max. 15m	Max. 25m
Vertical height difference between outdoor unit and indoor unit	Max. 10m (Outdoor unit is higher) Max. 10m (Outdoor unit is lower)	Max. 15m (Outdoor unit is higher) Max. 15m (Outdoor unit is lower)
Power source voltage	Rating ± 10%	
Voltage at starting	Min. 85% of rating	
Frequency of ON-OFF cycle	Max. 4 times/h (Inching prevention 10 minutes)	Max. 7 times/h (Inching prevention 5 minutes)
ON and OFF interval	Max. 3 minutes	

(3) Exterior dimensions

(a) Indoor unit

Models SRK20ZD-S1, 25ZD-S1, 35ZD-S1, 50ZD-S1

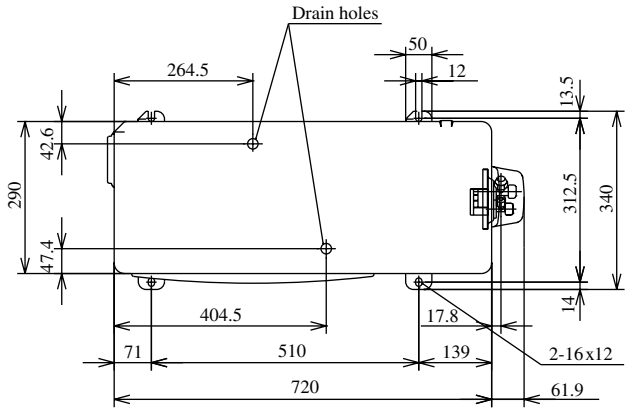
Unit: mm

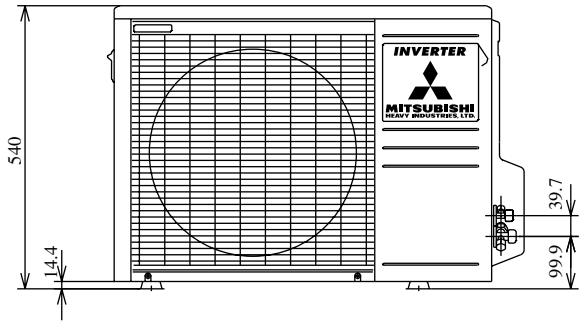


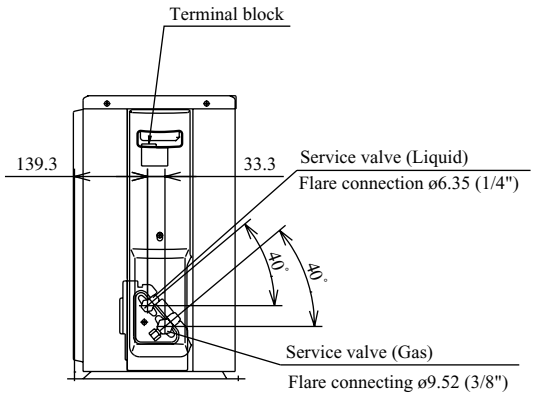
(b) Outdoor unit

Models SRC20ZD-S1, 25ZD-S1, 35ZD-S1

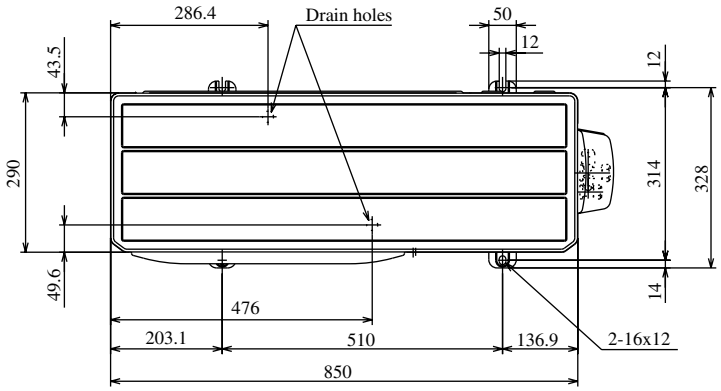
Unit: mm

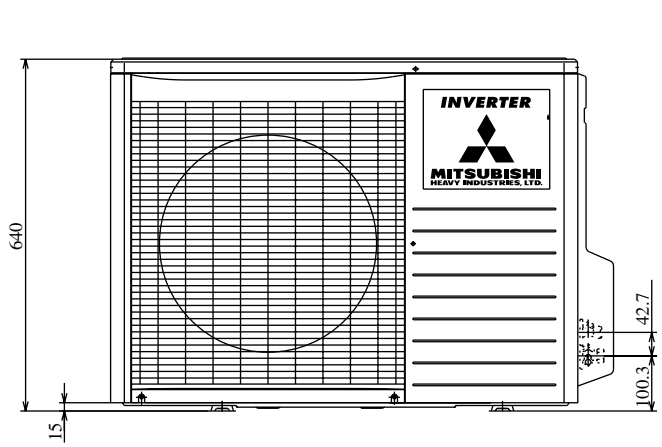


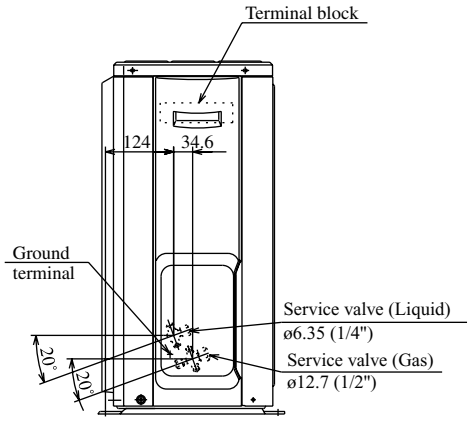




Model SRC50ZD-S1

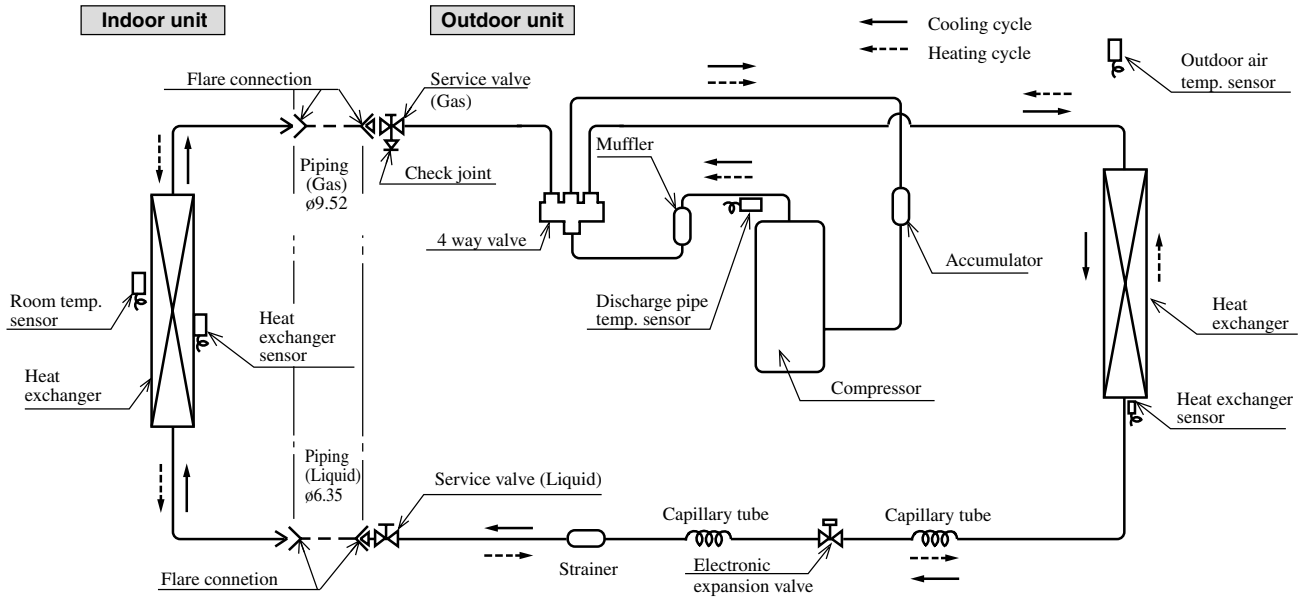




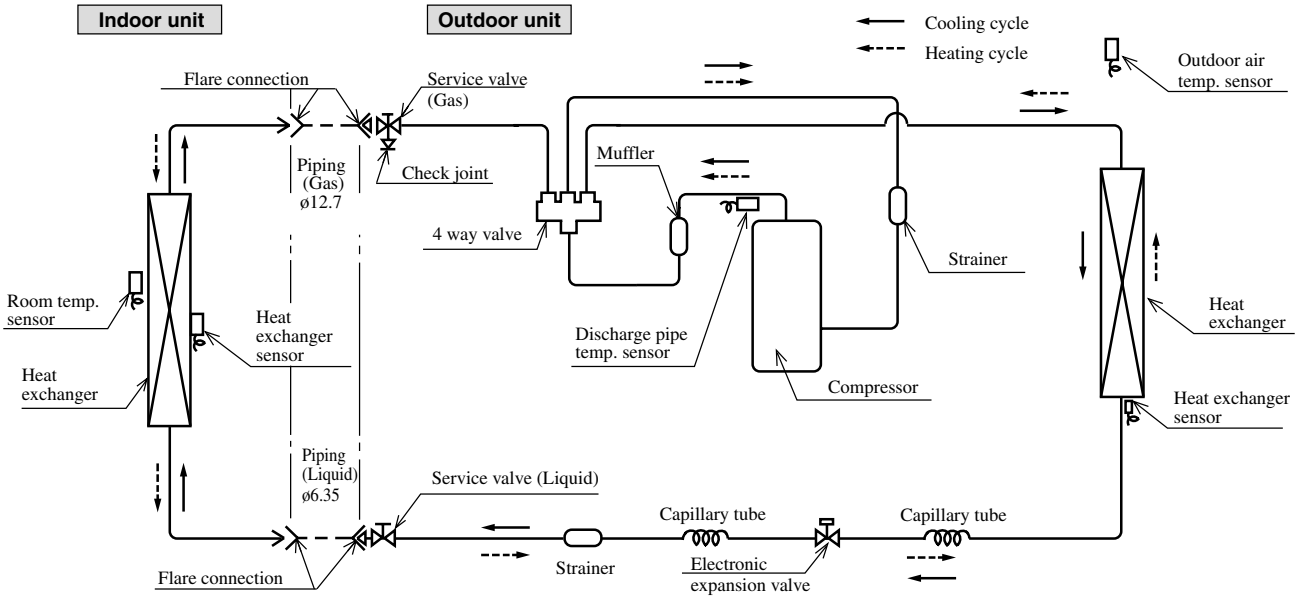


(4) Piping system

Models SRK20ZD-S1, 25ZD-S1, 35ZD-S1



Model SRK50ZD-S1

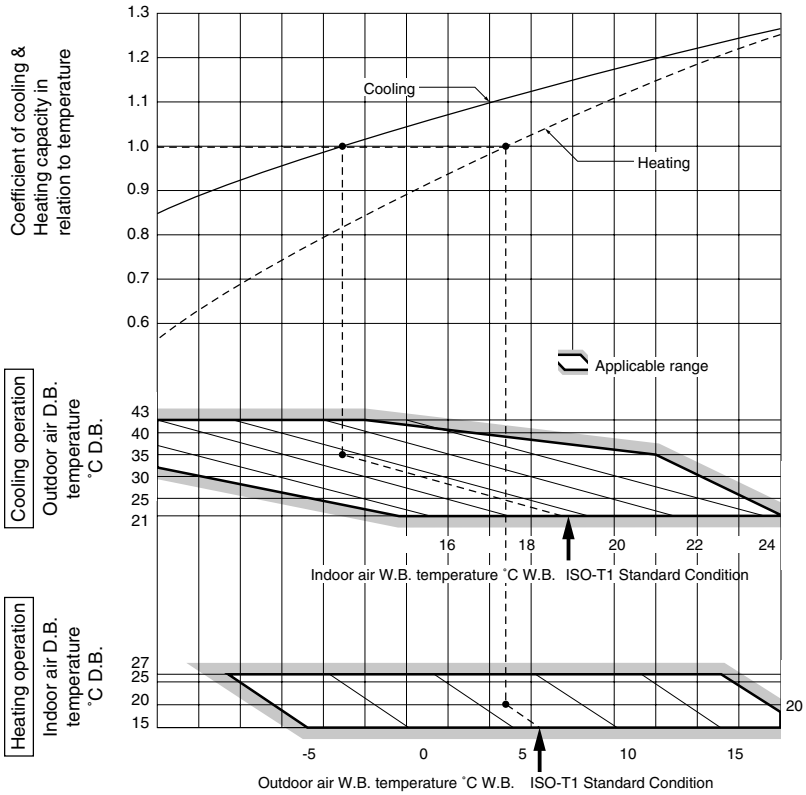


(5) Selection chart

Correct the cooling and heating capacity in accordance with the conditions as follows. The net cooling and heating capacity can be obtained in the following way.

Net capacity = Capacity shown on specification × Correction factors as follows.

(a) Coefficient of cooling and heating capacity in relation to temperatures



(b) Correction of cooling and heating capacity in relation to one way length of refrigerant piping

It is necessary to correct the cooling and heating capacity in relation to the one way piping length between the indoor and outdoor units.

Piping length [m]	7	10	15	20	25
Cooling	1.0	0.99	0.975	0.965	0.95
Heating	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0

(c) Correction relative to frosting on outdoor heat exchanger during heating

In additions to the foregoing corrections (a), (b) the heating capacity needs to be adjusted also with respect to the frosting on the outdoor heat exchanger.

Air inlet temperature of outdoor unit in ˚CWB	-5	-3	-1	1	3	5
Adjustment coefficient	0.91	0.88	0.86	0.87	0.92	1.00

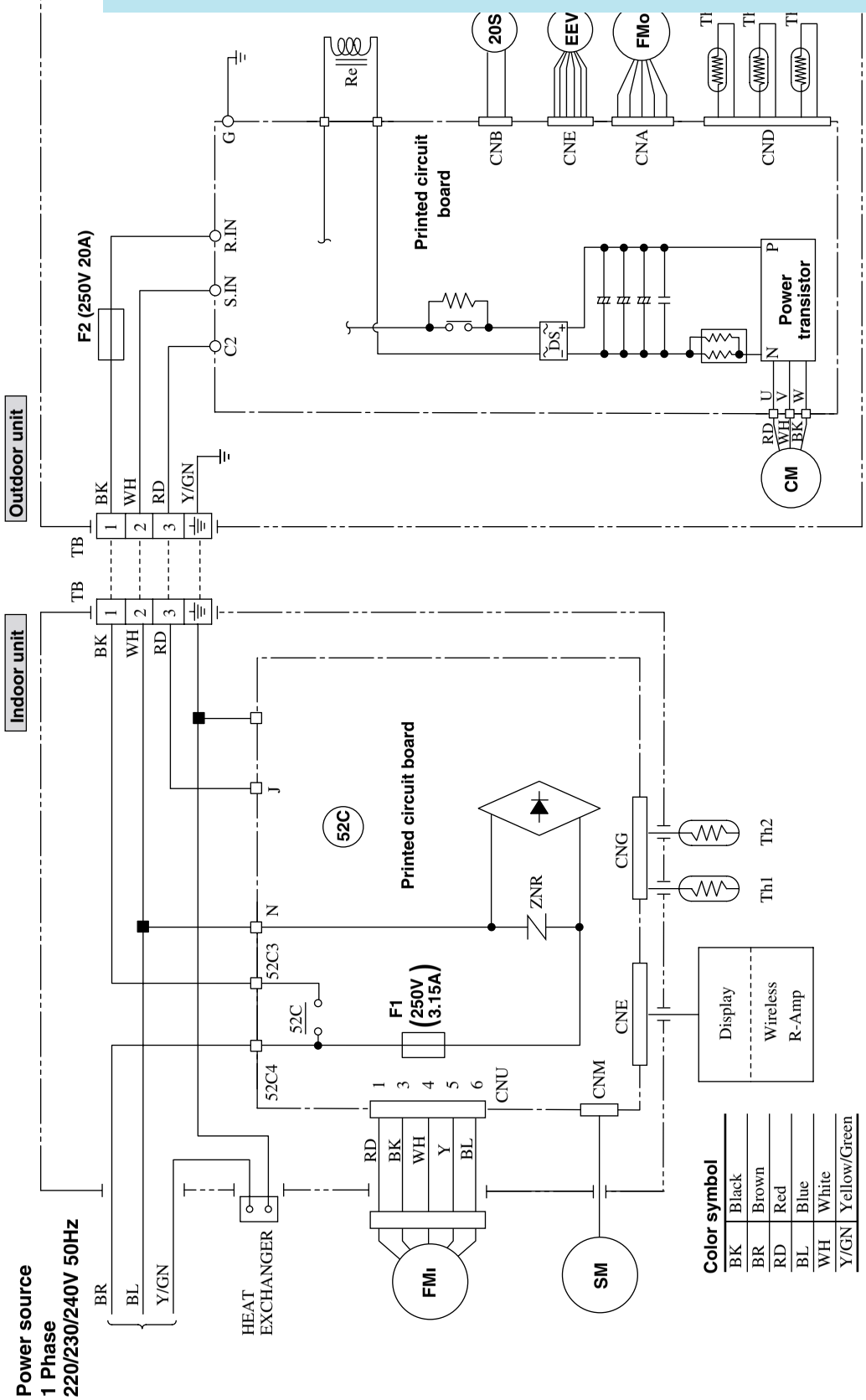
How to obtain the cooling and heating capacity

Example : The net cooling capacity of the model SRK20ZD-S1 with the piping length of 15m, indoor wet-bulb temperature at 19.0˚C and outdoor dry-bulb temperature 35˚C is Net cooling capacity = $\underset{\text{SRK20ZD-S1}}{2000} \times \underset{\text{Length 15m}}{0.975} \times \underset{\text{Factor by air temperatures}}{1.0} = 1950\ \text{W}$

1.1.3 ELECTRICAL DATA

(1) Electrical wiring

Models SRK20ZD-S1, 25ZD-S1, 35ZD-S1



Color symbol

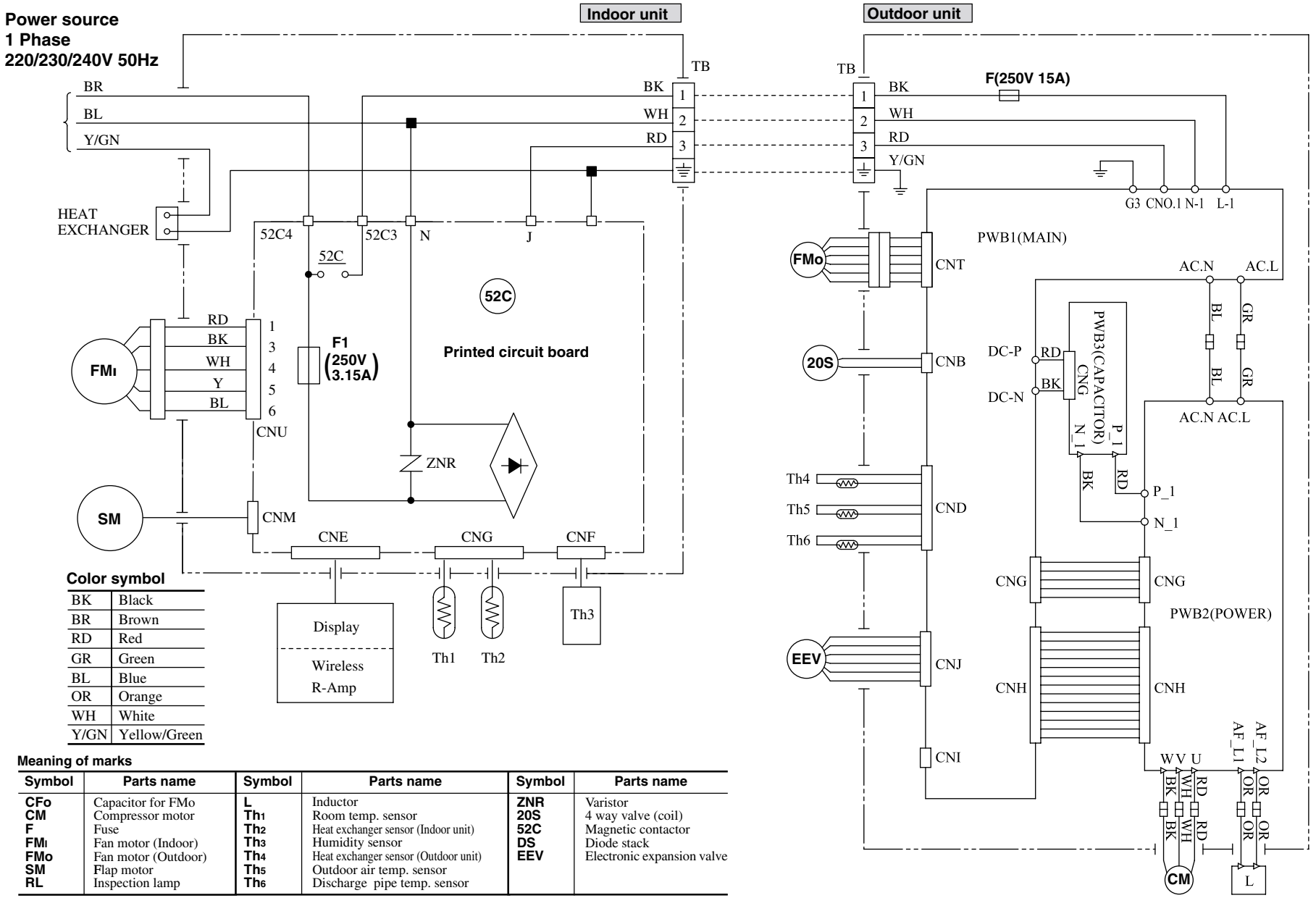
BK	Black
BR	Brown
RD	Red
BL	Blue
WH	White
Y/GN	Yellow/Green

Meaning of marks

Symbol	Parts name
CM	Compressor motor
F	Fuse
FMI	Fan motor (Indoor)
FMo	Fan motor (Outdoor)
SM	Flap motor
RE	Reactor

Symbol	Parts name
Th1	Room temp. sensor
Th2	Heat exchanger sensor (Indoor unit)
Th4	Heat exchanger sensor (Outdoor unit)
Th5	Outdoor air temp. sensor
Th6	Discharge pipe temp. sensor
ZNR	Varistor

Symbol	Parts name
20S	4 way valve (coil)
52C	Magnetic contactor
DS	Diode stack
EEV	Electronic expansion valve



Color symbol

BK	Black
BR	Brown
RD	Red
GR	Green
BL	Blue
OR	Orange
WH	White
Y/GN	Yellow/Green

Meaning of marks

Symbol	Parts name	Symbol	Parts name	Symbol	Parts name
CFo	Capacitor for FMo	**L**	Inductor	**ZNR**	Varistor
CM	Compressor motor	**Th1**	Room temp. sensor	**20S**	4 way valve (coil)
F	Fuse	**Th2**	Heat exchanger sensor (Indoor unit)	**52C**	Magnetic contactor
FMI	Fan motor (Indoor)	**Th3**	Humidity sensor	**DS**	Diode stack
FMo	Fan motor (Outdoor)	**Th4**	Heat exchanger sensor (Outdoor unit)	**EEV**	Electronic expansion valve
SM	Flap motor	**Th5**	Outdoor air temp. sensor		
RL	Inspection lamp	**Th6**	Discharge pipe temp. sensor		

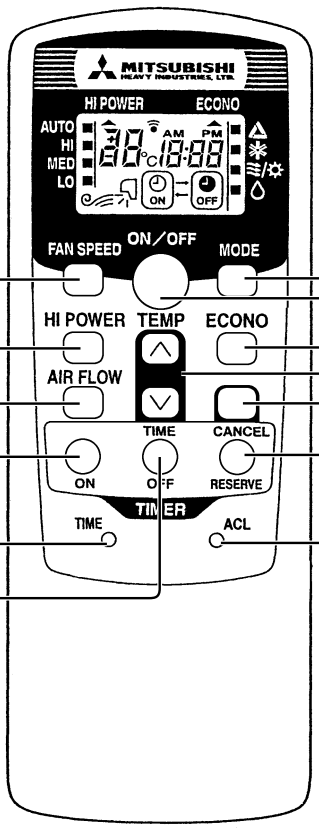
1.1.4 OUTLINE OF OPERATION CONTROL BY MICROCOMPUTER

(1) Operation control function by remote control switch

Remote controller

Models All models

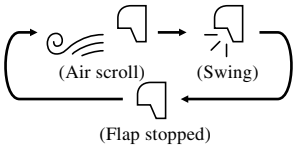
◆ Operation section



FAN SPEED button
Each time the button is pushed, the ■ indicator is switched over in turn.

HI POWER button
This button changes the HI POWER mode.

AIR FLOW button
This button changes the flap mode. When pressed, this button changes the mode in the following order:



ON TIMER button
This button selects ON TIMER operation.

TIME switch
This switch for setting the time.

OFF TIMER button
This button selects OFF TIMER operation.

OPERATION MODE select button
Each time the button is pushed, the ■ indicator is switched over in turn.

ON/OFF button
Press for starting operation, press again for stopping.

ECONOMY button
This button changes the ECONOMY mode.

TEMPERATURE button
This button sets the room temperature.
(This button changes the present time and TIMER time.)

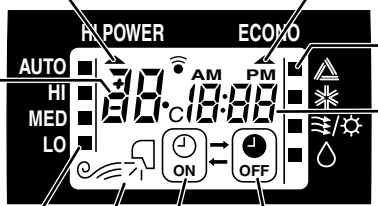
CANCEL button
This button cancels the ON timer and OFF timer.

RESERVE button
This button sets the present time and TIMER time.

RESET switch
Switch for resetting microcomputer.

- The above illustration shows all controls, but in practice only the relevant parts are shown.

◆ Indication section



HI POWER MODE indicator
Indicates during Hi power mode operation.

TEMPERATURE indicator
Indicates set temperature.
(Does not indicate temperature when operation mode is on AUTO)

FAN SPEED indicator
Indicates set air flow rate with ■ lamp.

AIR FLOW indicator
Shows selected flap mode.

ON TIMER indicator
Indicates during ON TIMER operation.

ECONOMY MODE indicator
Indicates during economy mode operation.

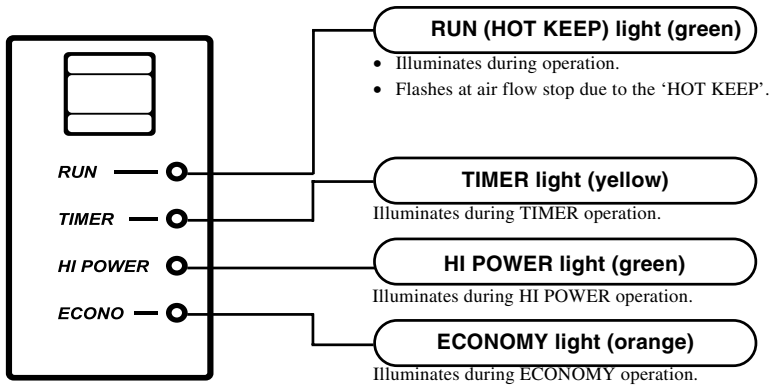
OPERATION MODE indicator
Indicates selected operation with ■ lamp.
[⧋ (Auto) • ❄ (Cool) • ≋/☼ (Heat) • ♢ (Dry)]

TIME indicator
Indicates present time or timer setting time.

OFF TIMER indicator
Indicates OFF TIMER operation.

Unit indication section

Models SRK20ZD-S1, 25ZD-S1, 35ZD-S1, 50ZD-S1



(2) Unit ON/OFF button

When the remote controller batteries become weak, or if the remote controller is lost or malfunctioning, this button may be used to turn the unit on and off.

(a) Operation

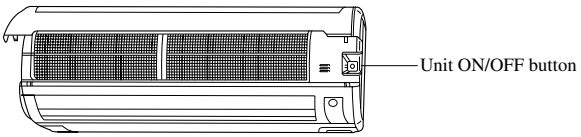
Push the button once to place the unit in the automatic mode. Push it once more to turn the unit off.

(b) Details of operation

The unit will go into the automatic mode in which it automatically determines, from room temperature (as detected by sensor), whether to go into the cooling, thermal dry or heating modes.

Function / Operation mode	Room temperature setting	Fan speed	Flap	Timer switch
Cooling	About 25ºC	Auto	Auto	Continuous
Thermal dry	About 25ºC			
Heating	About 26ºC			

Models SRK20ZD-S1, 25ZD-S1, 35ZD-S1, 50ZD-S1



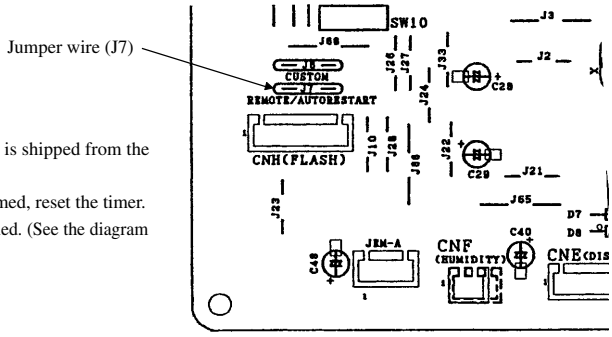
(3) Power blackout auto restart function

(a) Power blackout auto restart function is a function that records the operational status of the air-conditioner immediately prior to it being switched off by a power cut, and then automatically resumes operations at that point after the power has been restored.

(b) The following settings will be cancelled:

(i) Timer settings

(ii) High-power operations



Notes (1) The power blackout auto restart function is set at on when the air-conditioner is shipped from the factory. Consult with your dealer if this function needs to be switched off.

(2) When power failure ocurrs, the timer setting is cancelled. Once power is resumed, reset the timer.

(3) If the jumper wire (J7) "REMOTE/AUTORESTART" is cut, auto restart is disabled. (See the diagram at right)

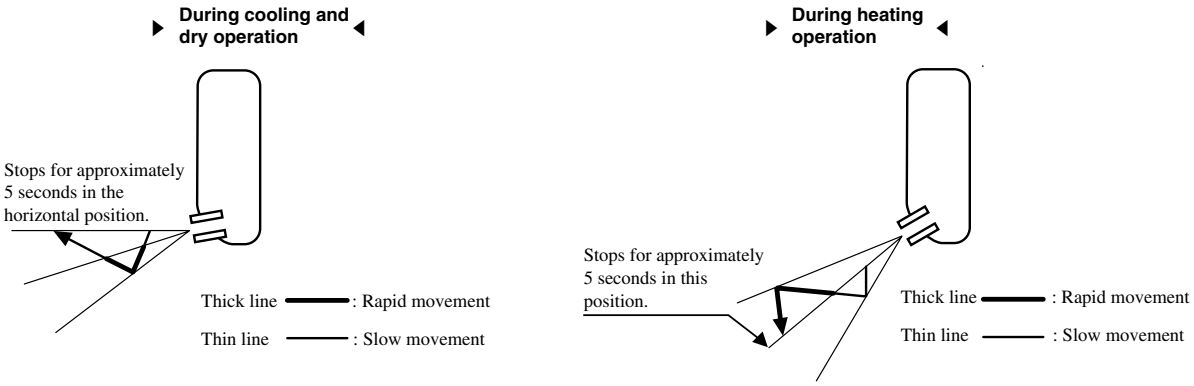
(4) Flap control

Control the flap by AIRFLOW button on the wireless remote control.

(a) Air scroll (AUTO)

The flap will be automatically set to the angle of air flow best to operation.

(i) Starting time of operation



(ii) When not operating

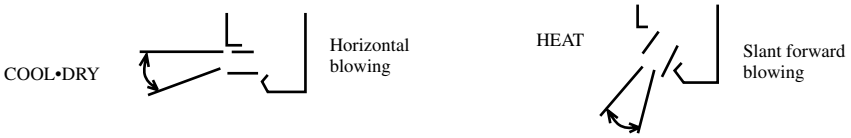
The flap returns to the position of air flow directly below, when operation has stopped.

(b) Memory flap

While the flap is operating if the AIRFLOW button is pushed once, it stops swinging at an angle.

As this angle is memorized in the microcomputer, the flap will be automatically set to the angle when next operation is started.

- Recommendable stopping angle of the flap



(c) Swing flap

Flap moves in upward and downward directions continuously.

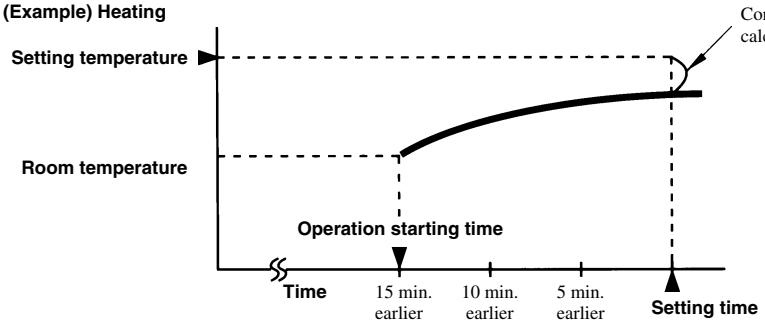
(5) Comfortable timer setting

If the timer is set at ON when the operation select switch is set at the cooling or heating, or the cooling or heating in auto mode operation is selected, the comfortable timer starts and determines the starting time of next operation based on the initial value of 15 minutes and the relationship between the room temperature at the setting time (temperature of room temperature sensor) and the setting temperature. (Max. 60 minutes)

Operation mode	Operation start time correction value (Min.)		
At cooling	3 < Room temp. – Setting temp.	1 < Room temp. – Setting temp. ≦ 3	Room temp. – Setting temp. ≦ 1
	+5	No change	–5
At heating	3 < Setting temp. – Room temp.	2 < Setting temp. – Room temp. ≦ 3	Setting temp. – Room temp. ≦ 2
	+5	No change	–5

Notes (1) At 5 minutes before the timer ON time, operation starts regardless of the temperature of the room temperature sensor (Th1).
(2) This function does not operate when in the Dry or Auto Dry mode.
However, the operation in item (1) does operate in the Auto Dry mode.
(3) During the comfortable timer operation, both the RUN light and TIMER light illuminate and the TIMER light goes off after expiration of the timer, ON setting time.

(Example) Heating



Corrects the starting time of next operation by calculating the temperature difference.

- If the difference (= Setting temperature – Room temperature) is 4°C, the correction value is found to be +5 minutes from the table shown above so that the starting time of next operation is determined as follows:
  15 min. earlier + 5 min. = 20 min. earlier
  ↑ Current operation start time
  ↑ Correction value

(6) Outline of heating operation

(a) Operation of major functional components in heating mode

Item / Functional components	When the inverter speed is 0rps	When the inverter speed is other than 0rps	When the inverter speed is 0rps due to an anomalous stop
Indoor fan motor	ON	ON	OFF
Flaps	ON or OFF	ON or OFF	Stop position control
Display	Lights up	Lights up	Lights up or flashes
52C	ON	ON	OFF after stop mode
Outdoor fan motor	OFF (20, 25, 35 type) Depending on the stop mode (50 type)	ON	OFF (20, 25, 35 type) Depending on the stop mode (50 type)
4-way valve	Depending on the stop mode	ON	Depending on the stop mode
Electronic expansion valve		Depending on the EEV control	

(b) Air flow selection

(i) Speed of inverter changes within the range of selected air flow.

Air flow selection / Model		SRK20ZD-S1	SRK25ZD-S1	SRK35ZD-S1	SRK50ZD-S1
Auto	Inverter command speed	30~100rps	30~102rps		15~120rps
	Air flow	Depends on inverter command speed.			
HI	Inverter command speed	30~100rps	30~102rps		15~120rps
	Air flow	8th speed fixed			6th/7th speed
MED	Inverter command speed	30~72rps	30~72rps	30~76rps	15~62rps
	Air flow	6th speed fixed			4th/5th speed
LO	Inverter command speed	30~42rps	30~42rps	30~46rps	15~38rps
	Air flow	4th speed fixed			3rd speed fixed

(ii) When the defrosting, protection device, etc. is actuated, operation is performed in the corresponding mode.

(iii) Outdoor unit blower operates in accordance with the inverter command speed.

(c) Details of control at each operation mode (pattern)

(i) Fuzzy operation

Deviation between the room temperature setting correction temperature and the suction air temperature is calculated in accordance with the fuzzy rule, and used for control of the air capacity and the inverter speed.

(ii) Heating thermostat operation

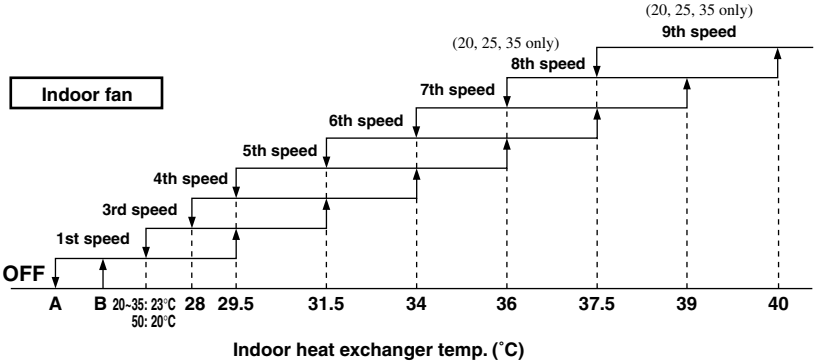
- Operating conditions
  If the speed obtained with the fuzzy calculation drops below -24 rps during the heating fuzzy operation, the operation changes to the heating thermostat operation.
- Detail of operation

Item / Model	SRK20, 25, 35ZD-S1	SRK50ZD-S1
Inverter speed	0rps [Comp. stopped]	10 rps [10sec.] → 0rps [Comp. stopped]
Indoor fan	Hot keep normal mode → 1st speed	
Outdoor fan	Stop	2nd speed [1min.] → stop
Flap	Horizontal	

(iii) Hot keep operation

If the hot keep operation is selected during the heating operation, the indoor blower is controlled based on the temperature of the indoor unit heat exchanger (detected with Th2, indoor unit heat exchanger sensor) to prevent blowing of cool wind.

- **Normal mode (Normal heating operation, operation after HI POWER completion)**

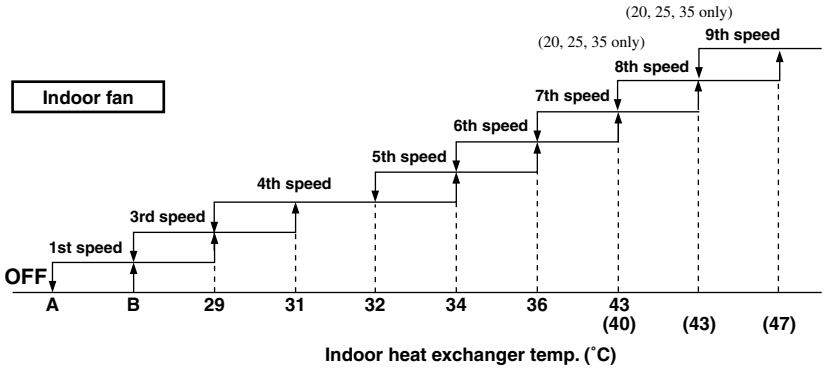


- **Values of A, B**

	A	B
At 0 rps command	22	25
Other than 0 rps command	17	19

Note (1) Refer to the table shown above right for the values A and B.

- **Hot keep M mode [During HI POWER operation (for 15 min.)]**



- **Values of A, B**

	A	B
At 0 rps command	22	25
Other than 0 rps command	17	19

Notes (1) Refer to the table shown above right for the values A and B.
(2) Values in ( ) are for type 20, 25, 35.

(iv) Defrosting operation

1) Starting conditions (Defrosting operation can be started only when all of the following conditions are met.)

① After start of heating operation → When it elapsed 35 minutes. (Accumulated operation time)

② After end of defrosting operation → When it elapsed 35 minutes. (Accumulated compressor operation time)

③ Outdoor unit heat exchanger sensor (Th4) temperature → When the temperature has been below –5ºC for 3 minutes continuously.

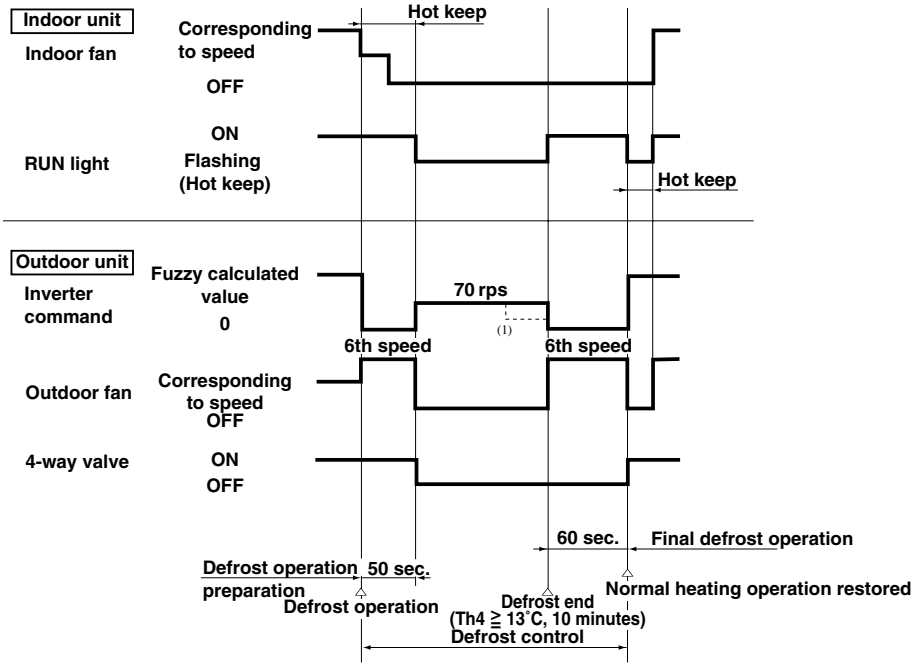
④ When the temperature difference between the outdoor air sensor temperature and the outdoor unit heat exchanger sensor temperature exceeded 20. 25 type: 7.0°C, 35 type: 5.0°C, 50 type: 4.0°C

⑤ During continuous compressor operation

In addition, when the speed command from the indoor controller of the indoor unit during heating operation has counted 0 rps 10 times or more and all conditions of ①, ② and ③ above are satisfied (note that when the temperature for Th4 is -5°C or less: 62 rps or more, -4°C or less: less than 62 rps), defrost operation is started.

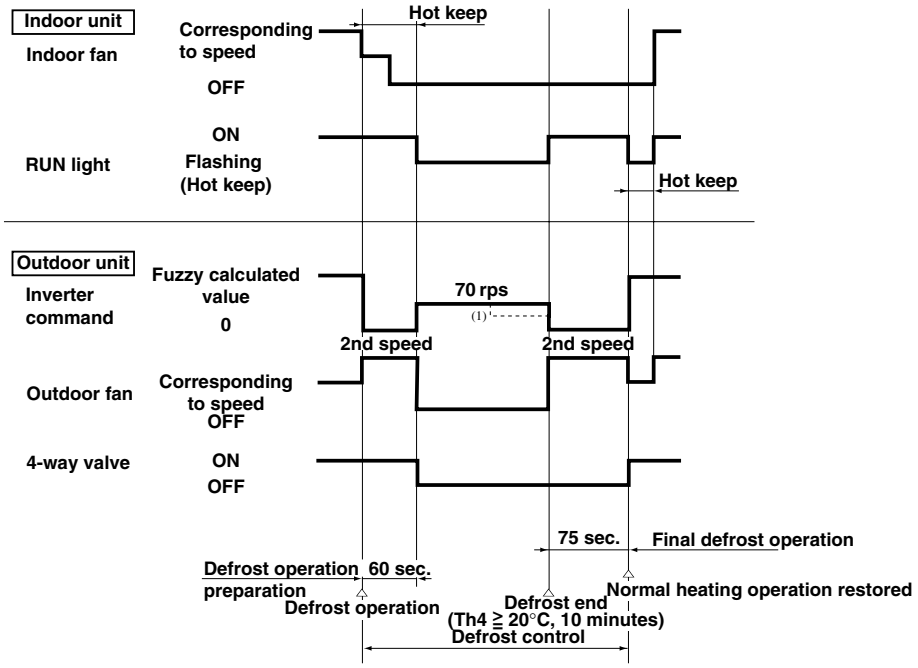
2) Operation of functional components during defrosting operation

- **20, 25, 35 type**



Note (1) When outdoor unit heat exchanger sensor (Th4) temperature becomes 2°C or higher, inverter command changes 70 rps to 50 rps.

- **50 type**



Note (1) When outdoor unit heat exchanger sensor (Th4) temperature becomes 7°C or higher, inverter instruction changes 70 rps to 50 rps.

3) Ending conditions (Operation returns to the heating cycle when either one of the following is met.)

① Outdoor heat exchanger sensor (Th4) temperature: 13ºC or higher (50 type: 20°C or higher)

② Continued operation time of defrosting → For more than 10 min.

(v) Heating "HI POWER" operation (HI POWER button on remote controller: ON)

Operation is maintained for 15 minutes with a higher blow out air temperature.

- Detail of operation

Item \ Model	SRK20ZD-S1	SRK25, 35ZD-S1	SRK50ZD-S1
Inverter speed	100 rps	102 rps	120 rps
Indoor fan	Hot keep M mode (max 8th speed)		Hot keep M mode (max 7th speed)
Outdoor fan	4th speed		2nd speed

Notes (1) Room temperature is not adjusted during the HI POWER operation.
(2) Protective functions will actuate with priority even during the HI POWER operation.

(7) Outline of cooling operation

(a) Operation of major functional components in Cooling mode

Functional components \ Item	When the inverter speed is 0rps	When the inverter speed is other than 0rps	When the inverter speed is 0rps due to an anomalous stop
Indoor fan motor	ON	ON	OFF
Flaps	ON or OFF	ON or OFF	Stop position control
Display	Lights up	Lights up	Lights up or flashes
52C	ON	ON	OFF after stop mode
Outdoor fan motor	OFF (20, 25, 35 type) Depending on the stop mode (50 type)	ON	OFF (20, 25, 35 type) Depending on the stop mode (50 type)
4-way valve	Depending on the stop mode	ON	Depending on the stop mode
Electronic expansion valve		Depending on the EEV control	

(b) Air flow selection

(i) Speed of inverter changes within the range of selected air flow.

Air flow selection \ Model		SRK20ZD-S1	SRK25ZD-S1	SRK35ZD-S1	SRK50ZD-S1
Auto	Inverter command speed	20~60rps	20~70rps	20~98rps	15~90rps
	Air flow	Depends on inverter command speed.			
HI	Inverter command speed	20~60rps	20~70rps	20~98rps	15~90rps
	Air flow	7th speed fixed			5th~7th speed
MED	Inverter command speed	20~52rps		20~58rps	15~60rps
	Air flow	5th speed fixed			3rd~5th speed
LO	Inverter command speed	20~34rps		20~38rps	15~30rps
	Air flow	2nd speed fixed			

(ii) When any protective function actuates, the operation is performed in the mode corresponding to the function.

(iii) Outdoor blower is operated in accordance with the inverter command speed.

(c) Detail of control in each mode (Pattern)

(i) Fuzzy operation

During the fuzzy operation, the air flow and the inverter speed are controlled by calculating the difference between the room temperature setting correction temperature and the suction air temperature.

(ii) Cooling thermostat operation

1) Operating conditions

During the cooling fuzzy operation or when the speed obtained by the fuzzy calculation is less than -24 rps.

2) Detail of operation

Item \ Model	SRK20, 25, 35ZD-S1	SRK50ZD-S1
Inverter speed	0 rps [Comp. stopped]	10rps [10sec.] → 0rps [Comp. stopped]
Indoor fan	Corresponds to fan speed switch.	
Outdoor fan	Stop	2nd speed [1min.] → stop

(iii) Cooling "HI POWER" operation (HI POWER button on remote controller: ON)

The unit is operated continuously for 15 minutes regardless of the setting temperature.

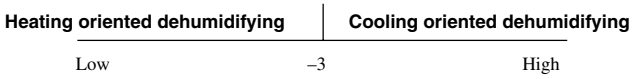
1) Detail of operation

Item \ Model	SRK20ZD-S1	SRK25ZD-S1	SRK35ZD-S1	SRK50ZD-S1
Inverter speed	60	70	98	90
Indoor fan	7th speed			
Outdoor fan	4th speed			2nd speed

Notes (1) Protective functions will actuate with priority even during the "HI POWER" operation.
(2) Room temperature is not adjusted during the "HI POWER" operation

(8) Outline of dehumidifying operation

(a) After operating the indoor blower for 20 seconds from immediately after the start of operation, the indoor temperature is checked and, based on the result of check, the cooling oriented dehumidifying or heating oriented dehumidifying is selected.

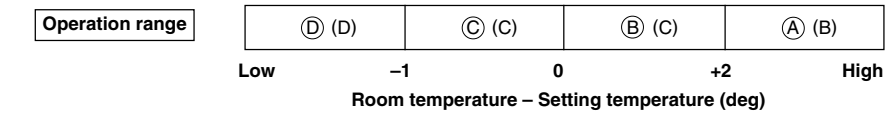


Cooling or heating oriented dehumidifying is selected again one hour after the first selection of the cooling or heating oriented dehumidifying.

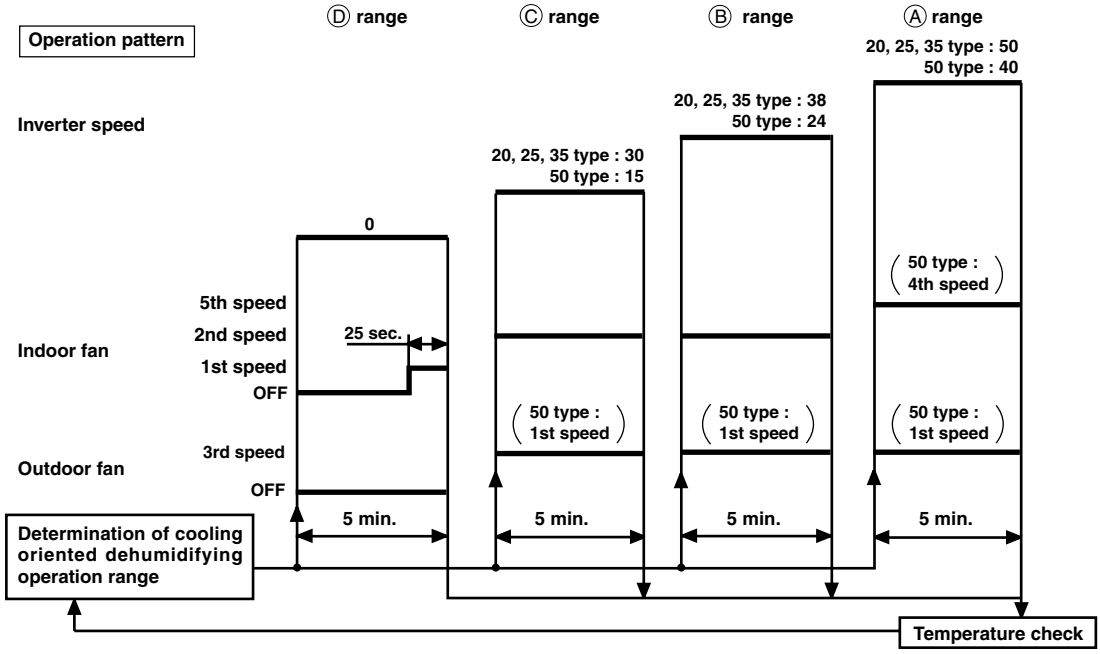
(b) Outline of control

(i) Cooling oriented dehumidifying

Room temperature is checked at 5-minute intervals after selecting the cooling or heating oriented dehumidifying in order to determine the operation range.

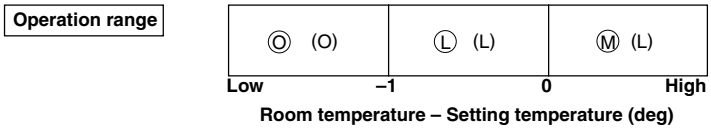


Note (1) Figures in the parentheses ( ) show the values at economical operation.

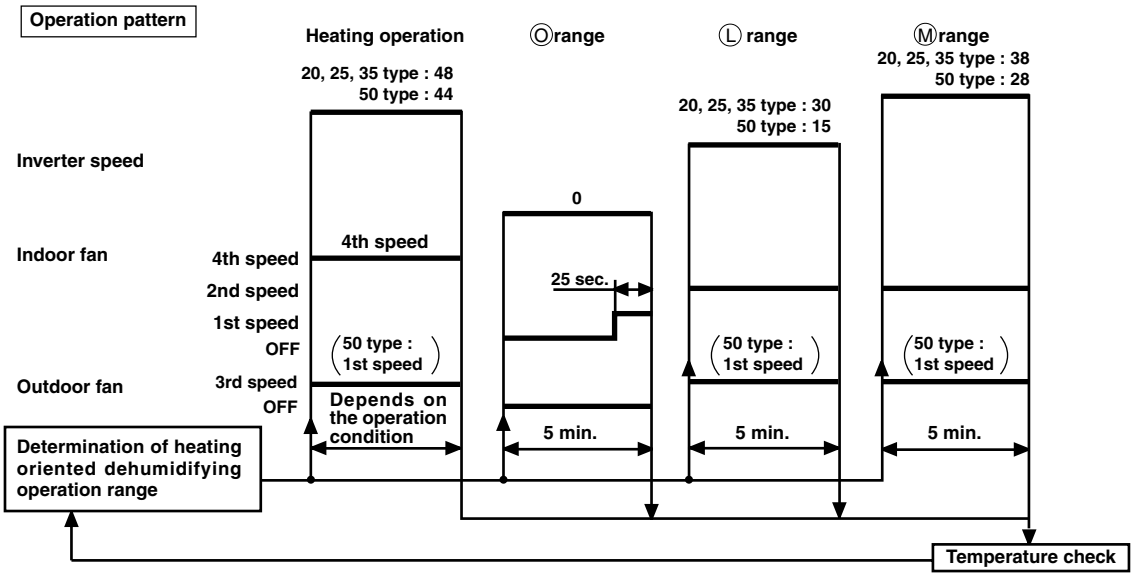


(ii) Heating oriented dehumidifying

After interrupting the compressor operation for 3 minutes (by the 3-minute timer) following the determination of heating oriented dehumidifying, the unit begins in the heating operation. If the room temperature exceeds the setting temperature by 2ºC or more, the unit checks the room temperature at 5-minute intervals and, depending on the result, determines the range of heating oriented dehumidifying operation.



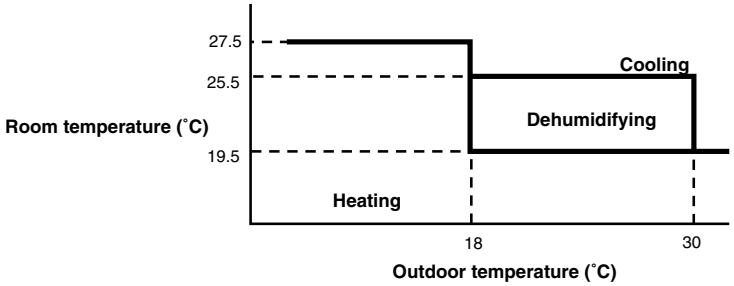
Note (1) Figures in the parentheses ( ) show the values at economical operation.



(9) Outline of automatic operation

(a) Determination of operation mode

The unit checks the room temperature and the outdoor air temperature after operating the indoor and outdoor blowers for 20 seconds, determines the operation mode and the room temperature setting correction value, and then begins in the automatic operation.



(b) The unit checks the temperature every hour after the start of operation and, if the result of check is not same as the previous operation mode, changes the operation mode.

(c) When the unit is started again within one hour after the stop of automatic operation or when the automatic operation is selected during heating, cooling or dehumidifying operation, the unit is operated in the previous operation mode.

(d) Setting temperature can be adjusted within the following range. There is the relationship as shown below between the signals of the wireless remote controller and the setting temperature.

		Signals of wireless remote controller (Display)												
		–6	–5	–4	–3	–2	–1	±0	+1	+2	+3	+4	+5	+6
Setting temperature	Cooling	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31
	Dehumidifying	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31
	Heating	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32

(10) Economical operation (ECONO button on remote controller: ON)

(a) The set temperature is raised by 1.5ºC (0.5ºC every one hour) at cooling operation and lowered by 2.5ºC (Steps of 1ºC, 1ºC and 0.5ºC every one hour) at heating operation to continue the operation with the following contents.

(b) Detail of operation

Item \ Model	SRK20, 25ZD-S1		SRK35ZD-S1		SRK50ZD-S1	
Operation mode	Cooling	Heating	Cooling	Heating	Cooling	Heating
Inverter command speed	20~52rps	20~72rps	20~58rps	20~76rps	15~60rps	15~62rps
Indoor fan	2nd, 5th speed	4th, 6th speed	2nd, 5th speed	4th, 6th speed	3rd~5th speed	4th, 5th speed
Outdoor fan	3rd speed				1st speed	

(11) Protective control function

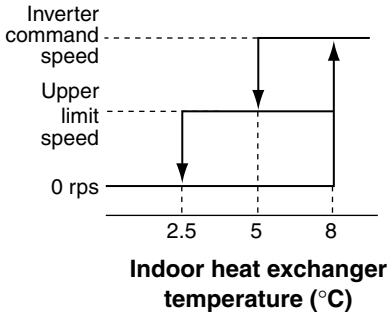
(a) Frost prevention for indoor heat exchanger (During cooling or dehumidifying)

(i) Operating conditions

1) Indoor heat exchanger temperature (detected with Th2) is lower than 5ºC.
2) 10 minutes after reaching the inverter command speed except 0 rps.

(ii) Detail of anti-frost operation

Item \ Indoor heat exchanger temperature	5°C or lower	2.5°C or lower
Upper limit speed	20, 25 : 44 rps 35, 50 : 70 rps	0rps
Indoor fan	Depends on operation mode	20, 25, 35: Max 2nd 50: 2nd
Outdoor fan	Depends on operation mode	OFF
4-way valve	OFF	Depends on stop mode



(iii) Reset conditions: The indoor heat exchanger temperature (Th2) is 8ºC or higher after 5 minutes of operation following control of the inverter command speed upper limit.

(b) Indoor fan motor protection

When the air conditioner is operating and the indoor fan motor is turned ON, if the indoor fan motor has operated at 300 rpm or under for more than 30 seconds, the unit enters first in the stop mode and then stops the entire system.

TIMER light illuminates simultaneously and the RUN light flashing 6 times at each 8-second.

(c) Dew condensation prevention control [Cooling (including automatic), cooling oriented dehumidifying operation)

◆ **SRK20, 25, 35ZD-S1**

(i) Operating conditions: When compressor is kept ON for 30 min. after the unit starts operation.

(ii) Operation contents

Item \ Type	SRK20ZD-S1	SRK25ZD-S1	SRK35ZD-S1
Upper limit speed	60 rps	62 rps	86 rps

(iii) Reset conditions: When compressor is off. (ex. thermo becomes OFF, operation mode is changed)

◆ **SRK50ZD-S1**

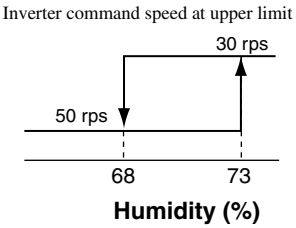
(i) Operating conditions: When the following conditions are met after 20 minutes or more of continuous operation after operation starts.

① The command speed is 28 rps or higher

② The humidity sensor value is 68% or higher

(ii) Operation contents

Item		Type \ SRK50ZD-S1
Fan Speed Medium	Indoor fan speed	4th speed
Fan Speed Low	Indoor fan speed	4th speed
Other Settings	Indoor fan speed	Corresponding to command speed



(iii) Reset conditions: When either of the following conditions is satisfied.

① The command speed is lower than 28 rps.

② The humidity sensor value is less than 63%.

(d) Prevention of continuous low speed operation: For oil return to compressor

(i) Operating conditions: When command speed of less than 30(26) rps continues for 8(60) minutes

(ii) Detail of operation: The unit is operated at command speed of 30 rps forcibly for 15 seconds. (The indoor and outdoor fans are not changed.)

Notes (1) When the command of exceeding 30 rps is directed during 30 rps forced operation, the unit follows it.

(2) Values in ( ) are for Type 50.

(e) Compressor protection start

(i) When the indoor unit calculated speed is 64 rps or over at operation start, the unit is operated with 64 rps for 1 minute and 45 seconds. (All models) After that when the calculated speed is 96 rps or over, the unit is operated with 96 rps for 5 minutes then moved to command speed. (50 type only)

(ii) At thermo operation (OFF → ON) this control is not executed.

(iii) The indoor unit fan corresponds to the command speed of each operation mode.

Note (1) When the calculated speed is less than 64 rps, the unit is started with low load starting described in article (f).

(f) Low load starting

(i) When the unit is started with calculated speed of less than 60(30) rps, it is operated with 60(30) rps for 80(60) seconds, then the operation is moved to the command speed.

(ii) The indoor fan corresponds to the operation mode.

Cooling: Speed corresponding to the command speed of air flow switching

Dehumidification: Speed decided in the operation region

Heating: The lower one between the speed corresponding to the command speed and the hot keep speed

Note (1) Values in ( ) are for Type 50.

(g) Inching prevention

When the compressor goes into the thermo operation within 10(5) minutes since operation start or becomes various dehumidifying operations, the operation is continued with the command speed of 20(15) rps forcibly.

Note (1) Values in ( ) are for Type 50.

(h) Current safe

(i) Purpose: Current is controlled not to exceed the upper limit of the setting operation current.

(ii) Detail of operation: Input current to the converter is monitored with the current sensor fixed on the printed circuit board of the outdoor unit and, if the operation current value reaches the limiting current value, the inverter speed is reduced.
If the mechanism is actuated when the speed of outdoor unit is less than 30 rps, the compressor is stopped immediately. Operation starts again after a delay time of 3 minutes.

(i) Current cut

(i) Purpose: Inverter is protected from overcurrent.

(ii) Detail of operation: Output current from the converter is monitored with a shunt resistor and, if the current exceeds the setting value, the compressor is stopped immediately. Operation starts again after a delay time of 3 minutes.

(j) Heating overload protective control

(i) Operating conditions: When the unit is operating with the outdoor unit speed other than 0 rps or when the outdoor air temperature (detected by Th5) rose beyond 17ºC for 30 seconds continuously.

(ii) Detail of operation

1) Indoor fan speed is raised forcibly by 1 step.

2) Taking the upper limit of control speed range at 60 rps, if the output speed obtained with the fuzzy calculation exceeds the upper limit, the upper limit value is maintained.

3) The outdoor fan is set on 2nd speed. (20, 25, 35 types only)

4) The lower limit of control speed is set to 40(35) rps and even if the calculated result becomes lower than that after fuzzy calculation, the speed is kept to 40(35) rps. However, when the thermo becomes OFF, the speed is reduced to 0 prs.

(iii) Reset conditions: When the outdoor air temperature drops below 16ºC.

Note (1) Values in ( ) are for Type 50.

(k) Cooling overload protective control

(i) Operating conditions: When the outdoor unit is operating with the speed of other than 0 rps, or when the outdoor air temperature (detected by Th5) becomes 41ºC or over for 30 seconds continuously.

(ii) Detail of operation

1) Outdoor fan is stepped up by 3(1) speed step.

2) The lower limit of control speed is set to 30 rps and even if the calculated result becomes lower than that after fuzzy calculation, the speed is kept to 30 rps. However, when the thermo becomes OFF, the speed is reduced to 0 rps.

3) The upper limit of control speed is 72 rps.

(iii) Restoration condition: When the outdoor air temperature becomes 40ºC or less

Note (1) Values in ( ) are for Type 50.

(l) Freezing cycle system protective control

(i) Operating conditions: When both of following conditions have continued for more than 5 minutes later than 5 minutes after the start of operation.

1) Command speed is higher than 60 rps

2) During cooling, dehumidifying: Indoor heat exchanger temperature - Room temperature > –4ºC
During heating: Indoor heat exchanger temperature - Room temperature < 6ºC

(ii) Detail of operation

The command speed repeats 30 minutes at 30rps ↔ 2 minutes at 62 rps.

(iii) Restoration conditions: When the condition becomes outside of either conditions 1) or 2) shown above

Note (1) This control is valid when the room air temperature is in the range of 10 to 40ºC at cooling and dehumidification operation and 0 to 40ºC at heating operation.

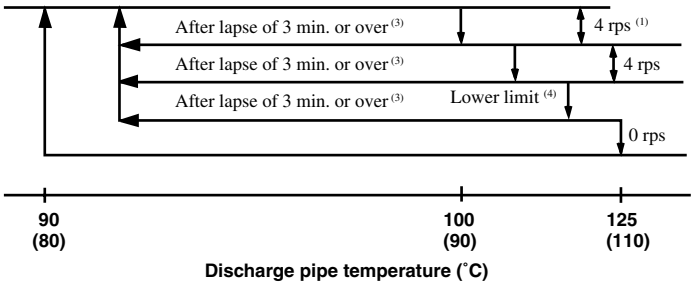
(m) Compressor overheat protection

(i) Purpose: It is designed to prevent deterioration of oil, burnout of motor coil and other trouble resulting from the compressor overheat.

(ii) Detail of operation

1) Speeds are controlled with temperature detected by the sensor mounted on the discharge pipe.

(Example) Fuzzy



Notes (1) When the discharge pipe temperature is in the range of 100(90) to 125(110)ºC, the speed is reduced by 4 rps.

(2) When the discharge pipe temperature is raised and continues operation for 20 seconds without changing, then the speed is reduced again by 4 rps.

(3) If the discharge pipe temperature is still 90 (80) ºC or greater but less than 100 (90) ºC even when the inverter command speed is maintained for 3 minutes when the temperature is 90 (80) ºC or greater but less than 100 (90) ºC, the speed is raised by 2 rps and kept at that speed for 3 minutes. This process is repeated until the command speed is reached.

(4) Lower Limit Speed

	Cooling	Heating
20, 25, 35 type	20	30
50 type	22	38

(5) Values in ( ) are for Type 50.

2) If the temperature of 125 (110)ºC is detected by the sensor on the discharge pipe, then the compressor will stop immediately. When the discharge pipe temperature drops and the time delay of 3 minutes is over, the unit starts again within 1 hour but there is no start at the third time.

(n) Serial signal transmission error protection

(i) Purpose: Prevents malfunction resulting from error on the indoor ↔ outdoor signals.

(ii) Detail of operation: When the indoor unit controller ↔ outdoor unit controller signals cannot be received, the compressor is stopped immediately. Once the operation stops, it does not start any more.
(TIMER light on the indoor unit flashing at the same time.)

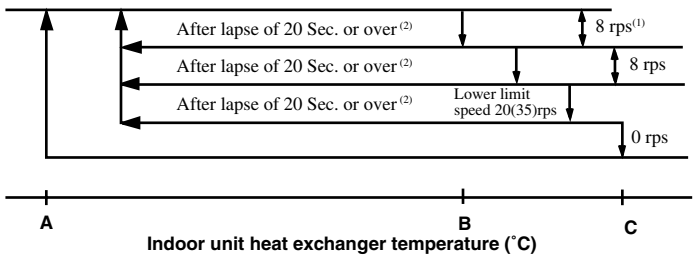
(o) High pressure control

(i) Purpose: Prevents anomalous high pressure operation during heating.

(ii) Detector: Indoor unit heat exchanger sensor (Th2)

(iii) Detail of operation:

(Example) Fuzzy



Notes (1) When the indoor unit heat exchanger temperature is in the range of B~C ºC, the speed is reduced by 8 rps at each 20 seconds. When the temperature is C ºC or over for 1 minute continuously, the inverter is stopped.

(2) When the indoor unit heat exchanger temperature is in the range of A~B ºC, if the inverter command speed is been maintained and the operation has continued for more than 20 seconds at the same speed, it returns to the normal heating operation.

(3) Indoor blower retains the fan tap when it enters in the high pressure control. Outdoor blower is operated in accordance with the speed.

- **Temperature list**

Unit : ºC

	A	B	C
RPSmin < 40(88)	48 (48.5)	53 (56)	58 (61)
40(88) ≦ RPSmin < 50(108)	48 (44)	53 (51.5)	58 (56.5)
50(108) ≦ RPSmin	48.5 (39)	56 (46.5)	61 (51.5)

Notes (1) RPSmin: The lower one between the outdoor unit speed and the command speed

(2) Values in ( ) are for Type 50.

(p) Heating low outdoor temperature protective control (50 type only)

◆ <I>

(a) Operating conditions: When the outdoor air temperature sensor (Th5) is 4ºC or lower continues for 5 minutes while the outdoor speed is other than 0 rps.

(b) Operation content: When the command speed is less than 22 rps, the command speed is forcibly set at 22 rps.

(c) Reset conditions: When the outdoor air temperature sensor (Th5) becomes 6ºC or higher.

◆ <II>

(a) Operating conditions: When the outdoor air temperature sensor (Th5) is 0ºC or lower continuously for 5 minutes while the outdoor speed is other than 0 rps.

(b) Operation content: The outdoor fan motor speed is raised to the next higher speed. (Upper limit 2nd speed)

(c) Reset conditions: When the outdoor air temperature sensor (Th5) becomes 2ºC or higher.

◆ <III>

(a) Operating conditions: When the temperature sensed by the outdoor heat exchanger sensor (Th4) becomes –10ºC or lower continuously for 1 minute.

(b) Operation content: When the command speed upper limit is set at 70 rps.

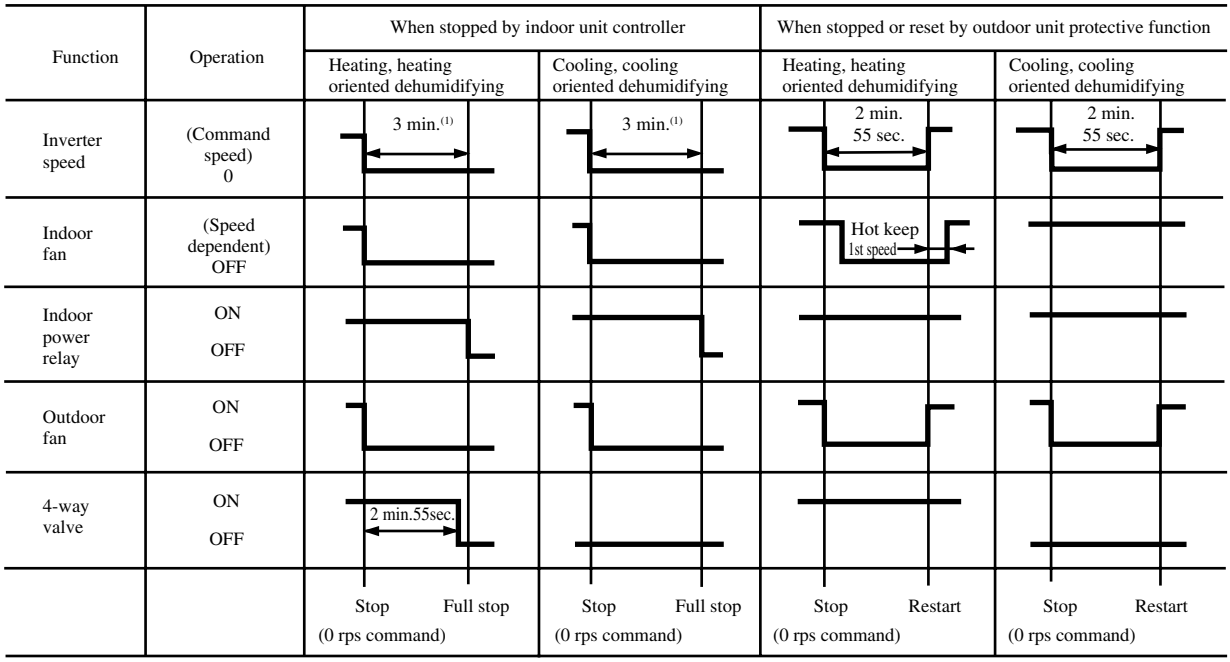
(c) Reset conditions: When the temperature sensed by the outdoor heat exchanger sensor (Th4) becomes -7ºC or higher.

(q) Stop mode

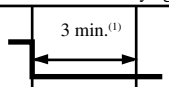
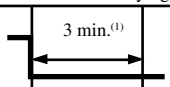
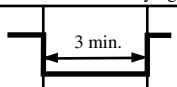
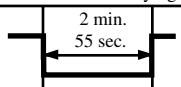
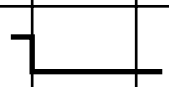
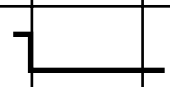
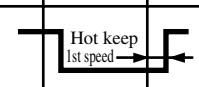
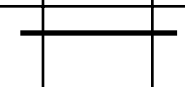
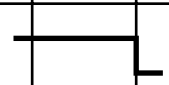
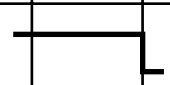
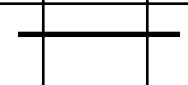
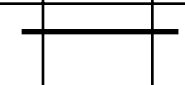
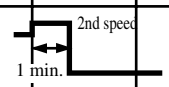
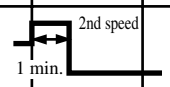
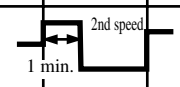
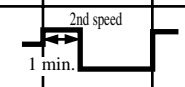
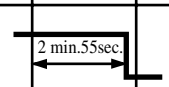
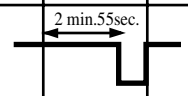
(i) Operating conditions: When the operation mode is changed, when the dehumidifying operation is changed from the heating oriented mode to the cooling oriented mode or vice versa, or when the inverter speed turns to 0 rps. [When 0 rps is commanded from the indoor unit controller, or when an outdoor protective function is actuated]

(ii) Detail of operation

◆ **20, 25, 35 type**



◆ **50 type**

Function	Operation	When stopped by indoor unit controller		When stopped or reset by outdoor unit protective function	
		Heating, heating oriented dehumidifying	Cooling, cooling oriented dehumidifying	Heating, heating oriented dehumidifying	Cooling, cooling oriented dehumidifying
Inverter speed	(Command speed) 0				
Indoor fan	(Speed dependent) OFF				
Indoor power relay	ON OFF				
Outdoor fan	ON OFF				
4-way valve	ON OFF				
		Stop Full stop (0 rps command)	Stop Full stop (0 rps command)	Stop Restart (0 rps command)	Stop Restart (0 rps command)

Note (1) When the start delay of compressor of indoor unit controller is actuated and the operation is reset, it takes 2 minutes and 55 seconds.

1.1.5 APPLICATION DATA

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Please read these "Safety Precautions" first then accurately execute the installation work.
- Though the precautionary points indicated herein are divided under two headings, ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION , those points which are related to the strong possibility of an installation done in error resulting in death or serious injury are listed in the ⚠WARNING section. However, there is also a possibility of serious consequences in relationship to the points listed in the ⚠CAUTION section as well. In either case, important safety related information is indicated, so by all means, properly observe all that is mentioned.
- After completing the installation, along with confirming that no abnormalities were seen from the operation tests, please explain operating methods as well as maintenance methods to the user (customer) of this equipment, based on the owner's manual.

  Moreover, ask the customer to keep this sheet together with the owner's manual.

⚠ WARNING

- To disconnect the appliance from the mains supply this appliance must be connected to the mains by means of a circuit breaker or a switch (use a recognized 16A) with a contact separation of at least 3mm.
- The appliance shall be installed in accordance with national wiring regulations.
- This system should be applied to places as households, residences and the like. Application to inferior environment such as engineering shop could cause equipment malfunction.
- Please entrust installation to either the company which sold you the equipment or to a professional contractor. Defects from improper installations can be the cause of water leakage, electric shocks and fires.
- Execute the installation accurately, based on following the installation manual. Again, improper installations can result in water leakage, electric shocks and fires.
- For installation, confirm that the installation site can sufficiently support heavy weight. When strength is insufficient, injury can result from a falling of the unit.
- For electrical work, please see that a licensed electrician executes the work while following the safety standards related to electrical equipment, and local regulations as well as the installation instructions, and that only exclusive use circuits are used.
  Insufficient power source circuit capacity and defective installment execution can be the cause of electric shocks and fires.
- Accurately connect wiring using the proper cable, and insure that the external force of the cable is not conducted to the terminal connection part, through properly securing it improper connection or securing can result in heat generation or fire.
- Take care that wiring does not rise upward ,and accurately install the lid/service panel.It's improper installation can also result heat generation or fire.
- When setting up or moving the location of the air conditioner, do not mix air etc. or anything other than the designated refrigerant within the refrigeration cycle.
  Rupture and injury caused by abnormal high pressure can result from such mixing.
- Always use accessory parts and authorized parts for installation construction. Using parts not authorized by this company can result in water leakage, electric shock, fire and refrigerant leakage.
- Ventilate the work area when refrigerant leaks during the operation.
  Coming in contact with fire, refrigerant could generate toxic gas.
- Confirm after the foundation construction work that refrigerant does not leak.
  If coming in contact with fire of a fan heater, a stove or movable cooking stove, etc., refrigerant leaking in the room could generate toxic gas.
- In joining pipes, do not use conventional (R22) pipng flare nuts, etc. The use of conventional pipng materials may lead to the rapture of piping due to higher pressure used for the refrigerant cycle and possible personal injury.
  (Use only piping material designed specifically for R410A)

⚠ CAUTION

- Execute proper grounding. Do not connect the ground wire to a gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod or a telephone ground wire.
  Improper placement of ground wires can result in electric shock.
- The installation of an earth leakage breaker is necessary depending on the established location of the unit.
  No installing an earth leakage breaker may result in electric shock.
- Do not install the unit where there is a concern about leakage of combustible gas.
  The rare even of leaked gas collecting around the unit could result in an outbreak of fire.
- For the drain pipe, follow the installation manual to insure that it allows proper drainage and thermally insulate it to prevent condensation. Inadequate plumbing can result in water leakage and water damage to interior items.
- Do not place objects near the outdoor unit or allow leaves to gather around the unit. If there are objects or leaves around the outdoor unit, small animals may enter unit and contact electrical parts resulting in break down, emission of smoke or flame.

(1) Selection of location for installation

(a) Indoor unit

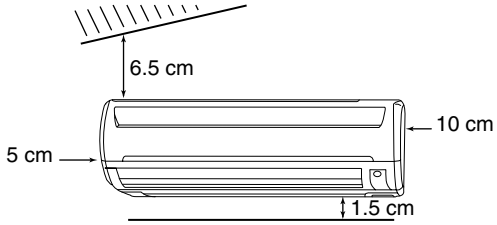
(i) Where there is no obstructions to the air flow and where the cooled air can be evenly distributed.

(ii) A solid place where the unit or the wall will not vibrate.

(iii) A place where there will be enough space for servicing. (Where space mentioned below can be secured)

(iv) Where wiring and the piping work will be easy to conduct.

(v) The place where receiving part is not exposed to the direct rays of the sun or the strong rays of the street lighting.



(b) Outdoor unit

(i) A place where good air circulation can be obtained.

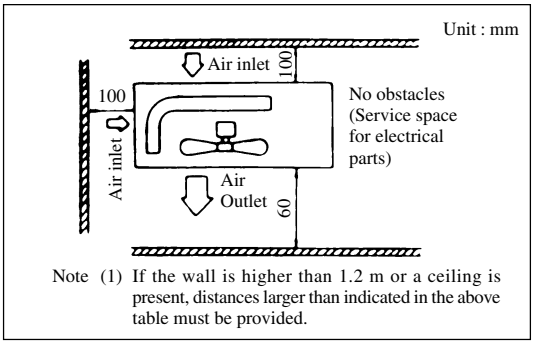
(ii) A place where the exhausted air will not be sucked in for the second time.

(iii) A place where the unit will not be affected by other heat sources. (When there are several units installed or another heat source)

(iv) Do not install the unit near the seaside, or where there is possibility of chlorine gas generation.

(v) A place where discharged hot and cold air or unit's operating sound will not be a nuisance to the neighborhood.

(vi) A place where servicing space can be secured.



Note (1) If the wall is higher than 1.2 m or a ceiling is present, distances larger than indicated in the above table must be provided.

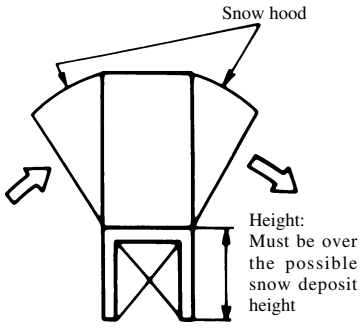
(vii) A place where vibration will not be enlarged.

(viii) In heating operation, snow deposit on the heat-exchanger of outdoor unit must be prevented for keeping the normal performance capacity.

1) Snow-hood on outdoor unit as in drawing, will reduce the frequency of defrost operation.

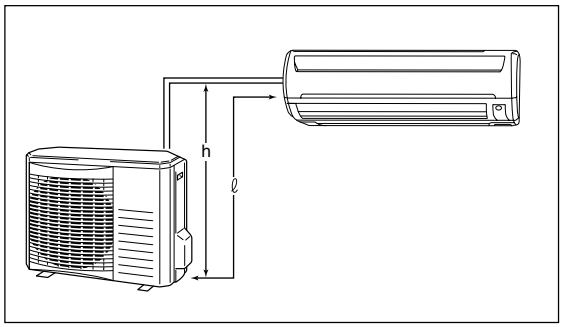
When installing the snow hood, take care so that the air outlet of the snow hood will not face directly into the most windy direction.

2) Design the base higher than possible snow deposit.



(c) Limitations for one way piping length and vertical height difference.

Item \ Model		20, 25, 35 type	50 type
One way piping length (ℓ)		15 m	25 m
Vertical height difference (h)	Outdoor unit is lower	10 m	15 m
	Outdoor unit is higher	10 m	15 m

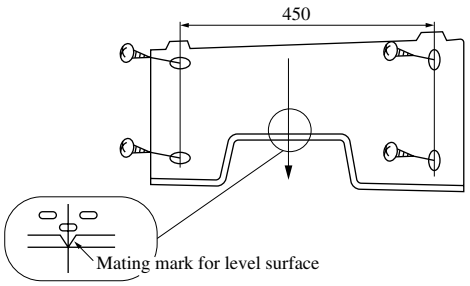


(2) Installation of indoor unit

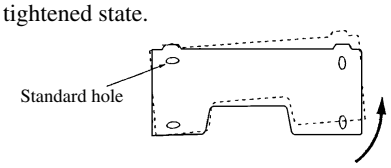
(a) Installation of installation board

(i) Fixing of installation board

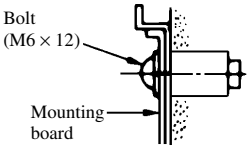
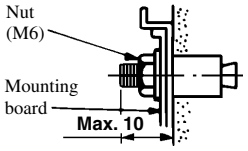
Look for the inside wall structures (Intersediate support or pillar and firaly install the unit after level surface has been checked.)



Adjustment of the installation board in the horizontal direction is to be conducted with four screws in a temporary tightened state.



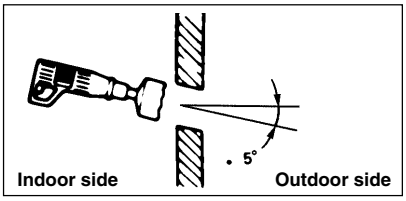
Adjust so that board will be level by turning the board with the standard hole as the center.

Fixing on concrete wall	
Use of nut anchor	Use of bolt anchor
	

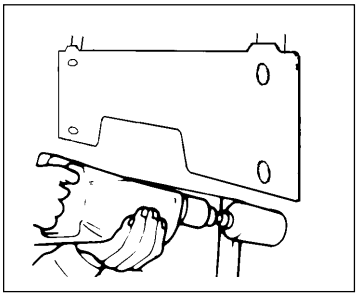
(b) Drilling of holes and fixture sleeve (Option parts)

When drilling the wall that contains a metal lath, wire lath or metal plate, be sure to use pipe hole sleeve sold separately.

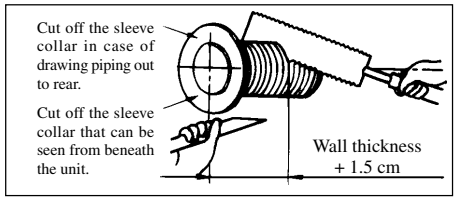
(i) Drill a hole with ø65 whole core drill



Note (1) Drill a hole with incline of 5 degree from indoor side to outdoor side.

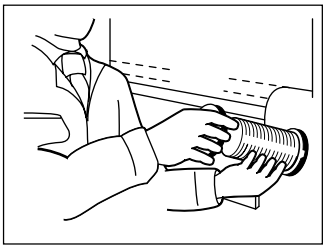


(ii) Adjusting sleeve length

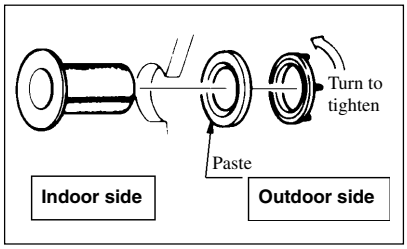


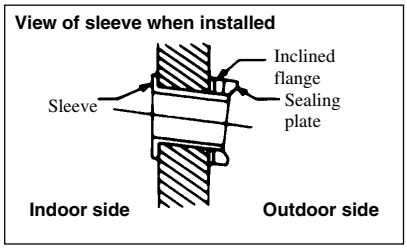
(iii) Install the sleeve

(Inserting sleeve)



(*Sleeve + *Inclined + *Sealing plate)





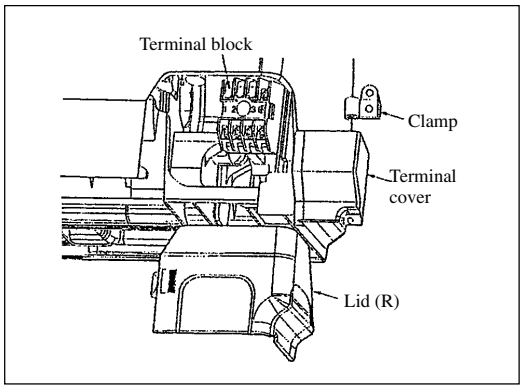
(c) Preparation of indoor unit

(i) Mounting of connecting wires

1) Remove the lid (R).
2) Remove the terminal cover.
3) Remove the wiring clamp.
4) Connect the connecting wire securely to the terminal block.

Use cables for interconnection wiring to avoid loosening of the wires.
CENELEC code for cables. Required field cables.
H05RNR3G1.5 (Example) or 245IEC57

H	Harmonized cable type
05	300/500 volts
R	Natural-and/or synth, rubber wire insulation
N	Polychloroprene rubber conductors insulation
R	Standed core
4or5	Number of conductors
G	One conductor of the cable is the earth conductor (yellow/ green)
1.5	Section of copper wire (mm^2)



① Connect the connection wire securely to the terminal block. If the wire is not affixed completely, contact will be poor,and it is dangerous as the terminal block may heat up and catch fire.

② Take care not to confuse the terminal numbers for indoor and outdoor connections.

③ Affix the connection wire using the wiring clamp.

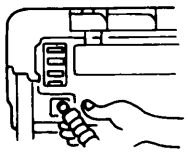
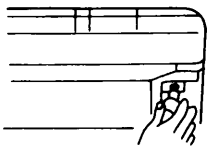
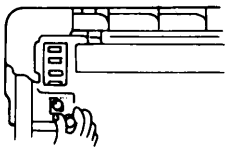
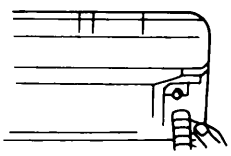
5) Fix the connecting wire by wiring clamp.
6) Attach the lid.
7) Close the suction grille.

(ii) Protective taping (Protect the cable with tape at the section where the cable passes through the hole opened on the wall.)

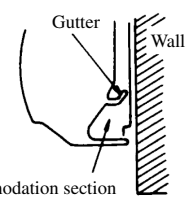
(iii) Forming of pipe (Holding down the pipe at the root, change the pipe direction, extend it and adjust according to the circumstance.)

[When the pipe is extended to left and taken out from the rear center]

(Drain pipe relocation procedure)

1. Remove the drain pipe.	2. Remove the drain cap.	3. Insert the drain cap.	4. Connect the drain pipe.
			
● Loosen the spring clamp to remove.	● Remove by hand or use cutting pliers, etc.	● Securely insert the drain cap removed in the step 2. Note: If it is inserted in sufficiently, water leakage could result.	● Loosen the spring clamp and securely insert the drain pipe. Note: If it is inserted insufficiently, water leakage could result.

Since this air conditioner has been designed to collect dew drops on the rear surface to the drain pan, do not attach the power cord above the gutter.

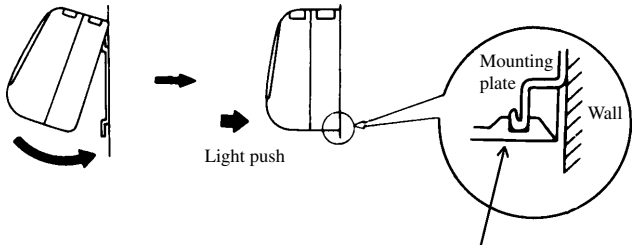


(d) Installation on indoor unit

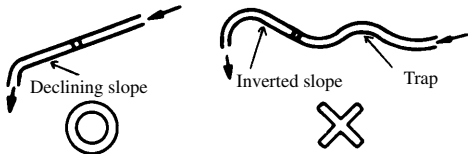
(i) Install the indoor unit on the mounting plate.

Hook the upper part of the indoor unit on the stoppers disposed at the upper part of the mounting plate and lightly push the lower part of the indoor unit so that the unit is fixed in position.

- When removing the indoor unit
  1) Disconnect the lid at right and left.
  2) Pull down the stoppers (right and left) provided at the bottom of the indoor unit base. (See the detail view shown at right.)



(ii) Be sure not to leave any trap on the drain pipe.



(3) Installation of outdoor unit

(a) Installation of outdoor unit

(i) Make sure that sufficient space for installation and service is secured.

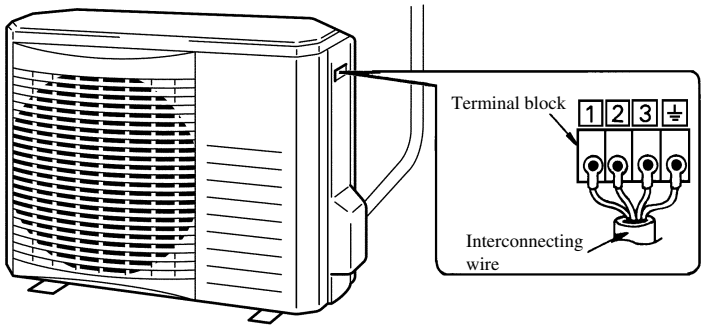
(ii) Fix the leg sections of the unit on a firm base which will not play.
Attach cushion pads, etc. between the unit and the mounting fixtures not to transmit vibration to the building.

(iii) Attach a drain elbow, etc. under the drain port of the bottom plate to guide drain water.
(Drain elbow should not be used where days when temperature drops below 0°C continue for several days. Draining may be disturbed by frozen water.)

(iv) When installing the unit at a higher place or where it could be toppled with strong winds, secure the unit firmly with foundation bolts, wire, etc.

(b) Connection of indoor and outdoor connecting wiring

(i) Connect the wiring according to the number of the indoor terminal block. (Mis-wiring may cause the burning damage, and make sure to connect correctly.)



1	**Brown**	For power supply, indoor outdoor
2	**Blue**	Connecting wiring
3	**Black**	Indoor/outdoor signal wire (Low voltage)
⏚	**Yellow/Green**	Earth wiring terminal

Notes (1) To prevent the mis-operation by noise, when the connecting wire too long for indoor and outdoor. Please hide the fixed wire in the pipe or use vinyl tape to set. Do not put wire into the unit.

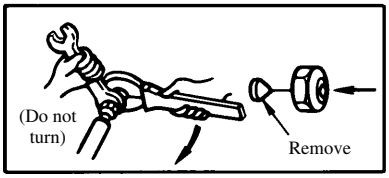
(2) Please let the anchorized personal to decide by indoor wiring code whether connect the leakage breaker or not.

(4) Refrigerant piping

(a) Preparation

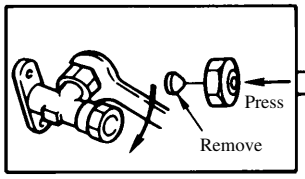
Keep the openings of the pipes covered with tapes etc. to prevent dust, sand, etc. from entering them.

Indoor unit side

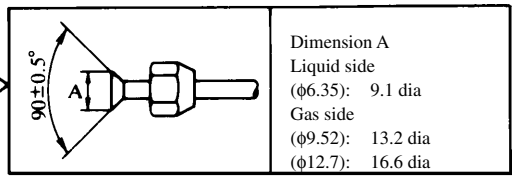


- Remove the flared nuts. (on both liquid and gas sides)

Outdoor unit side



- Remove the flared nuts. (on both liquid and gas sides)

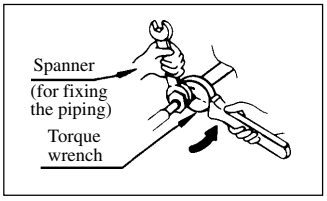


- Install the removed flared nuts to the pipes to be connected, then flare the pipes.

(b) Connection of refrigerant piping

Indoor unit side

- Connect firmly gas and liquid side pipings by Torque wrench.

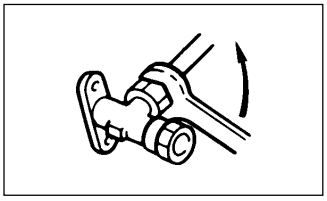


- Specified torquing value:

Liquid side (ø6.35) : 14.0~18.0N·m (1.4~1.8kgf·m)
Gas side (ø9.52) : 34.0~42.0N·m (3.4~4.2kgf·m)
(ø12.7) : 49.0~61.0N·m (4.9~6.1kgf·m)

Outdoor unit side

- Connect firmly gas and liquid side pipings by Torque wrench.



- Specified torquing value:

Liquid side (ø6.35) : 14.0~18.0N·m (1.4~1.8kgf·m)
Gas side (ø9.52) : 34.0~42.0N·m (3.4~4.2kgf·m)
(ø12.7) : 49.0~61.0N·m (4.9~6.1kgf·m)

- Use one more spanner to fix the valve.

- Always use a Torque wrench and back up spanner to tighten the flare nut.

(c) Air purge

(i) Tighten all flare nuts in the pipings both indoor and outside will so as not to cause leak.

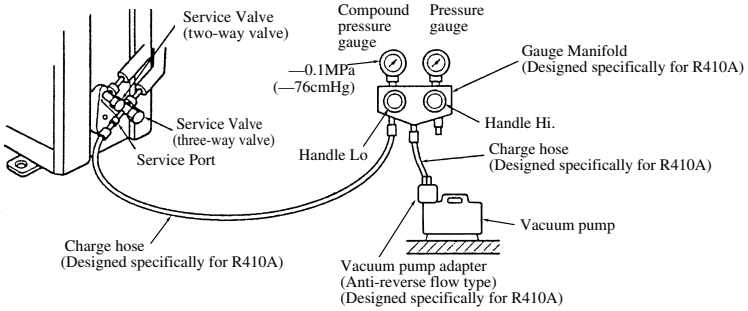
(ii) Connect service valve, charge hose, manifold valve and vacuum pump as is illustrated below.

(iii) Open manifold valve handle Lo to its full width, and perform vacuum or evacuation.
Continue the vacuum or evacuation operation for 15 minutes or more and check to see that the vacuum gauge reads – 0.1 MPa (– 76 cmHg).

(iv) After completing vacuum operation, fully open service valve (Both gas and liquid sides) with hexagon headed wrench.

(v) Detach the charge hoses.

(vi) Check for possible leakage of gas in the connection parts of both indoor and outdoor.



- Since the system uses service ports differing in diameter from those found on the conventional models, a charge hose (for R22) presently in use is not applicable.
  Please use one designed specifically for R410A
- Please use an anti-reverse flow type vacuum pump adapter so as to prevent vacuum pump oil from running back into the system. Oil running back into an air-conditioning system may cause the refrigerant cycle to break down.

Additional refrigerant charge

- **20, 25, 35 type**
  Additional refrigerant charge is not required at all.
- **50 type**
  When refrigerant piping exceeds 15m conduct additional refrigerant charge by weight after refrigerant piping completion.
  Additional charge amount per meter = 20g/m

[Example]

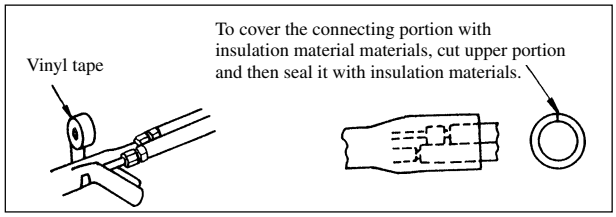
How much amount of additional charge for 25m piping?

(25 – 15)m × 20g/m = 200g | 200g for additional charge |

(d) Insulation of connecting portion

(i) Cover the connecting portion of the refrigerant piping with the pipe cover and seal them.

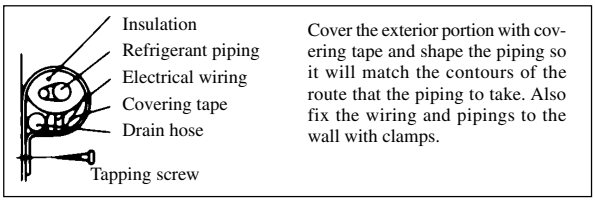
If neglecting to do so, moisture occurs on the piping and water will drip out.



(ii) Finishing and fixing

1) Tie up the piping with wrapping tape, and shape it so that it conforms to which the pipe is attached.

2) Fix them with clamps as right figure.



(5) Test run

(a) Conduct trial run after confirming that there is no gas leaks.

(b) When conducting trial run set the remote controller thermostat to continuous operation position. However when the power source is cut off or when the unit's operation switch is turned off or was turned to fan operation position, the unit will not go into operation in order to protect the compressor.

(c) Insert in electric plug into the electric outlet and make sure that it is not loose.

(i) When there is something wrong with the electric outlet and if the insertion of the electric plug is insufficient, there may occur a burn out.

(ii) It is very important to be careful of above when plugging in the unit to an already furnished electrical outlet.

(d) Explain to the customer on the correct usage of the air conditioner in simple layman's terms.

(e) Make sure that drain flows properly.

(f) Standard operation data

(220/230/240V)

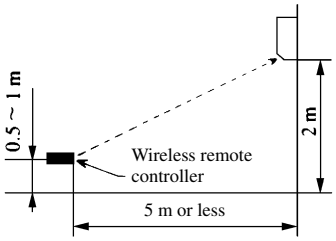
Item \ Model		SRK20ZD-S1	SRK25ZD-S1	SRK35ZD-S1	SRK50ZD-S1
High pressure (MPa)	Cooling	–	–	–	–
	Heating	2.5~2.7	2.5~2.7	2.8~3.0	3.2~3.3
Low pressure (MPa)	Cooling	0.9~1.1	0.9~1.1	0.8~1.0	0.7~0.9
	Heating	–	–	–	–
Temp. difference between return air and supply air (°C)	Cooling	13~15	13~15	13~15	14~16
	Heating	18~20	18~20	18~20	24~26
Running current (A)	Cooling	2.4/2.3/2.2	3.1/3.0/2.9	5.4/5.2/5.0	7.6/7.3/7.0
	Heating	3.0/2.9/2.8	4.5/4.3/4.1	5.9/5.7/5.4	9.0/8.6/8.2

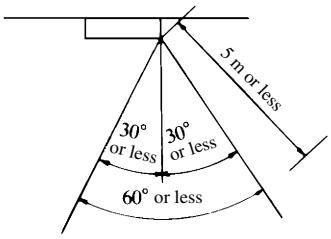
Note (1) The data are measured at following conditions
Ambient air temperature
Indoor side: Cooling ... 27˚C DB, 19˚C WB, Heating ... 20˚C DB
Outdoor side: Cooling ... 35˚C DB, 24˚C WB, Heating ... 7˚C DB, 6˚C WB

(6) Precautions for wireless remote controller installation and operation

(a) Wireless remote controller covers the following distances:

(i) When operating facing the air conditioner:

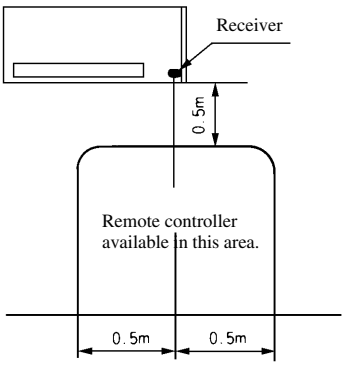




Notes (1) The remote controller is correctly facing the sensing element of the air conditioner when being manipulated.
(2) The typical coverage is indicated (in the left illustration). It may be more or less depending on the installation.
(3) The coverage may be less or even nil. If the sensing element is exposed to strong light, such as direct sunlight, illumination, etc., or dust is deposited on it or it is used behind a curtain, etc.

(ii) When manipulating the remote controller mounted on a wall:

Make sure that it works normally (i.e., transmission/reception signal is audible) before mounting.



1.1.6 MAINTENANCE DATA

(1) Troubleshooting procedures for electrical equipment

(a) Cautions

① If you are disassembling and checking an air conditioner, be sure to turn off the power before beginning. When working on indoor units, let the unit sit for about 1 minute after turning off the power before you begin work. When working on an outdoor unit, there may be an electrical charge applied to the main circuit (electrolytic condenser), so begin work only after discharging this electrical charge (to DC 10 V or lower).

② When taking out printed circuit boards, be sure to do so without exerting force on the circuit boards or package components.

③ When disconnecting and connecting connectors, take hold of the connector housing and do not pull on the lead wires.

(b) Items to check before troubleshooting

① Have you thoroughly investigated the details of the trouble which the customer is complaining about?

② Is the air conditioner running? Is it displaying any self-diagnosis information?

③ Is a power supply with the correct voltage connected?

④ Are the control lines connecting the indoor and outdoor units wired correctly and connected securely?

⑤ Is the outdoor unit's refrigerant service valve open?

(c) Troubleshooting procedure (If the air conditioner does not run at all)

If the air conditioner does not run at all, diagnose the trouble using the following troubleshooting procedure. If the air conditioner is running but breaks down, proceed to troubleshooting step (d).

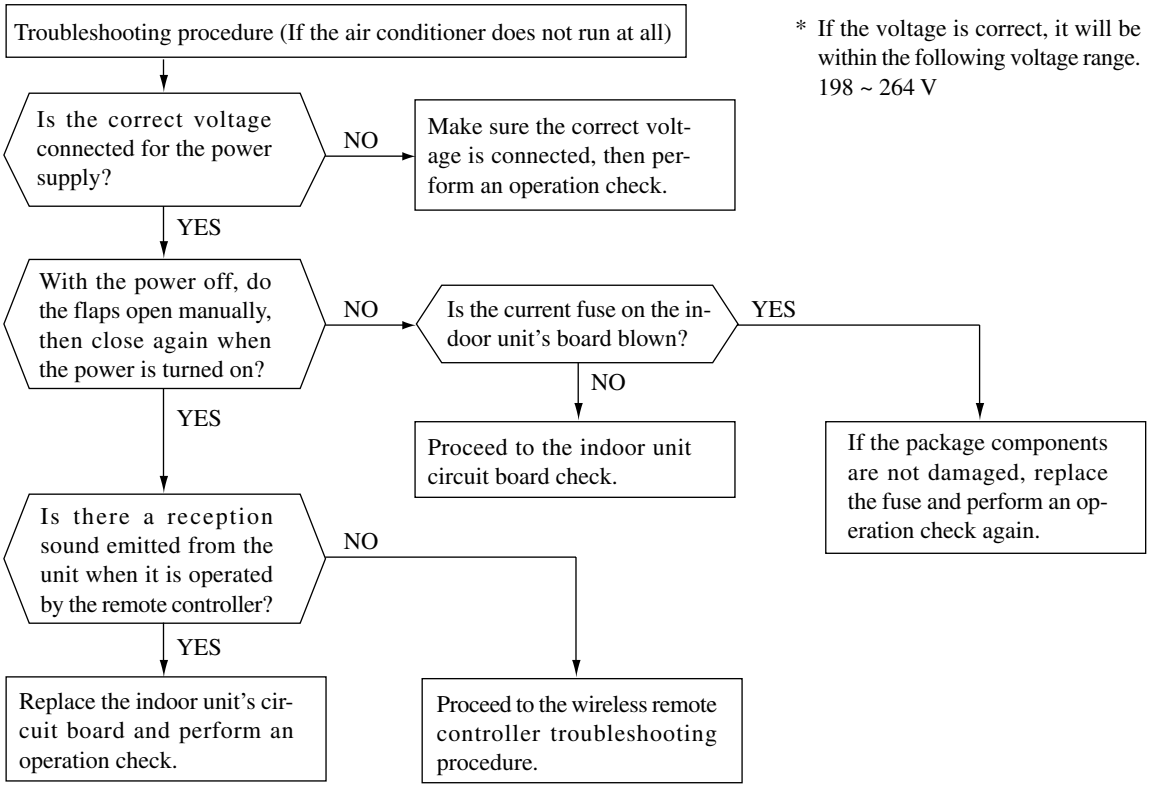
Important When all the following conditions are met, we say that the air conditioner will not run at all.

① The RUN light does not light up.

② The flaps do not open.

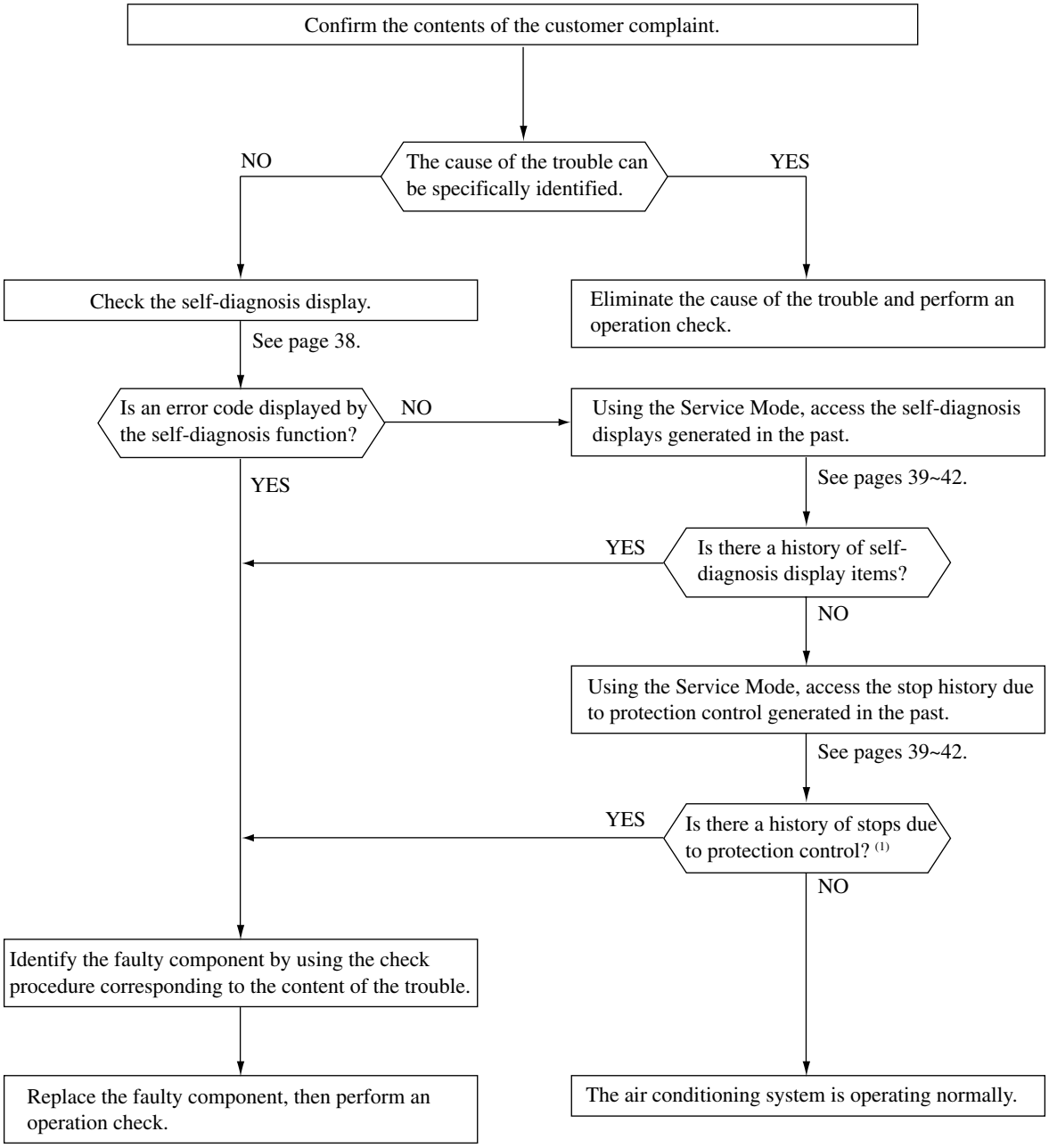
③ The indoor unit fan motors do not run.

④ The self-diagnosis display does not function.



* If the voltage is correct, it will be within the following voltage range.
198 ~ 264 V

(d) Troubleshooting procedure (If the air conditioner runs)



Note (1) Even in cases where only intermittent stop data are generated, the air conditioning system is normal. However, if the same protective operation recurs repeatedly (3 or more times), it will lead to customer complaints. Judge the conditions in comparison with the contents of the complaints.

(e) Self-diagnosis table

When this air conditioner performs an emergency stop, the reason why the emergency stop occurred is displayed by the flashing of display lights. If the air conditioner is operated using the remote controller 3 minutes or more after the emergency stop, the trouble display stops and the air conditioner resumes operation. (1)

Indoor unit display panel		Description of trouble	Cause	Display (flashing) condition
RUN light	TIMER light			
ON	6 time flash	Error of signal transmission	• Defective power supply, Broken signal wire, defective in/outdoor unit boards	When there is no signal between the indoor unit's board and outdoor unit's board for 10 seconds or longer (when the power is turned on), or when there is no signal for 1 minute 50 seconds or longer (during operation)(the compressor is stopped).
1 time flash	ON	Heat exchanger sensor error	• Broken heat exchanger sensor wire, poor connector connection	When a heat exchanger sensor wire disconnection is detected while operation is stopped. (If a temperature of –20ºC or lower is detected for 15 seconds, it is judged that the wire is disconnected.) (Not displayed during operation.)
2 time flash	ON	Room temperature sensor error	• Broken room temperature sensor wire, poor connector connection	When a room temperature sensor wire disconnection is detected while operation is stopped. (If a temperature of –20ºC or lower is detected for 15 seconds, it is judged that the wire is disconnected.) (Not displayed during operation.)
6 time flash	ON	Indoor fan motor error	• Defective fan motor, poor connector connection	When conditions for turning the indoor unit's fan motor on exist during air conditioner operation, an indoor unit fan motor speed of 300 rpm or lower is measured for 30 seconds or longer. (The air conditioner stops.)
ON	5 time flash	Over heat of compressor	• Gas shortage, defective discharge pipe sensor, closed service valve	When the value of the discharge pipe sensor exceeds the set value. (The air conditioner stops.)
Keeps flashing	2 time flash	Outdoor heat exchanger sensor error	• Broken heat exchanger sensor wire, poor connector connection	When a sensor wire disconnection is detected while operation is stopped. (If a temperature of –50ºC or lower is detected for 15 seconds, it is judged that the wire is disconnected.) (Not displayed during operation.)
Keeps flashing	1 time flash	Outdoor air temperature sensor error	• Broken outdoor air temp. sensor wire, poor connector connection	When an outdoor air temperature sensor wire disconnection is detected while operation is stopped. (If a temperature of –40ºC or lower is detected for 15 seconds, it is judged that the wire is disconnected.) (Not displayed during operation.)
Keeps flashing	4 time flash	Discharge pipe sensor error	• Broken discharge pipe sensor wire, poor connector connection	When a compressor discharge pipe sensor wire disconnection is detected for 15 seconds or longer (less than 7ºC) after the outdoor unit's speed has continued at 0 rps or higher for 9 minutes. (The air conditioner stops.)
ON	1 time flash	Current Cut	• Compressor locking, open phase on compressor output, shortcircuit on power transistor, closed service valve	The inverter output current (compressor motor current) exceeds the set value during compressor start. (The air conditioner stops.)
ON	7 time flash	Outdoor fan motor error	• Defective fan motor, poor connector connection	When the outdoor unit's fan motor speed continues for 30 seconds or longer at 75 rpm or lower. (3 times) (The air conditioner stops.)
ON	2 time flash	Trouble of outdoor unit	• Broken power transistor, broken compressor wire • Broken discharge pipe sensor wire, poor connector connection • Compressor blockage	When there is an emergency stop caused by trouble in the outdoor unit, or the input current value is found to be lower than the set value continuously for 3 minutes or longer. (The air conditioner stops.)
2 time flash	2 time flash	Rotor lock	• Defective compressor • Open phase on compressor • Defective outdoor unit boards	If the compressor motor's magnetic pole positions cannot be correctly detected when the compressor starts. (The air conditioner stops.)

Notes (1) The air conditioner cannot be restarted using the remote controller for 3 minutes after operation stops.

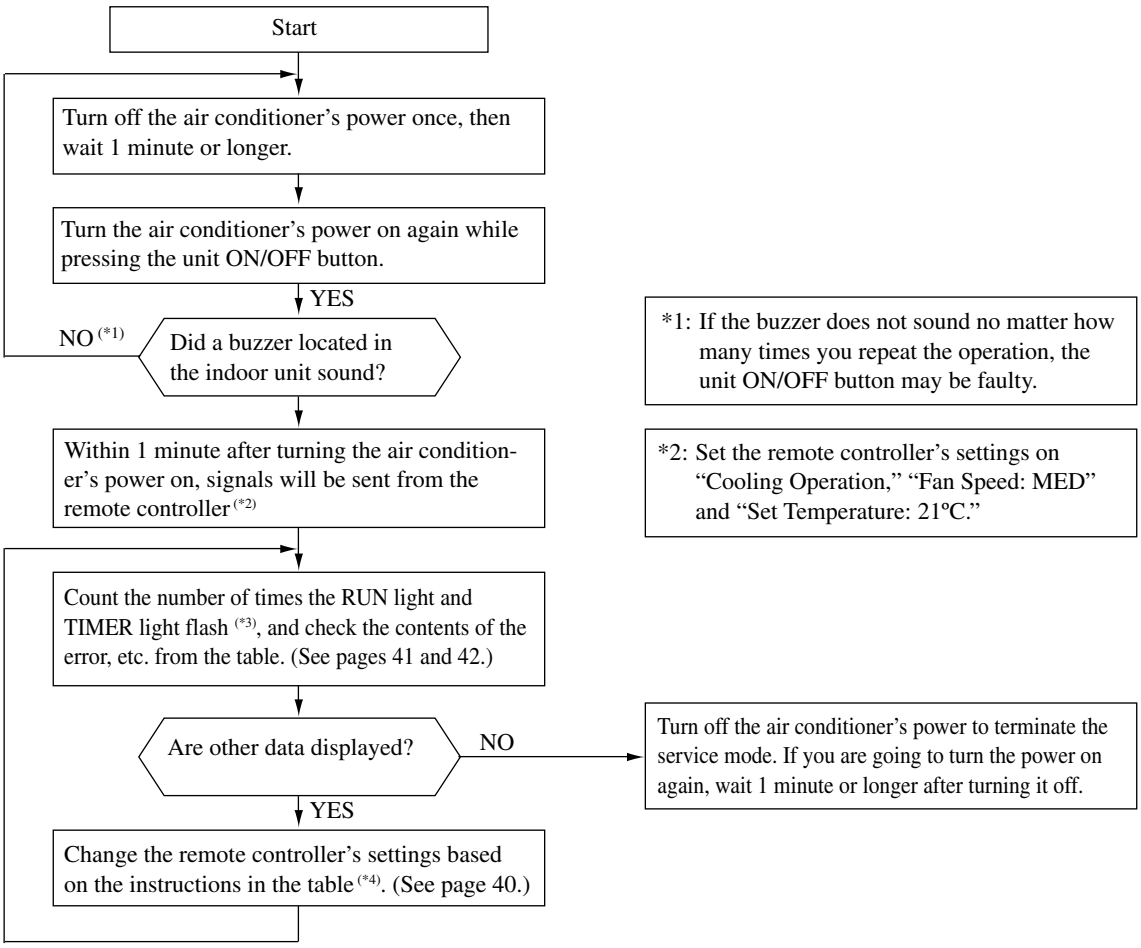
(f) Service mode (Trouble mode access function)

This air conditioner is capable of recording error displays and protective stops (service data) which have occurred in the past. If self-diagnosis displays cannot be confirmed, it is possible to get a grasp of the conditions at the time trouble occurred by checking these service data.

(i) Explanation of terms

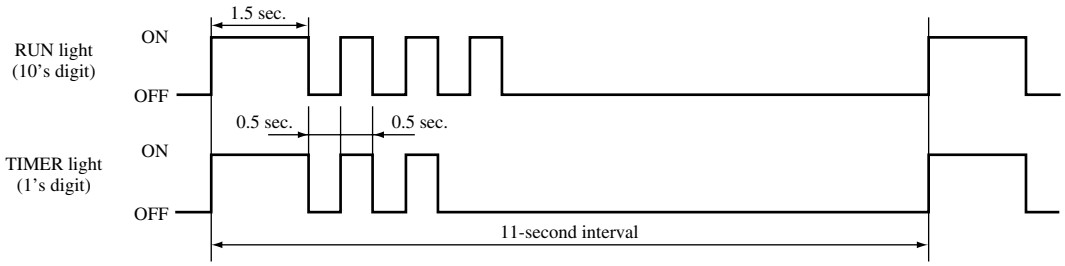
Term	Explanation
Service mode	The service mode is the mode where service data are displayed by flashing of the display lights when the operations in item (ii) below are performed with the indoor controller.
Service data	These are the contents of error displays and protective stops which occurred in the past in the air conditioner system. Error display contents and protective stop data from past anomalous operations of the air conditioner system are saved in the indoor unit controller's non-volatile memory (memory which is not erased when the power goes off). There are two types of data, self-diagnosis data and stop data, described below.
Self-diagnosis data	These are the data which display the reason why a stop occurred when an error display (self-diagnosis display) occurred in an indoor unit. Data are recorded for up to 5 previous occurrences. Data which are older than the 5th previous occurrence are erased. In addition, data on the temperature of each sensor (room temperature, indoor heat exchanger, outdoor heat exchanger, outdoor air temperature, discharge pipe), remote controller information (operation switching, fan speed switching) are recorded when trouble occurs, so more detailed information can be checked.
Stop data	These are the data which display the reason by a stop occurred when the air conditioning system performed protective stops, etc. in the past. Even if stop data alone are generated, the system restarts automatically. (After executing the stop mode while the display is normal, the system restarts automatically.) Data for up to 10 previous occasions are stored. Data older than the 10th previous occasion are erased. (Important) In cases where transient stop data only are generated, the air conditioner system may still be normal. However, if the same protective stop occurs frequently (3 or more times), it could lead to customer complaints.

(ii) Service mode display procedure



*3: To count the number of flashes in the service mode, count the number of flashes after the light lights up for 1.5 second initially (start signal). (The time that the light lights up for 1.5 second (start signal) is not counted in the number of flashes.)

• In the case of current safe (heating CT1) (example: stop code "32")
The RUN light (10's digit) flashes 3 times and the TIMER light (1's digit) flashes 2 times.
$3 \times 10 + 2 \times 1 = 32 \rightarrow$ From the table, read the instructions for error code 32, "current safe (heating CT1).



*4: When in the service mode, when the remote controller's settings (operation switching, fan speed switching, temperature setting) are set as shown in the following table and sent to the air conditioner unit, the unit switches to display of service data.

① **Self-diagnosis data**

What are Self-diagnosis Data? ..... These are control data (reasons for stops, temperature at each sensor, remote controller information) from the time when there were error displays (abnormal stops) in the indoor unit in the past.

Data from up to 5 previous occasions are stored in memory. Data older than the 5th previous occasion are erased.

The temperature setting indicates how many occasions previous to the present setting the error display data are and the operation switching and fan speed switching data show the type of data.

Remote controller setting		**Contents of output data**
Operation switching	Fan speed switching	
Cooling	MED	Displays the reason for stopping display in the past (error code).
	HI	Displays the room temperature sensor temperature at the time the error code was displayed in the past.
	AUTO	Displays the indoor heat exchanger sensor temperature at the time the error code was displayed in the past.
Heating	LO	Displays the remote controller information at the time the error code was displayed in the past.
	MED	Displays the outdoor air temperature sensor temperature at the time the error code was displayed in the past.
	HI	Displays the outdoor heat exchanger sensor temperature at the time the error code was displayed in the past.
	AUTO	Displays the discharge pipe sensor temperature at the time the error code was displayed in the past.

Remote controller setting	**Indicates the number of occasions previous to the present the error display data are from.**
Temperature setting	
21°C	1 time previous (previous time)
22°C	2 times previous
23°C	3 times previous
24°C	4 times previous
25°C	5 times previous

(Example)

Remote controller setting			**Displayed data**
Operation switching	**Fan speed switching**	**Temperature setting**	
Cooling	MED	21°C	Displays the reason for the stop (error code) the previous time an error was displayed.
		22°C	Displays the reason for the stop (error code) 2 times previous when an error was displayed.
		23°C	Displays the reason for the stop (error code) 3 times previous when an error was displayed.
		24°C	Displays the reason for the stop (error code) 4 times previous when an error was displayed.
		25°C	Displays the reason for the stop (error code) 5 times previous when an error was displayed.

② **Stop data**

Remote controller setting			Displayed data
Operation switching	**Fan speed switching**	**Temperature setting**	
Cooling	LO	21°C	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) the previous time when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.
		22°C	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) 2 times previous when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.
		23°C	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) 3 times previous when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.
		24°C	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) 4 times previous when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.
		25°C	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) 5 times previous when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.
		26°C	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) 6 times previous when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.
		27°C	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) 7 times previous when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.
		28°C	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) 8 times previous when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.
		29°C	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) 9 times previous when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.
		30°C	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) 10 times previous when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.

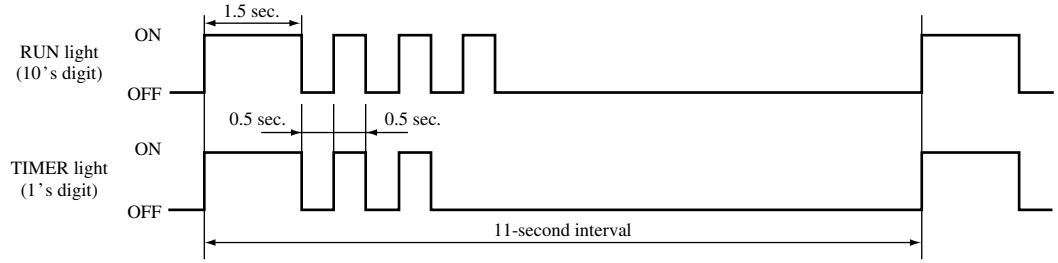
(iii) Error code, stop code table (Assignment of error codes and stop codes is done in common for all models.)

Number of flashes when in service mode		Stop code or Error code	Error content		Cause	Occurrence conditions	Error display	Auto recovery
RUN light (10's digit)	TIMER light (1's digit)		Major category	Minor category				
OFF	OFF	0	Normal	—	—	—	—	—
1 time flash	1 time flash	11	Current Cut	Compressor Software Start	Compressor lock Compressor wiring short circuit Compressor output is open phase Outdoor unit s circuit board is faulty	Compressor start fails 42 times in succession and the reason for the final failure is current cut.	○ (2 times)	○
	2 time flash	12		Lower than 20 rps	Service valve closed Compressor output is open phase. Electronic expansion valve is faulty.	After the compressor starts, it stops due to current cut at less than 20 rps.	—	○
	3 time flash	13		20 rps or higher	Service valve is closed. Compressor output is open phase. Compressor is faulty. Electronic expansion valve is faulty.	When operation is stopped by current cut at 20 rps or higher.	—	○
	4 time flash	14		Excessive voltage (DC 350 V)	Outdoor unit s circuit board is defective. Power supply is abnormal.	When the DC voltage (DC 280 V) exceeds 350 V.	—	○
	5 time flash	15		Short circuit in the power transistor (high side)	Outdoor unit s circuit board is faulty. Power transistor is damaged.	When it is judged that the power transistor was damaged at the time the compressor started.	○	—
	6 time flash	16		Current cut circuit breakdown	Outdoor unit s circuit board is faulty. Power transistor is damaged.	When it is judged that the power transistor was damaged at the time the compressor started.	○	—
2 time flash	1 time flash	21	Outdoor unit error	PWM calculation results are abnormal.	Compressor wiring is disconnected. Power transistor is damaged.	When PWM calculation results of 0% continue for 3 minutes or longer.	○	—
	2 time flash	22		Input is 2A or lower (PWM 90% or higher)	Compressor wiring is disconnected. Outdoor unit s circuit board is faulty.	When PWM calculation results of 90% and an input current lower than the set value continue for 3 minutes or longer.	○	—
	3 time flash	23		Abnormal stop 3 times in 20 minutes.	Service valve is closed. Compressor output is open phase. Electronic expansion valve is faulty. Refrigerant is insufficient.	When an abnormal stop occurs 3 times with automatic recovery within 20 minutes after the outdoor unit s power supply was turned on.	○	—
	8 time flash	28		Wrong voltage	Power supply construction is defective.	When the wrong voltage is applied.	○	—
	9 time flash	29		Voltage drop	Power supply construction is defective. Outdoor unit s circuit board is faulty.	When the power supply voltage drops during operation.	—	○
	7 time flash	27	Outdoor fan motor error	Outdoor unit s fan motor is abnormal	Outdoor fan motor is faulty. Connector connections are poor. Outdoor unit s circuit board is faulty.	When a fan speed of 75 rpm or lower continues for 30 seconds or longer.	○ (3 times)	○
3 time flash	1 time flash	31	Current safe	Cooling current safe I	Overcharge Compressor lock	When there is a current safe stop in current safe I mode during cooling operation.	—	○
	2 time flash	32		Heating current safe I	Overcharge Compressor lock	When there is a current safe stop in current safe I mode during heating operation.	—	○
	3 time flash	33		Cooling current safe II	Overcharge Compressor lock	When there is a current safe stop in current safe II mode during cooling operation.	—	○
	4 time flash	34		Heating current safe II	Overcharge Compressor lock	When there is a current safe stop in current safe II mode during heating operation.	—	○
	5 time flash	35		Cooling current safe III	Overcharge Compressor lock	When there is a current safe stop in current safe III mode during cooling operation.	—	○
	6 time flash	36		Heating current safe III	Overcharge Compressor lock	When there is a current safe stop in current safe III mode during heating operation.	—	○
	7 time flash	37		Heating current safe III + 3A	Overcharge Compressor lock	When there is a current safe stop in current safe III + 3A mode during heating operation.	—	○

Number of flashes when in service mode		Stop code or Error code	Error content		Cause	Occurrence conditions	Error display	Auto recovery
RUN light (10's digit)	TIMER light (1's digit)		Major category	Minor category				
4 time flash	1 time flash	41	Current safe	Cooling overload 1 (outdoor temperature: 36~40ºC)	Overcharge Compressor lock Overload operation	When there is a current safe stop in overload 1 mode during cooling operation.	—	○
	2 time flash	42		Heating overload 1 (outdoor temperature: 5~12ºC)	Overcharge Compressor lock Overload operation	When there is a current safe stop in overload 1 mode during heating operation.	—	○
	3 time flash	43		Cooling overload 2 (outdoor temperature: 40~45ºC)	Overcharge Compressor lock Overload operation	When there is a current safe stop in overload 2 mode during cooling operation.	—	○
	4 time flash	44		Heating overload 2 (outdoor temperature: 12~17ºC)	Overcharge Compressor lock Overload operation	When there is a current safe stop in overload 2 mode during heating operation.	—	○
	5 time flash	45		Cooling overload 3 (outdoor temperature: 45ºC~)	Overcharge Compressor lock Overload operation	When there is a current safe stop in overload 3 mode during cooling operation.	—	○
	6 time flash	46		Heating overload 3 (outdoor temperature: 17ºC~)	Overcharge Compressor lock Overload operation	When there is a current safe stop in overload 3 mode during heating operation.	—	○
5 time flash	OFF	50	Compressor overheat	125ºC	Refrigerant is insuffcient. Discharge pipe sensor is faulty. Service valve is closed.	When the discharge pipe sensor's value exceeds the set value.	○ (2 times)	○
6 time flash	OFF	60	Serial signal transmission error	Can't receive signals for 1 minute 55 seconds (if communications have recovered)	Power supply is faulty. Power supply cables and signal lines are improperly wired. Indoor or outdoor unit circuit board is faulty.	When 1 minute 55 seconds passes without communications signals from either the outdoor unit or the indoor unit being detected correctly.	—	○
	1 time flash	61		Connection lines between the indoor and outdoor units are faulty.	Connection lines between the indoor and outdoor units are faulty. Indoor or outdoor unit circuit boards are faulty.	When 10 seconds passes after the power is turned on without communications signals from the indoor or outdoor unit being detected correctly.	○	—
	2 time flash	62		Serial transmission error.	Indoor or outdoor unit circuit boards are faulty. Noise is causing faulty operation.	When 1 minute 50 seconds passes without communications signals from either the outdoor unit or the indoor unit being detected correctly.	○ (3 times)	○
7 time flash	1 time flash	71	Rotor lock	Less than 16 rps	Compressor is faulty Compressor output is open phase Electronic expansion valve is faulty. Overload operation Outdoor unit circuit board is faulty.	After the compressor starts, when the compressor stops at less than 16 rps due to rotor lock.	—	○
	2 time flash	72		16 rps or higher	Compressor is faulty Compressor output is open phase Electronic expansion valve is faulty. Overload operation Outdoor unit circuit board is faulty.	When the compressor stops at 16 rps or higher speed due to rotor lock.	—	○
	3 time flash	73		Phase switching defects (U phase)	Compressor is faulty Compressor wiring is disconnected. Compressor wiring is short circuited. Outdoor unit's circuit board is faulty.	When compressor start fails 42 times in succession and the reason for the final failure is rotor lock.	○ (2 times)	○
	4 time flash	74		Phase switching defects (V phase)	Compressor is faulty Compressor wiring is disconnected. Compressor wiring is short circuited. Outdoor unit's circuit board is faulty.	When compressor start fails 42 times in succession and the reason for the final failure is rotor lock.	○ (2 times)	○
	5 time flash	75		Phase switching defects (W phase or impossible to distinguish).	Compressor is faulty Compressor wiring is disconnected. Compressor wiring is short circuited. Outdoor unit's circuit board is faulty.	When compressor start fails 42 times in succession and the reason for the final failure is rotor lock.	○ (2 times)	○
	6 time flash	76		Compressor software start (within 4 seconds after phase switching)	Compressor is faulty Compressor wiring is disconnected. Compressor wiring is short circuited. Outdoor unit's circuit board is faulty.	When compressor start fails 42 times in succession and the reason for the final failure is rotor lock.	○ (2 times)	○
8 time flash	OFF	80	Protective control operation	Indoor unit fan motor is abnormal.	Fan motor is faulty. Connector connections are poor. Indoor unit circuit board is faulty.	When the indoor unit's fan motor is detected to be running at 300 rpm or lower speed with the fan motor in the ON condition while the air conditioner is running.	○	—
	1 time flash	81		Discharge pipe sensor is abnormal (anomalous stop).	Discharge pipe sensor wire is disconnected. Connector connections are poor.	When a disconnection signal (temperature below 7ºC) is sent for 15 seconds or longer as the discharge pipe sensor data after the outdoor unit's speed is 0 rps or higher continuously for 9 minutes.	○ (4 times)	○
	2 time flash	82		Indoor heat exchanger sensor is abnormal (anomalous stop).	Indoor heat exchanger sensor wire is disconnected. Connector connections are poor.	When a temperature of –20ºC or lower is sensed continuously for 40 minutes during heating operation (the compressor stops).	○	—
	3 time flash	83		Outdoor heat exchanger sensor is abnormal (anomalous stop).	Outdoor heat exchanger sensor wire is disconnected. Connector connections are poor.	When a temperature of –50ºC or lower is sensed continuously for 40 minutes during heating operation (the compressor stops).	○	—
	4 time flash	84		Anti-condensation control	High humidity condition. Humidity sensor is faulty.	Anti-condensation prevention control is operating.	—	○
	5 time flash	85		Anti-frost control	Indoor unit fan speed drops. Indoor heat exchanger sensor short circuit	When the anti-frost control operates and the compressor stops during cooling operation.	—	○
	6 time flash	86		High pressure control	Heating overload Indoor unit fan speed drops Indoor heat exchanger sensor short circuit	When high pressure control operates during heating operation and the compressor stops.	—	○
	7 time flash	87		Compressor overheating protection control	Refrigerant is insufficient. Discharge pipe sensor is faulty. Service valve is closed.	When compressor overheating protective control operates and the compressor stops.	—	○
	8 time flash	88		Refrigeration cycle system protective control	Service valve is closed. Refrigerant is insufficient.	When refrigeration cycle system protective control operates.	—	○

Notes (1) The number of flashes when in the Service Mode do not include the 1.5 second period when the light light up at first (starting signal). (See the example shown below.)

• In the case of current safe (heating CT1) (example: stop code "32")
The RUN light (10's digit) flashes 3 times and the TIMER light (1's digit) flashes 2 times.
$3 \times 10 + 2 \times 1 = 32 \rightarrow$ From the table, read the instructions for error code 32, "Current safe (heating CT1).



(2) Abnormal Stop: – Is not displayed. (automatic recovery only)
○ Displayed.
If there is a ( ) displayed, the error display shows the number of times that an automatic recovery occurred for the same reason has reached the number of times in ( ).
If no ( ) is displayed, the error display shows that the trouble has occurred once.

(3) Automatic Recovery: – Does not occur
○ Automatic recovery occurs.

(iv) Remote controller information tables

1) Operation switching

Display pattern when in service mode	Operation switching when there is an abnormal stop
RUN light (Operation switching)	
0	AUTO
1	DRY
2	COOL
4	HEAT

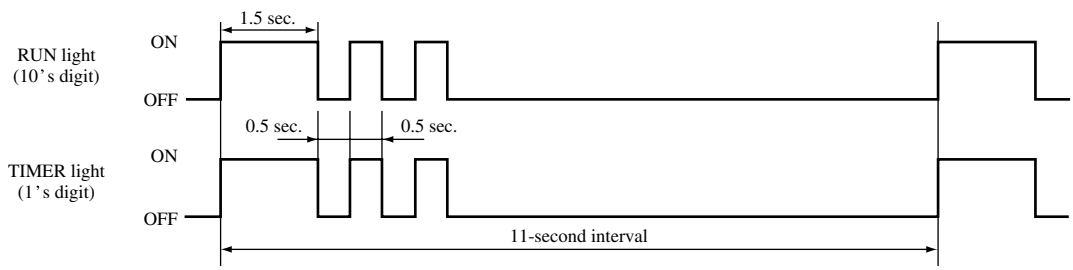
2) Fan speed switching

Display pattern when in service mode	Fan speed switching when there is an abnormal stop
TIMER light (Fan speed switching)	
0	AUTO
2	HI
3	MED
4	LO
6	HI POWER
7	ECONO

* If no data are recorded (error code is normal), the information display in the remote controller becomes as follows.

Remote controller setting	Display when error code is normal.
Operation switching	AUTO
Fan speed switching	AUTO

(Example): Operation switching, fan speed switching, cooling HI



(v) Room temperature sensor temperature, indoor heat exchanger sensor temperature, outdoor air temperature sensor temperature, outdoor heat exchanger sensor temperature table

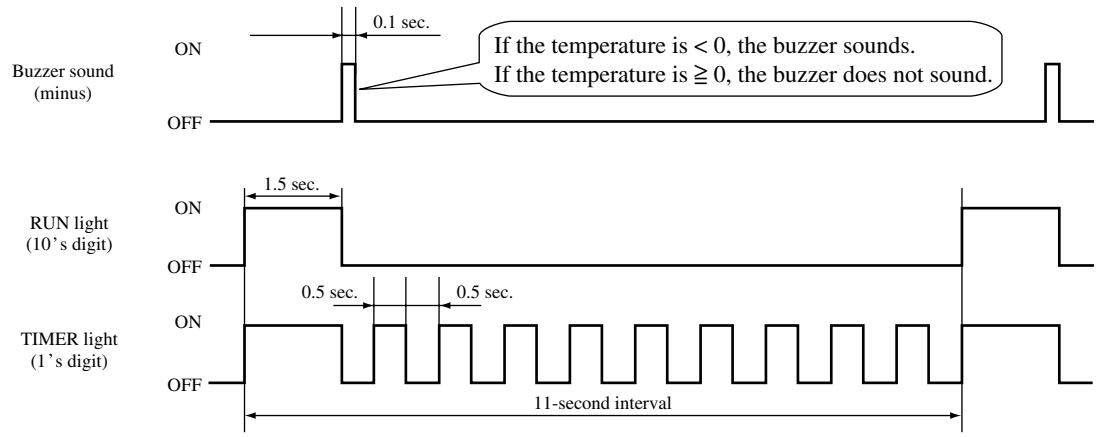
Units:˚C

Buzzer sound (minus)	RUN light (10's digit) \ TIMER light (1's digit)	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Yes (sounds for 0.1 second)	6	-60	-61	-62	-63	-64					
	5	-50	-51	-52	-53	-54	-55	-56	-57	-58	-59
	4	-40	-41	-42	-43	-44	-45	-46	-47	-48	-49
	3	-30	-31	-32	-33	-34	-35	-36	-37	-38	-39
	2	-20	-21	-22	-23	-24	-25	-26	-27	-28	-29
	1	-10	-11	-12	-13	-14	-15	-16	-17	-18	-19
	0		-1	-2	-3	-4	-5	-6	-7	-8	-9
No (does not sound)	0	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	1	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19
	2	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29
	3	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39
	4	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49
	5	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59
	6	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69
	7	70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79
	8	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89
	9	90	91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99

* If no data are recorded (error code is normal), the display for each sensor becomes as shown below.

Sensor name	Sensor value displayed when the error code is normal
Room temperature sensor temperature	-19˚C
Indoor heat exchanger sensor temperature	-64˚C
Outdoor air temperature sensor temperature	-64˚C
Outdoor heat exchanger sensor temperature	-64˚C

(Example) Room temperature, indoor heat exchanger, outdoor air temperature, outdoor heat exchanger: "-9℃"



(vi) Discharge pipe temperature table

Units: °C

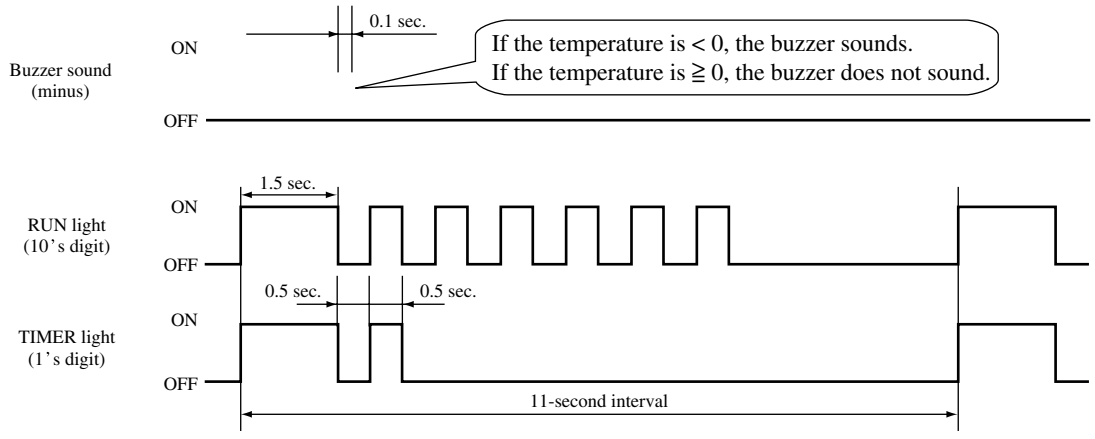
Buzzer sound (minus)	RUN light (10's digit) \ TIMER light (1's digit)	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Yes (sounds for 0.1 second)	3	-60	-62	-64							
	2	-40	-42	-44	-46	-48	-50	-52	-54	-56	-58
	1	-20	-22	-24	-26	-28	-30	-32	-34	-36	-38
	0		-2	-4	-6	-8	-10	-12	-14	-16	-18
No (does not sound)	0	0	2	4	6	8	10	12	14	16	18
	1	20	22	24	26	28	30	32	34	36	38
	2	40	42	44	46	48	50	52	54	56	58
	3	60	62	64	66	68	70	72	74	76	78
	4	80	82	84	86	88	90	92	94	96	98
	5	100	102	104	106	108	110	112	114	116	118
	6	120	122	124	126	128	130	132	134	136	138
	7	140	142	144	146	148	150				

* If no data are recorded (error code is normal), the display for each sensor becomes as shown below.

Sensor name	Sensor value displayed when the error code is normal
Discharge pipe sensor temperature	-64°C

(Example) Discharge pipe temperature: "122℃"

* In the case of discharge pipe data, multiply the reading value by 2. (Below, 61 x 2 = "122℃")



Service data record form

Customer		Model	
Date of investigation			
Machine name			
Content of complaint			

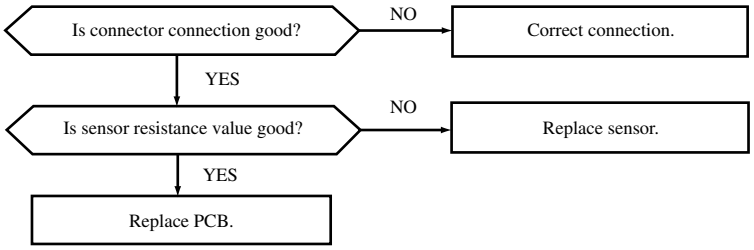
Remote controller settings			Content of displayed data	Display results			Display content
Temperature setting	Operation switching	Fan speed switching		Buzzer (Yes/No.)	RUN light (Times)	TIMER light (Times)	
21	Cooling	MED	Error code on previous occasion.				
		HI	Room temperature sensor temperature on previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Indoor heat exchanger sensor temperature on previous occasion.				
	Heating	LO	Remote controller information on previous occasion.				
		MED	Outdoor air temperature sensor temperature on previous occasion.				
		HI	Outdoor heat exchanger sensor temperature on previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Discharge pipe sensor temperature on previous occasion.				
22	Cooling	MED	Error code on second previous occasion.				
		HI	Room temperature sensor temperature on second previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Indoor heat exchanger sensor temperature on second previous occasion.				
	Heating	LO	Remote controller information on second previous occasion.				
		MED	Outdoor air temperature sensor temperature on second previous occasion.				
		HI	Outdoor heat exchanger sensor temperature on second previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Discharge pipe sensor temperature on second previous occasion.				
23	Cooling	MED	Error code on third previous occasion.				
		HI	Room temperature sensor temperature on third previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Indoor heat exchanger sensor temperature on third previous occasion.				
	Heating	LO	Remote controller information on third previous occasion.				
		MED	Outdoor air temperature sensor temperature on third previous occasion.				
		HI	Outdoor heat exchanger sensor temperature on third previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Discharge pipe sensor temperature on third previous occasion.				
24	Cooling	MED	Error code on fourth previous occasion.				
		HI	Room temperature sensor temperature on fourth previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Indoor heat exchanger sensor temperature on fourth previous occasion.				
	Heating	LO	Remote controller information on fourth previous occasion.				
		MED	Outdoor air temperature sensor temperature on fourth previous occasion.				
		HI	Outdoor heat exchanger sensor temperature on fourth previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Discharge pipe sensor temperature on fourth previous occasion.				
25	Cooling	MED	Error code on fifth previous occasion.				
		HI	Room temperature sensor temperature on fifth previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Indoor heat exchanger sensor temperature on fifth previous occasion.				
	Heating	LO	Remote controller information on fifth previous occasion.				
		MED	Outdoor air temperature sensor temperature on fifth previous occasion.				
		HI	Outdoor heat exchanger sensor temperature on fifth previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Discharge pipe sensor temperature on fifth previous occasion.				
21	Cooling	Lo	Stop code on previous occasion.				
22			Stop code on second previous occasion.				
23			Stop code on third previous occasion.				
24			Stop code on fourth previous occasion.				
25			Stop code on fifth previous occasion.				
26			Stop code on sixth previous occasion.				
27			Stop code on seventh previous occasion.				
28			Stop code on eighth previous occasion.				
29			Stop code on ninth previous occasion.				
30			Stop code on tenth previous occasion.				

Judgment		Examiner	
Remarks			

(g) Inspection procedures corresponding to detail of trouble

Sensor error

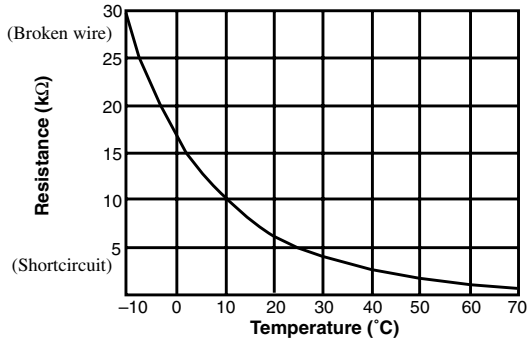
[Broken sensor wire, connector poor connection]



◆ **Discharge pipe sensor temperature characteristics**

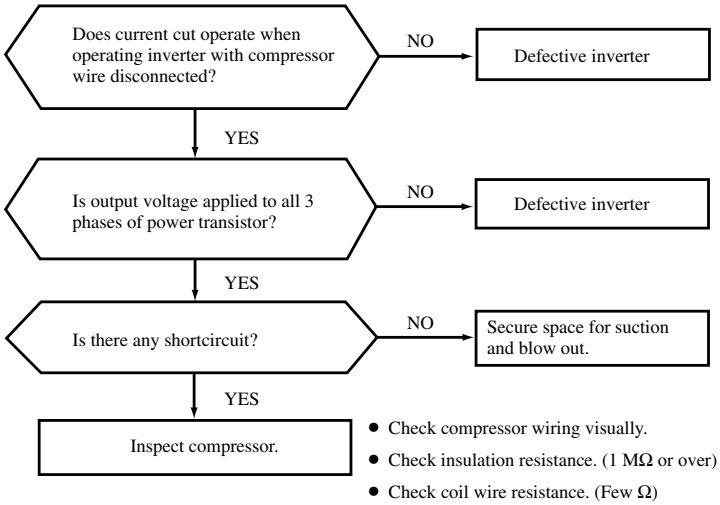
Temperature (˚C)	Resistance (kΩ)	Temperature (˚C)	Resistance (kΩ)
0	164	70	8.7
5	127	75	7.3
10	99	80	6.2
15	78	85	5.3
20	62	90	4.5
25	50	95	3.9
30	40	100	3.3
35	32	105	2.9
40	26	110	2.5
45	21	115	2.2
50	17	120	1.9
55	14	125	1.6
60	12	130	1.4
65	10	135	1.3

◆ **Sensor temperature characteristics (Room temp., indoor unit heat exchanger temp., outdoor unit heat exchanger temp., outdoor air temp.)**



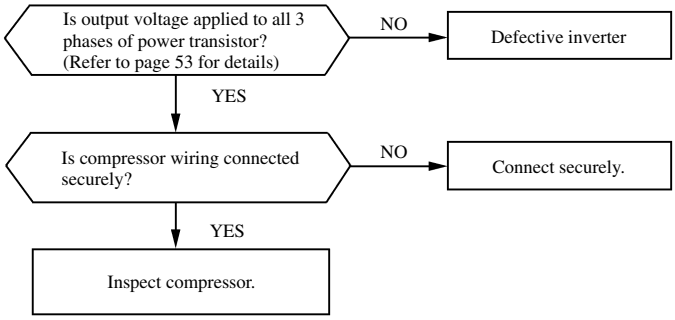
Current cut

[Open phase on compressor output terminal, compressor lock]



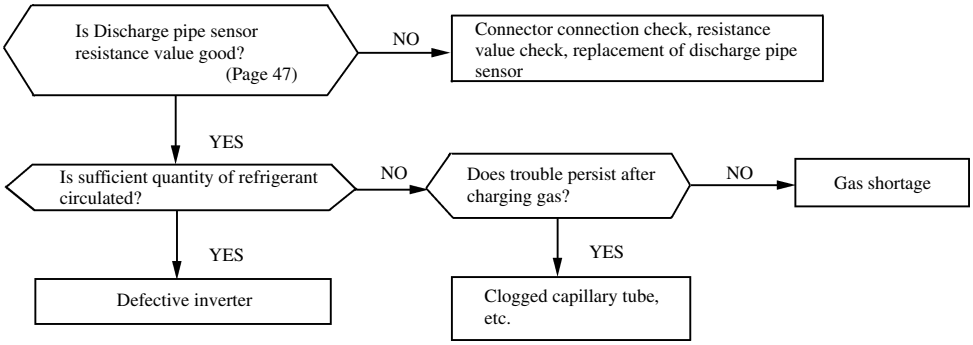
Outdoor unit error

[Broken power transistor broken compressor wire]



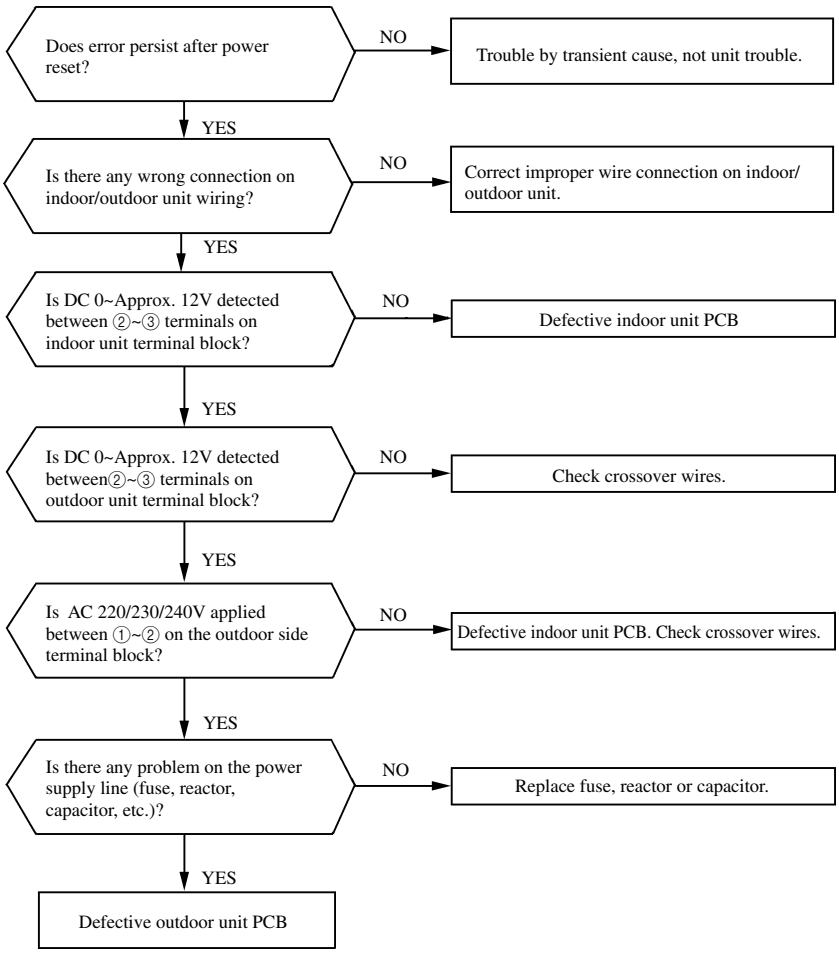
Compressor overheat

[Gas shortage, defective discharge pipe sensor]



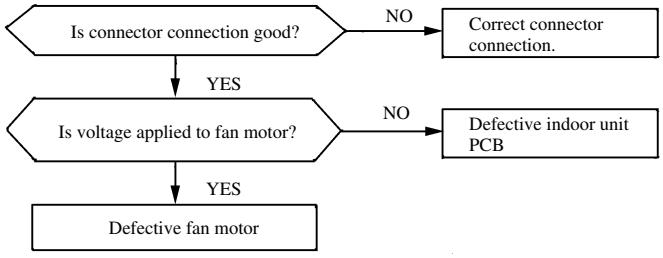
Serial signal transmission error

[Wiring error including power cable, defective indoor/ outdoor unit PCB, error on power supply system]



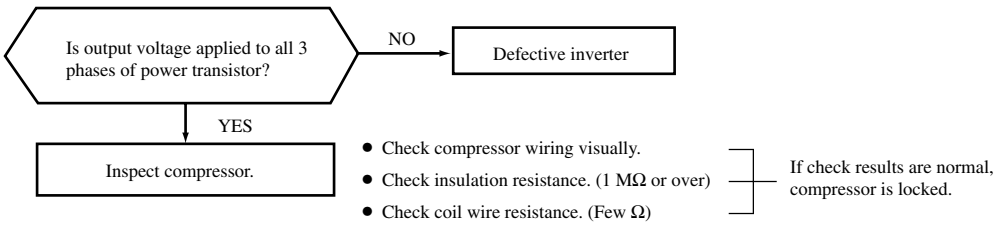
Indoor fan motor error

[Defective fan motor, defective PCB]



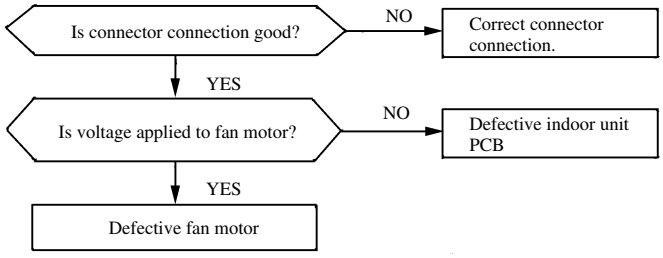
Rotor lock

[Compressor defect, outdoor unit circuit defect]



Outdoor fan motor error

[Defective fan motor, defective PCB]



(h) Phenomenon observed after shortcircuit, wire breakage on sensor.

(i) Indoor unit

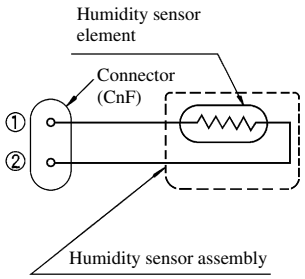
Sensor	Operation mode	Phenomenon	
		Shortcircuit	Broken wire
Room temperature sensor	Cooling	Release of continuous compressor operation command	Continuous compressor operation command is not released.
	Heating	Continuous compressor operation command is not released.	Release of continuous compressor operation command
Heat exchanger sensor	Cooling	System can be operated normally.	Continuous compressor operation command is not released. (Anti-frosting)
	Heating	High pressure control mode (Inverter stop command)	Hot keep (Indoor fan stop)
Humidity Sensor (1)	Cooling	① in the table below.	① in the table below.
	Heating	Normal system operation is possible.	

Note (1) The humidity sensor is included in the 50 type only.

① Humidity sensor operation

Failure mode		Control input circuit reading	Air conditioning system operation
Disconnected wire	① Disconnected wire	Humidity reading is 0%	Operates in the Dry region
	② Disconnected wire	Humidity reading is 0%	Operates in the Dry region
	①② Disconnected wire	Humidity reading is 0%	Operates in the Dry region
Short Circuit	① and ② are short circuited	Humidity reading is 100%	Operates in the Cooling region.

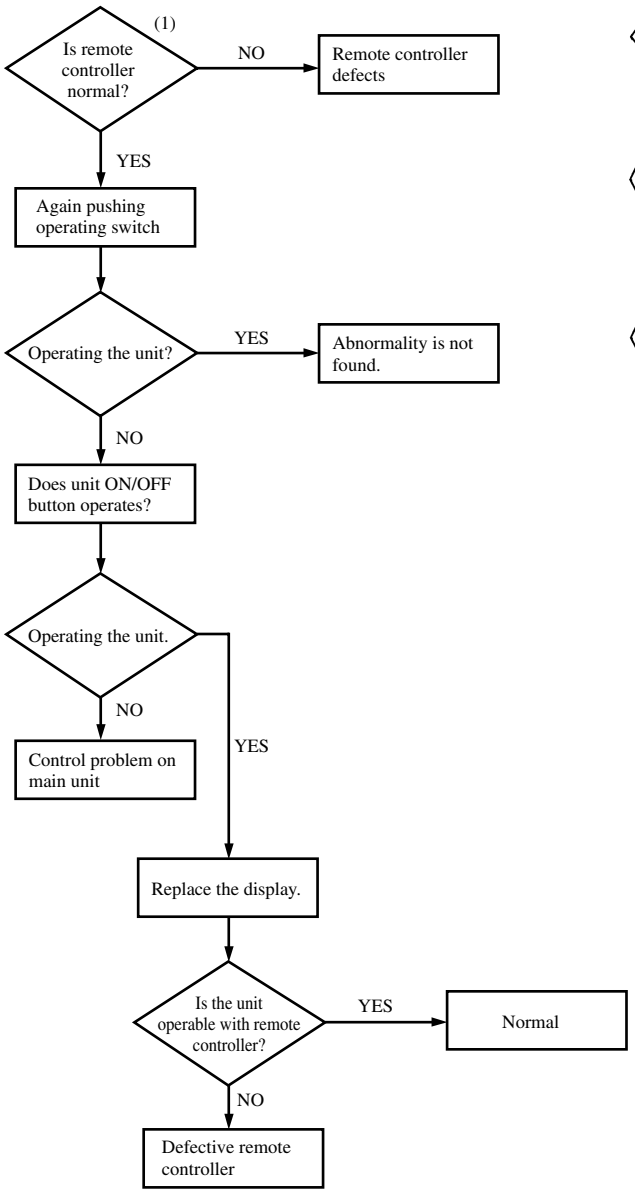
Remark: Do not perform a continuity check of the humidity sensor with a tester. If DC current is applied, it could damage the sensor.



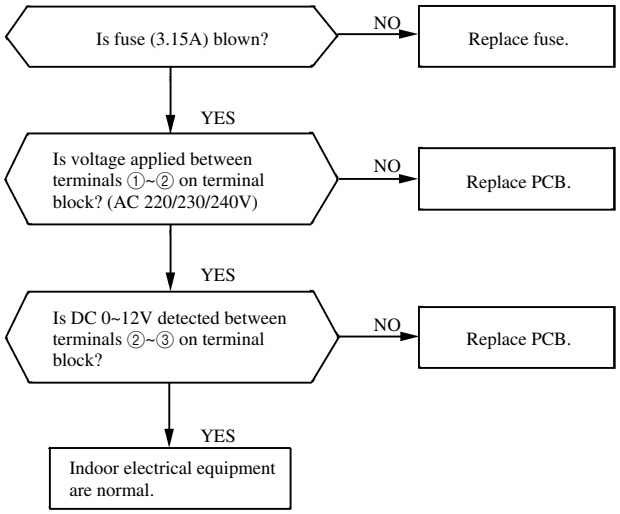
(ii) Outdoor unit

Sensor	Operation mode	Phenomenon	
		Shortcircuit	Broken wire
Heat exchanger	Cooling	System can be operated normally.	System can be operated normally.
	Heating	Defrosting is not performed.	Defrosting is performed for 10 minutes at approx. 1 hour.
Outdoor air temperature sensor	Cooling	System can be operated normally.	System can be operated normally.
	Heating	Defrosting is not operated.	Defrosting is performed for 10 minutes at intervals of approx. 1 hour.
Discharge pipe sensor	All modes	Compressor overload protection is disabled. (Can be operated.)	Compressor stop (There is no inverter output.)

(i) How to make sure of remote controller



(j) Inspection procedures of indoor electrical equipment



Notes (1) Since the communication timing signal is transmitted only when the 52C is turned ON, check it under the operating condition.

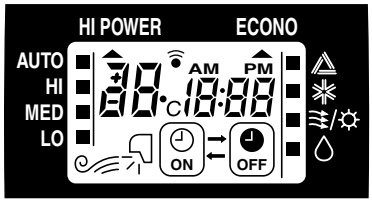
(2) Check the voltage on the terminal block.

- Power supply: Between ①~② (AC 220/230/240V)
- Signal: Between ②~③ (Changing between DC 0~Approx. 12V)

Note (1) Check method of remote controller

(a) Press the reset switch of the remote controller.

(b) If all LCD are displayed after zero (0) display, it is basically normal.



◆ Check point of outdoor unit (20, 25, 35 type)

⚠CAUTION – HIGH VOLTAGE

High voltage is produced in the control box. Don't touch electrical parts in the control box for 5 minutes after the unit is stopped.

Color symbol

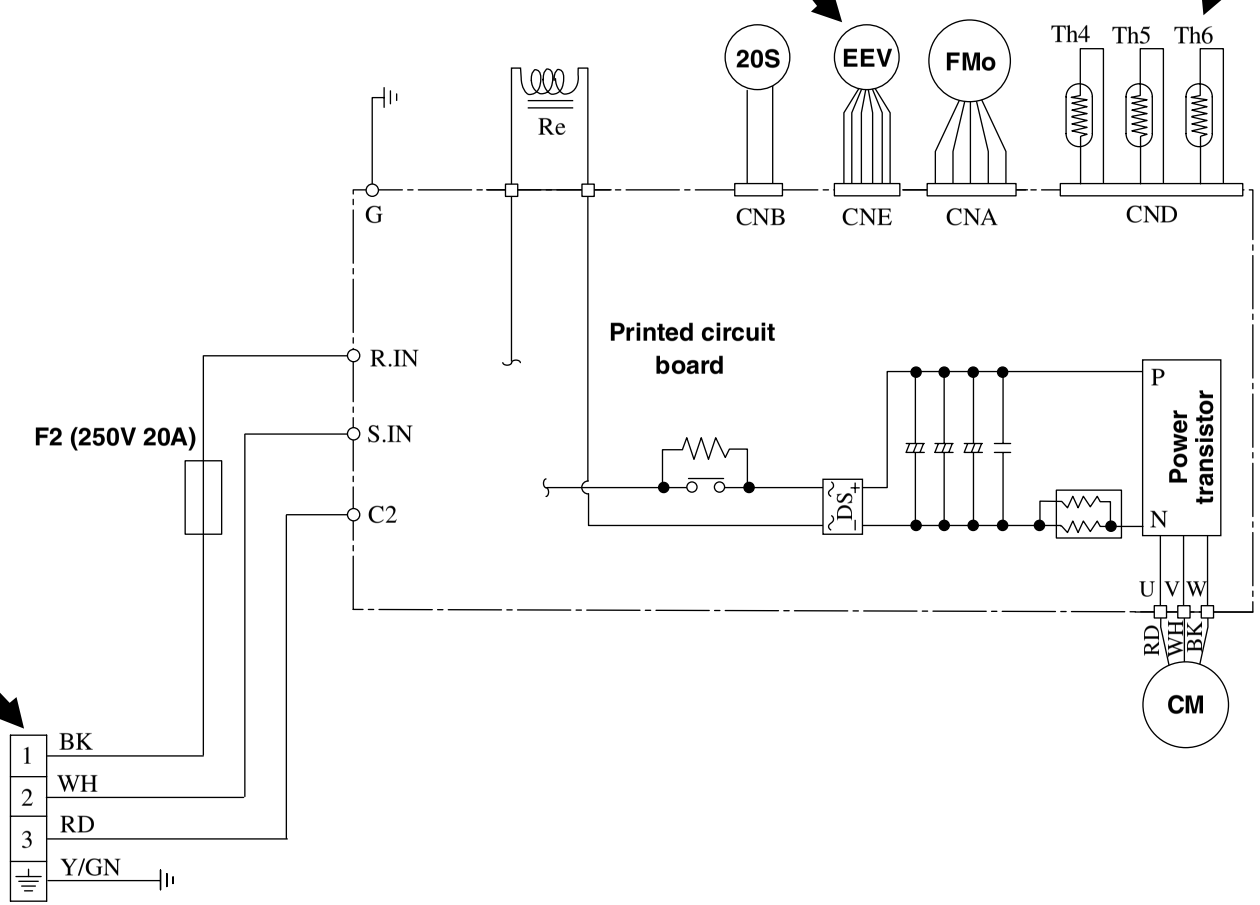
BK	Black
RD	Red
WH	White
Y/GN	Yellow/Green

◆ Inspection of electronic expansion valve
To test if there is voltage.
(Voltage is only applied to the electronic expansion valve when the valve opening is being changed.)
Red to White
Red to Orange
Brown to Yellow
Brown to Blue
} Normal if there is approximately DC 5 V 10 seconds after the power asupply is turned on.
If the expansion valve does not operate as shown above, it is defective.

◆ Inspection of resistance value of discharge pipe sensor
Remove the connector and check the resistance value.
See the section of sensor characteristics on page 47.

◆ Inspection of input to PCB
● Check the voltage between terminals ①~② on the terminal block.
(It is normal if AC 220/230/240V is detected.)

◆ Inspection of serial signal
Check the voltage between terminals ②~③on the terminal block.(It is normal if the needle swing in the range of DC 0~Approx.12V)



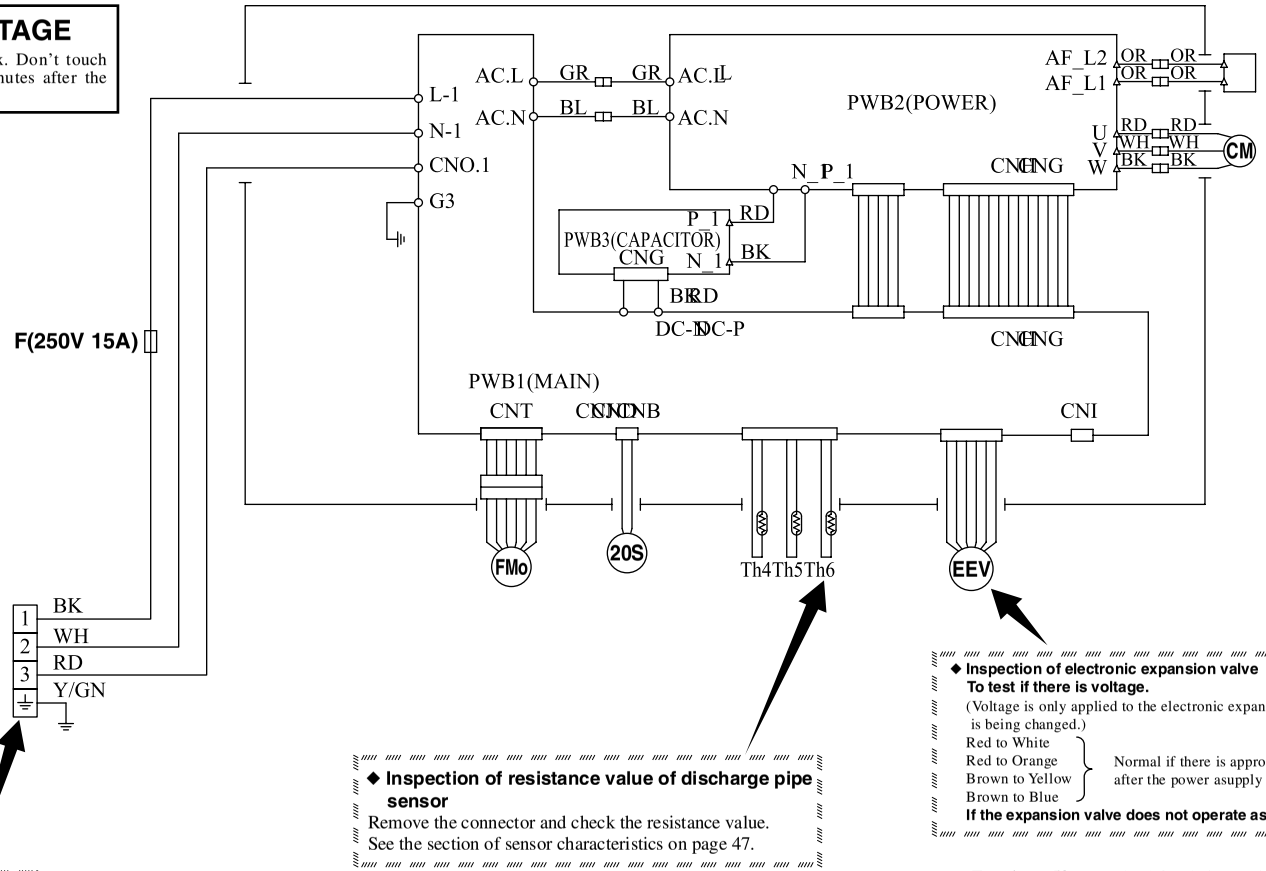
◆ Check point of outdoor unit (50 type)

⚠CAUTION – HIGH VOLTAGE

High voltage is produced in the control box. Don't touch electrical parts in the control box for 5 minutes after the unit is stopped.

Color symbol

BK	Black
BR	Brown
RD	Red
GR	Green
BL	Blue
OR	Orange
WH	White
Y/GN	Yellow/Green



◆ Inspection of input to PCB

- Check the voltage between terminals ①~② on the terminal block. (It is normal if AC 220/230/240V is detected.)

◆ Inspection of serial signal

Check the voltage between terminals ②~③on the terminal block.(It is normal if the needle swing in the range of DC 0~Approx.12V)

◆ Inspection of resistance value of discharge pipe sensor

Remove the connector and check the resistance value.
See the section of sensor characteristics on page 47.

◆ Inspection of electronic expansion valve

To test if there is voltage.

(Voltage is only applied to the electronic expansion valve when the valve opening is being changed.)

Red to White
Red to Orange
Brown to Yellow
Brown to Blue

Normal if there is approximately DC 5 V 10 seconds after the power asupply is turned on.

If the expansion valve does not operate as shown above, it is defective.

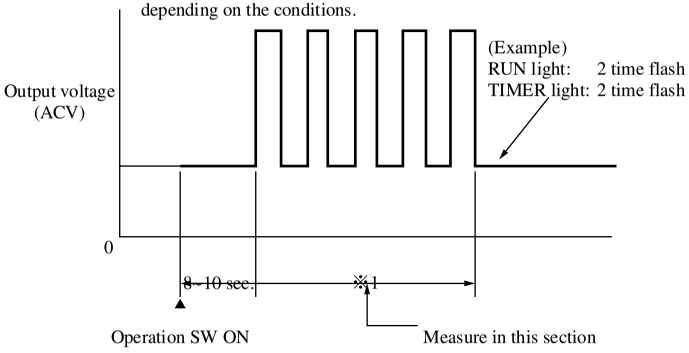
◆ Power transistor inspection procedure

[Use a tester with a needle indicator for the inspection. (Do not use a digital tester. Check in the AC 300 volt range.)]

(1) If there is a self-diagnosis display, inspect the compressor system (burns, wiring mistakes, etc.) If no problems are found, check the output of the power transistor.

(2) Output inspection procedure
Disconnect the terminals for the compresseor.
If an output such as the one shown in the figure on the right can be measured, the power transistor and the circuit board for the outdoor unit are normal.

※ For about 50 seconds. After being switched on, the will be a delay of approximately one minute depending on the conditions.



(2) Servicing

(a) Evacuation

The evacuation is an procedure to purge impurities.....noncondensable gas, air, moisture from the refrigerant equipment by using a vacuum pump. Since the refrigerant R410A is very insoluble in water, even a small amount of moisture left in the refrigerant equipment will freeze, causing what is called water clogging.

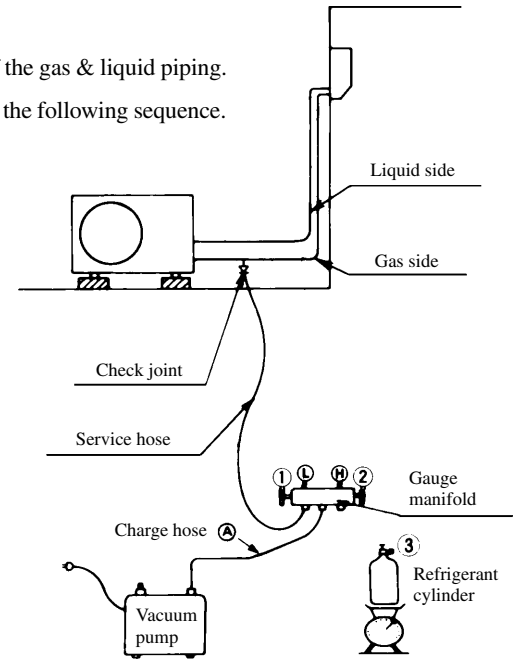
- Evacuation procedure

(i) Check to ensure that there is no internal pressure in the unit. If there is an internal pressure, it should be relieved through the check joint.

(ii) Connect the service hoses of the gauge manifold to the check joint of the gas & liquid piping.

(iii) Connect a vacuum pump to the charge hose A . Repeat evacuation in the following sequence.

Start the vacuum pump.
⇩
Compound pressure gauge indicates –0.1 MPa (–76 cmHg)
⇩
Operate the vacuum pump for more than 15 minutes after –0.1 MPa (–76 cmHg) is indicated.
⇩
Close low pressure valve ① of gauge manifold.
⇩
Stop the vacuum pump.



Notes (1) Do not use the refrigerant pressure to expel air.
(2) Do not use the compressor for evacuation.
(3) Do not operate the compressor in the vacuum condition.

(b) Refrigerant charge

(i) Discharge refrigerant entirely from the unit and evacuate the unit.
Note: Addition of refrigerant without evacuation is unreasonable, because it will result in low charge or overcharge.

(ii) Keep the gauge manifold and connect a refrigerant cylinder to the unit.

(iii) Record the weight of the refrigerant cylinder on the balance. This is necessary for making sure of the charged refrigerant amount.

(iv) Purge air from the charge hose Ⓐ
Firstly loose the connecting portion of the charge hose Ⓐ at the gauge manihold side and open the valve ③ for a few seconds, and then immediately retighten it after observing that gas is blow out from the loosened portion.

(v) Open the valve ① and ③ after discharging air from the charge hose Ⓐ, then the liquid refrigerant begins flowing from the cylinder into the unit. Be sure to erect the refrigerant cylinder upright to let liquid refrigerant flow into the unit.

(vi) When refrigerant has been charged into the system to some extent, refrigerant flow becomes stagnant, when that happens, start the compressor in cooling cycle until the unit is filled with refrigerant to the specified weight.

(vii) Making sure of the refrigerant amount, close the valve ③

(viii) Disconnect the charge hose from the unit. Cover the valve ports of the refrigerant piping with caps and tighten them securely.

(ix) Check for gas leakage applying a gas leak detector along the piping line.

(x) Start the air conditioner and make sure of its operating condition.....high side and low side pressures and temperature difference between suction air and outlet air.

1.1.7 REFRIGERANT PIPING INSTALLATION/SERVICING MANUAL FOR AIR CONDITIONERS USING R410A

(These materials are extracted from document issued by The Japan Refrigeration and Air Conditioning Industry Association)

(1) Outline

(a) Refrigerant R410A

(i) Adoption of R410A in air conditioners

In 1974, it was pointed out that the ozone layer in the upper stratosphere (about 20 ~ 40 km above ground) might have been damaged by the ozone depleting substances such as CFC (chlorofluorocarbon) and HCFC (hydrochlorofluorocarbon). Since that time, many countries across the world have endeavored to take countermeasures against the ozone depletion.

As a refrigerant belonging to the HCFCs, the conventional refrigerant (R22) used in air conditioners also tends to deplete the ozone layer. Therefore, complying with the provisions of the international regulations (i.e. Montreal Protocol concerning the Ozone Depleting Substances) and national laws & Regulations concerned, it is necessary to replace R22 with other types of refrigerant which do not deplete the ozone layer.

A refrigerant composed of hydrogen (H), fluorine (F) and carbon (C), is called an HFC and does not deplete the ozone layer. One HFC's is R410A whose pressure is about 1.6 times higher than R22 and whose energy efficiency is almost comparable to that of R22 at the same refrigerant temperature.

(ii) Chemical characteristics of R410A

1) Chemical stability

Like R22, R410A is a chemically stable, less toxic and non-flammable refrigerant. However, as in the case of R22, the specific gravity of its vapour is larger than that of air and should it leak in an airtight room it may stay at a low level and cause an oxygen starvation accident. It may also, should it come in direct contact with fire, cause a poisonous gas to occur, so be sure to handle it only in a well ventilated area.

2) Composition changes (Pseudo-azeotropic characteristics)

R410A is a pseudo-azeotropic mixed refrigerant composed of two constituents - R32 and R125. "Quasi-azeotropic" condition refers to a state in which the dew-point curve and boiling-point curve - gas-liquid equilibrium curves (pressure constant) - almost lie on top of each other, and a multi-constituent refrigerant having this chemical characteristic incurs less composition changes even when evaporation (or condensation) as a phase change occurs. Consequently, even when refrigerant leaks from the gas phase somewhere in the piping installation, the composition of circulated refrigerant incurs less changes.

Therefore, R410A can be treated in almost a same manner as a mono-constituent refrigerant like R22 is treated. When actually charging R410A, however, do so from the liquid phase side by taking into account the phenomenon that, when put in a cylinder, the composition changes a little between gas and liquid phases.

3) Pressure characteristics

As shown in Table 2, since R410A's vapor pressure is about 1.6 times higher than that of R22 at the same temperature, perform installation/service with special tools and materials which are exclusive for R410A and can withstand high pressure.

Table 1. Comparison of thermophysical properties of R410A and R22

	R410A	R22
Composition (wt%)	R32/R125 (50/50)	R22 (100)
Molecular weight	72.6	86.5
Boiling point (°C)	-51.4	-40.8
Vapor pressure (25°C, MPa)	1.56	0.94
Saturated vapor density (25°C, kg/m^2)	64.0	44.4
Inflammability	Nonflammable	Nonflammable
Ozone depletion potential (ODP)	0	0.055
Global warming potential (GWP)	1730	1700

Source: List of thermophysical properties complied by the Japan society of refrigeration and air conditioning, NIST REFPROP V5.10, etc.

Table 2. Comparison of saturated vapor pressure of R410A and R22

unit: MPa

Refrigerant	R410A	R22
Temperature (°C)		
-20	0.30	0.14
0	0.70	0.40
20	1.35	0.81
40	2.32	1.43
60	3.73	2.33
65	4.15	2.60

Source: List of thermophysical properties complied by the Japan society of refrigeration and air conditioning, NIST REFPROP V5.10, etc.

(iii) Lubricating oils for R410A

As the lubricating oils for R22, mineral oils, alkylbenze synthetic oils, etc. have so far been used. As R410A features less solubility with these conventional lubricating oils such as mineral oils, the lubricating oils tend to stay within the refrigeration cycle. As the lubricating oils highly soluble with R410A, ester, ethereal and other synthetic oils are available. However, as these synthetic oils are very hygroscopic, they must be treated even more carefully than the conventional lubricating oils. Furthermore, if these synthetic oils are mixed with mineral oils, alkylbenzene synthetic oils, etc., they may deteriorate, and block the capillary tubes, or cause the compressor to fail. So, never mix these synthetic oils.

(b) Safety during installation/servicing

As R410A's pressure is about 1.6 times higher than that of R22, improper installation/servicing may cause a serious trouble. By using tools and materials exclusive for R410A, it is necessary to carry out installation/servicing safely while taking the following precautions into consideration.

1) Never use refrigerant other than R410A in an air conditioner which is designed to operate with R410A.
2) If a refrigeration gas leakage occurs during installation/servicing, be sure to ventilate fully.
   If the refrigerant gas comes into contact with fire, a poisonous gas may occur.
3) When installing or removing an air conditioner, do not allow air or moisture to remain in the refrigeration cycle. Otherwise, pressure in the refrigeration cycle may become abnormally high so that a rupture or personal injury may be caused.
4) After completion of installation work, check to make sure that there is no refrigeration gas leakage.
   If the refrigerant gas leaks into the room, coming into contact with fire in the fan driven heater, space heater, etc., a poisonous gas may occur.
5) When an air conditioning system charged with a large volume of refrigerant (e.g.multi type air conditioner) is installed in a small room, it is necessary to exercise care so that, even when refrigerant leaks, its concentration does not exceed the marginal level.
   If the refrigerant gas leakage occurs and its concentration exceeds the marginal level, an oxygen starvation accident may result.
6) Be sure to carry out installation or removal according to the installation manual.
   Improper installation may cause refrigeration trouble, water leakage, electric shock, fire, etc.
7) Unauthorized modifications to the air conditioner may be dangerous. If a breakdown occurs please call a qualified air conditioner technician or electrician.
   Improper repair's may result in water leakage, electric shock and fire, etc.

(2) Refrigerant piping installation

(a) Piping materials and joints used

For the refrigerant piping installation, copper pipes and joints are mainly used. Copper pipes and joints suitable for the refrigerant must be chosen and installed. Furthermore, it is necessary to use clean copper pipes and joints whose interior surfaces are less affected by contaminants.

(i) Copper pipes

It is necessary to use seamless copper pipes which are made of either copper or copper alloy and it is desirable that the amount of residual oil is less than 40 mg/10m. Do not use copper pipes having a collapsed, deformed or discolored portion (especially on the interior surface). Otherwise, the expansion valve or capillary tube may become blocked with contaminants.

As an air conditioner using R410A incurs pressure higher than when using R22, it is necessary to choose adequate materials. Thicknesses of copper pipes used with R410A are as shown in Table 3. Never use copper pipes thinner than 0.8 mm even when it is available on the market.

Table 3. Thicknesses of annealed copper pipes

		Thickness (mm)	
Nominal diameter	Outer diameter (mm)	R410A	[ref.] R22
1/4	6.35	0.80	0.80
3/8	9.52	0.80	0.80
1/2	12.70	0.80	0.80
5/8	15.88	1.00	1.00

(ii) Joints

For copper pipes, flare joints or socket joints are used. Prior to use, be sure to remove all contaminants.

1) Flare joints

Flare joints used to connect the copper pipes cannot be used for pipings whose outer diameter exceeds 20 mm. In such a case, socket joints can be used.

Sizes of flare pipe ends, flare joint ends and flare nuts are as shown in Tables 5~8 (see on page 58, 59) below. Also, union, half union, Tee-type union and elbow-type union shapes are generally used (see Fig 1).

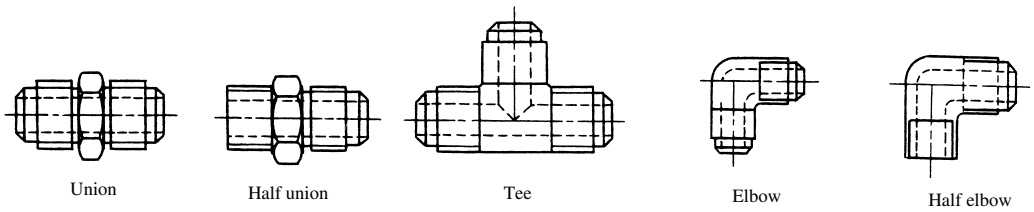


Fig.1 Flare joints

2) Socket joints

Socket joints are such that they are brazed for connections, and used mainly for thick pipings whose diameter is larger than 20 mm. Thicknesses of socket joints are as shown in Table 4. Socket, elbow-type and tee-type shapes are generally used (see Fig. 2).

Table 4.Minimum thicknesses of socket joints

Nominal diameter	Reference outer diameter of copper pipe jointed (mm)	Minimum joint thickness (mm)
1/4	6.35	0.50
3/8	9.52	0.60
1/2	12.70	0.70
5/8	15.88	0.80

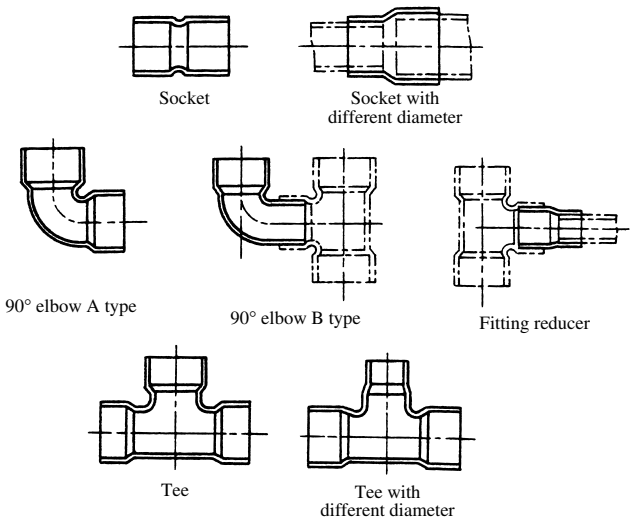


Fig.2 Socket joints

(b) Processing of piping materials

When performing the refrigerant piping installation, care should be taken to ensure that water or dust does not enter the pipe interior, that no other oil other than lubricating oils used in the installed air conditioner is used, and that refrigerant does not leak. When using lubricating oils in the piping processing, use such lubricating oils whose water content has been removed. When stored, be sure to seal the container with an airtight cap or any other cover.

(i) Flare processing procedures and precautions

1) Cutting the pipe

By means of a pipe cutter, slowly cut the pipe so that it is not deformed.

2) Removing burrs and chips

If the flared section has chips or burrs, refrigerant leakage may occur. Carefully remove all burrs and clean the cut surface before installation.

3) Insertion of flare nut

4) Flare processing

Make certain that a clamp bar and copper pipe have been cleaned.

By means of the clamp bar, perform the flare processing correctly.

Use either a flare tool for R410A or conventional flare tool.

Flare processing dimensions differ according to the type of flare tool. Be careful. When using a conventional flare tool, be sure to secure “dimension A” by using a gage for size adjustment.

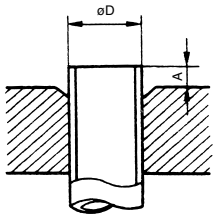


Fig.3 Flare processing dimensions

Table 5. Dimensions related to flare processing for R410A

Nominal diameter	Outer diameter (mm)	Thickness (mm)	A (mm)		
			Flare tool for R410A Clutch type	Conventional flare tool	
				Clutch type	Wing nut type
1/4	6.35	0.8	0~0.5	1.0~1.5	1.5~2.0
3/8	9.52	0.8	0~0.5	1.0~1.5	1.5~2.0
1/2	12.70	0.8	0~0.5	1.0~1.5	2.0~2.5
5/8	15.88	1.0	0~0.5	1.0~1.5	2.0~2.5

Table 6. Dimensions related to flare processing for R22

Nominal diameter	Outer diameter (mm)	Thickness (mm)	A (mm)		
			Flare tool for R410A Clutch type	Conventional flare tool	
				Clutch type	Wing nut type
1/4	6.35	0.8	0~0.5	0.5~1.0	1.0~1.5
3/8	9.52	0.8	0~0.5	0.5~1.0	1.0~1.5
1/2	12.70	0.8	0~0.5	0.5~1.0	1.5~2.0
5/8	15.88	1.0	0~0.5	0.5~1.0	1.5~2.0

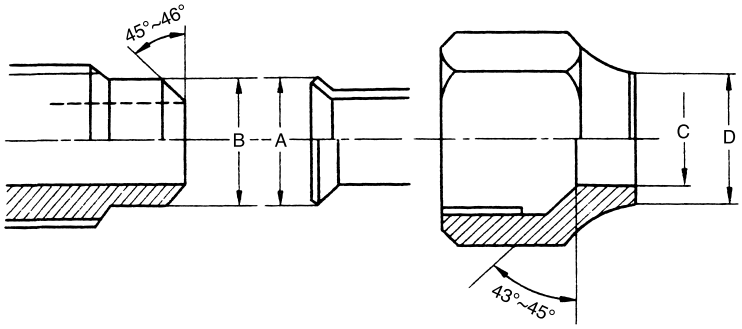


Fig.4 Relations between flare nut and flare seal surface

Table 7. Flare and flare nut dimensions for R410A

[unit: mm]

Nominal diameter	Outer diameter (mm)	Thickness (mm)	Dimension (mm)				Flare nut width
			A	B	C	D	
1/4	6.35	0.8	9.1	9.2	6.5	13	17
3/8	9.52	0.8	13.2	13.5	9.7	20	22
1/2	12.70	0.8	16.6	16.0	12.9	23	26
5/8	15.88	1.0	19.7	19.0	16.0	25	29

Table 8. Flare and flare nut dimensions for R22

[unit: mm]

Nominal diameter	Outer diameter (mm)	Thickness (mm)	Dimension (mm)				Flare nut width
			A	B	C	D	
1/4	6.35	0.8	9.0	9.2	6.5	13	17
3/8	9.52	0.8	13.0	13.5	9.7	20	22
1/2	12.70	0.8	16.2	16.0	12.9	20	24
5/8	15.88	1.0	19.4	19.0	16.0	23	27

(ii) Flare connecting procedures and precautions

1) Make sure that the flare and union portions do not have any scar or dust, etc.

2) Correctly align the processed flare surface with the union axis.

3) Tighten the flare with designated torque by means of a torque wrench. The tightening torque for R410A is same as that for conventional R22. Incidentally, when the torque is weak, the gas leakage may occur. When it is strong, the flare nut may crack and may be made nonremovable. When choosing the tightening torque, comply with values designated by manufacturers. Table 9 shows reference values.

Note : When applying oil to the flare surface, be sure to use oil designated by the manufacturer. If any other oil is used, the lubricating oils may deteriorate and cause the compressor to burn out.

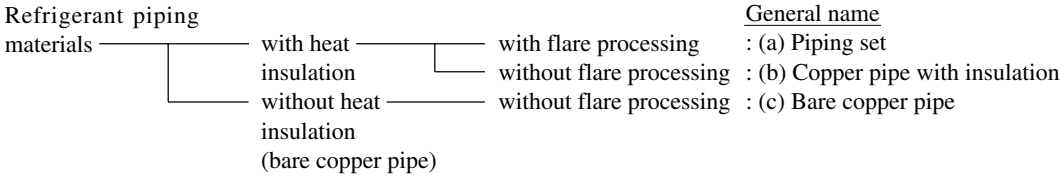
Table 9. Tightening torque of flare for R410A [Reference values]

Nominal diameter	Outer diameter (mm)	Tightening torque N·m (kgf·cm)	Tightening torque of torque wrenches available on the market N·m (kgf·cm)
1/4	6.35	14~18 (140~180)	16 (160), 18 (180)
3/8	9.52	33~42 (330~420)	42 (420)
1/2	12.70	50~62 (500~620)	55 (550)
5/8	15.88	63~77 (630~770)	65 (650)

(c) Storage of piping materials

(i) Types and storage of piping materials

Refrigerant piping materials for air conditioners are broadly classified into the following types.



As R410A features pressure about 1.6 times higher than R22, it is necessary to use a copper pipe which has a thickness stated in Table 3 (see on page 56) and which contains less contaminants. It is necessary to carefully treat/store copper pipes so that they are not collapsed, deformed or damaged. Due care must also be exercised so that foreign matters such as dust and water do not enter the pipe interior.

A piping set's open end is sealed with a cap, etc. When storing it, make sure that it is sealed securely. When storing a cladded copper pipe or bare copper pipe, securely seal the opening with pinching, taping, etc.

(ii) Identification

1) Piping set

A copper pipe as piping set for R410A must have a thickness as stated in Table 3 (see on page 56), and, as shown in Tables 5 and 6 (see on page 58), it also differs from R22 in flare processing and flare nut dimensions. So, it is necessary to choose a piping set suitable for R410A.

2) Copper pipe with insulation

Before using a copper pipe with insulation, make sure that it has a thickness designated for R410A.

3) Bare copper pipe

It is necessary to use a bare copper pipe which has a thickness designated in Table 3 (see on page 56) and contains less contaminants. As the bare copper pipe surface is naked, it is necessary to treat it with exceeding care and adopt a means for identification to prevent improper usage by making it easily discriminable from other piping materials.

(iii) Precautions before installation

Observe the following precautions when performing the piping connection at the site.

1) Keep any open ends of pipes be sealed with a cap, etc. until connected with the equipment.
2) Exercise great care when performing piping installation on a rainy day.

When water enters into the piping, the lubricating oil may deteriorate and cause the equipment to fail.

3) Carry out the piping connection in as short a time as possible.

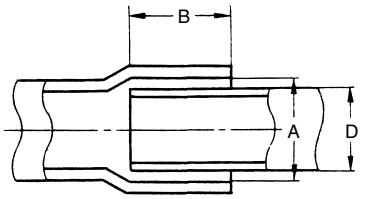
If the piping is left open for a long period, fully purge the interior with nitrogen gas or dry it with a vacuum pump.

(d) Brazing

(i) Processing the connected parts

As brazing is molten between the joined surfaces to yield high adhesive strength, it is necessary to secure a wide enough space to be joined and also an adequate clearance between the joined surfaces. Copper pipe joints' minimum insertion depths, outer pipe diameters and clearances between outer and inner pipe diameters are as shown in Table 10. In the case of bronze brazing filler, when the clearance is about 0.05~0.1mm, the pipes can be connected most strongly.

Table 10. Copper pipe joints' minimum insertion depths and clearances



Outer pipe diameter D (mm)	Minimum insertion depth B (mm)	Clearance (A-D) × 1/2 (mm)
5~8	6	0.05~0.35
8~12	7	0.05~0.35
12~16	8	0.05~0.45

* When joining the pipes, either the pipe ends are processed, or pipes are connected by brazing with a socket joint.

(ii) Brazing filler metal

1) Alloy brazing filler

An alloy mainly composed of silver and copper is used to join iron, copper or copper alloy. Although it excels in solderability, it is relatively expensive.

2) Phosphor bronze brazing filler

Phosphor bronze brazing filler is generally used to join copper or copper alloy.

3) Low temperature solder

An alloy of tin and lead. An ordinary type of solder. Since it is weak in adhesive strength, it should not be used for refrigerant pipe brazing.

* Cautions:

a) BCuP tends to react with sulphur and produce a fragile compound water solution, which may cause a gas leakage. So, use any other type of brazing filler at a hot spring resort, etc., and coat the surface with a paint.

b) When performing brazing again at the time of servicing, use the same type of brazing filler.

(iii) Flux

1) Reasons for the use of flux

- By removing the oxide film and any foreign matter on the metal surface, it assists the flow of brazing filler.
- In the brazing process, it prevents the metal surface from being oxidized.
- By reducing the brazing filler's surface tension, the brazing filler adheres better to the treated metal.

2) Properties required for flux

- Temperature at which flux is active coincides with the brazing temperature.
- Due to a wide effective temperature range, flux is hard to carbonize.
- It is easy to remove slag after brazing.
- The corrosive action to the treated metal and brazing filler is negligible.
- Excels in coating performance and is harmless to the human body.

As the flux works in a complicated manner as described above, it is necessary to choose an adequate type of flux according to the type and shape of treated metal, type of brazing filler and brazing method, etc.

3) Types of flux

- Incorruptible flux

  Generally, it is a compound of borax and boric acid.

  Effective in cases where the brazing temperature is higher than 800°C.

- Activated flux

  Most of fluxes generally used for silver brazing fall under this type.

  It features an increased oxide film removing capability due to the addition of compounds such as potassium fluoride, potassium chloride and sodium fluoride, to the borax-boric acid compound.

  * Cautions:

  ① Remove the flux after brazing.

  ② When chlorine contained in the flux stays within the pipe, the lubricating oil deteriorates. So, use a flux which does not contain chlorine.

  ③ When adding water to the flux, use water which does not contain chlorine (e.g. distilled water or ion-exchange water).

(iv) Brazing

As brazing requires sophisticated techniques and experiences, it must be performed by a qualified person.

In order to prevent the oxide film from occurring in the pipe interior during brazing, it is effective to proceed with brazing while letting dry nitrogen gas (N_2) flow.

<Brazing method for preventing oxidation>

1) Attach a reducing valve to the nitrogen gas cylinder
2) Use a copper pipe to direct the nitrogen gas into the piping, and attach a flowmeter to the nitrogen gas cylinder.
3) Apply a seal onto the clearance between the piping and inserted pipe for the nitrogen gas in order to prevent the nitrogen gas from flowing backward.
4) When the nitrogen gas is flowing, be sure to keep the piping end open.
5) Adjust the flow rate of nitrogen gas so that it is lower than 0.05m^3/h, or 0.02MPa (0.2kgf/cm^2) by means of the reducing valve.
6) After taking the steps above, keep the nitrogen gas flowing until the piping cools down to a certain extent (i.e. temperature at which pipes are touchable with finger).
7) Completely remove the flux after brazing.

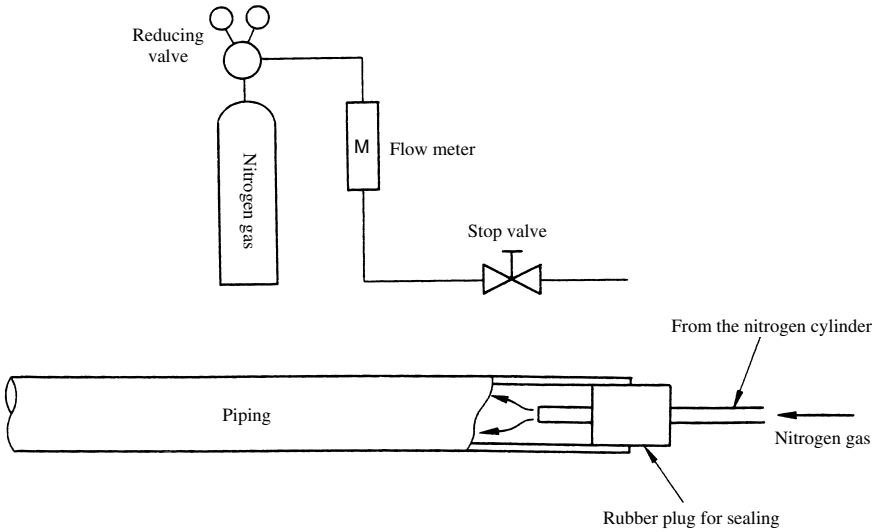


Fig.5 Prevention of oxidation during brazing

* Cautions during brazing

① General cautions

1) The brazing strength should be high as required.
2) After operation, airtightness should be kept under a pressurized condition.
3) During brazing do not allow component materials to become damaged due to overheating.
4) The refrigerant pipe work should not be come blocked with scale or flux.
5) The brazed part should not restrict the flow in the refrigerant circuit.
6) No corrosion should occur from the brazed part.

② Prevention of overheating

Due to heating, the interior and exterior surfaces of treated metal may oxidize. Especially, when the interior of the refrigerant circuit oxidizes due to overheating, scale occurs and stays in the circuit as dust, thus exerting a fatally adverse effect. So, make brazing at adequate brazing temperature and with a minimum of heating area.

③ Overheating protection

In order to prevent components near the brazed part from overheating damage or quality deterioration due to flame or heat, take adequate steps for protection such as (1) by shielding with a metal plate, (2) by using a wet cloth, and (3) by means of heat absorbent.

④ Movement during brazing

Eliminate all vibration during brazing to protect brazed joints from cracking and breakage.

⑤ Oxidation preventive

In order to improve the brazing efficiency, various types of antioxidant are available on the market. However, the constituents of these are widely varied, and some are anticipated to corrode the piping materials, or adversely affect HFC refrigerant, lubricating oil, etc. Exercise care when using an oxidation preventive.

(3) Installation, removal and servicing

(a) Tools for R410A

In the case of an air conditioner using R410A, in order to prevent any other refrigerant from being charged accidentally, the service port diameter of the outdoor unit control valve (3-way valve) has been changed. Also, to increase the pressure resisting strength, flare processing dimensions and sizes of opposite sides of flare nuts (for copper pipes with nominal diameters 1/2 and 5/8) have been changed. During installation/service, therefore, prepare tools exclusive for R410A shown in (i) on page 63 and general tools shown in (ii) on page 64.

(i) Tools exclusive for R410A

1) Gauge manifold

- As R410A is characterized by high pressure, conventional tools cannot be used.

Table 11. Differences between conventional high/low pressure gauges and those for R410A

	Conventional gauges	Gauges exclusive for R410A
High pressure gauge (red)	-0.1~3.5MPa -76 cmHg~35 kgf/cm^2	-0.1~5.3MPa -76 cmHg~53 kgf/cm^2
Compound gauge (blue)	-0.1~1.7MPa -76 cmHg~17 kgf/cm^2	-0.1~3.8MPa -76 cmHg~38 kgf/cm^2

- In order to prevent any other refrigerant from being charged accidentally, each port of the manifold has been changed in shape.

Table 12. Differences in port size between conventional manifold and that for R410A

	Conventional manifold	Manifold for R410A
Port size	7/16 UNF 20 threads per inch	1/2 UNF 20 threads per inch

2) Charge hose

- As R410A is characterized by high pressure, the pressure resistance of the charge hose has been increased. The material has also been changed to an HFC resistant type, and, as in the case of each port of the manifold, the hose cap size has been changed. Furthermore, for prevention of gas pressure reaction, a charge hose with a valve placed near the cap is also available.

Table 13. Differences between conventional charge hose and that for R410A

		Conventional charge hose	Charge hose for R410A
Pressure resistance	Normal pressure	3.4 MPa (34 kgf/cm^2)	5.1 MPa (51 kgf/cm^2)
	Breaking pressure	17.2 MPa (172 kgf/cm^2)	27.4 MPa (274 kgf/cm^2)
Engineering material		NBR rubber	HNBR rubber internally coated with nylon
Cap size		7/16 UNF 20 threads per inch	1/2 UNF 20 threads per inch

3) Electronic balance for refrigerant charging

- As R410A belonging to the HFCs features high pressure and high evaporating speed, when R410A is charged by using a charging cylinder, R410A in the cylinder cannot be kept in a liquefied state and gasified refrigerant bubbles in the charging cylinder, it becomes difficult to read values. Therefore, it is advisable to adequately use an electronic balance for refrigerant charging.
- An electronic balance for refrigerant charging has higher strength due to its structure with four points of support for refrigerant cylinder weight detection. As the charge hose connecting part has two ports-one for R22 (7/16 UNF 20 threads per inch) and the other for R410A (1/2 UNF 20 threads per inch) - it can also be used for charging the conventional refrigerant.
- Two types of electronic balance for refrigerant charging are available - one for 10kg cylinder and the other for 20kg cylinder.
  Electronic balance for 10kg cylinder ..... precision ± 2g
  Electronic balance for 20kg cylinder ..... precision ± 5g
- Refrigerant is charged manually by opening/closing the valve.

4) Torque wrench (for nominal diameters 1/2 and 5/8)

- Along with changes in flare nut sizes for enhanced pressure resisting strength, torque wrenches for R410A differ in opposite side size.

Table 14. Differences between conventional wrenches and those for R410A

	Conventional torque wrench	Torque wrench for R410A
For 1/2 (opposite side × torque)	24mm × 55N·m (550 kgf·cm)	26mm × 55N·m (550 kgf·cm)
For 5/8 (opposite side × torque)	27mm × 65N·m (650 kgf·cm)	29mm × 65N·m (650 kgf·cm)

5) Flare tool (clutch type)
   - A flare tool for R410A is provided with a large clamp bar receiving hole so that the projection of the copper pipe from the clamp bar can be set at 0~0.5 mm in flare processing, and also features higher spring strength for increased expansion pipe torque. This flare tool can also be used for R22 copper pipe.

6) Gauge for projection adjustment (used when flare processing is made by using conventional flare tool [clutch type])
   - A gauge 1.0 mm in thickness which helps in easily setting the projection of the copper pipe from the clamp bar at 1.0~1.5 mm.

7) Vacuum pump adapter
   - It is necessary to use an adapter for preventing vacuum pump oil from flowing back to the charge hose. The charge hose connecting part has two ports - one for conventional refrigerant (7/16 UNF 20 threads per inch) and the other for R410A. If the vacuum pump oil (mineral) mixes with R410A, a sludge may occur and damage the equipment.

8) Refrigerant cylinder
   - A refrigerant cylinder exclusive for R410A comes identified with refrigerant name and is coated with pink paint as designated by the ARI, U.S.A.

9) Charge port and packing for refrigerant cylinder
   - According to the charge hose's cap size, a charge port with 1/2 UNF 20 threads per inch and corresponding packing are required.

10) Gas leakage detector
   - A high sensitivity gas leakage detector exclusive for HFC refrigerant is used. In the case of R410A, the detection sensitivity is about 23g per year.

(ii) General tools

1) Vacuum pump
2) Torque wrench
   for 1/4: opposite side 17 mm × (16 N·m) (160 kgf·cm)
   for 1/4: opposite side 17 mm × (18 N·m) (180 kgf·cm)
   for 3/8: opposite side 22 mm × (42 N·m) (420 kgf·cm)
3) Pipe cutter
4) Reamer
5) Screwdriver (+, -)
6) Hacksaw
7) Hole core drill (ø65 or 70)
8) Hexagonal wrench (opposite side 4 or 5 mm)
9) Spanner, or monkey wrench
10) Tape measure
11) Thermometer
12) Clamping ampere meter
13) Insulation resistance tester (mega tester)
14) Electro circuit tester
15) Pipe bender

(iii) Applicability of R410A tools to R22 model

Table 15. Applicability of R410A tools to R22 model

	Tools for R410A	Applicable to R22 model
a)	Gauge manifold	×
b)	Charge hose	×
c)	Electronic balance for refrigerant charging	○
d)	Torque wrench (nominal diameter 1/2, 5/8)	×
e)	Flare tool (clutch type)	○
f)	Gauge for projection adjustment*	○
g)	Vacuum pump adapter	○
h)	Refrigerant cylinder	×
i)	Charge port and packing for refrigerant cylinder	×
j)	Gas leakage detector	×

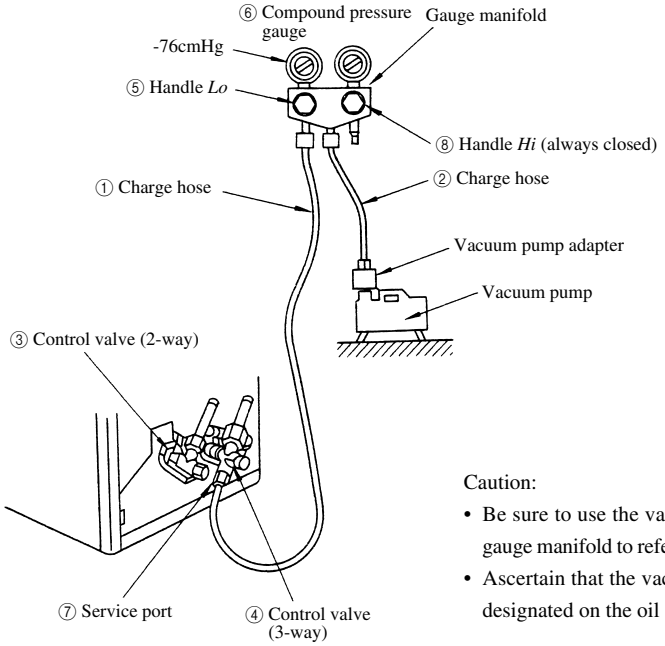
* Used when conventional flare tool (clutch type) is used.

Note: For inquiry, contact your agent.

(b) New installation work (when using new refrigerant piping)

(i) Air purge by vacuum pump and gas leakage inspection (see Fig. 6)

1) Connect the charge hose to the outdoor unit. ①
2) Connect the charge hose to the vacuum pump adapter. ②
   At this time, keep the control valves in the fully closed position. ③ ④
3) Place the handle *Lo* in the fully opened position ⑤, and turn on the vacuum pump's power switch.
   During this step, perform evacuating (about 10 ~ 15 minutes); for the evacuating time, refer to the equipment manufacturer's manual.
4) When the compound gauge's pointer has indicated -0.1 MPa (-76 cmHg) ⑥, place the handle *Lo* in the fully closed position ⑤, and turn OFF the vacuum pump's power switch
   Keep this state for 1~2 minutes, and ascertain that the compound gauge's pointer does not return.
5) Fully open the control valves. ③ ④
6) Detach the charge hoses. ① ②
7) Tightly secure the cap on the service port. ⑦
8) After securing the caps on the control valves, check the caps' periphery if there is any gas leakage. ③ ④ ⑦



Caution:

- Be sure to use the vacuum pump, vacuum pump adapter and gauge manifold to refer to their instruction manuals beforehand.
- Ascertain that the vacuum pump is filled with oil to the level designated on the oil gauge.

Fig.6 Configuration of air purge by vacuum pump

(ii) Additional refrigerant charging required for refrigerant piping length longer than standard length (The following steps should be taken following the step e) in (1) above. See Fig. 7)

1) Set the refrigerant cylinder to the electronic balance, and connect the connecting hoses on the cylinder and electronic balance's connecting port.
   * Caution:
     Be sure to make setting so that liquid can be charged. When using a cylinder equipped with a siphon, liquid can be charged without turning it upside down.
2) Connect the gauge manifold's charge hose to the electronic balance's connecting port. ③ ②
3) Open the refrigerant cylinder's valve, and, after opening the charging valve a little, close it. ① ②
4) After making zero (0) adjustment, open the charging valve and, by opening the gauge manifold's valve *Lo*, charge the liquid refrigerant. ② ⑤
   (Before handling the electronic balance, refer to its instruction manual).
5) When the designated amount of refrigerant could not be charged, make additional charging bit by bit by cooling operation (for the amount of each addition, follow the instruction manual prepared by the equipment manufacturer). If the first additional charging was not enough, make the second additional charging after about one minute in the same manner as the first additional charging.
   * Caution:
     Be sure never to charge a large amount of liquid refrigerant at once to the unit in cooling mode, since liquid is charged from the gas side.

6) After charging liquid refrigerant into the air conditioner by closing the charging valve, stop operation by fully closing the gauge manifold's valve *Lo*. ② ⑤
7) Quickly remove the charge hose from the service port. ⑥
When stopped halfway, refrigerant being cycled will be released.
8) After securing the caps on the service port and control valve, check the caps' periphery to see if there is any gas leakage. ⑥ ⑦

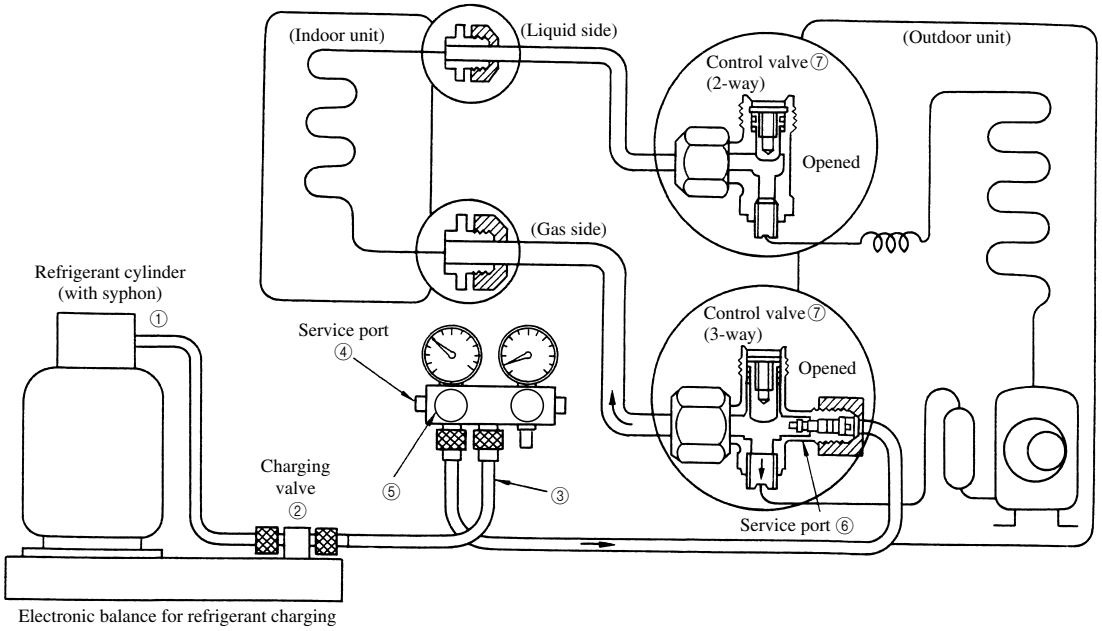


Fig.7 Configuration of additional refrigerant charging

(c) Removal (When using new refrigerant piping)

(i) Removing the unit

1) Recovery of refrigerant from the outdoor unit by pump down
- At the time of pump down, use a gauge manifold exclusive for R410A.
- Operating the unit in forced cooling mode, recover refrigerant from the outdoor unit.
(For details of reclaiming steps and precautions, see the instruction manual prepared by the equipment manufacturer)
* Caution:
In the case of an outdoor unit which is incapable of pump down, use a refrigerant recovery unit.

2) Removing the indoor/outdoor units
- Remove the piping and wiring between the indoor and outdoor units.
- Tighten the outdoor unit's control valves and service port with the specified torque.
- Tighten the capped flare nuts at the indoor/outdoor units connecting part with the specified torque.
- Remove the indoor/outdoor units.
* Caution:
When storing the indoor unit piping in its original position, be careful not to break the piping.

(ii) Installing the unit

1) Proceed with the installation following the steps described in " (b) New installation work".

(d) Replacing the unit (Never use the existing refrigerant piping)

Use a brand-new refrigerant piping (1) when replacing the air conditioner using the conventional refrigerant (R22) with an air conditioner using the alternative refrigerant (R410A) or (2) even when replacing the air conditioner using the alternative refrigerant (R410A) with another air conditioner using R410A, as a problem may occur due to differences in pressure characteristics of refrigerant or differences in type of lubricating oil (air conditioners using R410A do not always use the same type of the lubricating oils).

(e) Retrofitting

Do not operate the air conditioner which has used the conventional refrigerant (R22) by charging the alternative refrigerant (R410A). Otherwise, the equipment may cease to function normally and go wrong, or even cause serious problems such as rupture of the refrigeration cycle.

(f) Refrigerant recharging at servicing

When it becomes necessary to recharge refrigerant, charge the specified amount of new refrigerant according to the following steps.

(For details, see the instruction manual prepared by the equipment manufacturer)

1) Connect the charge hose to the outdoor unit's service port.
2) Connect the charge hose to the vacuum pump adapter. At this time, keep the control valves in the fully opened position.
3) Place the handle *Lo* in the fully opened position, and turn ON the vacuum pump's power source. (For the evacuating time, refer to the equipment manufacturer's manual)
4) When the compound gauge's pointer has indicated -0.1 MPa (-76 cmHg), place the handle *Lo* in the fully closed position, and turn OFF the vacuum pump's power source. Keep this state for 1 ~ 2 minutes, and ascertain that the compound gauge's pointer does not return.
5) Charge liquid refrigerant by using the electronic balance according to the steps described in Section (b)(ii) (pages65, 66).

(4) Refrigerant recovery

(a) Recovering procedures

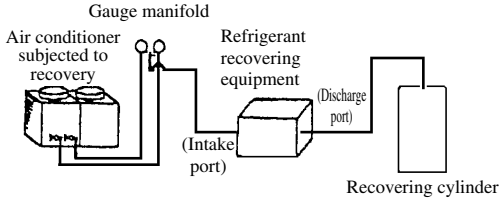
The following procedures for refrigerant recovery represent general procedures, and they may differ between actual cases depending upon the type of refrigerant recovering equipment. The connecting and handling methods for different type of refrigerant recovering equipment may also differ. So, ascertain the details by referring to the respective instruction manuals, etc.

(i) Checks prior to recovering procedures

1) Checking the refrigerant recovering equipment
   ① Gas leakage [If there is any malfunction, repair it].
   ② Oil separator [Drain the residual oil].
   ③ Recovering equipment weighing function, overcharge preventing function (float switch), moisture indicator, drier and other accessory functions [should be adjusted or replaced where necessary].
   ④ Electrical circuit
2) Checking the accessories to the refrigerant recovering equipment

(ii) Preparations for recovering procedures

1) Installation of refrigerant recovering equipment
   Install the equipment in a place which satisfies the following requirements as much as possible.
   ① Ambient temperature is higher than 0°C and lower than 40°C.
   ② A flat and dry floor.
   ③ A place as close to the air conditioner as possible.
2) Preparation of recovering cylinder
   A recovering cylinder should be such that it does not go against prohibitions, and is suitable for refrigerant recovered.
3) Connect to the power source
4) Preparations for air conditioner subjected to refrigerant recovery
   ① When it is possible to run the air conditioner subjected to refrigerant recovery, perform pump down operation so that refrigerant is contained in the outdoor unit (condenser side).
      • Carry out the pump down operation after confirming the specification of the air conditioner subjected to refrigerant recovery.
   ② If there is any clogging part (ex. the electronic expansion valve, etc.), fully open such part.



(iii) Connection of refrigerant recovering equipment

1) Connect the air conditioner subjected to refrigerant recovery to the refrigerant recovering equipment.
   ① When there is a service port (port for recovery):
   Make connection to the service port (port for recovery) by using a gauge manifold and charge hose.
   ② When there is no service port (port for recovery):
   Make connection in a manner similar to ① above by using a piercing valve.
2) Connect the refrigerant recovering equipment to the recovering cylinder.

(iv) Recovering procedures

1) According to the instructions for handling the refrigerant recovering equipment (described in the attached instruction manual), operate the equipment to recover refrigerant.
2) During the operation, take care of the following cautions.
   ① Ascertain that the refrigerant recovering equipment is running as required and always monitor the state of operation so that adequate steps can be taken in an emergency.
   ② During the operation, remain at work site to ensure safety.
   ③ If you have to leave your work site for any unavoidable reason, stop the operation after ascertaining that the recovering cylinder is not overcharged.
3) During the operation, if the refrigerant recovering equipment's overcharging prevention mechanism operates and the equipment stops automatically, replace the recovering cylinder with an empty one.
4) If the pressure gauge's reading increases after a short time from the accomplishment of recovery and automatic stoppage of the refrigerant recovering equipment, restart the equipment and, if it stops again, finish the recovery.

(v) Procedures after recovery

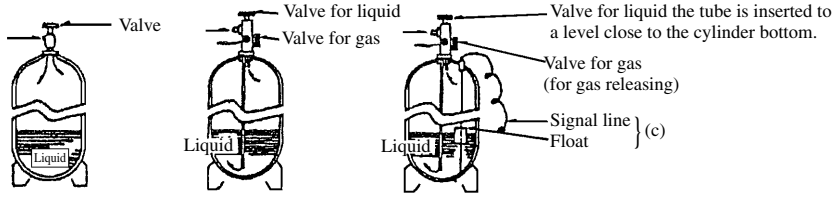
1) Close the valves on the air conditioner subjected to refrigerant recovery, the refrigerant recovering equipment and the recovering cylinder.
2) Detach the recovering cylinder charged with refrigerant and store it as required by law.

(b) Accessories/tools

In order to carry out R410A recovery, a variety of accessories/tools are required.
Shown below are standard accessories.

(i) Recovering cylinder

- Use a recovering cylinder designated by the equipment manufacturer.
- A detachable cylinder must be such that it complies with the laws and regulations concerned.
- Do not use an ordinary cylinder as a recovering cylinder.
  Note 1: A cylinder available when R410A was purchased, is a borrowed one.
  Note 2: As a cylinder available when R410A was purchased, is provided with a check valve, it cannot be used as a recovering cylinder.
- Types (by function)



(a) Basic type
- 1-port valve
- Can be used for R410A recovery.
- Inverted when delivering liquid R410A.

(b) 2-port valve type
- Capable of delivering liquid R410A or releasing gas in the upright position.
- Convenient for servicing.

(c) Float type special cylinder
- With a built-in float (signal) for prevention of overcharging

Fig.8 Cylinder types

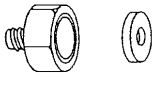
- Caution
  It is prohibited by law to recover R410A into a throw-away service can or one-way cylinder.

(ii) Drier

- A desiccant container for removing the water content of R410A.
- A drier should be prepared as expendables.
- Keep the drier sealed just before fitting it.
- Required to protect the R410A recovering equipment.

(iii) Connection hose

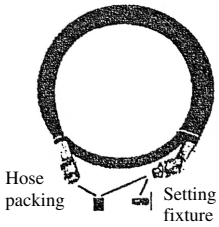
1) Charge port and charge port packing
   - Usually, it is sold independently of a refrigerant cylinder.
   - In the case of a two-port cylinder, the diameter may be special. Inquire the manufacture for confirmation.
   - A packing is expendables.



Charge port

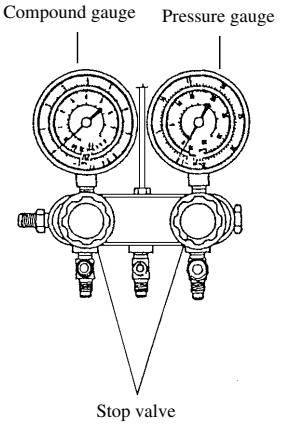
2) Charge hose (pressure resistant hose for fluorocarbon) and packing

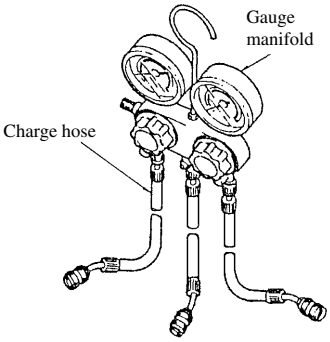
- It is 1/4B in thickness and available in various lengths, etc.
- Use a hose whose pressure resisting performance is higher than 5.2 MPa (52 kg/cm^{2}G).
- Generally, a setting fixture is provided only on one end.



(iv) Gauge manifold

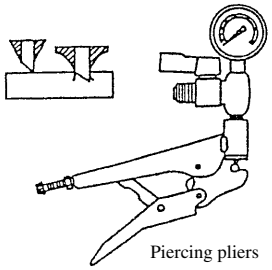
- The most important service tool for refrigeration and air conditioner.
- Widely used when charging/recovering R410A while checking gas pressure.

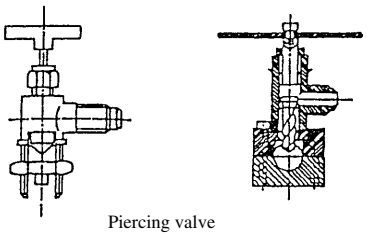




(v) Tube piercing valve

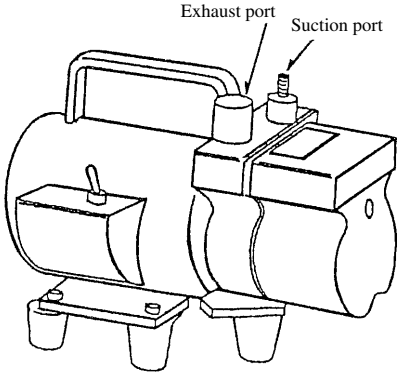
1) A tool used to make a hole for recovery in the copper pipe when recovering R410A from equipment which has no port for charging or recovering gas. Various types are available on the market and given various names.
2) As the piercing edge tends to wear, it is necessary to treat this valve as semi-expendables.
3) As vacuum rises, air tends to be inhaled from the hole. So, care must be exercised.





(vi) Vacuum pump

Used to evacuate the recovering equipment and recovering cylinder.



CONTENTS

1.2.1 GENERAL INFORMATION

(1) Specific features

The “MITSUBISHI HEAVY INDUSTRIES, LTD.” room air-conditioner: SRK series are of split and wall mounted type and the unit consists of indoor unit and outdoor unit with refrigerant precharged in factory. The indoor unit is composed of room air cooling or heating equipment with operation control switch and the outdoor unit is composed of condensing unit with compressor.

(a) Inverter (Frequency converter) for multi-steps power control

- Heating/Cooling
  The rotational speed of a compressor is changed in step in relation to varying load, to interlock with the indoor and outdoor unit fans controlled to changes in frequency, thus controlling the power.
- Allowing quick heating/cooling operation during start-up period. Constant room temperature by fine-tuned control after the unit has stabilized.

(b) Fuzzy control

- Fuzzy control calculates the amount of variation in the difference between the return air temperature and the setting temperature in compliance with the fuzzy rules in order to control the air capacity and the inverter frequency.

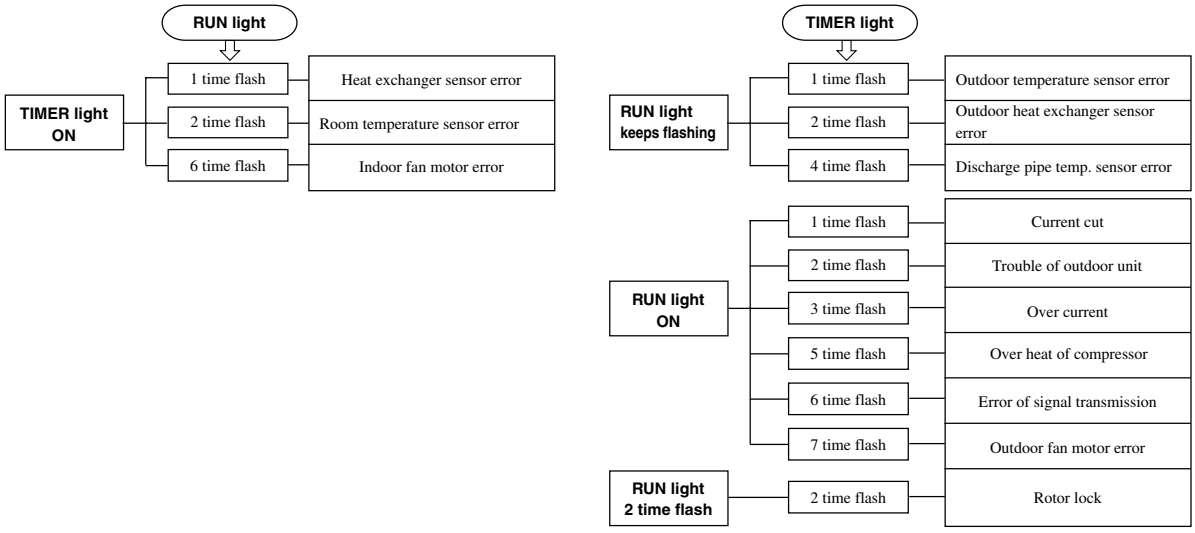
(c) Remote control flap & louver

The Flap & louver can be automatically controlled by operating wireless remote control.

- Flap swing : The flaps swing up and down successively.
- Louver swing : The louvers swing left and right successively.
- Multi-directional Air Flow : Activating both up/down air swing and left/right air swing at the same time results in a multi-directional air flow.
- Memory flap : Once the Flap & louver position is set, the unit memorizes the position and continues to operate at the same position from the next time.

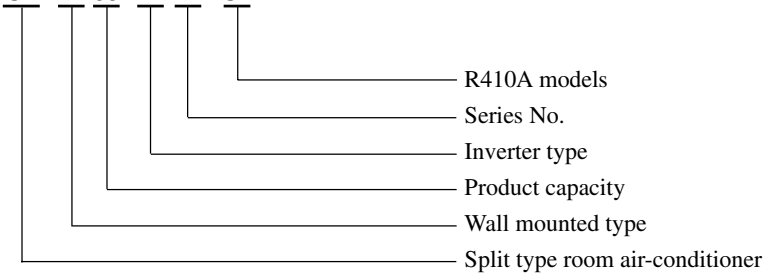
(d) Self diagnosis function

- We are constantly trying to do better service to our customers by installing such judges that show abnormality of operation as follows.



(2) How to read the model name

Example : SR K 63 Z E - S1



1.2.2 SELECTION DATA

(1) Specifications

Model SRK63ZE-S1 (Indoor unit)
SRC63ZE-S1 (Outdoor unit)

(220/230/240V)

Item				Model	SRK63ZE-S1	SRC63ZE-S1
Cooling capacity(1)				W	6300 (900~7100)	
Heating capacity(1)				W	7100 (900~9000)	
Power source					1 Phase, 220-240V, 50Hz	
Operation data(1)(2)	Cooling input			kW	1.84	
	Running current (Cooling)			A	8.4/8.1/7.7	
	Heating input			kW	1.86	
	Running current (Heating)			A	8.5/8.2/7.8	
	Inrush current			A	8.5/8.2/7.8	
	COP				Cooling: 3.42 Heating: 3.82	
	Noise level	Cooling	Sound level	dB	Hi 43, Me 39, Lo 33, ULo 26	47
			Power level		58	62
		Heating	Sound level		Hi 44, Me 38, Lo 32, ULo 27	48
			Power level		59	63
Exterior dimensions Height × Width × Depth				mm	318 × 1098 × 248	750 × 880 × 340
Color					Yellowish white	Stucco white
Net weight				kg	15	59
Refrigerant equipment Compressor type & Q'ty					–	TNB220FLBM1 (Twin rotary type) × 1
Motor				kW	–	1.3
Starting method					–	Line starting
Heat exchanger					Slit fins & inner grooved tubing	Straight fin & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control					Capillary tubes + Electronic expansion valve	
Refrigerant(3)				kg	R410A 1.9 (Pre-Charged up to the piping length of 15m)	
Refrigerant oil				ℓ	0.67 (MEL56)	
Deice control					Microcomputer control	
Air handling equipment Fan type & Q'ty					Tangential fan × 1	Propeller fan × 1
Motor				W	46	86
Air flow (at High)			(Cooling)	CMM	18.5	46
			(Heating)		21	46
Air filter, Q'ty					Polypropylene net (washable) × 2	–
Shock & vibration absorber					–	Cushion rubber (for compressor)
Electric heater					–	–
Operation control Operation switch					Wireless-Remote control	–
Room temperature control					Microcomputer thermostat	–
Pilot lamp					RUN (Green), TIMER (Yellow), HI POWER (Green), ECONO (Orange)	
Safety equipment					Compressor overheat protection, Heating overload protection (High pressure control), Overcurrent protection, Frost protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection, Cooling overload protection	
Refrigerant piping	O.D			mm (in)	Liquid line: ϕ6.35 (1/4″) Gas line: ϕ15.88 (5/8″)	
	Connecting method				Flare connecting	
	Attached length of piping				Liquid line: 0.70m Gas line : 0.63m	–
	Insulation				Necessary (Both sides)	
Drain hose					Connectable	
Power source supply					Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Connection wiring	Size × Core number				1.5 mm² × 4 cores (Including earth cable)	
	Connecting method				Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Accessories (included)					Mounting kit, Clean filter (Allergen clear filter × 1, Photocatalytic washable deodorizing filter × 1)	
Optional parts					Wired-Remote control	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	Standards
Cooling	27ºC	19ºC	35ºC	24ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612
Heating	20ºC	–	7ºC	6ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612

The piping length is 7.5m.

(2) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively.

(3) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 15 m connecting piping.
(Purging is not required even for the short piping.)
If the piping length is longer, when it is 15 to 30 m, add 25g refrigerant per meter.

Model SRK71ZE-S1 (Indoor unit)
SRC71ZE-S1 (Outdoor unit)

(220/230/240V)

Item				Model	SRK71ZE-S1	SRC71ZE-S1
Cooling capacity[1]				W	7100 (900~8000)	
Heating capacity[1]				W	8000 (900~10500)	
Power source					1 Phase, 220-240V, 50Hz	
Operation data[1][2]	Cooling input			kW	2.21	
	Running current (Cooling)			A	10.1/9.7/9.3	
	Heating input			kW	2.21	
	Running current (Heating)			A	10.1/9.7/9.3	
	Inrush current			A	10.1/9.7/9.3	
	COP				Cooling: 3.21 Heating: 3.62	
	Noise level	Cooling	Sound level	dB	Hi 45, Me 40, Lo 34, ULo 26	52
			Power level		60	67
		Heating	Sound level		Hi 46, Me 40, Lo 34, ULo 27	49
			Power level		60	64
Exterior dimensions Height × Width × Depth				mm	318 × 1098 × 248	750 × 880 × 340
Color					Yellowish white	Stucco white
Net weight				kg	15	59
Refrigerant equipment Compressor type & Q'ty					–	TNB220FLBM1 [Twin rotary type] × 1
Motor				kW	–	1.3
Starting method					–	Line starting
Heat exchanger					Slit fins & inner grooved tubing	Straight fin & inner grooved turbing
Refrigerant control					Capillary tubes + Electronic expansion valve	
Refrigerant[3]				kg	R410A 1.9 (Pre-Charged up to the piping length of 15m)	
Refrigerant oil				ℓ	0.67 (MEL56)	
Deice control					Microcomputer control	
Air handling equipment Fan type & Q'ty					Tangential fan × 1	Propeller fan × 1
Motor				W	46	86
Air flow (at High)			(Cooling)	CMM	20	56
			(Heating)		22.5	46
Air filter, Q'ty					Polypropylene net (washable) × 2	–
Shock & vibration absorber					–	Cushion rubber (for compressor)
Electric heater					–	–
Operation control Operation switch					Wireless-Remote control	–
Room temperature control					Microcomputer thermostat	–
Pilot lamp					RUN (Green), TIMER (Yellow), HI POWER (Green), ECONO (Orange)	
Safety equipment					Compressor overheat protection, Heating overload protection (High pressure control), Overcurrent protection, Frost protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection, Cooling overload protection	
Refrigerant piping	O.D			mm (in)	Liquid line: ϕ6.35 (1/4″) Gas line: ϕ15.88 (5/8″)	
	Connecting method				Flare connecting	
	Attached length of piping				Liquid line: 0.70m Gas line : 0.63m	–
	Insulation				Necessary (Both sides)	
Drain hose					Connectable	
Power source supply					Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Connection wiring	Size × Core number				1.5 mm² × 4 cores (Including earth cable)	
	Connecting method				Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Accessories (included)					Mounting kit, Clean filter (Allergen clear filter × 1, Photocatalytic washable deodorizing filter × 1)	
Optional parts					Wired-Remote control	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	Standards
Cooling	27ºC	19ºC	35ºC	24ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612
Heating	20ºC	–	7ºC	6ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612

The piping length is 7.5m.

(2) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively.

(3) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 15 m connecting piping.
(Purging is not required even for the short piping.)
If the piping length is longer, when it is 15 to 30 m, add 25g refrigerant per meter.

(2) Range of usage & limitations

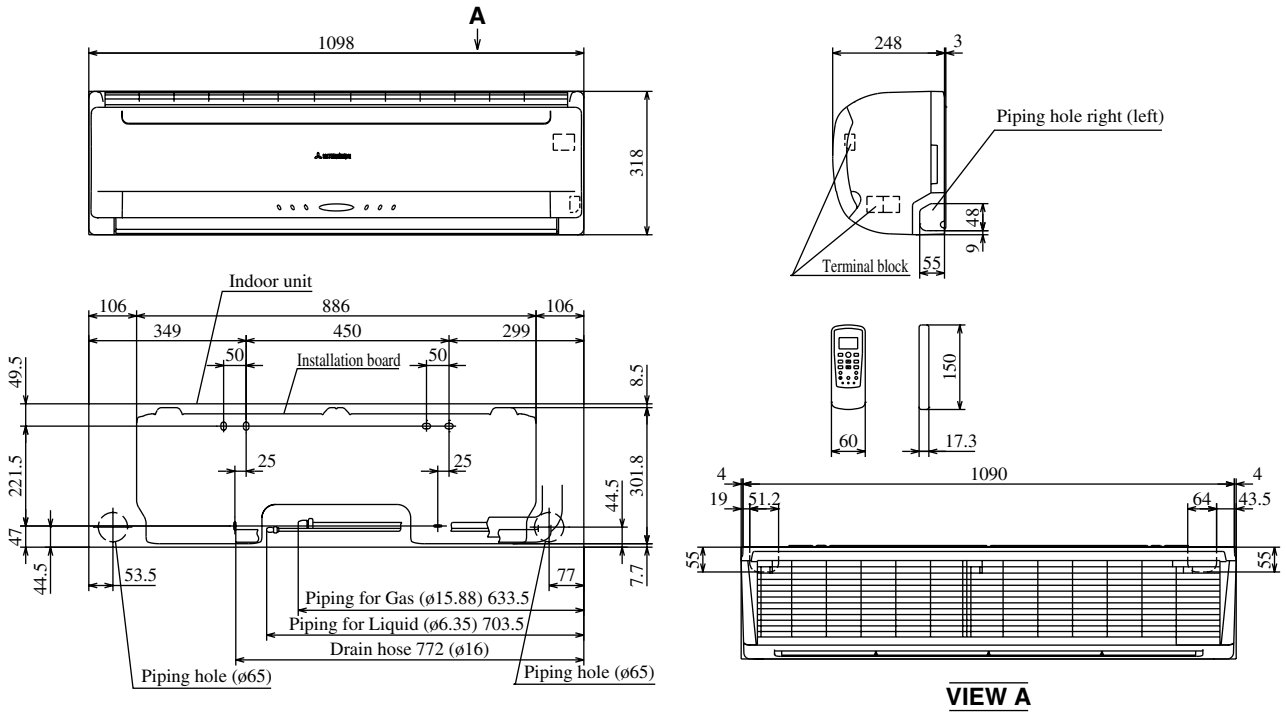
Item \ Models	SRK63ZE-S1, 71ZE-S1
Indoor return air temperature (Upper, lower limits)	Cooling operation: Approximately 18 to 32°C Heating operation: Approximately 15 to 30°C
Outdoor air temperature (Upper, lower limits)	Cooling operation: Approximately -15 to 46°C Heating operation: Approximately -15 to 21°C
Refrigerant line (one way) length	Max. 30m
Vertical height difference between outdoor unit and indoor unit	Max. 20m (Outdoor unit is higher) Max. 20m (Outdoor unit is lower)
Power source voltage	Rating ± 10%
Voltage at starting	Min. 85% of rating
Frequency of ON-OFF cycle	Max. 7 times/h (Inching prevention 5 minutes)
ON and OFF interval	Max. 3 minutes

(3) Exterior dimensions

(a) Indoor unit

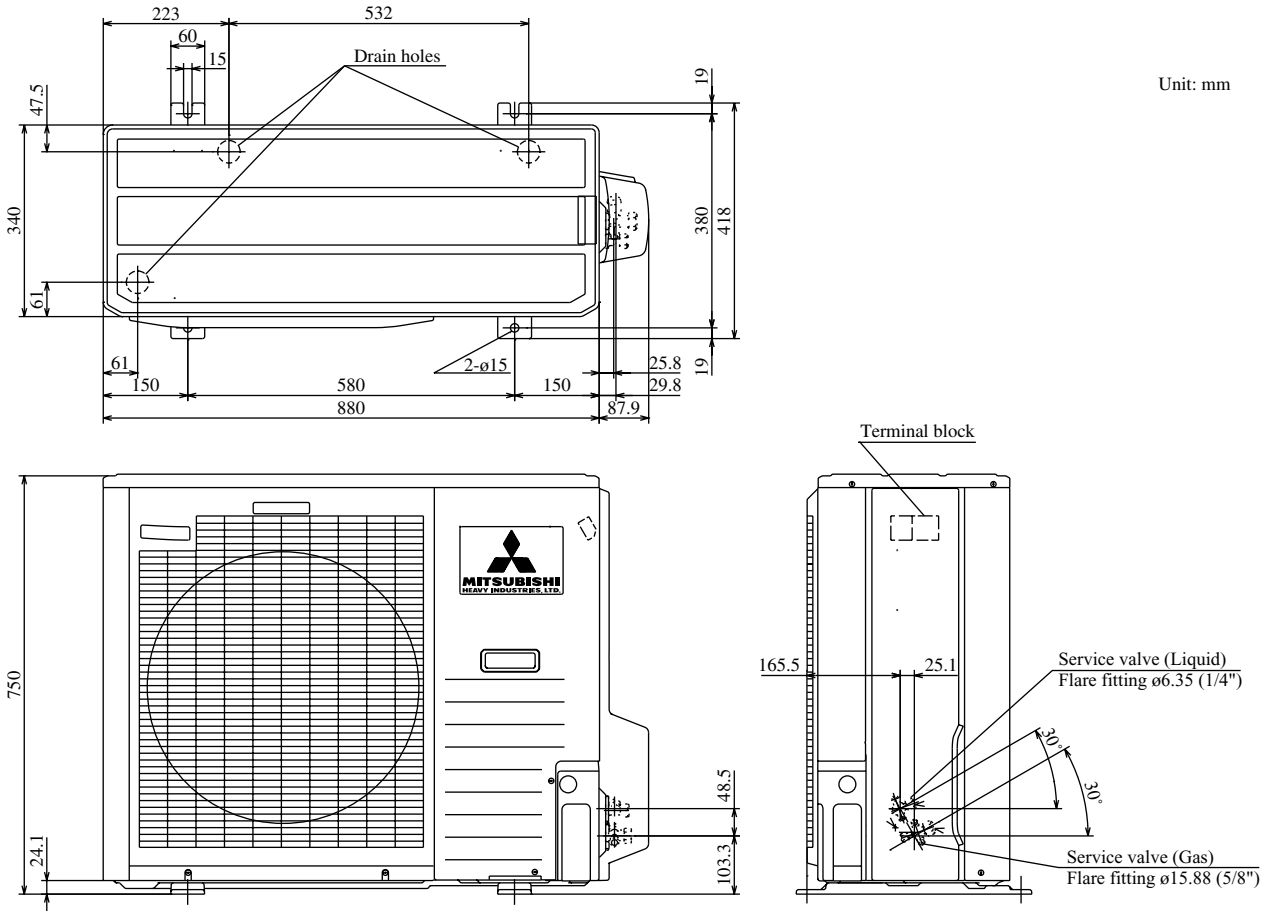
Models SRK63ZE-S1, 71ZE-S1

Unit: mm



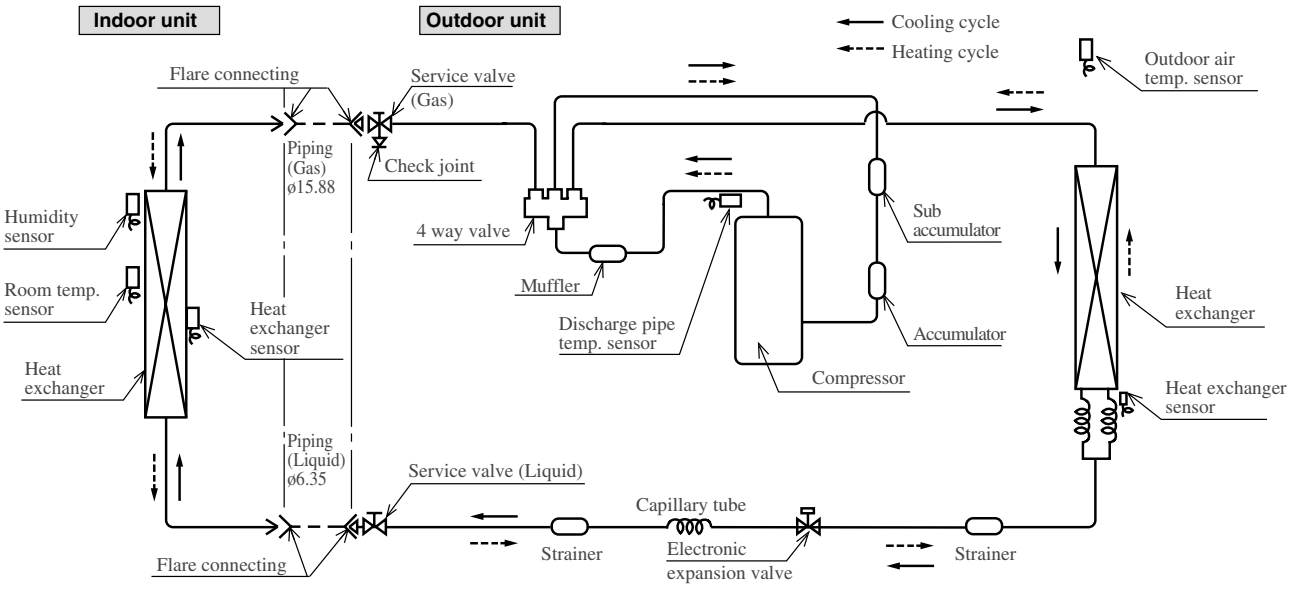
(b) Outdoor unit

Models SRC63ZE-S1, 71ZE-S1



(4) Piping system

Models SRK63ZE-S1, 71ZE-S1

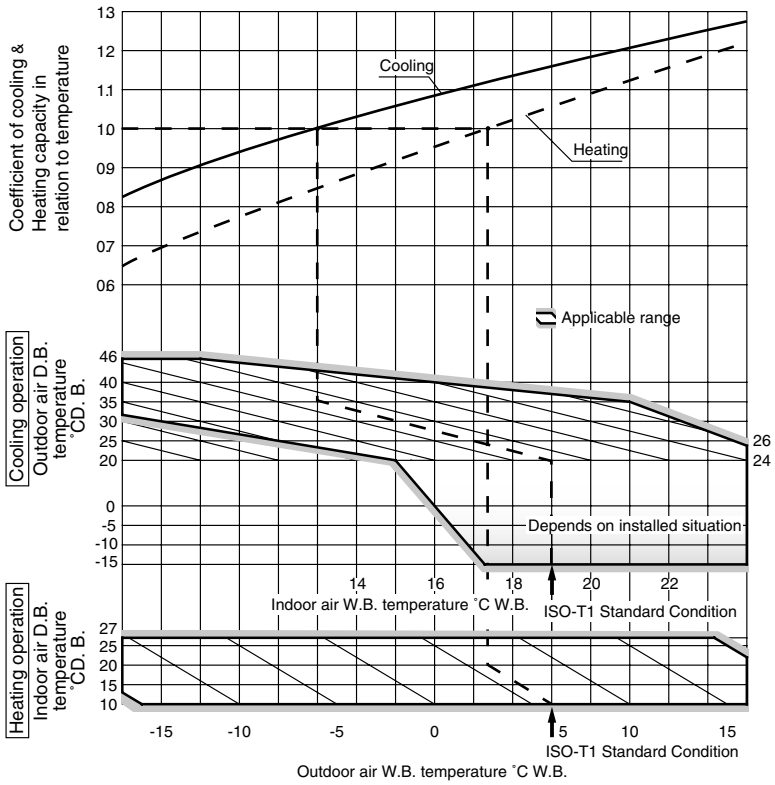


(5) Selection chart

Correct the cooling and heating capacity in accordance with the conditions as follows. The net cooling and heating capacity can be obtained in the following way.

Net capacity = Capacity shown on specification × Correction factors as follows.

(a) Coefficient of cooling and heating capacity in relation to temperatures



(b) Correction of cooling and heating capacity in relation to one way length of refrigerant piping

It is necessary to correct the cooling and heating capacity in relation to the one way piping length between the indoor and outdoor units.

Piping length [m]	7	10	15	20	25	30
Cooling	1.0	0.99	0.975	0.965	0.95	0.935
Heating	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0

(c) Correction relative to frosting on outdoor heat exchanger during heating

In additions to the foregoing corrections (a), (b) the heating capacity needs to be adjusted also with respect to the frosting on the outdoor heat exchanger.

Air inlet temperature of outdoor unit in ˚CWB	-10	-9	-7	-5	-3	-1	1	3	5
Adjustment coefficient	0.95	0.94	0.93	0.91	0.88	0.86	0.87	0.92	1.00

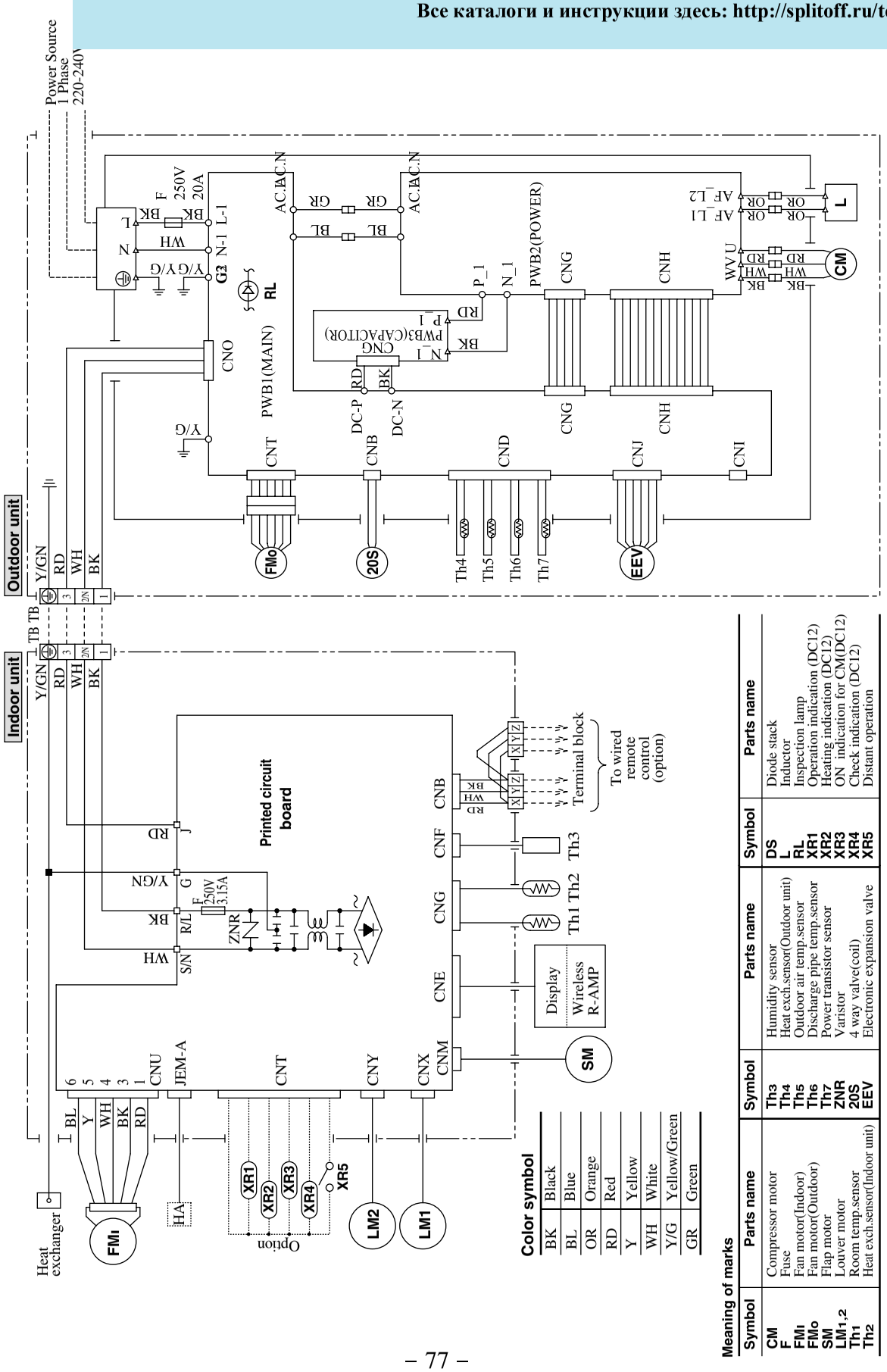
How to obtain the cooling and heating capacity

Example : The net cooling capacity of the model SRK63ZE-S1 with the piping length of 15m, indoor wet-bulb temperature at 19.0˚C and outdoor dry-bulb temperature 35˚C is Net cooling capacity = $\underset{\text{SRK63ZE-S1}}{6300} \times \underset{\text{Length 15m}}{0.975} \times \underset{\text{Factor by air temperatures}}{1.0} = 6143\text{W}$

1.2.3 ELECTRICAL DATA

(1) Electrical wiring

Models SRK63ZE-S1, 71ZE-S1



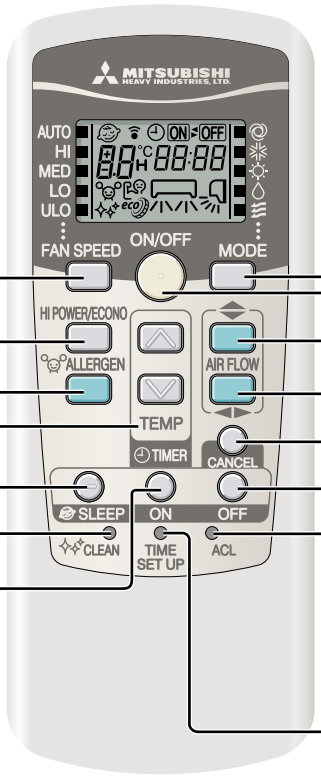
Meaning of marks

Symbol	Parts name	Symbol	Parts name	Symbol	Parts name
CM	Compressor motor	Th3	Humidity sensor	DS	Diode stack
F	Fuse	Th4	Heat exch.sensor(Outdoor unit)	L	Inductor
FMI	Fan motor(Indoor)	Th5	Outdoor air temp.sensor	RL	Inspection lamp
FMo	Fan motor(Outdoor)	Th6	Discharge pipe temp.sensor	XR1	Operation indication (DC12)
SM	Flap motor	Th7	Power transistor sensor	XR2	Heating indication (DC12)
LM1,2	Louver motor	ZNR	Varistor	XR3	ON indication for CM(DC12)
Th1	Room temp.sensor	20S	4 way valve(coil)	XR4	Check indication (DC12)
Th2	Heat exch.sensor(Indoor unit)	EEV	Electronic expansion valve	XR5	Distant operation

1.2.4 OUTLINE OF OPERATION CONTROL BY MICROCOMPUTER

(1) Operation control function by remote control switch

◆ Operation section



FAN SPEED button
Each time the button is pushed, the ■ indicator is switched over in turn.

HI POWER/ECONO button
This button changes the HIGH POWER/ ECONOMY mode.

ALLERGEN button
This button selects ALLERGEN CLEAR operation.

TEMPERATURE button
This button sets the room temperature.
(This button changes the present time and TIMER time.)

SLEEP button
This button changes to SLEEP operation.

CLEAN switch
This switch changes the CLEAN mode.

ON TIMER button
This button selects ON TIMER operation.

OPERATION MODE select button
Each time the button is pushed, the ■ indicator is switched over in turn.

ON/OFF (luminous) button
Press for starting operation, press again for stopping.

AIR FLOW (UP/DOWN) button
This button changes the flow (up/down) mode.

AIR FLOW (LEFT/RIGHT) button
This button changes the air flow (left/right) mode.

CANCEL button
This button cancels the ON timer,OFF timer, and SLEEP operation.

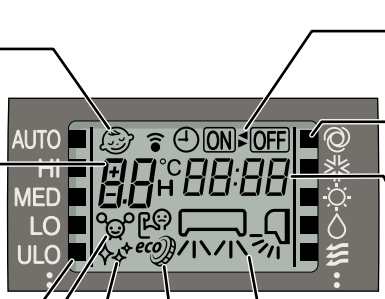
OFF TIMER button
This button selects OFF TIMER operation.

RESET switch
Switch for resetting microcomputer.

TIME SET UP switch
Switch for setting the time.

- The above illustration shows all controls, but in practice only the relevant parts are shown.

◆ Indication section



SLEEP indicator
Indicates during SLEEP operation.

TEMPERATURE indicator
Indicates set temperature.
(Does not indicate temperature when operation mode is on AUTO)

FAN SPEED indicator
Indicates set air flow rate with ■ lamp.

ALLERGEN CLEAR indicator
Indicates during ALLERGEN CLEAR operation.

CLEAN indicator
Indicates during CLEAN operation.

ON/OFF TIMER indicator
Indicates during ON/OFF TIMER operation.

OPERATION MODE indicator
Indicates selected operation with ■ lamp.
[(Auto) • (Cool) • (Heat) • (Dry) • (Fan)]

TIME indicator
Indicates present time or timer setting time.

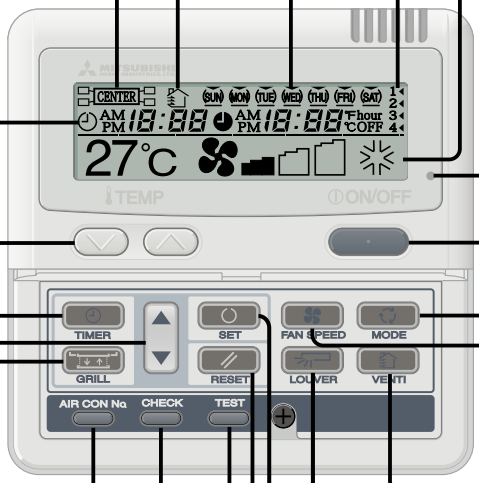
AIR FLOW indicator
Shows selected flap and louver mode.

HI POWER/ECONO MODE indicator
Indicates during HIGH POWER/ECONOMY mode operation.

(b) Wired remote control (Optional parts)

The figure below shows the remote control with the cover opened. Note that all the items that may be displayed in the liquid crystal display area are shown in the figure for the sake of explanation.

Pull the cover downward to open it.



Central control display
Displayed when the air conditioning system is controlled by the option controller.

Timer operation display
Displays the settings related to timer operation.

Temperature setting switches
These switches are used to set the temperature of the room.

TIMER switch
This switch is used to select a timer mode.
(The comfortable timer or sleep operation cannot be selected.)

Timer setting switches
These switches are used to set the timer mode and time.

[GRILL switch]
This switch has no function.
When this switch is pressed,
INVALID OPER (Invalid Operation)
is displayed, but it does not mean a failure.

AIR CON No. (Air conditioning system No.) switch
Displays the number of the connected air conditioning system.
("00" appears.)

[CHECK switch]
This switch is used at servicing.

[TEST switch]
This switch is used during test operation.

[Vent Indicator]
Indicates operation in the Ventilation mode.

Weekly timer display
Displays the settings of the weekly timer.

Operation setting display area
Displays setting temperature, airflow volume, operation mode and operation message.

Operation/Check indicator light
During operation: Lit in green
In case of error: Flashing in red

Operation/Stop switch
This switch is used to operate and stop the air conditioning system.
Press the switch once to operate the system and press it once again to stop the system.

MODE switch
This switch is used to switch between operation modes.
(The clean operation or allergen clear operation cannot be selected.)

FAN SPEED switch
This switch is used to set the airflow volume.
(AUTO, ULO, HI POWER or ECONO cannot be selected.)

VENT switch
Switch that operates the connected ventilator.

LOUVER switch
This switch is used to operate/stop the swing louver.
(Up/down swing only)

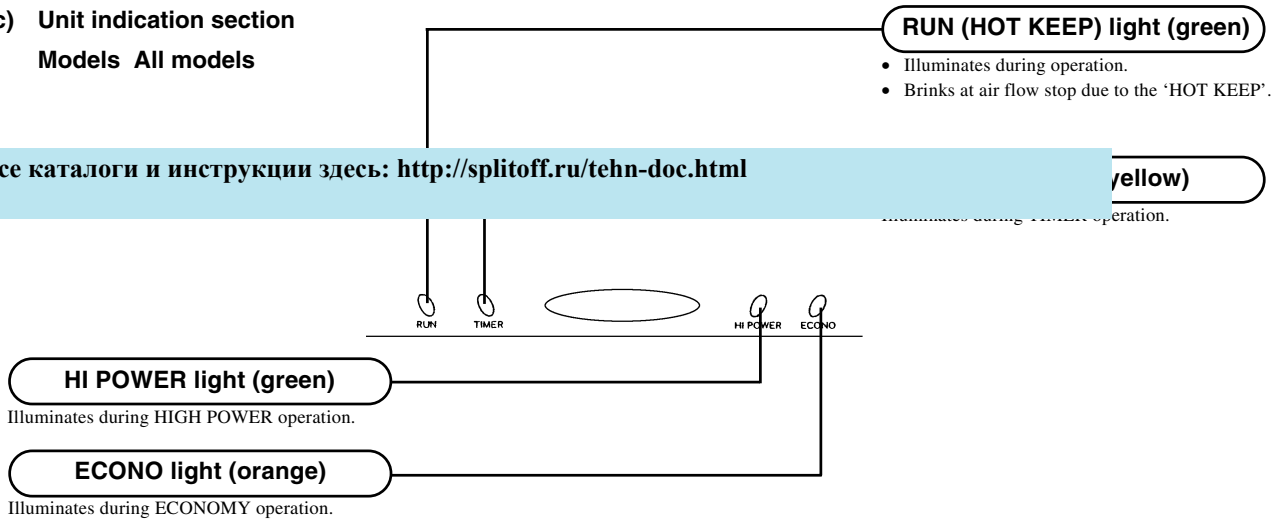
SET switch
This switch is used to apply the timer operation setting.
This switch is also used to make silent mode operation settings.

[RESET switch]
Press this switch while making settings to go back to the previous operation.
This switch is also used to reset the FILTER CLEANING message display.
(Press this switch after cleaning the air filter.)

* If you oress any of the switches above and INVALID OPER is display, the switch has no function.
But it does not mean a failure.

(c) Unit indication section

Models All models



(2) Unit ON/OFF button

When the remote control batteries become weak, or if the remote control is lost or malfunctioning, this button may be used to turn the unit on and off.

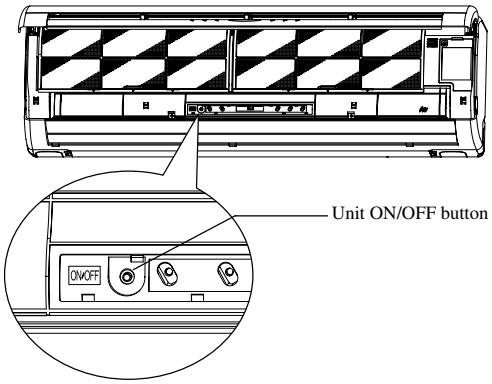
(a) Operation

Push the button once to place the unit in the automatic mode. Push it once more to turn the unit off.

(b) Details of operation

The unit will go into the automatic mode in which it automatically determines, from room temperature (as detected by sensor), whether to go into the cooling, thermal dry or heating modes.

Function / Operation mode	Room temperature setting	Fan speed	Flap	Timer switch
Cooling	About 24ºC	Auto	Auto	Continuous
Thermal dry	About 24ºC			
Heating	About 26ºC			



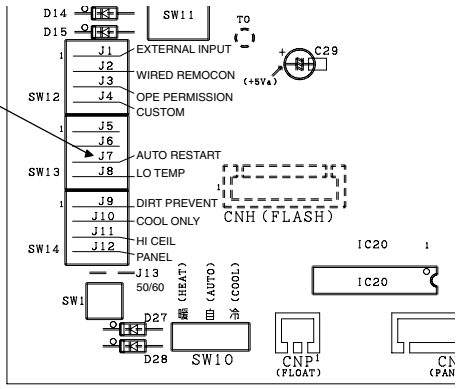
(3) Power blackout auto restart function

(a) Power blackout auto restart function is a function that records the operational status of the air-conditioner immediately prior to it being switched off by a power cut, and then automatically resumes operations at that point after the power has been restored.

(b) The following settings will be cancelled:

(i) Timer settings

(ii) High-power operations

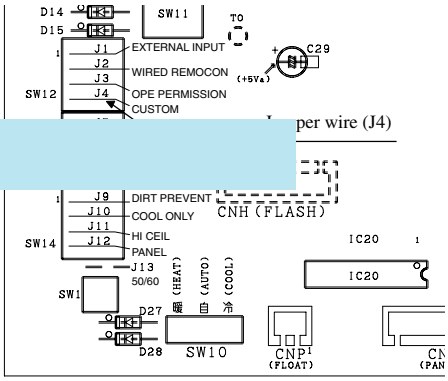


Notes (1) The power blackout auto restart function is set at on when the air-conditioner is shipped from the factory. Consult with your dealer if this function needs to be switched off.

(2) When power failure ocurrs, the timer setting is cancelled. Once power is resumed, reset the timer.

(3) If the jumper wire (J7) "AUTO RESTART" is cut, auto restart is disabled. (See the diagram at right)

(4) Custom cord switching procedure



If two wireless remote controls are installed in one room, in order to prevent wrong operation due to mixed signals, please modify the printed circuit board in the indoor

be done.

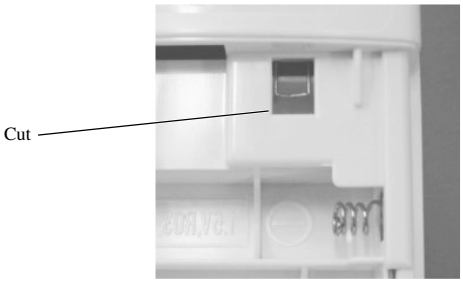
(a) Modifying the indoor unit's printed circuit board

Take out the printed circuit board from the control box and cut off jumper wire (J4) using wire cutters.

After cutting of the jumper wire, take measures to prevent contact with the other the lead wires, etc.

(b) Modifying the wireless remote control

1) Remove the battery.
2) Cut the jumper wire shown in the figure at right.



(5) Flap and louver control

Control the flap and louver by AIRFLOW ⬍ (UP/DOWN) and ⬌ (LEFT/RIGHT) button on the wireless remote control.

(a) (i) Swing flap

Flap moves in upward and downward directions continuously.

(ii) Swing louver

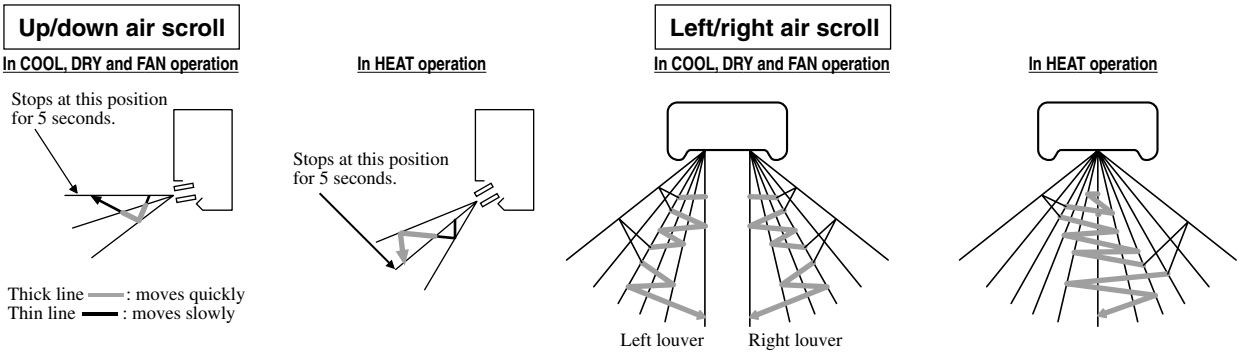
Louver moves in left and right directions continuously.

(iii) When not operating

The flap returns to the position of air flow directly below, when operation has stopped.

(b) Multi-directional Air Flow (up/down air and left/right air scroll)

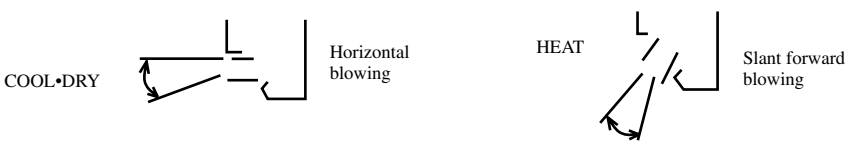
Activating both up/down air swing and left/right air swing at the same time results in a multi-directional air flow.



(c) Memory flap (Flap or Louver stopped)

When you press the AIRFLOW (UP/DOWN or LEFT/RIGHT) button once while the flap or louver is operating, it stops swinging at an angle. Since this angle is memorized in the microcomputer, the flap or louver will automatically be set at this angle when the next operation is started.

- Recommendable stopping angle of the flap



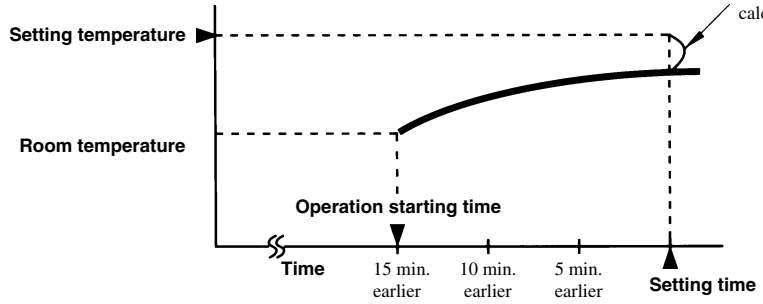
(6) Comfortable timer setting

If the timer is set at ON when the operation select switch is set at the cooling or heating, or the cooling or heating in auto mode operation is selected, the comfortable timer starts and determines the starting time of next operation based on the initial value of 15 minutes and the ing temperature.

Operation mode	Operation start time correction value (Min.)		
At cooling	3 < Room temp. – Setting temp.	1 < Room temp. – Setting temp. ≦ 3	Room temp. – Setting temp. ≦1
	+5	No change	–5
At heating	3 < Setting temp. – Room temp.	2 < Setting temp. – Room temp. ≦ 3	Setting temp. – Room temp. ≦2
	+5	No change	–5

Notes (1) At 5 minutes before the timer ON time, operation starts regardless of the temperature of the room temperature sensor (Th1).
(2) This function does not operate when in the Dry or Auto Dry and FAN mode.
However, the operation in item (1) does operate in the Auto Dry and FAN mode.
(3) During the comfortable timer operation, both the RUN light and TIMER light illuminate and the TIMER light goes off after expiration of the timer, ON setting time.

(Example) Heating



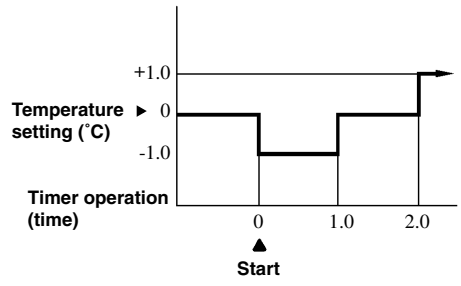
Corrects the starting time of next operation by calculating the temperature difference.

- If the difference (= Setting temperature – Room temperature) is 4ºC, the correction value is found to be +5 minutes from the table shown above so that the starting time of next operation is determined as follows:
  15 min. earlier + 5 min. = 20 min. earlier
  ↑ Current operation start time
  ↑ Correction value

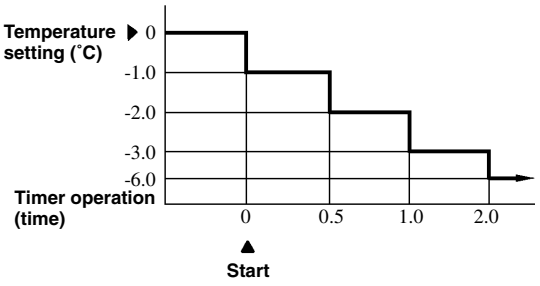
(7) Sleep timer operation

Pressing the SLEEP button causes the temperature to be controlled as shown in the following chart with respect to the set temperature.

Cooling, DRY



Heating



(8) Outline of heating operation

(a) Operation of major functional components in heating mode

Item	When the inverter	When the inverter speed	When the inverter speed is 0rps / Previous stop
Indoor fan motor	ON	ON	OFF
Flap and louver	ON or OFF	ON or OFF	Stop position control
Display	Lights up	Lights up	Lights up or flashes
Outdoor fan motor	Depending on the stop mode	ON	Depending on the stop mode
4-way valve		ON	
Electronic expansion valve		Depending on the EEV control	

(b) Air flow selection

(i) Speed of inverter changes within the range of selected air flow.

Air flow selection \ Model		SRK63ZE-S1	SRK71ZE-S1
Auto	**Inverter command speed**	12~88rps	12~95rps
	Air flow	Depends on inverter command speed.	
HI	**Inverter command speed**	12~88rps	12~95rps
	Air flow	9th speed fixed	
MED	**Inverter command speed**	12~88rps	12~95rps
	Air flow	7th speed fixed	
LO	**Inverter command speed**	12~74rps	12~80rps
	Air flow	5th speed fixed	
ULO	**Inverter command speed**	12~40rps	
	Air flow	3rd speed fixed	

(ii) When the defrosting, protection device, etc. is actuated, operation is performed in the corresponding mode.

(iii) Outdoor unit blower operates in accordance with the inverter command speed.

(c) Details of control at each operation mode (pattern)

(i) Fuzzy operation

Deviation between the room temperature setting correction temperature and the suction air temperature is calculated in accordance with the fuzzy rule, and used for control of the air capacity and the inverter command speed.

(ii) Heating thermostat operation

- Operating conditions

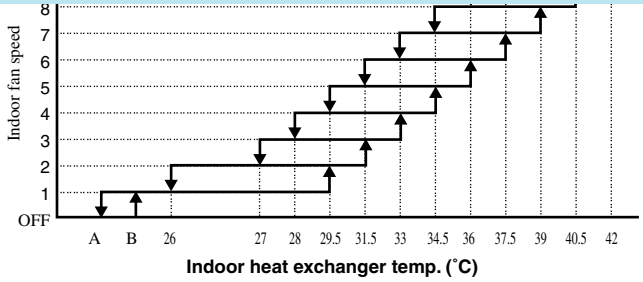
  If the inverter command speed obtained with the fuzzy calculation drops below -24 rps during the heating fuzzy operation, the operation changes to the heating thermostat operation.
- Detail of operation

Item \ Model	SRK63ZE-S1, 71ZE-S1
Inverter command speed	0rps [Comp. stopped]
Indoor fan motor	Hot keep N or M mode → 1st speed
Outdoor fan motor	Stop
Flap and louver	Horizontal, center

(iii) Hot keep operation

If the hot keep operation is selected during the heating operation, the indoor blower is controlled based on the temperature of the indoor unit heat exchanger (detected with Th2, indoor unit heat exchanger sensor) to prevent blowing of cool wind.

- **Hot keep N mode (Air flow: HI, MED, LO, ULO)**

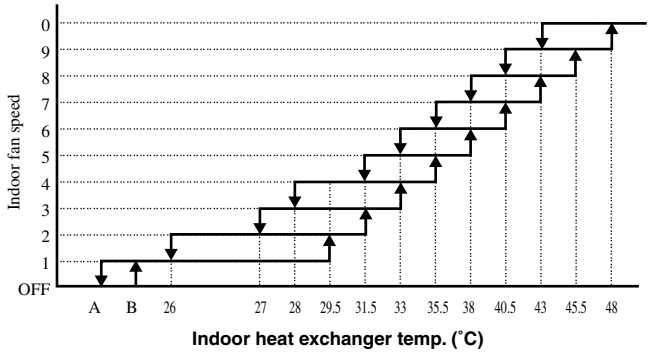


B

	A	B
At 0 rps command	22	25
Other than 0 rps command	10	15

Note (1) Refer to the table shown above right for the values A and B.

- **Hot keep M mode (Air flow: AUTO, HIGH POWER, ECONOMY)**



- **Values of A, B**

	A	B
At 0 rps command	22	25
Other than 0 rps command	10	15

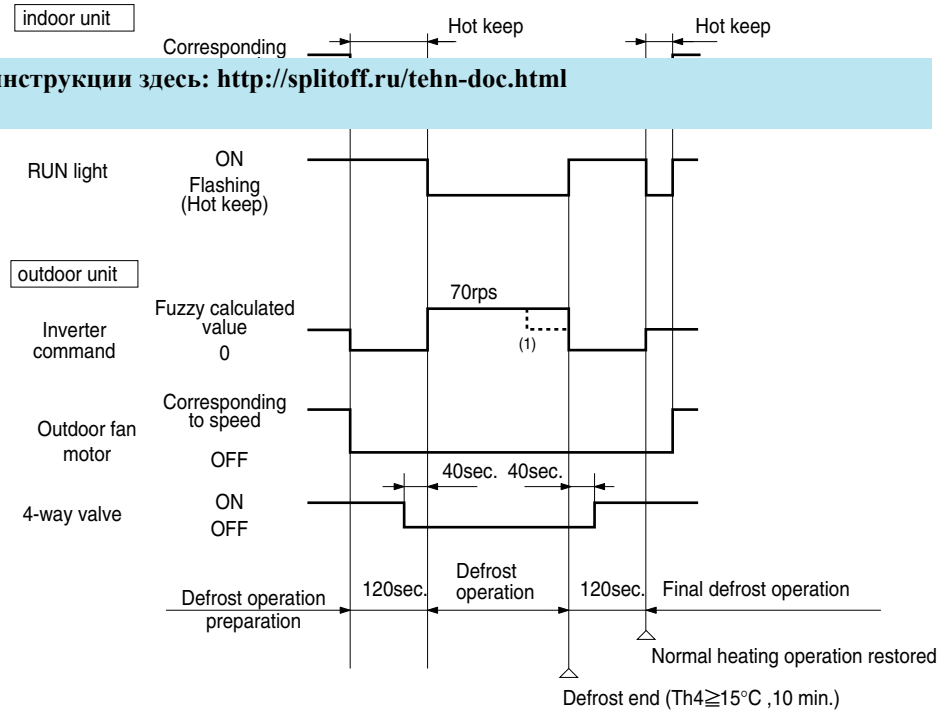
Notes (1) Refer to the table shown above right for the values A and B.

(d) Defrosting operation

(i) Starting conditions (Defrosting operation can be started only when all of the following conditions are met.)

1) ① After start of heating operation → When it elapsed 45 minutes.(Accumulated compressor operation time)
   ② After end of defrosting operation → When it elapsed 45 minutes.(Accumulated compressor operation time)
   ③ Outdoor unit heat exchanger sensor (Th4) temperature → When the temperature has been below –5ºC for 3 minutes continuously.
   ④ ● The outdoor air temperature ≧ –17°C
   The difference between the outdoor air temperature sensor temperature and the outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor temperature is ≧ 7ºC.
   ● The outdoor air temperature < –17°C
   The difference between the outdoor air temperature sensor temperature and the outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor temperature is ≧ –5ºC.
   ⑤ During continuous compressor operation (Defrost operations shall not be performed from 10 minutes after the compressor begins running.)
2) In addition, when the inverter command speed from the indoor controller of the indoor unit during heating operation has counted 0 rps 10 times or more and all conditions of ①, ②, ③ and ⑤ above and when the outdoor air temperature is 3°C or less are satisfied (note that when the temperature for Th4 is -5°C or less: 30 rps or more, -4°C or less: less than 30 rps), After running at an inverter command speed of 40rps for 7 minutes, defrost operations will start.
3) ① After start of heating operation → Less than 45 minutes.(Accumulated compressor operation time)
   ② After end of defrosting operation → Less than 45 minutes.(Accumulated compressor operation time)
   ③ Outdoor unit heat exchanger sensor (Th4) temperature → When the temperature has been below –5ºC for 3 minutes continuously.
   ④ ● The outdoor air temperature ≧ –17°C
   The difference between the outdoor air temperature sensor temperature and the outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor temperature is ≧ 20ºC.
   ● The outdoor air temperature < –17°C
   The difference between the outdoor air temperature sensor temperature and the outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor temperature is ≧ 15ºC.
   ⑤ During continuous compressor operation (Defrost operations shall not be performed from 10 minutes after the compressor begins running.)

(ii) Operation of functional components during defrosting operation



Note (1) When outdoor unit heat exchanger sensor (Th4) temperature becomes 2°C or higher, inverter command changes 70 rps to 40 rps.

(iii) Ending conditions (Operation returns to the heating cycle when either one of the following is met.)

① Outdoor heat exchanger sensor (Th4) temperature: 15ºC or higher

② Continued operation time of defrosting → For more than 10 min.

(e) Heating "HIGH POWER" operation (HI POWER button on remote controller: ON)

Operation is maintained for 15 minutes with a higher blow out air temperature.

- Detail of operation

Item \ Model	SRK63ZE-S1	SRK71ZE-S1
Inverter command speed	88 rps	95 rps
Indoor fan motor	Hot keep M mode (max 10th speed)	
Outdoor fan motor	6th speed	

Notes (1) Room temperature is not adjusted during the HIGH POWER operation.

(2) Protective functions will actuate with priority even during the HIGH POWER operation.

(9) Outline of cooling operation

(a) Operation of major functional components in Cooling mode

Item / Functional	When the inverter	When the inverter speed	When the inverter speed is 0rps ...us stop
Flap and louver	ON or OFF	ON or OFF	Stop position control
Display	Lights up	Lights up	Lights up or flashes
Outdoor fan motor	Depending on the stop mode	ON	Depending on the stop mode
4-way valve		OFF	
Electronic expansion valve		Depending on the EEV control	

(b) Air flow selection

(i) Speed of inverter changes within the range of selected air flow.

Air flow selection \ Model		SRK63ZE-S1	SRK71ZE-S1
Auto	**Inverter command speed**	12~64rps	12~74rps
	Air flow	Depends on inverter command speed.	
HI	**Inverter command speed**	12~64rps	12~74rps
	Air flow	8th speed fixed	
MED	**Inverter command speed**	12~54rps	12~62rps
	Air flow	6th speed fixed	
LO	**Inverter command speed**	12~40rps	12~44rps
	Air flow	4th speed fixed	
ULO	**Inverter command speed**	12~30rps	
	Air flow	2nd speed fixed	

(ii) When any protective function actuates, the operation is performed in the mode corresponding to the function.

(iii) Outdoor blower is operated in accordance with the inverter command speed.

(c) Detail of control in each mode (Pattern)

(i) Fuzzy operation

During the fuzzy operation, the air flow and the inverter command speed are controlled by calculating the difference between the room temperature setting correction temperature and the suction air temperature.

(ii) Cooling thermostat operation

1) Operating conditions

During the cooling fuzzy operation or when the inverter command speed obtained by the fuzzy calculation is less than -24 rps.

2) Detail of operation

Item \ Model	SRK63, 71ZE-S1
Inverter command speed	0 rps [Comp. stopped]
Indoor fan motor	Corresponds to fan speed switch.
Outdoor fan motor	Stop

(iii) Cooling "HIGH POWER" operation (HI POWER button on remote control: ON)

The unit is operated continuously for 15 minutes regardless of the setting temperature.

1) Detail of operation

Item \ Model	SRK63ZE-S1	SRK71ZE-S1
Inverter command speed	64 rps	74 rps
Indoor fan motor	8th speed	
Outdoor fan motor	6th speed	

Notes (1) Protective functions will actuate with priority even during the "HIGH POWER" operation.
(2) Room temperature is not adjusted during the "HIGH POWER" operation

(10) Outline of dehumidifying operation

(a) After operating the indoor blower for 20 seconds from immediately after the start of operation, the indoor temperature is checked and, based on the result of check, the cooling oriented dehumidifying or heating oriented dehumidifying is selected.

Low –3 High

Room temperature - Setting temperature (deg)

Cooling or heating oriented dehumidifying is selected again one hour after the first selection of the cooling or heating oriented dehumidifying.

(b) Outline of control

(i) Cooling oriented dehumidifying

Room temperature and relative humidity is checked at 5-minute intervals after selecting the cooling or heating oriented dehumidifying in order to determine the operation range.

Operation range

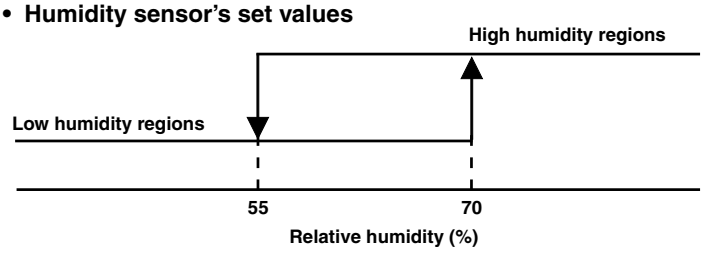
High humidity regions	Ⓘ (I)	Ⓕ (F)	Ⓔ (F)	Ⓓ (E)
Low humidity regions		Ⓒ (C)	Ⓑ (C)	Ⓐ (B)

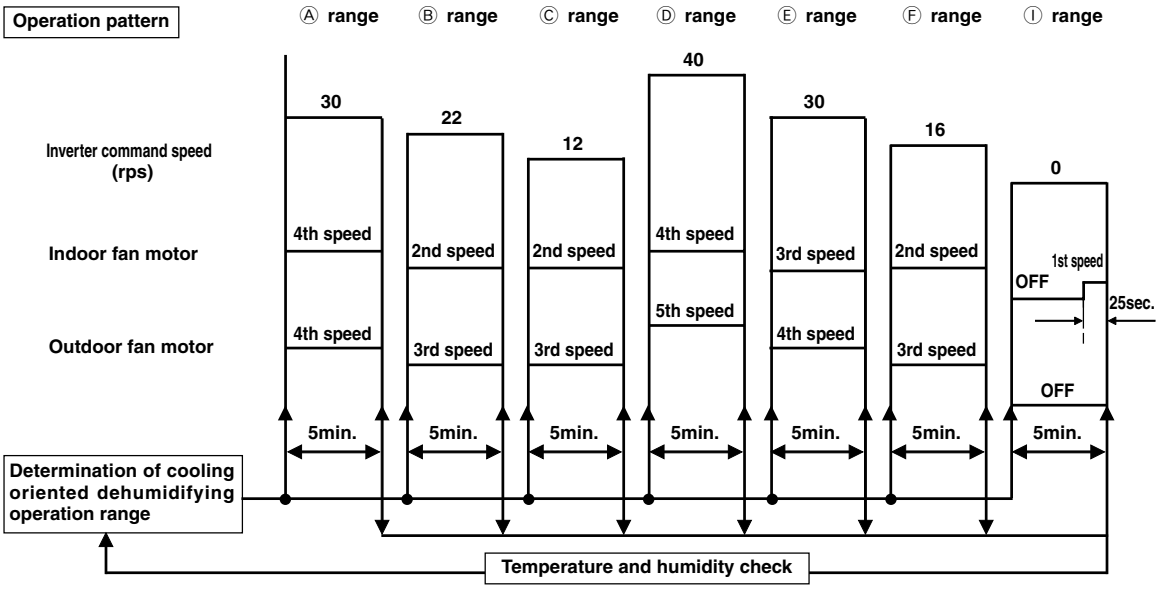
Low –1 0 +2 High

Room temperature – Setting temperature (deg)

Note (1) Figures in the parentheses ( ) show the values at ECONOMY operation.

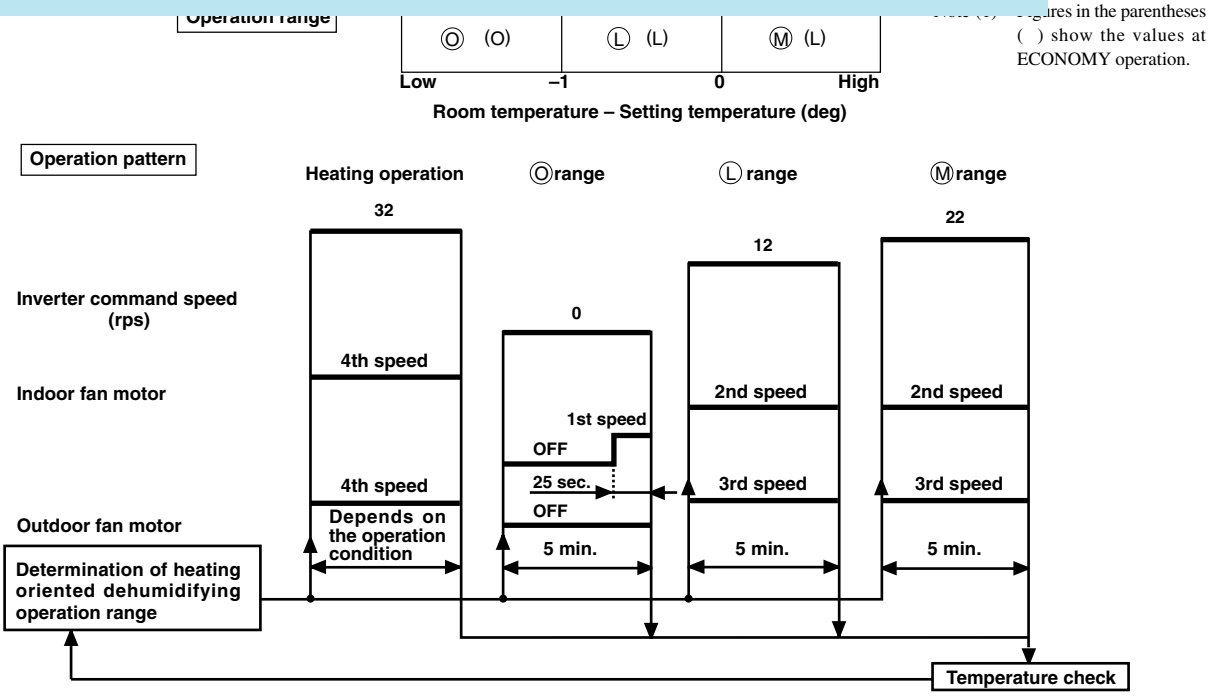
- **Humidity sensor's set values**





(ii) Heating oriented dehumidifying

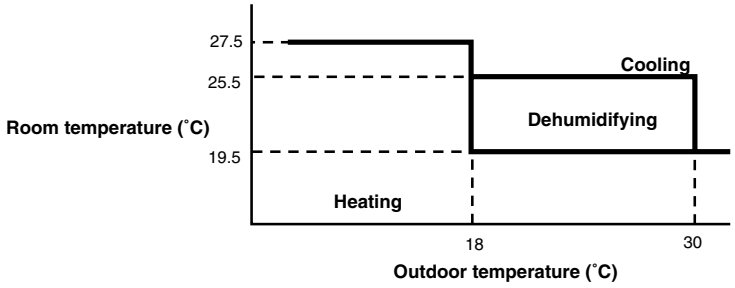
After interrupting the compressor operation for 3 minutes (by the 3-minute timer) following the determination of heating oriented dehumidifying, the unit begins in the heating operation. If the room temperature exceeds the setting temperature by 2ºC or more, the unit checks the room temperature at 5-minute intervals and, depending on the result, determines the range



(11) Outline of automatic operation

(a) Determination of operation mode

The unit checks the room temperature and the outdoor air temperature after operating the indoor and outdoor blowers for 20 seconds, determines the operation mode and the room temperature setting correction value, and then begins in the automatic operation.



(b) The unit checks the temperature every hour after the start of operation and, if the result of check is not same as the previous operation mode, changes the operation mode.

(c) When the unit is started again within one hour after the stop of automatic operation or when the automatic operation is selected during heating, cooling or dehumidifying operation, the unit is operated in the previous operation mode.

(d) Setting temperature can be adjusted within the following range. There is the relationship as shown below between the signals of the wireless remote control and the setting temperature.

		Signals of wireless remote control (Display)												
		–6	–5	–4	–3	–2	–1	±0	+1	+2	+3	+4	+5	+6
Setting temperature	Cooling	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
	Dehumidifying	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
	Heating	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32

(12) Outline of fan operation

(a) Operation of major functional components

Fan speed switching						ECONO
Indoor fan motor	2nd speed	8th speed	6th speed	4th speed	2nd speed	2nd speed
Outdoor fan motor	OFF					
Flap and louver	Depend on the flap and louver control					

(13) Outline of clean operation

COOL, DRY, AUTO (COOL, DRY); after operation has stopped, the moisture inside the dryer air conditioner, controls the production of fungus etc.

(a) Operating condition

'Clean' is switched ON, when the air conditioner receives a STOP signal.

(b) Detail of operation

Inverter command speed	0 rps
Indoor fan motor	1st speed
Outdoor fan motor	OFF
Flap and louver	Fully closed

(c) Reset condition

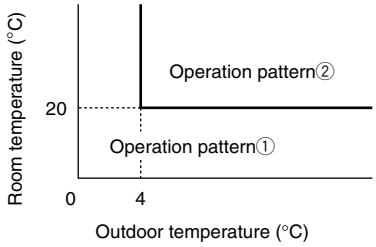
When control finishes 120 minutes after the Clean operation starts. When the stop signal is received from the remote control.

(14) Outline of allergen clear operation

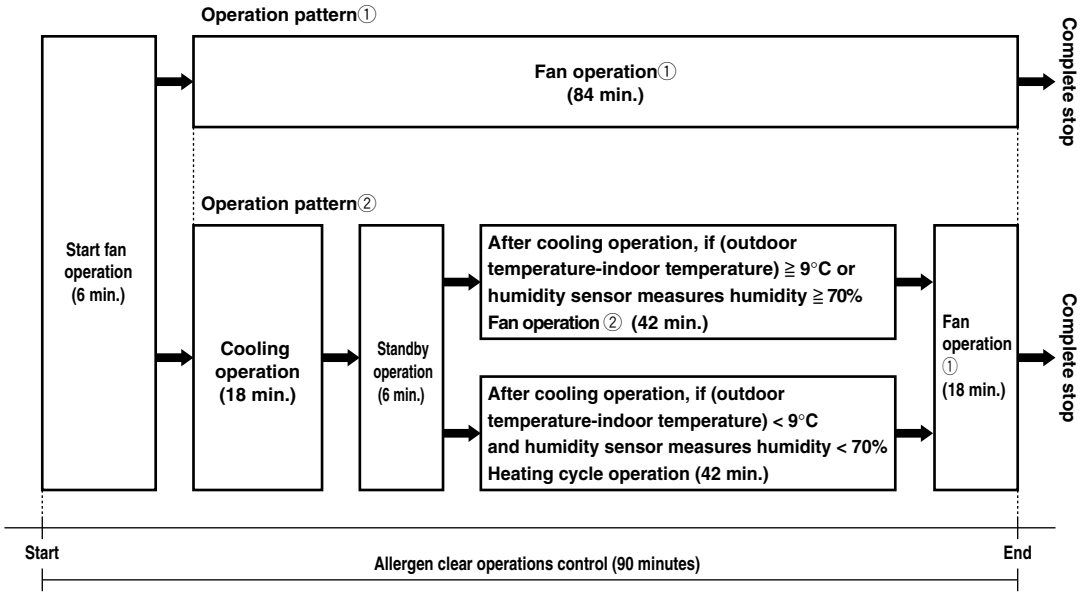
(a) The start fan operation, and decision to the operation pattern.

Indoor fan speed at 2nd speed, outdoor fan speed at 4th speed for 6 minutes, measure room temperature and outdoor temperature, decide to use operation Pattern 1 or operation Pattern 2 according to the conditions in the following diagram.

Inverter command speed	0
Indoor fan motor	2nd speed
Outdoor fan motor	4th speed
Flap and louver	Horizontal, center



(b) Operation flow



(i) Fan operation①

1) Operation content

Inverter command speed	0 rps
Flap and louver	Fully closed/ Center

(ii) Cooling operation

1) Operation content

Inverter command speed	20 rps
Indoor fan motor	2nd speed
Outdor fan motor	3rd speed
Flap and louver	Horizoc/Center
4-way valve	OFF

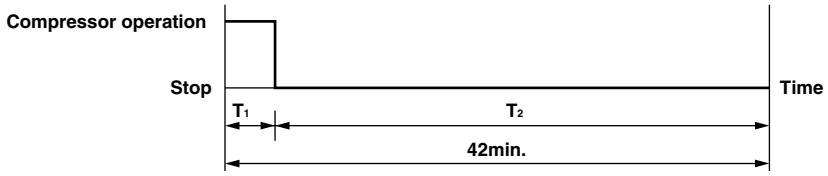
Note (1) During cooling operation safety control,frost prevention control, and cooling overload protective control are generally not applicable

(iii) Heating cycle operation

1) Operation content

	When the compressor is operating	**When the compressor is stopped (Including protection stoppage)**
Inverter command speed	20 rps	0 rps
Indoor fan motor	OFF	
Outdoor fan motor	3rd speed	Determined by heating stop mode
Flap and louver	Horizontal/ Center	
4-way valve	ON	Determined by heating stop mode

2) Operation time



(Sec.)

After cooling operation (outdoor temperature–indoor temperature)	~–12°C	–12°C~–10°C	–10°C~–8°C	–8°C~–6°C	–6°C~–4°C	–4°C~–2°C	–2°C~0°C	0°C~4°C	4°C~9°C
T_1 (Compressor operation time)	90	80	70	60	50	40	30	20	10
T_2 (Compressor stopped time)	2430	2440	2450	2460	2470	2480	2490	2500	2510
Heating operation control time (T_1+T_2)	42min.								

(iv) Fan operation②

1) Operation content

Inverter command speed	0 rps
Indoor fan motor	OFF

(v) Standby operation

1) Operation content

Inverter command speed	0 rps
Indoor fan motor	OFF

stop mode
/ Center

(15) ECONOMY operation (ECONO button on remote control: ON)

(a) The set temperature is raised by 1.5ºC (0.5ºC every one hour) at cooling operation and lowered by 2.5ºC (Steps of 1ºC, 1ºC and 0.5ºC every one hour) at heating operation to continue the operation with the following contents.

(b) Detail of operation

Item \ Model	SRK63ZE-S1		SRK71ZE-S1	
Operation mode	Cooling	Heating	Cooling	Heating
Inverter command speed	12~46 rps	12~60 rps	12~52 rps	12~66 rps
Indoor fan motor	2nd, 4th speed	3rd, 5th speed	2nd, 4th speed	3rd, 5th speed
Outdoor fan motor	3rd~5th speed			

(16) External control (remote display)/control of input signal

Make sure to connect the wired remote control unit. Control of input signal is not available without the wired remote control unit.

(a) External control (remote display) output

Following output connectors (CNT) are provided on the printed circuit board of indoor unit.

(i) Operation output: Power to engage DC 12V relay (provided by the customer) is outputted during operation.

(ii) Heating output: Power to engage DC 12V relay (provided by the customer) is outputted during the heating operation.

(iii) Compressor ON output: Power to engage DC 12V relay (provided by the customer) is outputted while the compressor is operating.

(iv) Error output: When any error occurs, the power to engage DC 12V relay (provided by the customer) is outputted.

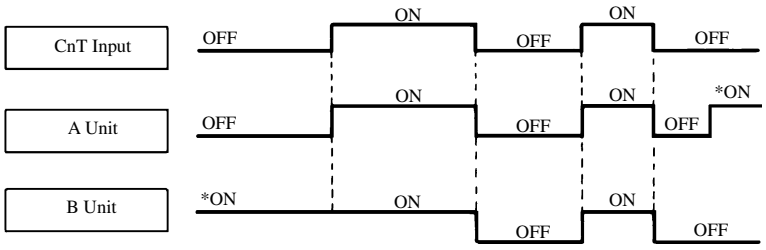
(b) Control of input signal

Control of input signal (switch input, timer input) connectors (CNT) are provided on the control circuit board of the indoor unit. However, when the operation of air conditioner is under the Center Mode, the remote control by CnT is invalid.

(i) If the factory settings (Jumper wire J1 EXTERNAL INPUT on the PCB) are set, or "LEVEL INPUT" is selected in the wired remote control's indoor unit settings.

1) Input signal to CnT OFF → ON – – – – Air conditioner ON

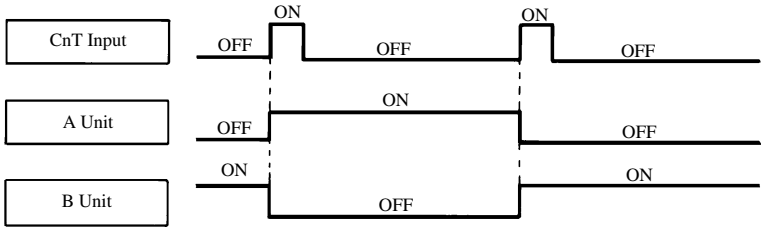
2) Input signal to CnT ON → OFF – – – – Air conditioner OFF



Note (1) The ON with the * mark indicates an ON operation using the remote control unit switch, etc.

(ii) When Jumper wire J1 on the PCB of indoor unit is cut at the field or "PULSE INPUT" is selected in the wired remote control's indoor unit settings.

Input signal to CnT becomes valid at OFF → ON only and the motion of air conditioner [ON/OFF] is inverted.



(17) Operation permission/prohibition control

The air conditioner operation is controlled by releasing the jumper wire (J3) on the indoor control board and inputting the external signal into the CnT.

When the jumper wire (J3) is short circuited	When the jumper wire (J3) is released
Normal operation is enable (when shipping) When CnT input is set to ON, the operation starts and if the input is set to OFF, the operation stops. For the CnT and remote control inputs, the input which is activated later has priority and can start and stop the operation.	Permission / Prohibition mode When Cnt input is set to ON, the operation mode is changed to permission and if input is set to OFF the operation is prohibited.

(b) When the CnT input is set to ON (Operation permission)

(i) The air conditioner can be operated or stopped by the signal from the remote control signal line.
(When the "CENTER" mode is set, the operation can be controlled only by the center input.)

(ii) When the CnT input is changed from OFF to ON, the air conditioner operation mode is changed depending on the status of the jumper wire (J1) on the indoor control board.

When the jumper wire (J1) is short circuited	When the jumper wire (J1) is released
The signal (i) above starts the air conditioner. (Shipping status)	When the CnT input is set to ON, the air conditioner starts operation. After that, the operation of the air conditioner depends on (i) above. (Local status)

(c) When the CnT input is set to OFF (Prohibition)

(i) The air conditioner cannot be operated or stopped by the signal from the remote control signal line.

(ii) The air conditioner operation is stopped when the CnT input is changed from ON to OFF.

(d) When the operation permission / prohibition mode is set to effective by the indoor function setting selected by the remote control, the operation depends on (a) above.

(18) Protective control function

(a) Indoor fan motor protection

When the air conditioner is operating and the indoor fan motor is turned ON, if the indoor fan motor has operated at 300 rpm or

TIMER light illuminates simultaneously and the RUN light flashing 6 times at each 8-second.

(b) Dew condensation prevention control [Cooling (including automatic), cooling oriented dehumidifying operation]

(i) Operating conditions: When all of the following conditions are met.

① When the inverter command speed is higher than 20 rps, and the humidity sensor value is higher than 68% continuously for more than 20 minutes.

② Indoor heat exchanger temperature ≦ Room temperature –12ºC.

(ii) Detail of operation:

① Indoor heat exchanger temperature ≦ Room temperature –12ºC

The inverter command speed is reduced 4rps at each 20 seconds. Lower limit speed is 20 rps.

② Room temperature –12ºC <Indoor heat exchanger temperature ≦ Room temperature –8ºC

The inverter command speed is maintained for 20 seconds.

③ When this control continues for more than 30 minutes, carry out air flow control.

a) Up/down air flow

When selecting other than Up/down swing or multi-directional air flow, compel flat orientation.

b) Left/right air flow

When selecting other than Left/right swing or multi-directional air flow, compel centralized orientation.

(iii) Reset conditions: When either of the following conditions is satisfied.

① The humidity sensor value is less than 63%.

② The inverter command speed is less than 20 rps.

③ Indoor heat exchanger temperature > Room temperature –8ºC.

The inverter command speed is raised by 1rps and kept at that speed for 20 seconds. This process is repeated until the calculated speed is reached.

(c) Frost prevention for indoor heat exchanger (During cooling or dehumidifying)

◆ **< I >**

(i) Operating conditions: After the inverter command speed is at a value other than 0 rps for ten minutes, when the indoor heat exchanger temperature is less than 2.5°C.

(ii) Detail of operation

1)

Inverter command speed	0rps
Indoor fan motor	Depends on inverter command speed
Outdoor fan motor	OFF
4-way valve	OFF

2) If the indoor heat exchanger temperature reaches more than 8°C, the inverter command speed shall be limited to 50rps to restart operation.

(iii) Reset conditions: Indoor heat exchanger temperature reaches more than 8°C, inverter command speed is at a value other than 0rps for 10 minutes.

◆ **< II >**

(i) Operating conditions: When all of the following conditions are met.

① After the inverter command speed is at a value other than 0 rps for 8 minutes, when the indoor heat exchanger tempera-

(ii) Detail of operation:

① Indoor heat exchanger temperature ≦ 5ºC

The inverter command speed is reduced 4rps at each 20 seconds. Lower limit speed is 20 rps.

② 5ºC <Indoor heat exchanger temperature ≦ 8ºC

The inverter command speed is maintained for 20 seconds.

(iii) Reset conditions: When either of the following condition is satisfied.

① The inverter command speed is less than 20rps.

② The indoor heat exchanger temperature is more than 8ºC.

The inverter command speed is raised by 1rps and kept at that speed for 20 seconds. This process is repeated until the calculated speed is reached.

(d) Cooling overload protective control

(i) Operating conditions: When the outdoor unit is operating with the outdoor unit speed of other than 0 rps, and when the outdoor air temperature sensor (Th5) becomes 41ºC or over for 30 seconds continuously.

(ii) Detail of operation

1) Outdoor fan is stepped up by 3 speed step. (Upper limit speed is 7th speed.)
2) The lower limit of control speed is set to 30 rps and even if the calculated result becomes lower than that after fuzzy calculation, the speed is kept to 30 rps. However, when the thermo becomes OFF, the speed is reduced to 0 rps.

(iii) Reset conditions: When either of the following condition is satisfied.

① When the outdoor air temperature becomes 40ºC or less.

② When the inverter command speed is 0rps.

(e) Cooling low outdoor temperature protective control

◆ **< I >**

(i) Operating conditions: When the outdoor air temperature sensor (Th5) is 22ºC or lower continues for 30 seconds while outdoor speed is other than 0rps.

(ii) Detail of operation: After the outdoor fan operates at 3rd speed for 60 seconds; the corresponding outdoor heat exchanger temperature shall implement the following controls.

① Outdoor heat exchanger temperature ≦ 22ºC

After the outdoor fan speed drops (down) to one speed for 60 seconds; if the outdoor heat exchanger temperature is lower than 22°C, gradually reduce the outdoor fan speed by 1 speed. (Lower limit speed is 1st speed)

② 22ºC < Outdoor heat exchanger temperature ≦ 40ºC

After the outdoor fan speed maintains at 3rd speed for 20 seconds; if the outdoor heat exchanger temperature is 22°C~ 40°C, maintain outdoor fan speed.

③ Outdoor heat exchanger tempeature > 40ºC

After the outdoor fan speed rises (up) to 1 speed for 60 seconds; if the outdoor heat exchanger temperature is higher than 40°C, gradually increase outdoor fan speed by 1 speed. (Upper limit speed is 3rd speed)

(iii) Reset conditions: When the either of the following conditions is satisfied

① When the outdoor air temperature sensor (Th5) becomes 25ºC or higher.

② When the inverter command speed is 0rps.

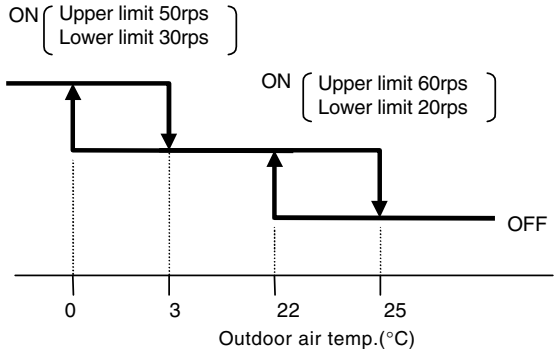
◆ **< II >**

(i) Operating conditions: When the outdoor air temperature sensor (Th5) is 22ºC or lower continues for 30 seconds while outdoor speed is other than 0rps.

(ii) Detail of operation:

an 20(30)rps, the speed is kept to 20(30)rps. However, when the thermo becomes OFF, the speed is reduced to 0rps.

② The upper limit of control speed is set to 60(50)rps and even if the calculated result becomes higher than that after fuzzy calculation, the speed is kept to 60(50)rps.



(iii) Reset conditions: When the either of the following condition is satisfied

① When the outdoor air temperature sensor (Th5) becomes 25ºC or higher.

② When the inverter command speed is 0rps.

(f) High pressure control

(i) Purpose: Prevents anomalous high pressure operation during heating.

(ii) Detector: Indoor heat exchanger sensor (Th2)

(iii) Detail of operation:

① 56ºC ≦ Indoor heat exchanger temperature < 58°C

The inverter command speed is reduced 2rps at each 20 seconds. When the indoor unit heat exchanger temperature is 58°C or higher but less 61°C, the speed is reduced 4rps at each 20 seconds. The lower limit speed is 30rps. When the temperature is 61°C or higher for 1 minute continuously, the inverter is stopped.

② 48.5ºC ≦ Indoor unit heat exchanger temperature < 56ºC

The inverter command speed is been maintained and the operation has continued for more than 20 seconds at the same speed, it returns to the normal heating operation.

Note (1) Indoor fan retains the fan tap when it enters in the high pressure control. Outdoor fan is operated in accordance with the speed.

(iv) Reset conditions: When the indoor heat exchanger temperature is less than 48.5°C

The inverter command speed is raised by 1rps and kept at that speed for 20 seconds. This process is repeated until the calculated speed is reached.

(g) Heating overload protective control

(i) Operating conditions: When the unit is operating with the outdoor unit speed other than 0 rps or when the outdoor air temperature sensor (Th5) rose beyond 22ºC for 30 seconds continuously.

(ii) Detail of operation:

① Taking the upper limit of control speed range at 50 rps, if the output speed obtained with the fuzzy calculation exceeds the upper limit, the upper limit value is maintained.

② The lower limit of control speed is set to 30 rps and even if the calculated result becomes lower than that after fuzzy calculation, the speed is kept to 30 rps. However, when the thermo becomes OFF, the speed is reduced to 0 prs.

③ The outdoor fan is lowered forcibly by 1step. (Lower limit speed is 2nd speed.)

(c) Reset conditions: When the outdoor air temperature drops below 21ºC.

(h) Heating low outdoor temperature protective control

◆ **< I >**

(i) Operating conditions: When the outdoor air temperature sensor (Th5) is 4°C or lower continues for 30 seconds while outdoor speed is other than 0rps.

20rps. However, when the thermo becomes OFF, the speed is reduced to 0rps.

(iii) Reset conditions: When the outdoor air temperature sensor (Th5) becomes 6°C or higher.

◆ **< II >**

(i) Operating conditions: When the outdoor air temperature sensor (Th5) is 4°C or lower continues for 30 seconds while outdoor speed is other than 0rps.

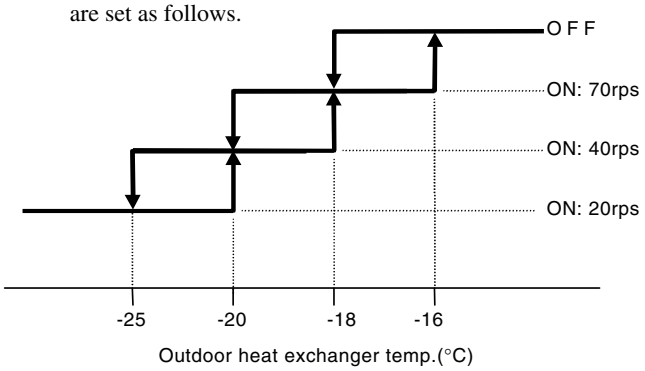
(ii) Detail of operation: Outdoor fan is stepped up by 2 speed step. (Upper limit 7th speed)

(iii) Reset conditions: When the outdoor air temperature sensor (Th5) becomes 6°C or higher.

◆ **< III >**

(i) Operating conditions: When the outdoor unit is operating with the speed of other than 0rps, and when the outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Th4) is less than -18°C.

(ii) Detail of operation: The inverter command speed upper limit and corresponding outdoor heat exchanger temperature are set as follows.



(iii) Reset conditions: When the either of the following conditions is satisfied

① When the outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Th4) becomes -16°C or higher.

② When the inverter command speed is 0rps.

(i) Compressor protection start

(i) When the indoor unit calculated speed is 30rps or over at operation start, the unit is operated with 30rps for 1 minute and 45 seconds. After that when the calculated speed is 38rps or over, the unit is operated with 38rps for 1minute and 15 seconds. After that when the calculated speed is 46rps or over, the unit is operated with 46rps for 1minute. After that when the calculated speed is 54rps or over,the unit is operated with 54rps for 1minute then moved to command speed.

(ii) At thermo operation (OFF → ON) this control is not executed.

(iii) The indoor unit fan corresponds to the command speed of each operation mode.

Note (1) When the calculated speed is less than 30 rps, the unit is started with low load starting described in article (k).

(j) Inching prevention

When the compressor goes into the thermo operation within 5 minutes since operation start or becomes various dehumidifying operations, the operation is continued with the command speed of 12 rps forcibly.

(k) Low load starting

(i) When the unit is started with calculated speed of less than 20 rps, it is operated with 20 rps for 60 seconds, then the operation is moved to the command speed.

(ii) The indoor fan corresponds to the operation mode.

Cooling: Speed corresponding to the command speed of air flow switching

Dehumidification: Speed decided in the operation region

Heating: The lower one between the speed corresponding to the command speed and the hot keep speed

(l) Freezing cycle system protective control

(i) Operating conditions: When both of following conditions have continued for more than 5 minutes later than 5 minutes after the start of operation.

During heating: Indoor heat exchanger temperature–Room temperature < 6ºC

(ii) Detail of operation: The inverter command speed repeats 30 minutes at 30rps↔2 minutes at 62 rps.

(iii) Reset conditions: When the condition becomes outside of either conditions 1) or 2) shown above

Note (1) This control is valid when the room air temperature is in the range of 10 to 40ºC at cooling and dehumidification operation and 0 to 40ºC at heating operation.

(m) Prevention of continuous low speed operation: For oil return to compressor

(i) Operating conditions: When inverter command speed of less than 20 rps continues for 60 minutes

(ii) Detail of operation: The unit is operated at inverter command speed of 30 rps forcibly for 15 seconds. (The indoor and outdoor fans are not changed.)

Note (1) When the inverter command of exceeding 30 rps is directed during 30 rps forced operation, the unit follows it.

(n) Current cut

(i) Purpose: Inverter is protected from overcurrent.

(ii) Detail of operation: Output current from the converter is monitored with a shunt resistor and, if the current exceeds the setting value, the compressor is stopped immediately. Operation starts again after a delay time of 3 minutes.

(o) Outdoor unit failure

This is a function for determining when there is trouble with the outdoor unit during air conditioning.

The compressor is stopped if any one of the following in item 1), 2) is satisfied. Once the unit is stopped by this function, it is not restarted.

1) When the input current is measured at 1 A or less for 3 continuous minutes or more.
2) If the outdoor unit sends a 0 rps signal to the indoor unit 3 times or more within 20 minutes of the power being turned on.

(p) Current safe

(i) Purpose: Current is controlled not to exceed the upper limit of the setting operation current.

(ii) Detail of operation: Input current to the converter is monitored with the current sensor fixed on the printed circuit board of the outdoor unit and, if the operation current value reaches the limiting current value, the outdoor unit speed is reduced.

If the mechanism is actuated when the speed of outdoor unit is less than 20 rps, the compressor is stopped immediately. Operation starts again after a delay time of 3 minutes.

(q) Power transistor overheat protection

(i) Purpose: In order to prevent the power transistor overheating during operation, faulty controller operations, deterioration, damage and so on occurs.

(ii) Detail of operation:

The compressor is stopped immediately. When the power transistor sensor temperature is less than 80°C, restart.

② 90ºC ≦ Power transistor sensor temperature < 110ºC

The outdoor unit speed drops to 4 rps. After 20 seconds, the outdoor unit speed performs the following controls, according to the power thansistor sensor temperature.

If the previous sensor temperature ≦ current sensor temperature	reduce by 4rps
If the previous sensor temperature > current sensor temperature	reduce by 2rps

	Cooling	Heating
Lower limit speed	20rps	20rps

③ 80ºC ≦ Power transistor sensor temperature < 90ºC

Maintain the outdoor unit speed. When the rotation speed is the same for 6 minutes, or when the power transistor sensor temperature is less than 80°C. The speed is raised by 2rps and kept at that speed for 1 minute. This process is repeated until the inverter command speed is reached.

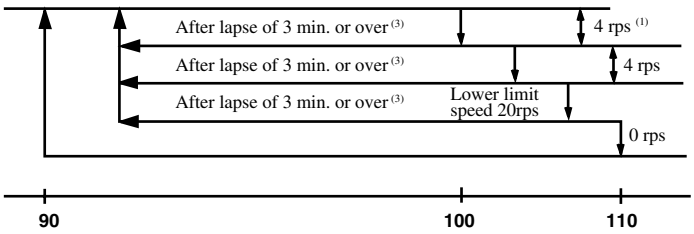
(r) Compressor overheat protection

(i) Purpose: It is designed to prevent deterioration of oil, burnout of motor coil and other trouble resulting from the compressor overheat.

(ii) Detail of operation

1) Speeds are controlled with temperature detected by the sensor mounted on the discharge pipe.

(Example) Fuzzy



Notes (1) When the discharge pipe temperature is in the range of 100 to 110ºC, the speed is reduced by 4 rps.
(2) When the discharge pipe temperature is raised and continues operation for 20 seconds without changing, then the speed is reduced again by 4 rps.
(3) If the discharge pipe temperature is still 90 ºC or greater but less than 100 ºC even when the inverter command speed is maintained for 3 minutes when the temperature is 90 ºC or greater but less than 100 ºC, the speed is raised by 1 rps and kept at that speed for 3 minutes. This process is repeated until the calculated speed is reached.

2) If the temperature of 110ºC is detected by the sensor on the discharge pipe, then the compressor will stop immediately. When the discharge pipe temperature drops and the time delay of 3 minutes is over, the unit starts again within 1 hour but there is no start at the third time.

(s) Serial signal transmission error protection

(i) Purpose: Prevents malfunction resulting from error on the indoor ↔ outdoor signals.

(ii) Detail of operation: If the compressor is operating and a serial signal cannot be received from the indoor control with outdoor control having serial signals continuously for 1 minute and 55 seconds, the compressor is stopped.

After the compressor has been stopped, it will be restarted after the compressor start delay if a serial signal can be received again from the indoor control.

(RUN light: ON, TIMER light: 6 times flash)

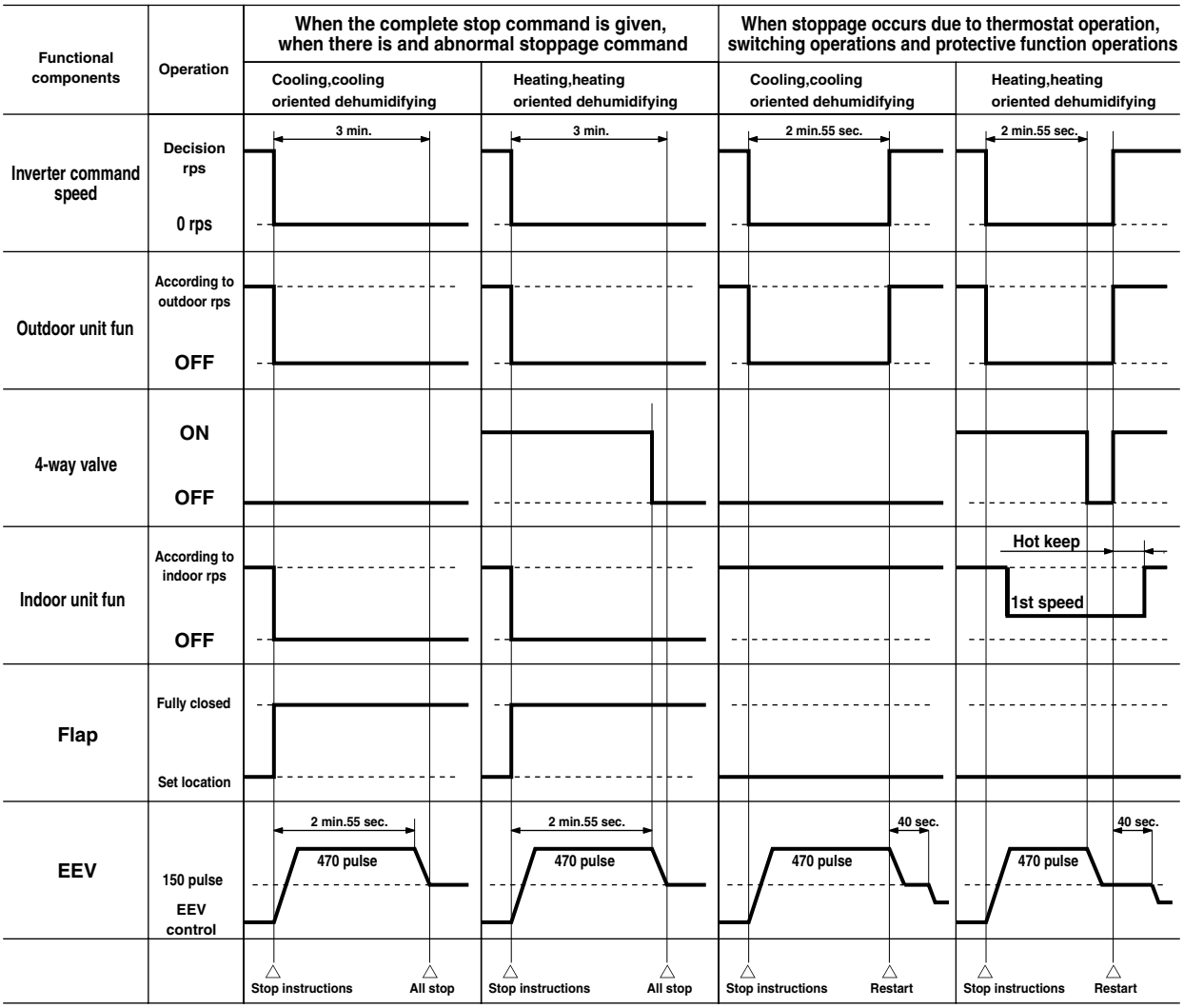
(t) Compressor lock

If the motor for the compressor does not turn 1/12 revolution 0.044 seconds after it has been started, it is determined that a compressor lock has occurred and the compressor is stopped.

(v) Stop mode

(i) Operating conditions: When the operation mode is changed, when the dehumidifying operation is changed from the heating oriented mode to the cooling oriented mode or vice versa, or when the inverter speed turns to 0 rps. [When 0 rps is commanded from the indoor unit controller, or when an outdoor protective function is actuated]

(ii) Detail of operation



1.2.5 APPLICATION DATA

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Please read these "Safety Precautions" first then accurately execute the installation work.

e points which are re listed in the ⚠WARNING section. However, there is also a possibility of serious consequences in relationship to the points listed in the ⚠CAUTION section as well. In either case, important safety related information is indicated, so by all means, properly observe all that is mentioned.

- After completing the installation, along with confirming that no abnormalities were seen from the operation tests, please explain operating methods as well as maintenance methods to the user (customer) of this equipment, based on the owner's manual. Moreover, ask the customer to keep this sheet together with the owner's manual.

⚠ WARNING

- To disconnect the appliance from the mains supply this appliance must be connected to the mains by means of a circuit breaker or a switch (use a recognized 20A) with a contact separation of at least 3mm.
- The appliance shall be installed in accordance with national wiring regulations.
- This system should be applied to places as households, residences and the like. Application to inferior environment such as engineering shop could cause equipment malfunction.
- Please entrust installation to either the company which sold you the equipment or to a professional contractor. Defects from improper installations can be the cause of water leakage, electric shocks and fires.
- Execute the installation accurately, based on following the installation manual. Again, improper installations can result in water leakage, electric shocks and fires.
- For installation, confirm that the installation site can sufficiently support heavy weight. When strength is insufficient, injury can result from a falling of the unit.
- For electrical work, please see that a licensed electrician executes the work while following the safety standards related to electrical equipment, and local regulations as well as the installation instructions, and that only exclusive use circuits are used.
  Insufficient power source circuit capacity and defective installment execution can be the cause of electric shocks and fires.
- Accurately connect wiring using the proper cable, and insure that the external force of the cable is not conducted to the terminal connection part, through properly securing it. Improper connection or securing can result in heat generation or fire.
- Take care that wiring does not rise upward, and accurately install the lid/service panel.It's improper installation can also result heat generation or fire.
- When setting up or moving the location of the air conditioner, do not mix air etc. or anything other than the designated refrigerant (R410A) within the refrigeration cycle.
  Rupture and injury caused by abnormal high pressure can result from such mixing.
- Always use accessory parts and authorized parts for installation construction. Using parts not authorized by this company can result in water leakage, electric shock, fire and refrigerant leakage.
- Ventilate the work area when refrigerant leaks during the operation.
  Coming in contact with fire, refrigerant could generate toxic gas.
- Confirm after the foundation construction work that refrigerant does not leak.
  If coming in contact with fire of a fan heater, a stove or movable cooking stove, etc., refrigerant leaking in the room could generate toxic gas.
- In joining pipes, do not use conventional (R22) pipng flare nuts, etc. The use of conventional pipng materials may lead to the rapture of piping due to higher pressure used for the refrigerant cycle and possible personal injury.
  (Use only piping material designed specifically for R410A)

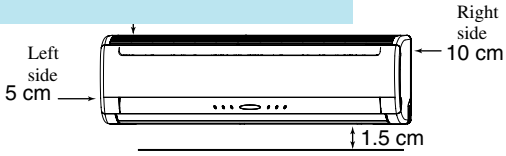
⚠ CAUTION

- Execute proper grounding. Do not connect the ground wire to a gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod or a telephone ground wire.
  Improper placement of ground wires can result in electric shock.
- The installation of an earth leakage breaker is necessary depending on the established location of the unit.
  Not installing an earth leakage breaker may result in electric shock.
- Do not install the unit where there is a concern about leakage of combustible gas.
  The rare event of leaked gas collecting around the unit could result in an outbreak of fire.
- For the drain pipe, follow the installation manual to insure that it allows proper drainage and thermally insulate it to prevent condensation. Inadequate plumbing can result in water leakage and water damage to interior items.
- Do not place objects near the outdoor unit or allow leaves to gather around the unit. If there are objects or leaves around the outdoor unit, small animals may enter unit and contact electrical parts resulting in break down, emission of smoke or flame.

(1) Selection of location for installation

(a) Indoor unit

(i) Where there is no obstructions to the air flow and where the cooled



(iii) A place where there will be enough space for servicing. (Where space mentioned right can be secured)

(iv) Where wiring and the piping work will be easy to conduct.

(v) The place where receiving part is not exposed to the direct rays of the sun or the strong rays of the street lighting.

(vi) A place where it can be easily drained.

(vii) A place separated at least 1m away from the television or the radio. (To prevent interfence to images and sound.)

(b) Outdoor unit

(i) A place where good air circulation can be obtained and where rain, snow or sunshine will not directly strike the unit.

- A place where intake air temperature is over 46°C , it is desirable to install a roof avoiding the sunlight.

(ii) A place where discharged hot air or unit's operating sound will not be a nuisance to the neighborhood.

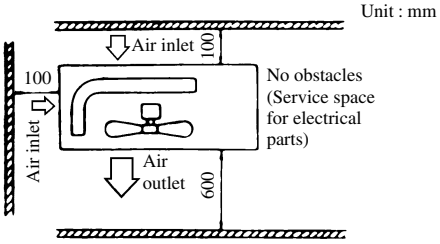
(iii) A place where servicing space can be secured.

(iv) A place where vibration will not be enlarged.

(v) Avoid installing in the following palces.

- A place near the bed room and the like, so that the operation noise will cause no trouble.
- A place where there is possibility of flammable gas leakage.
- A place exposed to strong wind.

(vi) Do not install the unit near the seaside, or where there is possibility of chlorine gas generation.



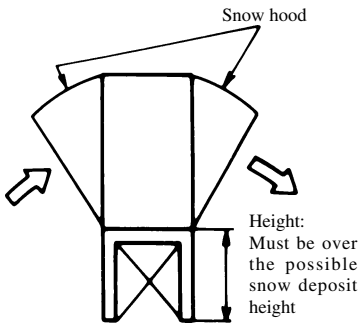
Notes (1) Blowing out port and suction port on the back side of the unit can be installed at a distance of 10cm from walls.
(In case the barrier is 1.2m or above in height, or is overhead, the sufficient space between the unit and wall shall be secured.)

(2) When the unit is installed, the space of the following dimension and above shall be secured.

(vii) In heating operation, snow deposit on the heat-exchanger of outdoor unit must be prevented for keeping the normal performance capacity.

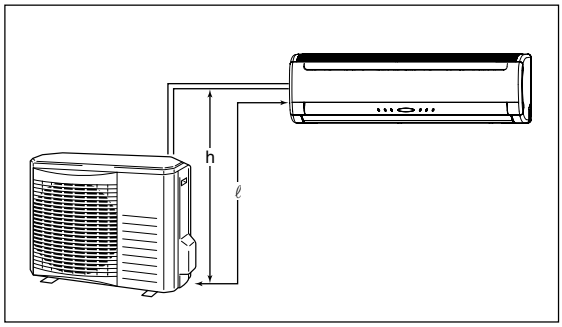
1) Snow-hood on outdoor unit as in drawing, will reduce the frequency of defrost operation.
When installing the snow hood, take care so that the air outlet of the snow hood will not face directly into the most windy direction.

2) Design the base higher than possible snow deposit.



(c) Limitations for one way piping length and vertical height difference.

Item \ Model		All models
One way piping length (ℓ)		30 m
Vertical height difference (h)	Outdoor unit is lower	20 m
	Outdoor unit is higher	20 m

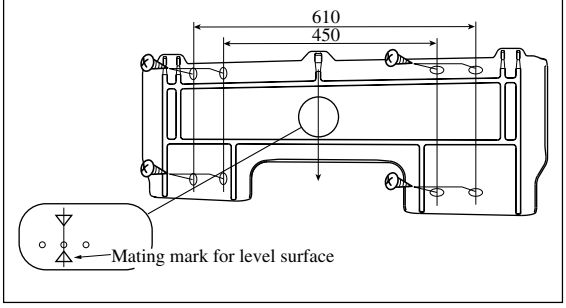


(2) Installation of indoor unit

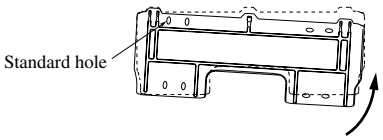
(a) Installation of installation board

(i) Fixing of installation board

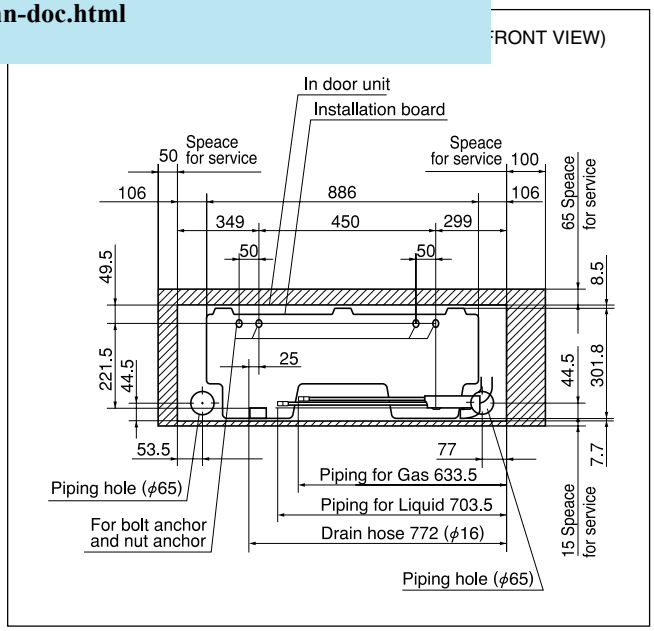
checked.)

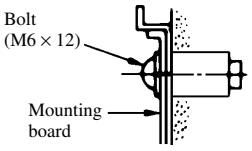
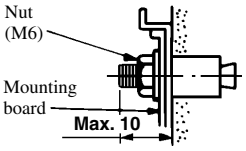


Adjustment of the installation board in the horizontal direction is to be conducted with four screws in a temporary tightened state.



Adjust so that board will be level by turning the board with the standard hole as the center.

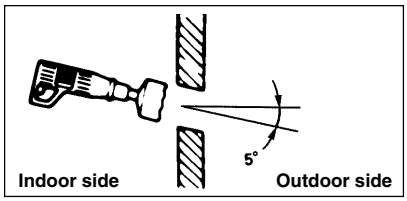


Fixing on concrete wall	
Use of nut anchor	Use of bolt anchor
	

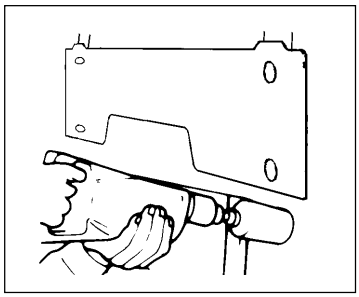
(b) Drilling of holes and fixture sleeve (Option parts)

When drilling the wall that contains a metal lath, wire lath or metal plate, be sure to use pipe hole sleeve sold separately.

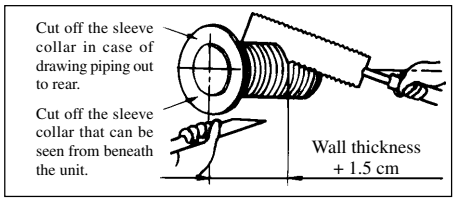
(i) Drill a hole with ø65 whole core drill



Note (1) Drill a hole with incline of 5 degree from indoor side to outdoor side.

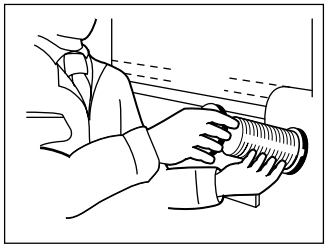


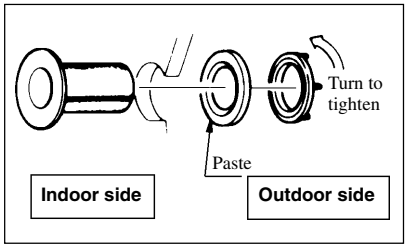
(ii) Adjusting sleeve length

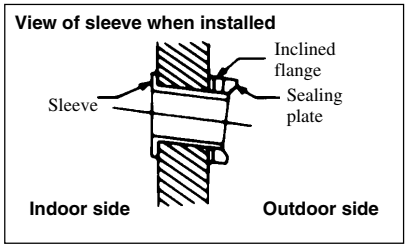


(iii) Install the sleeve

(Inserting sleeve) (*Sleeve + *Inclined + *Sealing plate)







(c) Preparation of indoor unit

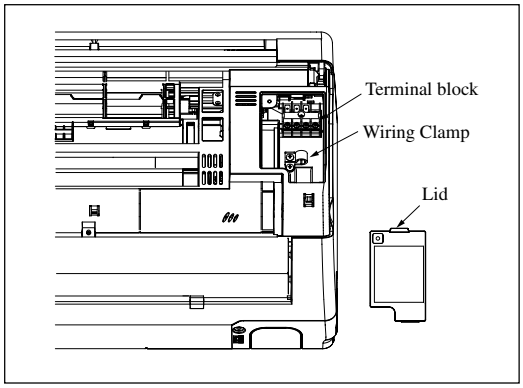
(i) Mounting of connecting wires

1) Open the air inlet panel.

4) Connect the connecting wire securely to the terminal block.

Use cables for interconnection wiring to avoid loosening of the wires.
CENELEC code for cables. Required field cables.
H05RNR4G1.5 (Example)

H	Harmonized cable type
05	300/500 volts
R	Natural-and/or synth, rubber wire insulation
N	Polychloroprene rubber conductors insulation
R	Standed core
4	Number of conductors
G	One conductor of the cable is the earth conductor (yellow/ green)
1.5	Section of copper wire (mm^2)



① Connect the connection wire securely to the terminal block. If the wire is not affixed completely, contact will be poor, and it is dangerous as the terminal block may heat up and catch fire.

② Take care not to confuse the terminal numbers for indoor and outdoor connections.

③ Affix the connection wire using the wiring clamp.

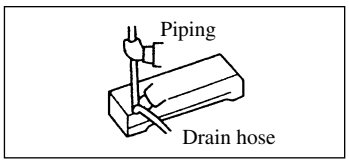
5) Fix the connecting wire by wiring clamp.

6) Attach the lid.

7) Close the air inlet panel.

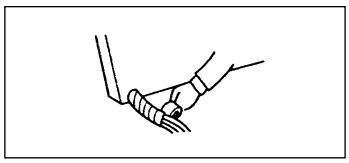
(ii) Installing the support of piping

[Shaping the piping]



- Hold the bottom of the piping and fix direction before stretching it and shaping it.

[Taping of the exterior]



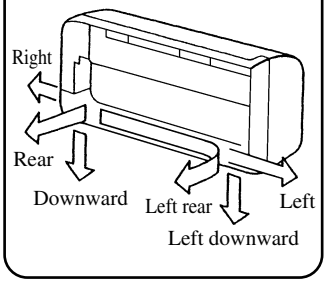
- Tape only the portion that goes through the wall. Always tape the crossover wiring with the piping.

[When the hose is extended to left and taken out from the rear center]

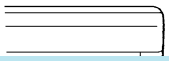
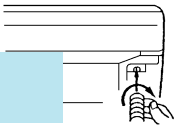
[Top View]

Left-hand-sided-piping	Right-hand-sided-piping
Piping in the left rear direction Piping in the left direction	Piping in the right rear direction Piping in the right direction

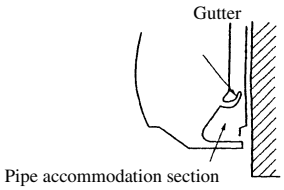
Piping is possible in the rear, left, left lear, left downward, right or downward direction.



[Drain hose changing procedures]

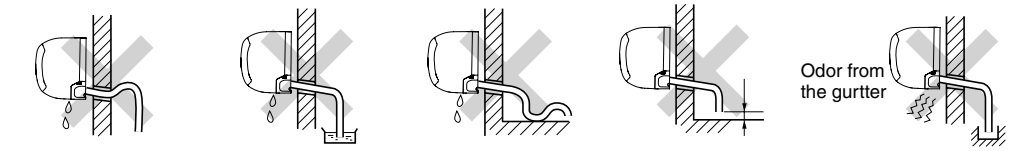
1. Remove the drain hose.	2. Remove the drain cap.	3. Insert the drain cap.	4. Connect the drain hose.
			
● Remove the drain hose, making it rotate.	● Remove it with hand or pliers.	● Insert the drain cap which was removed at proce-dure "2" securely using a hexagonal wrench, etc. Note: Be careful that if it is not inserted securely, water leakage may occur.	● Insert the drain hose securely, makingit rotate. Note: Be careful that if it is not inserted securely, water leakage may occur.

Since this air conditioner has been designed to collect dew drops on the rear surface to the drain pan, do not attach the power cord above the gutter.

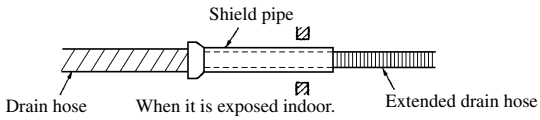


Drainage

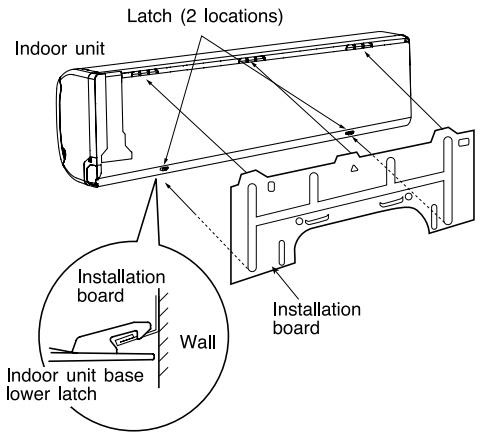
- Arrange the drain hose in a downward angle.
- Avoid the following drain piping.



- Pour water to the drain pan located under the heat exchanger, and ensure that the water is discharged outdoor.
- When the extended drain hose is indoor, always use a shield pipe (to be arranged by the user) and ensure it is thermally insulated.



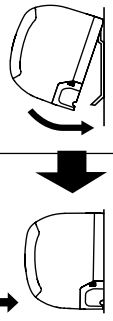
(iii) Fixing of indoor unit



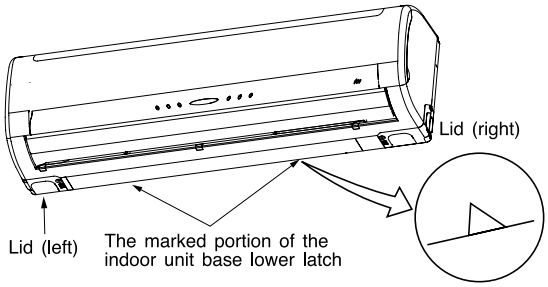
Installation Steps

① Pass the pipe through the hole in the wall, and hook the upper part of the indoor unit to the installation board.

② Gently push the lower part to secure the unit.



- How to remove the indoor unit from the installation board
  ① Push up at the marked portion of the indoor unit base lower latch, and slightly pull it toward you.
  (both right and left hand sides)
  (The indoor unit base lower latch can be removed from the installation board)
  ② Push up the indoor unit upward. So the indoor unit will be removed from the installation board.



(3) Installation of outdoor unit

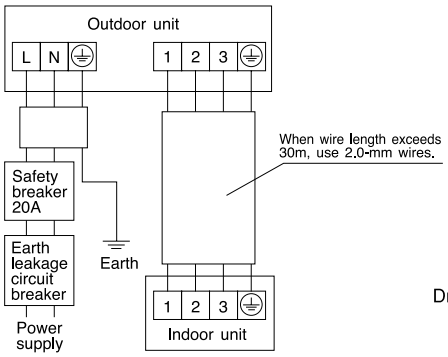
(a) Installation of outdoor unit

(i) Make sure that the unit is stable in installation. Fix the unit to stable base.

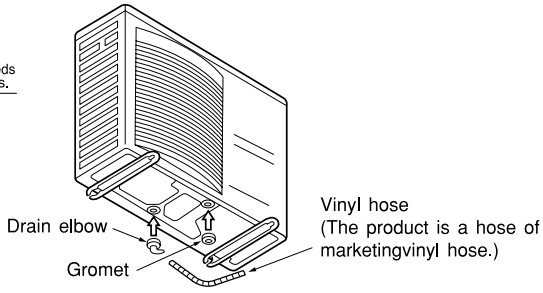
(ii) When installing the unit at a higher place or where it could be toppled by strong winds, secure the unit firmly with foundation

(iv) Connect using ground screw located near ⏚ mark.

(v) In areas where the temperatures drop below 0ºC for serveral continuous days, do not install a drain elbow. (Water dischage could stop due to freezing.)



Power supply cord
CENELEC code for cables requiring field cables
H05RNR3G2.5

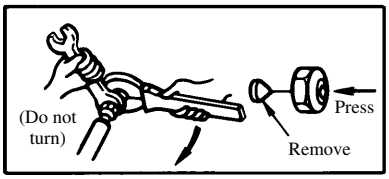


(4) Refrigerant piping

(a) Preparation

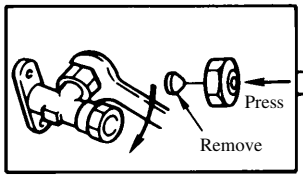
Keep the openings of the pipes covered with tapes etc. to prevent dust, sand, etc. from entering them.

Indoor unit side

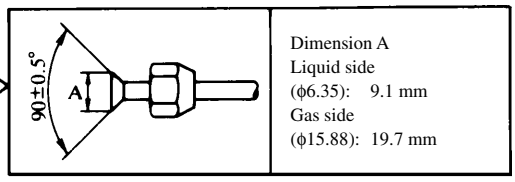


- Remove the flared nuts. (on both liquid and gas sides)

Outdoor unit side



- Remove the flared nuts. (on both liquid and gas sides)

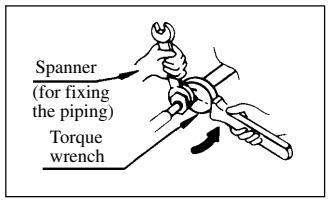


- Install the removed flared nuts to the pipes to be connected, then flare the pipes.

(b) Connection of refrigerant piping

Indoor unit side

- Connect firmly gas and liquid side pipings by Torque wrench.



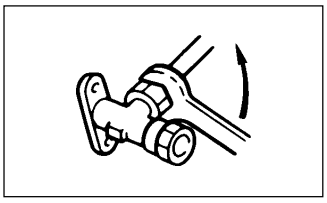
- Specified torquing value:

Liquid side (ø6.35) : 14.0~18.0N·m (1.4~1.8kgf·m)
Gas side (ø15.88) : 68.0~82.0N·m (6.8~8.2kgf·m)

- Always use a Torque wrench and back up spanner to tighten the flare nut.

Outdoor unit side

- Connect firmly gas and liquid side pipings by Torque wrench.



- Specified torquing value:

Liquid side (ø6.35) : 14.0~18.0N·m (1.4~1.8kgf·m)
Gas side (ø15.88) : 68.0~82.0N·m (6.8~8.2kgf·m)

- Use one more spanner to fix the valve.

(c) Air purge

(i) Tighten all flare nuts in the pipings both indoor and outside will so as not to cause leak.

(ii) Connect service valve, charge hose, manifold valve and vacuum pump as is illustrated below.

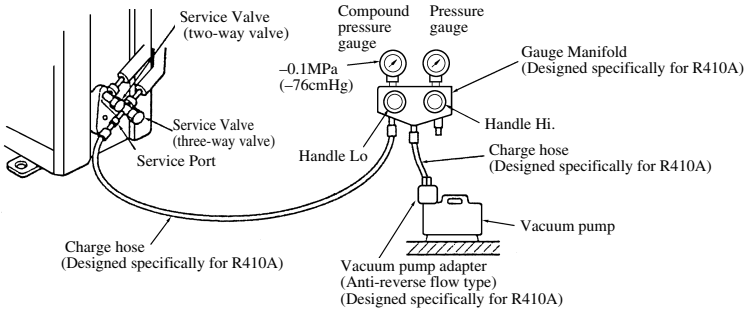
(iii) Open manifold valve handle Lo to its full width, and perform vacuum or evacuation.

Continue the vacuum or evacuation operation for 15 minutes or more and check to see that the vacuum gauge reads – 0.1

ded wrench.

(v) Detach the charge hoses..

(vi) Check for possible leakage of gas in the connection parts of both indoor and outdoor.



- Since the system uses service ports differing in diameter from those found on the conventional models, a charge hose (for R22) presently in use is not applicable.
  Please use one designed specifically for R410A
- Please use an anti-reverse flow type vacuum pump adapter so as to prevent vacuum pump oil from running back into the system.
  Oil running back into an air-conditioning system may cause the refrigerant cycle to break down.

Additional refrigerant charge

When refrigerant piping exceeds 15m conduct additional refrigerant charge by weight after refrigerant piping completion.
Additional charge amount per meter = 25g/m

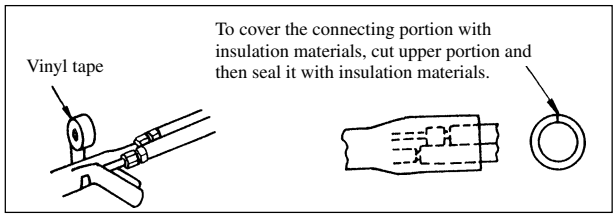
[Example]

How much amount of additional charge for 25m piping?

(25 – 15)m × 25g/m = 250g | 250g for additional charge

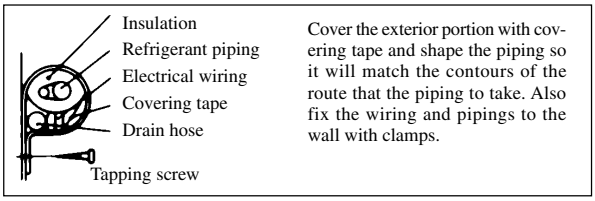
(d) Insulation of connecting portion

(i) Cover the connecting portion of the refrigerant piping with the pipe cover and seal them.
If neglecting to do so, moisture occurs on the piping and water will drip out.



(ii) Finishing and fixing

1) Tie up the piping with wrapping tape, and shape it so that it conforms to which the pipe is attached.
2) Fix them with clamps as right figure.



(5) Test run

(a) Conduct trial run after confirming that there is no gas leaks.

(b) When conducting trial run set the remote controller thermostat to continuous operation position. However when the power source is cut off or when the unit's operation switch is turned off or was turned to fan operation position, the unit will not go into operation in order to protect the compressor.

(c) Insert in electric plug into the electric outlet and make sure that it is not loose.

(i) When there is something wrong with the electric outlet and if the insertion of the electric plug is insufficient, there may occur a burn out.

(ii) It is very important to be careful of above when plugging in the unit to an already furnished electrical outlet.

(d) Explain to the customer on the correct usage of the air conditioner in simple layman's terms.

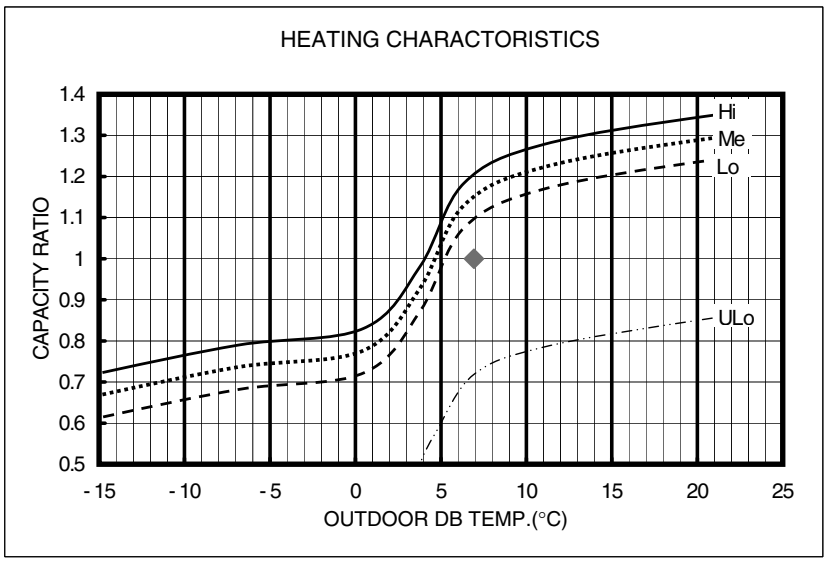
(e) Make sure that drain flows properly.

(f) Standard operation data

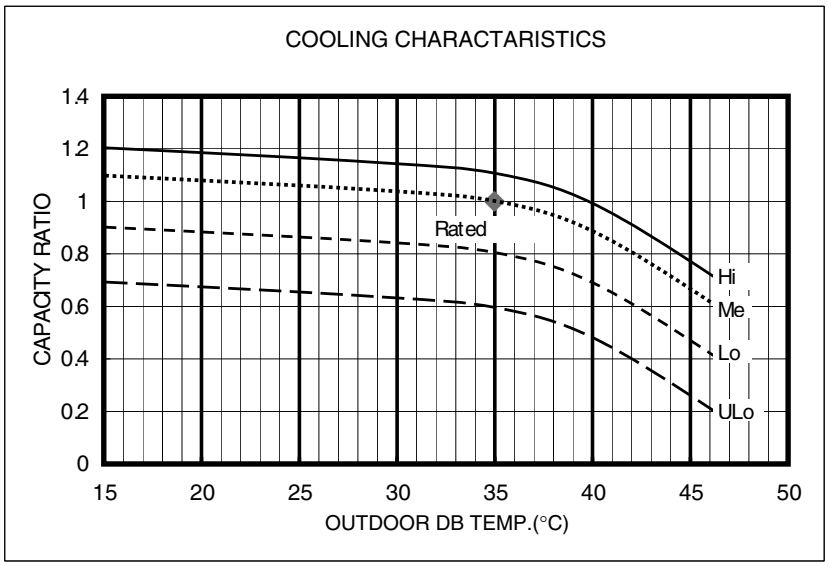
(220/230/240V)

			S1
High pressure (MPa)	**Cooling**	–	–
	Heating	**2.5~2.7**	**2.6~2.8**
Low pressure (MPa)	**Cooling**	**0.8~1.0**	**0.7~0.9**
	Heating	–	–
Temp. difference between return air and supply air (°C)	**Cooling**	**12~14**	**12~14**
	Heating	**16~18**	**17~19**
Running current (A)	**Cooling**	**8.4/8.1/7.7**	**10.1/9.7/9.3**
	Heating	**8.5/8.2/7.8**	**10.1/9.7/9.3**

Note (1) The data are measured at following conditions
Ambient air temperature
Indoor side: Cooling ... 27˚C DB, 19˚C WB, Heating ... 20˚C DB
Outdoor side: Cooling ... 35˚C DB, 24˚C WB, Heating ... 7˚C DB, 6˚C WB



INDOOR CONDITION: DB20°C

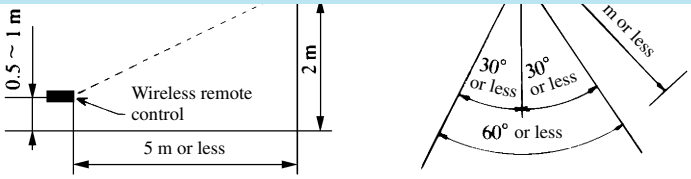


INDOOR CONDITION: DB27°C/WB19°C

(6) Precautions for wireless remote control installation and operation

(a) Wireless remote control covers the following distances:

(i) When operating facing the air conditioner:



If the distances exceed the area indicated above, be sure to check the receiver status.

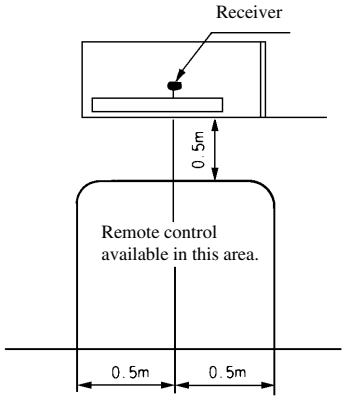
(ii) When manipulating the remote control mounted on a wall:

Make sure that it works normally (i.e., transmission/reception signal is audible) before mounting.

rectly facing the
ditioner when being
manipulated.

(2) The typical coverage is indicated (in the left illustration). It may be more or less depending on the installation.

(3) The coverage may be less or even nil. If the sensing element is exposed to strong light, such as direct sunlight, illumination, etc., or dust is deposited on it or it is used behind a curtain, etc.



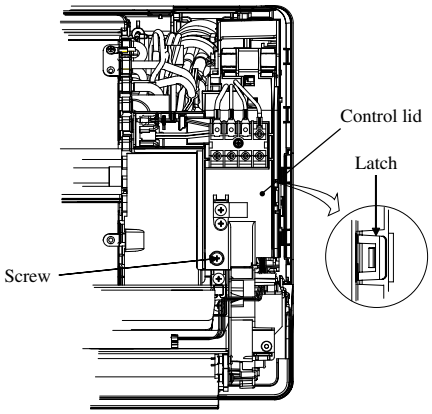
(7) Installation of wired remote control and super link adapter (SC-AD-E) (Optional parts)

(a) Modifying the indoor unit's printed circuit board

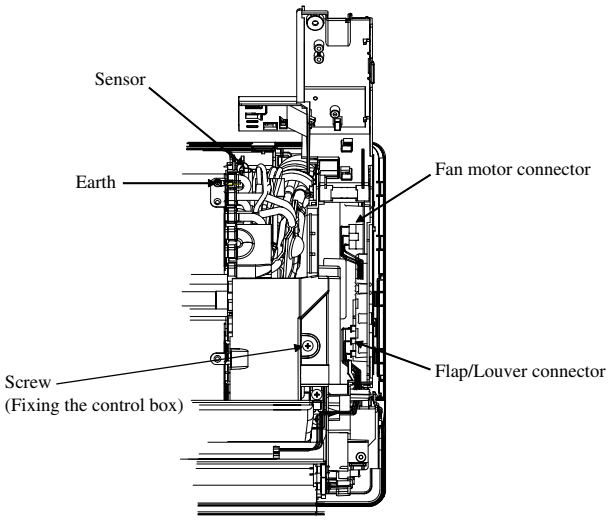
(ii) Remove the front panel (Refer to the installation directions).

(iii) Remove the control box

- Remove the screw and the latch, and open the control lid.

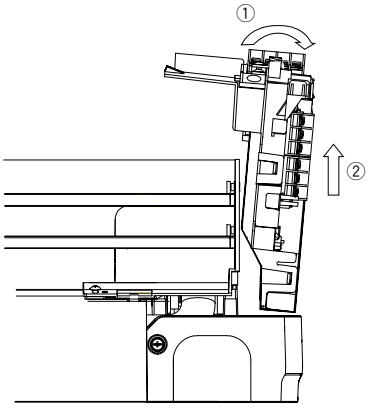


- Remove the flap connector, the louver connector, the fan motor connector, the earth and the sensor.



- Remove the screw fixing the control box.
- Remove the control box from the base .

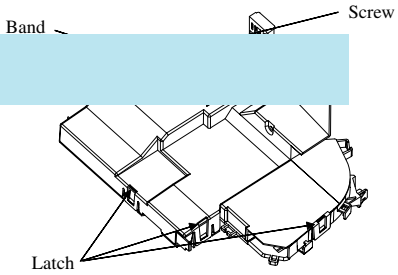
※ It is possible to remove the control box from the base by leaning the control box slightly to right-hand side and pulling it toward you.



(iv) Cut the jumper attached on the board.

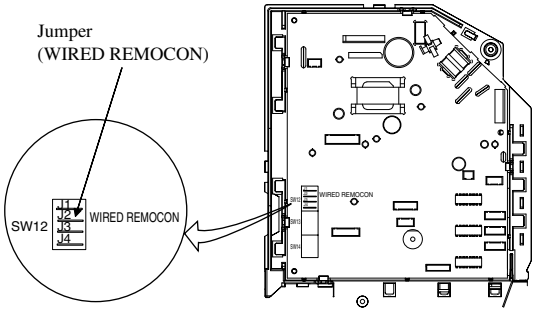
- Remove the upper box.

※ Remove the screw, the latch and the band.



- Cut the jumper (printed "WIRED REMOCON") attached on the board.

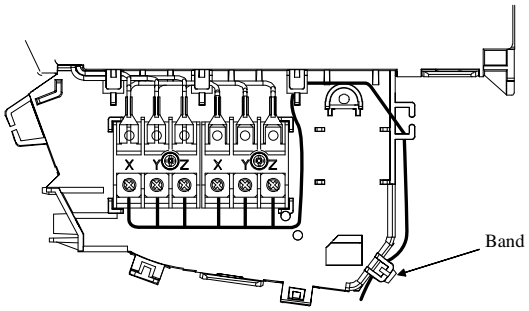
※ It is impossible to control by the wireless remote control after cutting the jumper.



- Install the upper box.

(v) Connect the wire

- Connect the wired remote control and super link wire.
  (Please refer to the installation manual of attachment in wired remote control for details)



※ Each wire can be connected the left or right terminal block.

(vi) Install the control box.
※ Be careful not to bite the wire.

(vii) Install the front panel.

(vii) Install the air inlet panel.

Notes (1) One remote control cannot control two or more indoor units.
(2) To connect the super link, the optional SC-AD-E (super link adapter) is required.

(b) Installation of wired remote control (Optional parts)

(i) Selection of installation location

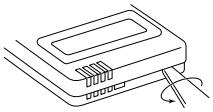
Avoid the following locations

1) Direct sunlight.
2) Close to heating device

(ii) Installation procedure

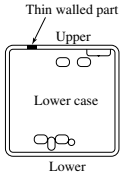
1) Exposed fiting

a) Open the remote control case.



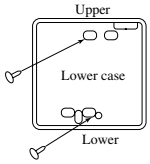
- Put a screw driver (flat-head) into the concavity made on the upper part of a remote control unit and twist it lightly to open the casing.

b) The cord of a remote control unit can only be pulled out in the upward direction.



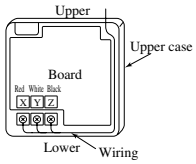
- Cut off with nippers or a knife a thin walled part made on the upper end of the remote control unit's bottom casing, and then remove burrs with a file or the like.

c) Fix the remote control unit's bottom casing onto a wall with two wood screws supplied as accessories.



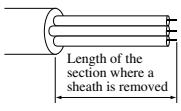
d) Connect the remote control to the terminal block. Connect the terminals of the remote control to the indoor unit with the same numbers. Because the terminal block has polarity, the device becomes inoperative if there are wrong connections.

Terminals: ⓧRed wire, ⓨWhite wire, ⓩBlack wire



- Use a cord of 0.3mm^2 (recommended) - 0.5mm^2 (maximum) for a remote control unit cord. Remove a sheathe of the remote control unit cord for the section laid within the remote control unit casing.

  The length of each wire that should be left after a sheath is removed is as follows:



Black: 195mm, White: 205mm, Red: 215mm

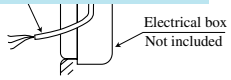
e) Replace the top casing as before.

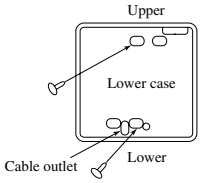
f) Use a cord clamp to attach the remote control cord to the wall.

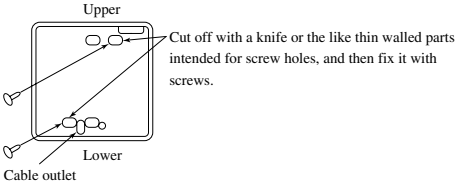
g) Set the functions according to the types of in door unit. See Section "Function Setting".

2) Recessed fitting

a) The Electrical box and remote control (shield wire must be use in case of extension) are first embedded.







b) Remove the upper case to the remote control.

c) Attach the lower case to the Electricl box with two M4 screws. (Head diameter must be 8 mm). Choose either of the following two positions in fixing it with screws.

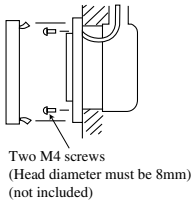
d) Connect the remote cord to the remote control.

Refer to [Exposed Fitting].

e) Installation work is completed by replacing the top casing onto the bottom casing as before.

f) Set the function switch according to the type of the indoor unit.

Refer to [Function setting].



Precation in Extending the Remote control cord

▶ Maximum total extension 600m.

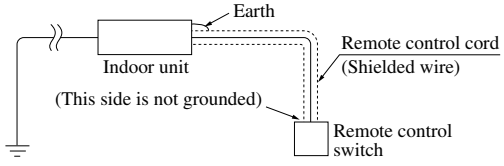
The cord should be a shielded wire.

● For all types : 0.3mm^2× 3 cores

Note (1) Use cables up to 0.5mm^2 (maximum) for those laid inside the remote control unit casing and connect to a different size cable at a vicinity point outside the remote control unit, if necessary.

Within 100-200m····· 0.5 mm^2 × 3 cores
Within 300m····· 0.75 mm^2 × 3 cores
Within 400m····· 1.25 mm^2 × 3 cores
Within 600m····· 2.0 mm^2 × 3 cores

● The shielded wire should be grounded at one side only.



(c) Setting functions using the wired remote control

(i) The default settings of this unit's functions are as follows: If you want to charge a setting, follow the procedure found in the installation manual and set to your desired setting.

Function number Ⓐ	Function description Ⓑ	Setting Ⓒ	Default setting
(01)	GRILLE SET (Grille lift panel setting)	INVALID	○
		50Hz AREA ONLY	
		60Hz AREA ONLY	
02	AUTO RUN SET	AUTO RUN ON	○
		AUTO RUN OFF	
03	TEMP S/W	VALID	○
		INVALID	
04	MODE S/W	VALID	○
		INVALID	
05	ON/OFF S/W	VALID	○
		INVALID	
06	FANSPEED S/W	VALID	○
		INVALID	
07	LOUVER S/W	VALID	○
		INVALID	
08	TIMER S/W	VALID	○
		INVALID	
(09)	SENSOR S/W (Remote control sensor setting)	SENSOR OFF (Invalid)	○
		SENSOR ON (Valid)	
10	POWER FAILURE COMPENSATION SET	INVALID	○
		VALID	✻
(11)	VENTI SET	NO VENTI	○
		VENTI LINK SET	
		NO VENTI LINK	○
12	TEMP RANGE SET	DISP CHANGE	○
		NO DISP CHANGE	
13	I/U FAN SPEED (Indoor unit fan speed setting)	3 FAN SPEED	○
		2 FAN SPEED	
		1 FAN SPEED	
14	MODEL TYPE	HEAT PUMP	○
		COOLING ONLY	
15	EXTERNAL CONTROL SET	INDIVIDUAL OPERATION	○
		SAME OPERATION FOR ALL UNITS	
16	ERROR DISP SET	ERROR DISP	○
		NO ERROR DISP	
17	POSITION (Louver control setting)	FIX (1 OF 4) (4 position stop)	○
		IN MOTION (Free stop)	
(18)	˚C/˚F SET	˚C	○
		˚F	

Notes(1) Setting marked with [○] are the default setting.
(2) Setting marked with [✻] are those that are set automatically according to an indoor unit or an outdoor unit connected. Please check default settings with the indoor unit's installation manual.
(3) When Item 17 : " POSITION" is changed, please also change Item 04 " POSITION" setting found in "Indoor unit functions".
(4) The SRK model cannot set the items described in ( ) in the function number Ⓐ.

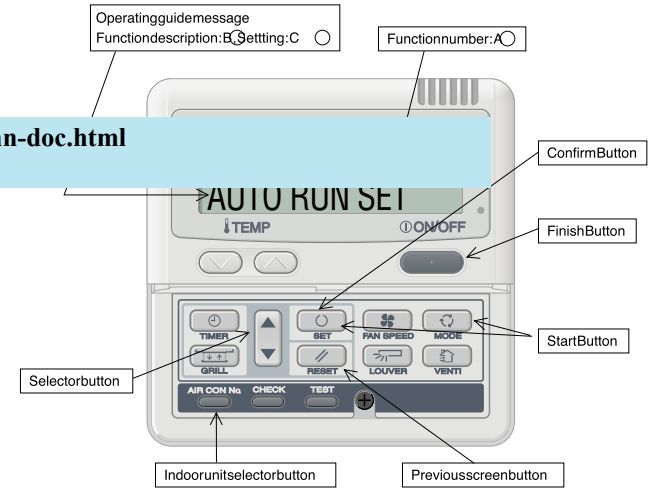
Function number Ⓐ	Function description Ⓑ	Setting Ⓒ	Default setting
(01)	Hi CEILING SET	STANDARD (Mild mode)	✻
		Hi CEILING 1 (Powerful mode)	
(03)	FILTER SIGN SET	NO DISPLAY	✻
		AFTER 180H	
		AFTER 600H	
		AFTER 1000H	
		1000H→STOP	
04	POSITION (Louver control setting)	FIX (1 OF 4) (4 positiion stop)	○
		IN MOTION (Free stop)	
05	EXTERNAL INPUT SET	LEVEL INPUT	○
		PULSE INPUT	
06	OPERATION PERMISSION PROHIBITED	NORMAL OPERATION	○
		VALID	
(07)	ROOM TEMP OFFSET (Heating room temperature offset)	NORMAL OPERATION	○
		TEMP SHIFT +3˚C	
(08)	FAN CONTROL (Heating fan control)	LOW FAN	✻
		STOP→LOW FAN (Intermittent operation)	
(09)	FREEZE PREVENT TEMP	TEMP Hi	
		TEMP Lo	○
(10)	FREEZE PREVENT CONTROL	FAN CONTROL ON	○
		FAN CONTROL OFF	

Notes(1) Setting marked with [○] are the default setting.
(2) Setting marked with [✻] are those that are set automatically according to an indoor unit or an outdoor unit connected. Please check default settings with the indoor unit's installation manual.
(3) The SRK model cannot set the items described in ( ) in the function number Ⓐ.

(ii) Function setting method

1) Stop the air conditioner
2) Press the SET and MODE buttons simultaneously for 3 seconds or longer.

"SET" →
"FUNCTION SET ▼ "



3) Press the SET button.
The unit will enter the function setting mode. The screen display will charge to " FUNCTION ▼".

4) Check which category your desired setting belongs to, " FUNCTION ▼ (Remote control unit function)" or "I/U FUNCTION ▲" (Indoor unit function).

5) Press either ▲ or ▼ button.
Select either " FUNCTION ▼ " or "I/U FUNCTION ▲".

6) Press the SET button.

When " FUNCTION▼ " is selected.

① "DATA LOADING" (blinking) → "FUNCTION"→
"01 GRILLE ↑↓ SET" (Function number: Ⓐ, Function description: Ⓑ)
The screen display will be switched like this.

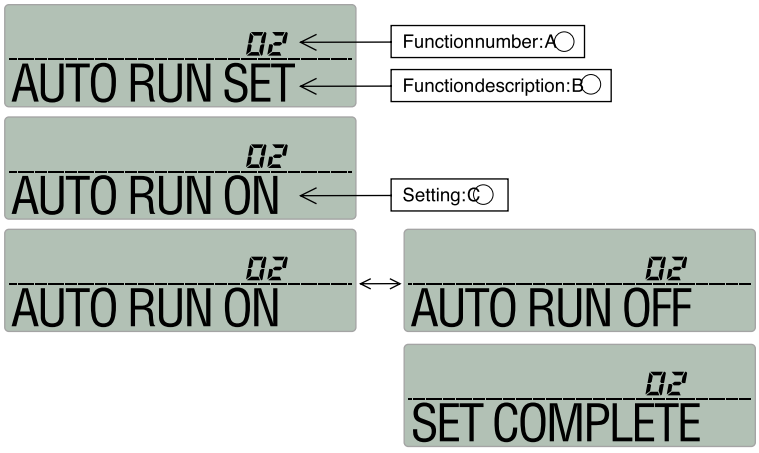
② Press either ▲ or ▼ button.
"Function number: Ⓐ, Function description: Ⓑ "from the list of remote control unit functions will be displayed one by one. Select a desired function.

③ Press the SET button.
The screen display will be switched as follows:
"SETTING" → "Setting: Ⓒ" (ex. "AUTO RUN ON")

④ Press either ▲ or ▼ button.
A list of "Settings: Ⓒ" will be displayed one by one. Select your desired setting.

⑤ Press the SET button.
The selected setting is displayed for 2 seconds, then followed by "SET COMPLETE" and the function setting process is completed.
Then the screen display will be swiched to "Function number: Ⓐ, Function description: Ⓑ," so if you want to continue to set another function, repeat the steps as explained above.
To finish the function setting process, please proceed to Step (iii).

*When" AUTORUNSET"isselected.



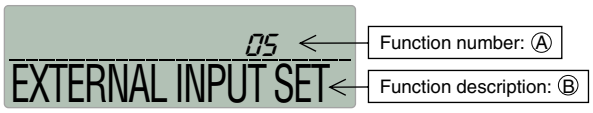
When "I/U FUNCTION ▲" is selected.

① The screen display will be switched as follows:
"◆☝ I/U SELECT" → "○☝ SET" → "I/U No.00" (blinking)

② Press either ▲ or ▼ button.
Select the indoor unit number that you want to change settings. If only one indoor unit is connected, the indoor unit number will not charge, so please proceed to Step ③.
If "ALL I/U ▼ " is selected while indoor group control is in effect, you can set all units to the same settings.

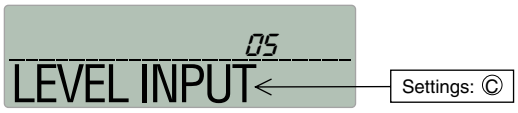
③ Press the SET button.
Indoor unit number indication will change from blinking to lit continuously, The screen display will be switched as follows:
"DATA LOADING" (blinking for about 2 to 23 seconds) → "◆☝ FUNCTION" → "05 EXTERNAL INPUT SET"
(Function number: Ⓐ, Function description: Ⓑ)

* When 05 EXTERNAL INPUT SET is selected.



④ Press either ▲ or ▼ button.
"Function number: Ⓐ, Function description: Ⓑ" from the list of indoor unit functions will be displayed one by one. Select a desired function.

⑤ Press the SET button.
The screen display will be switched as follows: "◆☝ SETTING" → "Setting: Ⓒ" (ex. "LEVEL INPUT")



⑥ Press either ▲ or ▼ button.
A list "Setting: Ⓒ" will be displayed one by one. Select your desired setting.

⑦ Press the SET button.
The selected setting is displayed for 2 seconds, then followed by "SET COMPLETE" and the function setting process is completed.
Then the screen display will be switched to "Function number: Ⓐ, Function description: Ⓑ" so if you want to continue to set another function, repeat the stepa as explained above. To finish the function setting process, please proceed to Step 8.

⑧ Press AIR CON No. button.
The screen display will go back to the indoor unit selection screen (ex. " I/U No.00").

(iii) Press the ON/OFF button.
This ends a function setting process. Even if a function setting process is not completed, this ends the process.
Please note that any setting that is not completed will become void.

- **Pressing the RESET button during a function setting process will allow you to go back the previous step. Please note that any setting that is not completed will become void.**
- **Method of checking the current setting**
  While following the above mentioned step, the setting that appears when the SET button is pressed for each "Function number: Ⓐ, Function description: Ⓑ" is the current setting "Stting: Ⓒ". (When "ALL I/U ▼" is selected, the setting of the indoor unit with the lowest number is displayed)
- **Settings are stored in the controller and not lost even a power outage occurs.**

(iv) Changing the remote control's temperature setting range

1) The temperature setting range of the remote controller can be changed.
Through remote controller button operations, the upper limit and lower limit set temperature values can be changed individually.

eating operation,
id.

Range of Possible Changes
Upper Limit Value: 22~30ºC (valid during heating) Lower Limit Value: 18 ~ 26ºC (valid at times other than during heating)

2) Operation
a) With the remote controller in the stopped state, press the SET and MODE buttons simultaneously for 3 seconds or longer. The display will changed from " SELECT ITEM" → " SET" → "FUNCTION SET ▼ "
b) Press the ▼ button once. The display will change to TEMP RANGE ▲ .
c) Press the SET button to enter the temperature range setting mode.
d) Using the ▲ or ▼ button, select "Hi LIMIT SET ▼ " or "Lo LIMIT SET ▲ ," the press the SET button.
e) If "Hi LIMIT SET" is selected,
① The display changes from "⌄ ⌃ SET UP" → "Hi LIMIT 22ºC ⌃" (flashing).
② Using the "⌄ ⌃" button, select the upper limit value. Display example: "Hi LIMIT 22ºC ⌃" (flashing)
③ Press the SET button to fix the setting. Display example: "Hi LIMIT 22ºC" (lighted up)
f) If "Lo LIMIT SET" is selected,
① The display changes from "⌄ ⌃ SET UP" → "Lo LIMIT 26ºC ⌄ " (flashing).
② Using the "⌄ ⌃" button, select the upper limit value. Display example: "Lo LIMIT 26ºC ⌄ " (flashing)
③ Press the SET button to fix the setting. Display example: "Lo LIMIT 26ºC" (lighted up)
g) Press the ON/OFF button to end the setting procedure.
(The procedure also ends if the ON/OFF button is pressed during the setting operation. However, settings which have not been fixed become invalid, so exercise caution.)

- If the RESET button is pressed during a setting operation, the display returns to the previously displayed setting screen. However, settings which have not been fixed become invalid, so exercise caution.
  * If "NO DISP CHANGE" is selected in No. 12, "TEMP RANGE SET" of the remote control's functions, of the function setting modes, the remote control's display does not change even if the temperature range has been changed.

(Example) If the upper limit is set at 28˚C

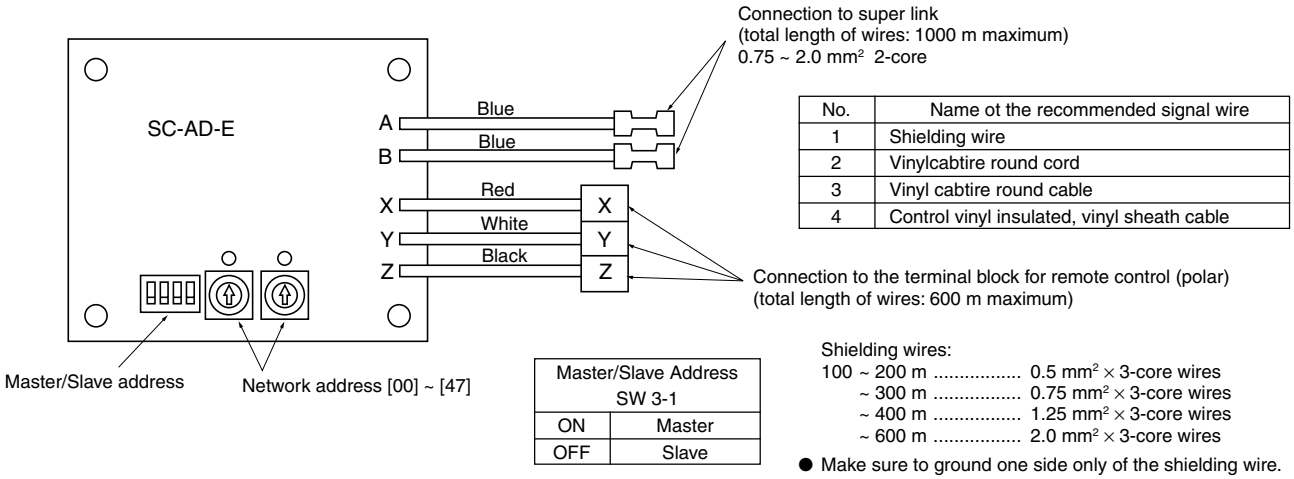
Function No. A	Function Contents B	Setting Contents C	Control Contents
12	TEMP RANGE SET	DISP CHANGE	The remote control's display and sent data upper limit changes to 28°C.
		NO DISP CHANGE	The remote control's display upper limit remains at 30ºC and only the upper limit of the sent data is changed to 28°C.

(d) SUPER LINK ADAPTER (SC-AD-E)

(i) Functions

1) Transmits the settings from the Super link option to the indoor units.
2) Returns the priority indoor unit data in response to a data request from the Super link option.
3) Inspects the error status of connected indoor units and transmits the inspection codes to the Super link option.

(ii) Wiring connection diagram



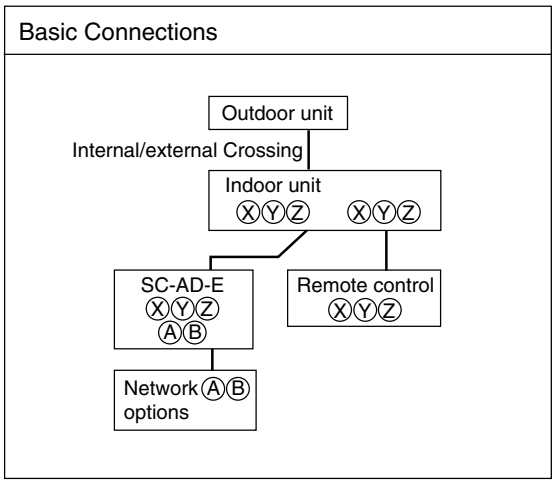
No.	Name ot the recommended signal wire
1	Shielding wire
2	Vinylcabtire round cord
3	Vinyl cabtire round cable
4	Control vinyl insulated, vinyl sheath cable

Master/Slave Address SW 3-1	
ON	Master
OFF	Slave

Shielding wires:
100 ~ 200 m ..... 0.5 mm² × 3-core wires
~ 300 m ..... 0.75 mm² × 3-core wires
~ 400 m ..... 1.25 mm² × 3-core wires
~ 600 m ..... 2.0 mm² × 3-core wires

● Make sure to ground one side only of the shielding wire.

1) Set the super link network address with SW1 (10-position) and SW2 (1-position).
2) Without a remote control (no wired remote control and no wireless remote control), set SC-AD-E SW3-1 to ON (Master).



1.2.6 MAINTENANCE DATA

(1) Troubleshooting procedures for electrical equipment

(a) Cautions

① When working on indoor units, let the unit sit for about 1 minute after turning off the power before you begin work. When working on an outdoor unit, there may be an electrical charge applied to the main circuit (electrolytic condenser), so begin work only after discharging this electrical charge (to DC 10 V or lower).

② When taking out printed circuit boards, be sure to do so without exerting force on the circuit boards or package components.

③ When disconnecting and connecting connectors, take hold of the connector housing and do not pull on the lead wires.

(b) Items to check before troubleshooting

① Have you thoroughly investigated the details of the trouble which the customer is complaining about?

② Is the air conditioner running? Is it displaying any self-diagnosis information?

③ Is a power supply with the correct voltage connected?

④ Are the control lines connecting the indoor and outdoor units wired correctly and connected securely?

⑤ Is the outdoor unit's refrigerant service valve open?

(c) Troubleshooting procedure (If the air conditioner does not run at all)

If the air conditioner does not run at all, diagnose the trouble using the following troubleshooting procedure. If the air conditioner is running but breaks down, proceed to troubleshooting step (d).

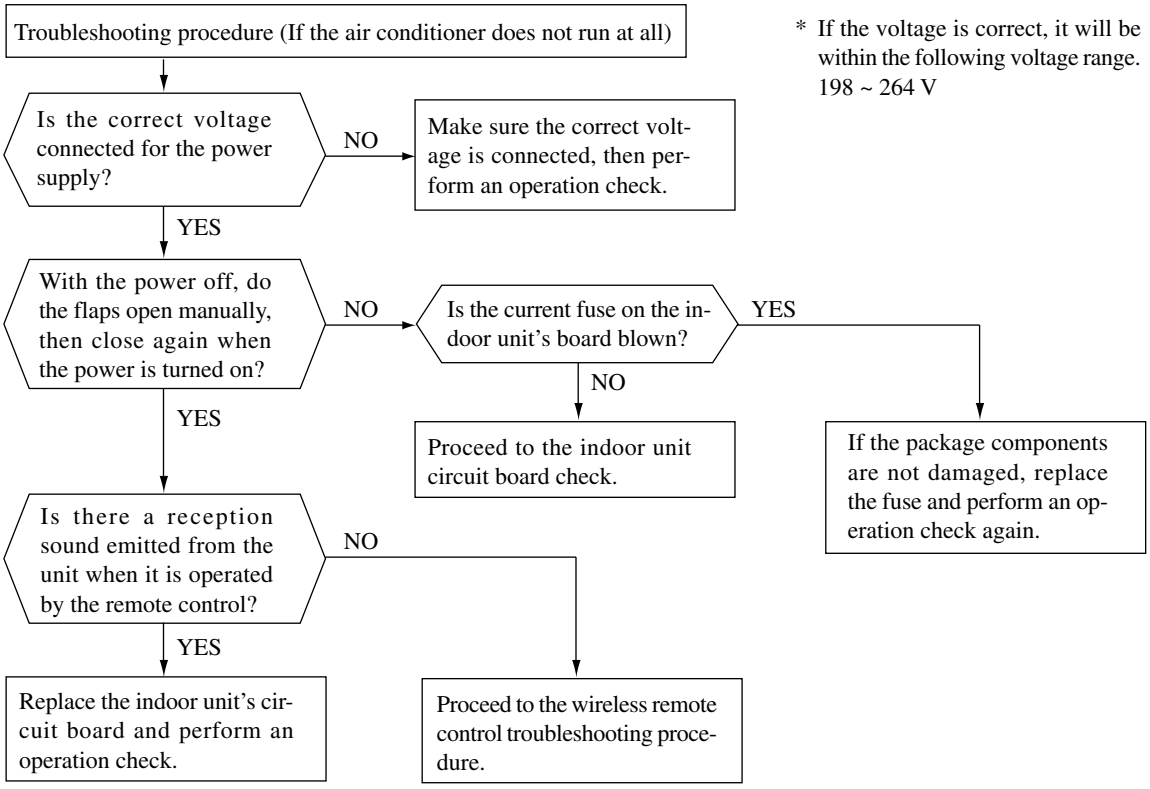
Important When all the following conditions are met, we say that the air conditioner will not run at all.

① The RUN light does not light up.

② The flaps do not open.

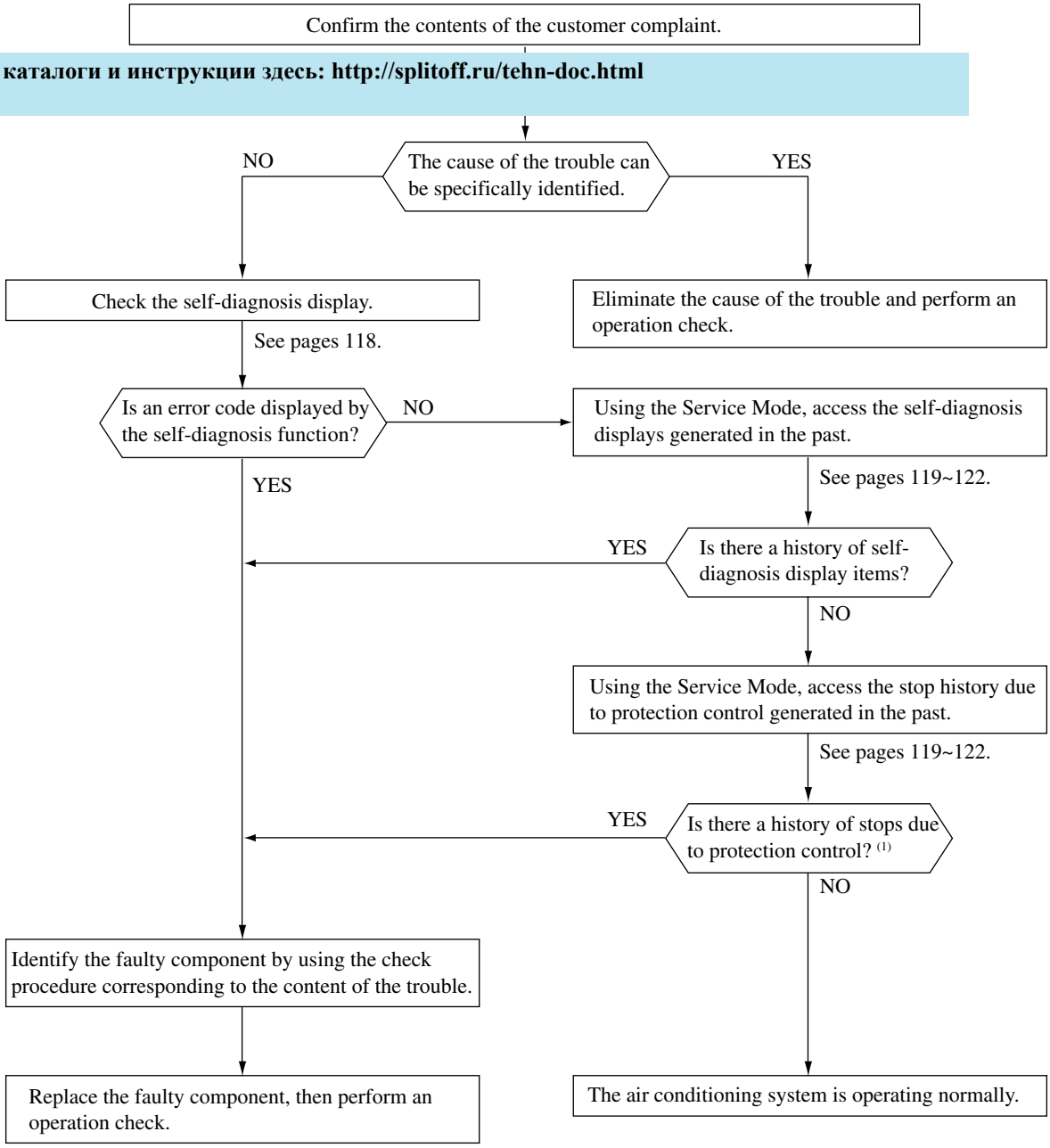
③ The indoor unit fan motors do not run.

④ The self-diagnosis display does not function.



* If the voltage is correct, it will be within the following voltage range.
198 ~ 264 V

(d) Troubleshooting procedure (If the air conditioner runs)



Note (1) Even in cases where only intermittent stop data are generated, the air conditioning system is normal. However, if the same protective operation recurs repeatedly (3 or more times), it will lead to customer complaints. Judge the conditions in comparison with the contents of the complaints.

(e) Self-diagnosis table

When this air conditioner performs an emergency stop, the reason why the emergency stop occurred is displayed by the flashing of display lights. If the air conditioner is operated using the remote control 3 minutes or more after the emergency stop, the trouble

RUN light	TIMER light	remote control display	Description of trouble	Cause	Display (flashing) condition
1 time flash	ON	E 6	Heat exchanger sensor error	• Broken heat exchanger sensor wire, poor connector connection	When a heat exchanger sensor wire disconnection is detected while operation is stopped. (If a temperature of –20ºC or lower is detected for 15 seconds, it is judged that the wire is disconnected.) (Not displayed during operation.)
2 time flash	ON	E 7	Room temperature sensor error	• Broken room temperature sensor wire, poor connector connection	When a room temperature sensor wire disconnection is detected while operation is stopped. (If a temperature of –20ºC or lower is detected for 15 seconds, it is judged that the wire is disconnected.) (Not displayed during operation.)
6 time flash	ON	E 16	Indoor fan motor error	• Defective fan motor, poor connector connection	When conditions for turning the indoor unit's fan motor on exist during air conditioner operation, an indoor unit fan motor speed of 300 rpm or lower is measured for 30 seconds or longer. (The air conditioner stops.)
Keeps flashing	1 time flash	E 38	Outdoor air temperature sensor error	• Broken outdoor air temp. sensor wire, poor connector connection	When an outdoor temperature sensor wire disconnection is detected while operation is stopped. (If a temperature of –40ºC or lower is detected for 15 seconds, it is judged that the wire is disconnected.) (Not displayed during operation.)
Keeps flashing	2 time flash	E 37	Outdoor heat exchanger sensor error	• Broken heat exchanger sensor wire, poor connector connection	When a sensor wire disconnection is detected while operation is stopped. (If a temperature of –50ºC or lower is detected for 15 seconds, it is judged that the wire is disconnected.) (Not displayed during operation.)
Keeps flashing	4 time flash	E 39	Discharge pipe sensor error	• Broken discharge pipe sensor wire, poor connector connection	When a compressor discharge pipe sensor wire disconnection is detected for 15 seconds or longer (less than 7ºC) after the outdoor unit's speed has continued at 0 rps or higher for 9 minutes. (The air conditioner stops.)
ON	1 time flash	E 42	Current Cut	• Compressor locking, open phase on compressor output, shortcircuit on power transistor, closed service valve	The inverter output current (compressor motor current) exceeds the set value during compressor start. (The air conditioner stops.)
ON	2 time flash	E 59	Trouble of outdoor unit	• Broken power transistor, broken compressor wire • Broken discharge pipe sensor wire, poor connector connection • Compressor blockage	When there is an emergency stop caused by trouble in the outdoor unit, or the input current value is found to be lower than the set value continuously for 3 minutes or longer. (The air conditioner stops.)
ON	3 time flash	E 58	Current safe stop	• Overload operation • Overcharge • Compressor locking	When the inverter command speed is 20 rps or less and the current save has operated. (the compressor stops)
ON	5 time flash	E 36	Over heat of compressor	• Gas shortage, defective discharge pipe sensor, closed service valve	When the value of the discharge pipe sensor exceeds the set value. (The air conditioner stops.)
ON	6 time flash	E 5	Error of signal transmission	• Defective power supply, Broken signal wire, defective in/outdoor unit boards	When there is no signal between the indoor unit's board and outdoor unit's board for 10 seconds or longer (when the power is turned on), or when there is no signal for 1 minute 50 seconds or longer (during operation)(the compressor is stopped).
2 time flash	2 time flash	E 60	Rotor lock	• Defective compressor • Open phase on compressor • Defective outdoor unit boards	If the compressor motor's magnetic pole positions cannot be correctly detected when the compressor starts. (The air conditioner stops.)
ON	7 time flash	E 48	Outdoor fan motor error	• Defective fan motor, poor connector connection	When the outdoor unit's fan motor sped continues for 30 seconds or longer at 75 rpm or lower. (3 times) (The air conditioner stops.)
—	—	E 1	Error of wired remote control wiring	• Broken wired remote control wire, defective indoor unit boards	The wired remote control wire Y is open. The wired remote control wires X and Y are reversely connected. Noise is penetrating the wired remote control lines. The wired remote control or indoor control PCB is faulty. (The communications circuit is faulty.)

Notes (1)The air conditioner cannot be restarted using the remote controller for 3 minutes after operation stops.
(2)The wired remote control is optional parts.

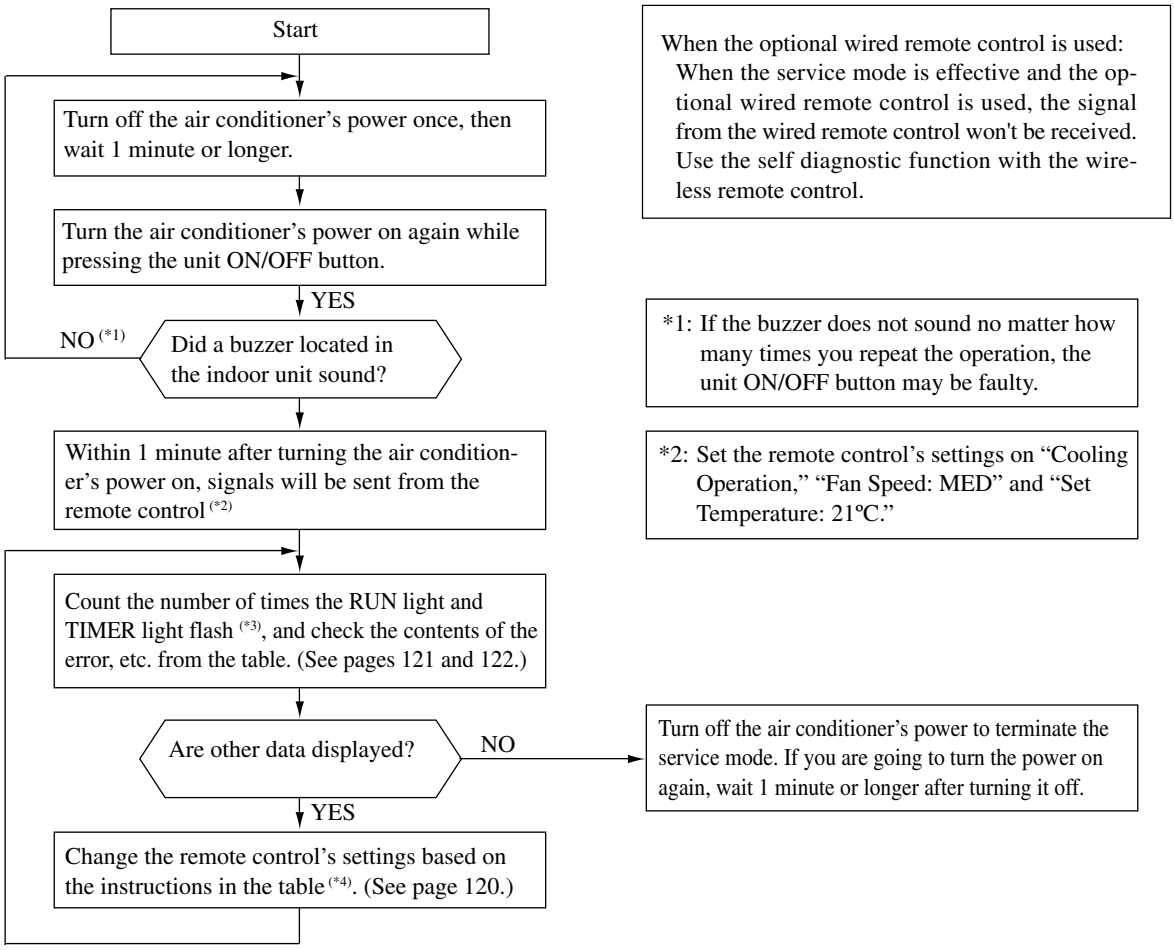
(f) Service mode (Trouble mode access function)

This air conditioner is capable of recording error displays and protective stops (service data) which have occurred in the past. If self-diagnosis displays cannot be confirmed, it is possible to get a grasp of the conditions at the time trouble occurred by checking these service data.

(i) Explanation of terms

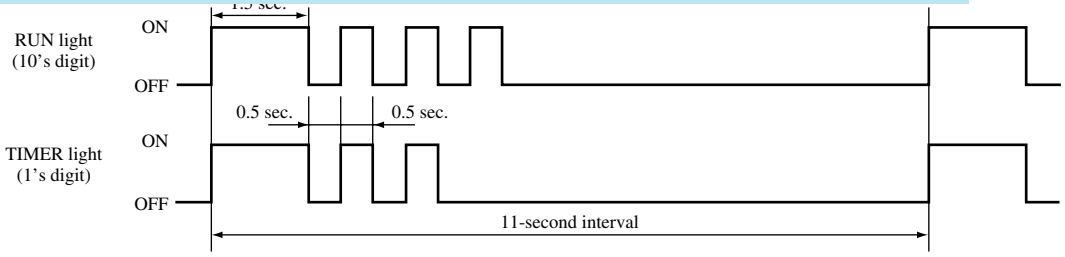
Service mode	The service mode is the mode where service data are displayed by flashing of the display lights when the operations in item (ii) below are performed with the indoor controller.
Service data	These are the contents of error displays and protective stops which occurred in the past in the air conditioner system. Error display contents and protective stop data from past anomalous operations of the air conditioner system are saved in the indoor unit controller's non-volatile memory (memory which is not erased when the power goes off). There are two types of data, self-diagnosis data and stop data, described below.
Self-diagnosis data	These are the data which display the reason why a stop occurred when an error display (self-diagnosis display) occurred in an indoor unit. Data are recorded for up to 5 previous occurrences. Data which are older than the 5th previous occurrence are erased. In addition, data on the temperature of each sensor (room temperature, indoor heat exchanger, outdoor heat exchanger, outdoor air temperature, discharge pipe), remote control information (operation switching, fan speed switching) are recorded when trouble occurs, so more detailed information can be checked.
Stop data	These are the data which display the reason by a stop occurred when the air conditioning system performed protective stops, etc. in the past. Even if stop data alone are generated, the system restarts automatically. (After executing the stop mode while the display is normal, the system restarts automatically.) Data for up to 10 previous occasions are stored. Data older than the 10th previous occasion are erased. (Important) In cases where transient stop data only are generated, the air conditioner system may still be normal. However, if the same protective stop occurs frequently (3 or more times), it could lead to customer complaints.

(ii) Service mode display procedure



*3: To count the number of flashes in the service mode, count the number of flashes after the light lights up for 1.5 second initially (start signal). (The time that the light lights up for 1.5 second (start signal) is not counted in the number of flashes.)

• In the case of current safe (heating CT1) (example: stop code "32")



*4: When in the service mode, when the remote control's settings (operation switching, fan speed switching, temperature setting) are set as shown in the following table and sent to the air conditioner unit, the unit switches to display of service data.

① **Self-diagnosis data**

What are Self-diagnosis Data? ..... These are control data (reasons for stops, temperature at each sensor, remote control information) from the time when there were error displays (abnormal stops) in the indoor unit in the past.

Data from up to 5 previous occasions are stored in memory. Data older than the 5th previous occasion are erased.

The temperature setting indicates how many occasions previous to the present setting the error display data are and the operation switching and fan speed switching data show the type of data.

Remote control setting		Contents of output data
Operation switching	Fan speed switching	
Cooling	MED	Displays the reason for stopping display in the past (error code).
	HI	Displays the room temperature sensor temperature at the time the error code was displayed in the past.
	AUTO	Displays the indoor heat exchanger sensor temperature at the time the error code was displayed in the past.
Heating	LO	Displays the remote controller information at the time the error code was displayed in the past.
	MED	Displays the outdoor air temperature sensor temperature at the time the error code was displayed in the past.
	HI	Displays the outdoor heat exchanger sensor temperature at the time the error code was displayed in the past.
	AUTO	Displays the discharge pipe sensor temperature at the time the error code was displayed in the past.

Remote control setting	Indicates the number of occasions previous to the present the error display data are from.
Temperature setting	
21°C	1 time previous (previous time)
22°C	2 times previous
23°C	3 times previous
24°C	4 times previous
25°C	5 times previous

(Example)

Remote control setting			Displayed data
Operation switching	Fan speed switching	Temperature setting	
Cooling	MED	21°C	Displays the reason for the stop (error code) the previous time an error was displayed.
		22°C	Displays the reason for the stop (error code) 2 times previous when an error was displayed.
		23°C	Displays the reason for the stop (error code) 3 times previous when an error was displayed.
		24°C	Displays the reason for the stop (error code) 4 times previous when an error was displayed.
		25°C	Displays the reason for the stop (error code) 5 times previous when an error was displayed.

② **Stop data**

Remote control setting			Displayed data
Operation switching	Fan speed switching	Temperature setting	
			d by protective stop control.
		22°C	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) 2 times previous when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.
		23°C	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) 3 times previous when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.
		24°C	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) 4 times previous when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.
		25°C	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) 5 times previous when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.
		26°C	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) 6 times previous when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.
		27°C	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) 7 times previous when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.
		28°C	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) 8 times previous when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.
		29°C	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) 9 times previous when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.
		30°C	Displays the reason for the stop (stop code) 10 times previous when the air conditioner was stopped by protective stop control.

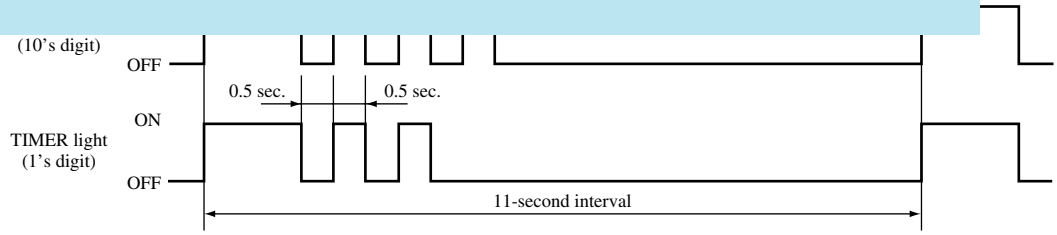
(iii) Error code, stop code table (Assignment of error codes and stop codes is done in common for all models.)

Number of flashes when in service mode		Stop code or Error code	Error content		Cause	Occurrence conditions	Error display	Auto recovery
RUN light (10's digit)	TIMER light (1's digit)		Major category	Minor category				
OFF	OFF	0	Normal	—	—	—	—	—
1 time flash	1 time flash	11	Current Cut	Compressor Software Start	Compressor lock Compressor wiring short circuit Compressor output is open phase Outdoor unit s circuit board is faulty	Compressor start fails 42 times in succession and the reason for the final failure is current cut.	○ (2 times)	○
	2 time flash	12		Lower than 20 rps	Service valve closed Compressor output is open phase. Electronic expansion valve is faulty.	After the compressor starts, it stops due to current cut at less than 20 rps.	—	○
	3 time flash	13		20 rps or higher	Service valve is closed. Compressor output is open phase. Compressor is faulty. Electronic expansion valve is faulty.	When operation is stopped by current cut at 20 rps or higher.	—	○
	4 time flash	14		Excessive voltage (DC 350 V)	Outdoor unit s circuit board is defective. Power supply is abnormal.	When the DC voltage (DC 280 V) exceeds 350 V.	—	○
	5 time flash	15		Short circuit in the power transistor (high side)	Outdoor unit s circuit board is faulty. Power transistor is damaged.	When it is judged that the power transistor was damaged at the time the compressor started.	○	—
	6 time flash	16		Current cut circuit breakdown	Outdoor unit s circuit board is faulty. Power transistor is damaged.	When it is judged that the power transistor was damaged at the time the compressor started.	○	—
2 time flash	1 time flash	21	Outdoor unit error	PWM calculation results are abnormal.	Compressor wiring is disconnected. Power transistor is damaged.	When PWM calculation results of 0% continue for 3 minutes or longer.	○	—
	2 time flash	22		Input is 2A or lower (PWM 90% or higher)	Compressor wiring is disconnected. Outdoor unit s circuit board is faulty.	When PWM calculation results of 90% and an input current lower than the set value continue for 3 minutes or longer.	○	—
	3 time flash	23		Abnormal stop 3 times in 20 minutes.	Service valve is closed. Compressor output is open phase. Electronic expansion valve is faulty. Refrigerant is insufficient.	When an abnormal stop occurs 3 times with automatic recovery within 20 minutes after the outdoor unit s power supply was turned on.	○	—
	9 time flash	29		Voltage drop	Power supply construction is defective. Outdoor unit s circuit board is faulty.	When the power supply voltage drops during operation.	—	○
	7 time flash	27	Outdoor fan motor error	Outdoor unit s fan motor is abnormal	Outdoor fan motor is faulty. Connector connections are poor. Outdoor unit s circuit board is faulty.	When a fan speed of 75 rpm or lower continues for 30 seconds or longer.	○ (3 times)	○
3 time flash	1 time flash	31	Current safe	Cooling current safe I	Overcharge Compressor lock	When there is a current safe stop in current safe I mode during cooling operation.	—	○
	2 time flash	32		Heating current safe I	Overcharge Compressor lock	When there is a current safe stop in current safe I mode during heating operation.	—	○
	3 time flash	33		Cooling current safe II	Overcharge Compressor lock	When there is a current safe stop in current safe II mode during cooling operation.	—	○
	4 time flash	34		Heating current safe II	Overcharge Compressor lock	When there is a current safe stop in current safe II mode during heating operation.	—	○
	5 time flash	35		Cooling current safe III	Overcharge Compressor lock	When there is a current safe stop in current safe III mode during cooling operation.	—	○
	6 time flash	36		Heating current safe III	Overcharge Compressor lock	When there is a current safe stop in current safe III mode during heating operation.	—	○
	7 time flash	37		Heating current safe III + 3A	Overcharge Compressor lock	When there is a current safe stop in current safe III + 3A mode during heating operation.	—	○

Number of flashes when in service mode		Stop code or Error code	Error content		Cause	Occurrence conditions	Error display	Auto recovery
RUN light (10's digit)	TIMER light (1's digit)		Major category	Minor category				
4 time flash	1 time flash	41	Current safe	Cooling overload 1 (outdoor temperature: 5~12ºC)	Overcharge Compressor lock Overload operation	When there is a current safe stop in overload 1 mode during cooling operation.	—	○
	3 time flash	43		Cooling overload 2 (outdoor temperature: 40~45ºC)	Overcharge Compressor lock Overload operation	When there is a current safe stop in overload 2 mode during cooling operation.	—	○
	4 time flash	44		Heating overload 2 (outdoor temperature: 12~17ºC)	Overcharge Compressor lock Overload operation	When there is a current safe stop in overload 2 mode during heating operation.	—	○
	5 time flash	45		Cooling overload 3 (outdoor temperature: 45ºC~)	Overcharge Compressor lock Overload operation	When there is a current safe stop in overload 3 mode during cooling operation.	—	○
	6 time flash	46		Heating overload 3 (outdoor temperature: 17ºC~)	Overcharge Compressor lock Overload operation	When there is a current safe stop in overload 3 mode during heating operation.	—	○
5 time flash	1 time flash	51	Power transistor overheat	110ºC	Cooling problem	When power transistor temperature exceeds setting value (the compressor stops).	—	○
	OFF	50	Compressor overheat	110ºC	Refrigerant is insufficient. Discharge pipe sensor is faulty. Service valve is closed.	When the discharge pipe sensor's value exceeds the set value.	○ (2 times)	○
6 time flash	OFF	60	Serial signal transmission error	Can't receive signals for 1 minute 55 seconds (if communications have recovered)	Power supply is faulty. Power supply cables and signal lines are improperly wired. Indoor or outdoor unit circuit board is faulty.	When 1 minute 55 seconds passes without communications signals from either the outdoor unit or the indoor unit being detected correctly.	—	○
	1 time flash	61		Connection lines between the indoor and outdoor units are faulty.	Connection lines between the indoor and outdoor units are faulty. Indoor or outdoor unit circuit boards are faulty.	When 10 seconds passes after the power is turned on without communications signals from the indoor or outdoor unit being detected correctly.	○	—
	2 time flash	62		Serial transmission error.	Indoor or outdoor unit circuit boards are faulty. Noise is causing faulty operation.	When 1 minute 50 seconds passes without communications signals from either the outdoor unit or the indoor unit being detected correctly.	○ (3 times)	○
7 time flash	1 time flash	71	Rotor lock	Less than 16 rps	Compressor is faulty Compressor output is open phase Electronic expansion valve is faulty. Overload operation Outdoor unit circuit board is faulty.	After the compressor starts, when the compressor stops at less than 16 rps due to rotor lock.	—	○
	2 time flash	72		16 rps or higher	Compressor is faulty Compressor output is open phase Electronic expansion valve is faulty. Overload operation Outdoor unit circuit board is faulty.	When the compressor stops at 16 rps or higher speed due to rotor lock.	—	○
	3 time flash	73		Phase switching defects (U phase)	Compressor is faulty Compressor wiring is disconnected. Compressor wiring is short circuited. Outdoor unit's circuit board is faulty.	When compressor start fails 42 times in succession and the reason for the final failure is rotor lock.	○ (2 times)	○
	4 time flash	74		Phase switching defects (V phase)	Compressor is faulty Compressor wiring is disconnected. Compressor wiring is short circuited. Outdoor unit's circuit board is faulty.	When compressor start fails 42 times in succession and the reason for the final failure is rotor lock.	○ (2 times)	○
	5 time flash	75		Phase switching defects (W phase or impossible to distinguish).	Compressor is faulty Compressor wiring is disconnected. Compressor wiring is short circuited. Outdoor unit's circuit board is faulty.	When compressor start fails 42 times in succession and the reason for the final failure is rotor lock.	○ (2 times)	○
	6 time flash	76		Compressor software start (within 4 seconds after phase switching)	Compressor is faulty Compressor wiring is disconnected. Compressor wiring is short circuited. Outdoor unit's circuit board is faulty.	When compressor start fails 42 times in succession and the reason for the final failure is rotor lock.	○ (2 times)	○
8 time flash	OFF	80	Protective control operation	Indoor unit fan motor is abnormal.	Fan motor is faulty. Connector connections are poor. Indoor unit circuit board is faulty.	When the indoor unit's fan motor is detected to be running at 300 rpm or lower speed with the fan motor in the ON condition while the air conditioner is running.	○	—
	1 time flash	81		Discharge pipe sensor is abnormal (anomalous stop).	Discharge pipe sensor wire is disconnected. Connector connections are poor.	When a disconnection signal (temperature below 7ºC) is sent for 15 seconds or longer as the discharge pipe sensor data after the outdoor unit's speed is 0 rps or higher continuously for 9 minutes.	○ (4 times)	○
	2 time flash	82		Indoor heat exchanger sensor is abnormal (anomalous stop).	Indoor heat exchanger sensor wire is disconnected. Connector connections are poor.	When a temperature of –20ºC or lower is sensed continuously for 40 minutes during heating operation (the compressor stops).	○	—
	3 time flash	83		Outdoor heat exchanger sensor is abnormal (anomalous stop).	Outdoor heat exchanger sensor wire is disconnected. Connector connections are poor.	When a temperature of –50ºC or lower is sensed continuously for 40 minutes during heating operation (the compressor stops).	○	—
	4 time flash	84		Anti-condensation control	High humidity condition. Humidity sensor is faulty.	Anti-condensation prevention control is operating.	—	○
	5 time flash	85		Anti-frost control	Indoor unit fan speed drops. Indoor heat exchanger sensor short circuit	When the anti-frost control operates and the compressor stops during cooling operation.	—	○
	6 time flash	86		High pressure control	Heating overload Indoor unit fan speed drops Indoor heat exchanger sensor short circuit	When high pressure control operates during heating operation and the compressor stops.	—	○
	7 time flash	87		Compressor overheating protection control	Refrigerant is insufficient. Discharge pipe sensor is faulty. Service valve is closed.	When compressor overheating protective control operates and the compressor stops.	—	○
	8 time flash	88		Refrigeration cycle system protective control	Service valve is closed. Refrigerant is insufficient.	When refrigeration cycle system protective control operates.	—	○

Notes (1) The number of flashes when in the Service Mode do not include the 1.5 second period when the lights light up at first (starting signal). (See the example shown below.)

• In the case of current safe (heating CT1) (example: stop code "32")
The RUN light (10's digit) flashes 3 times and the TIMER light (1's digit) flashes 2 times.
3 × 10 + 2 × 1 = 32 → From the table, read the instructions for error code 32, "Current safe (heating CT1).



(2) Abnormal Stop: – Is not displayed. (automatic recovery only)
◯Displayed.
If there is a ( ) displayed, the error display shows the number of times that an automatic recovery occurred for the same reason has reached the number of times in ( ).
If no ( ) is displayed, the error display shows that the trouble has occurred once.

(3) Automatic Recovery: – Does not occur
◯Automatic recovery occurs.

(iv) Remote control information tables

1) Operation switching

Display pattern when in service mode RUN light (Operation switching)	Operation switching when there is an abnormal stop
0	AUTO
1	DRY
2	COOL
4	HEAT

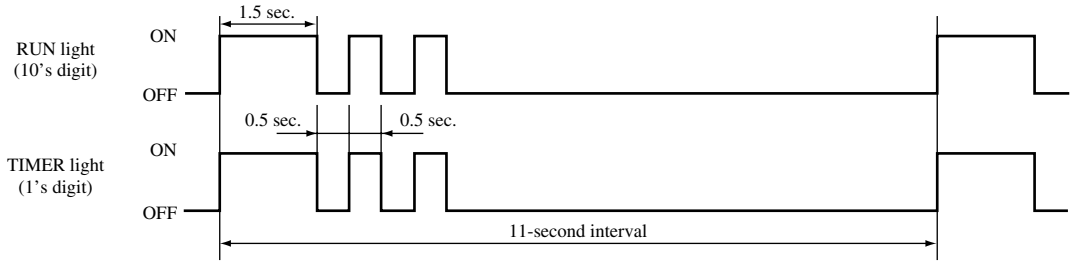
2) Fan speed switching

Display pattern when in service mode TIMER light (Fan speed switching)	Fan speed switching when there is an abnormal stop
0	AUTO
2	HI
3	MED
4	LO
5	ULO
6	HI POWER
7	ECONO

* If no data are recorded (error code is normal), the information display in the remote control becomes as follows.

Remote control setting	Display when error code is normal.
Operation switching	AUTO
Fan speed switching	AUTO

(Example): Operation switching, fan speed switching, cooling HI



(v) Room temperature sensor temperature, indoor heat exchanger sensor temperature, outdoor air temperature sensor temperature, outdoor heat exchanger sensor temperature table

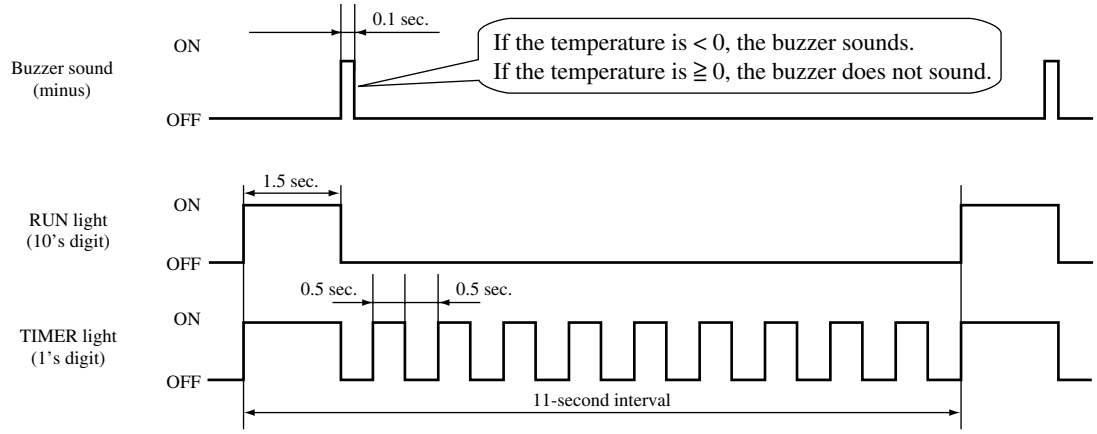
Units: °C

Buzzer sound (minus)	TIMER light (10's digit)	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Yes (sounds for 0.1 second)	6	-60	-61	-62	-63	-64					
	5	-50	-51	-52	-53	-54	-55	-56	-57	-58	-59
	4	-40	-41	-42	-43	-44	-45	-46	-47	-48	-49
	3	-30	-31	-32	-33	-34	-35	-36	-37	-38	-39
	2	-20	-21	-22	-23	-24	-25	-26	-27	-28	-29
	1	-10	-11	-12	-13	-14	-15	-16	-17	-18	-19
	0		-1	-2	-3	-4	-5	-6	-7	-8	-9
No (does not sound)	0	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	1	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19
	2	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29
	3	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39
	4	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49
	5	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59
	6	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69
	7	70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79
	8	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89
	9	90	91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99

* If no data are recorded (error code is normal), the display for each sensor becomes as shown below.

Sensor name	Sensor value displayed when the error code is normal
Room temperature sensor temperature	-19°C
Indoor heat exchanger sensor temperature	-64°C
Outdoor air temperature sensor temperature	-64°C
Outdoor heat exchanger sensor temperature	-64°C

(Example) Room temperature, indoor heat exchanger, outdoor air temperature, outdoor heat exchanger: "-9℃"



(vi) Discharge pipe temperature table

Units: °C

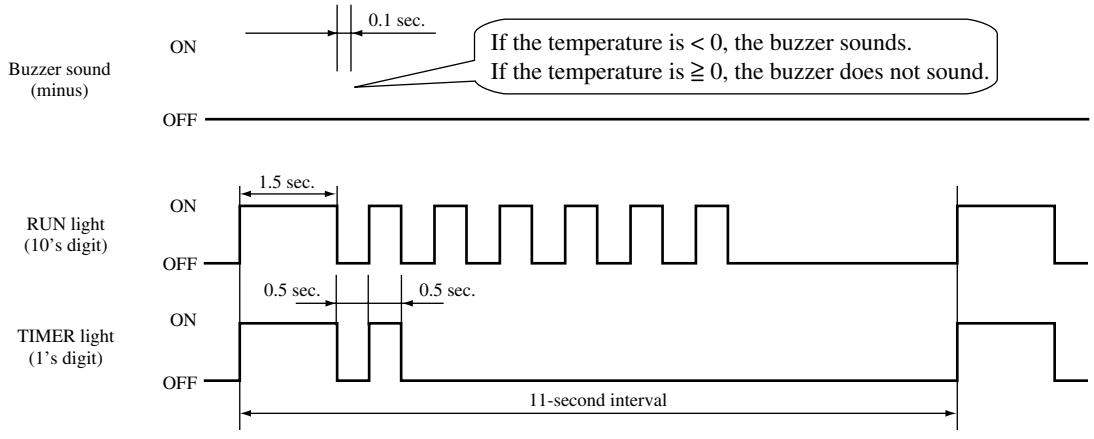
Buzzer sound (minus) \ TIMER light (1's digit)		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Yes (sounds for 0.1 second)	3	-60	-62	-64							
	2	-40	-42	-44	-46	-48	-50	-52	-54	-56	-58
	1	-20	-22	-24	-26	-28	-30	-32	-34	-36	-38
	0		-2	-4	-6	-8	-10	-12	-14	-16	-18
No (does not sound)	0	0	2	4	6	8	10	12	14	16	18
	1	20	22	24	26	28	30	32	34	36	38
	2	40	42	44	46	48	50	52	54	56	58
	3	60	62	64	66	68	70	72	74	76	78
	4	80	82	84	86	88	90	92	94	96	98
	5	100	102	104	106	108	110	112	114	116	118
	6	120	122	124	126	128	130	132	134	136	138
	7	140	142	144	146	148	150				

* If no data are recorded (error code is normal), the display for each sensor becomes as shown below.

Sensor name	Sensor value displayed when the error code is normal
Discharge pipe sensor temperature	-64°C

(Example) Discharge pipe temperature: "122℃"

* In the case of discharge pipe data, multiply the reading value by 2. (Below, 61 x 2 = "122℃")



Service data record form

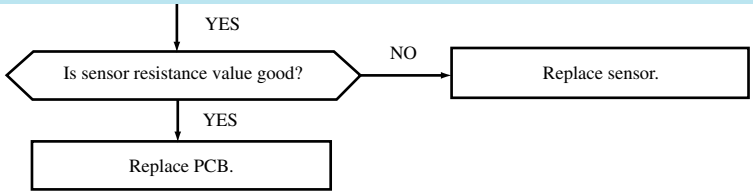
Customer		Model	
Date of investigation			
Machine name			

Remote control settings			Content of displayed data	Display results			Display content
Temperature setting	Operation switching	Fan speed switching		Buzzer (Yes/No.)	RUN light (Times)	TIMER light (Times)	
21	Cooling	MED	Error code on previous occasion.				
		HI	Room temperature sensor temperature on previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Indoor heat exchanger sensor temperature on previous occasion.				
	Heating	LO	Remote controller information on previous occasion.				
		MED	Outdoor air temperature sensor temperature on previous occasion.				
		HI	Outdoor heat exchanger sensor temperature on previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Discharge pipe sensor temperature on previous occasion.				
22	Cooling	MED	Error code on second previous occasion.				
		HI	Room temperature sensor temperature on second previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Indoor heat exchanger sensor temperature on second previous occasion.				
	Heating	LO	Remote controller information on second previous occasion.				
		MED	Outdoor air temperature sensor temperature on second previous occasion.				
		HI	Outdoor heat exchanger sensor temperature on second previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Discharge pipe sensor temperature on second previous occasion.				
23	Cooling	MED	Error code on third previous occasion.				
		HI	Room temperature sensor temperature on third previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Indoor heat exchanger sensor temperature on third previous occasion.				
	Heating	LO	Remote controller information on third previous occasion.				
		MED	Outdoor air temperature sensor temperature on third previous occasion.				
		HI	Outdoor heat exchanger sensor temperature on third previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Discharge pipe sensor temperature on third previous occasion.				
24	Cooling	MED	Error code on fourth previous occasion.				
		HI	Room temperature sensor temperature on fourth previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Indoor heat exchanger sensor temperature on fourth previous occasion.				
	Heating	LO	Remote controller information on fourth previous occasion.				
		MED	Outdoor air temperature sensor temperature on fourth previous occasion.				
		HI	Outdoor heat exchanger sensor temperature on fourth previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Discharge pipe sensor temperature on fourth previous occasion.				
25	Cooling	MED	Error code on fifth previous occasion.				
		HI	Room temperature sensor temperature on fifth previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Indoor heat exchanger sensor temperature on fifth previous occasion.				
	Heating	LO	Remote controller information on fifth previous occasion.				
		MED	Outdoor air temperature sensor temperature on fifth previous occasion.				
		HI	Outdoor heat exchanger sensor temperature on fifth previous occasion.				
		AUTO	Discharge pipe sensor temperature on fifth previous occasion.				
21	Cooling	Lo	Stop code on previous occasion.				
22			Stop code on second previous occasion.				
23			Stop code on third previous occasion.				
24			Stop code on fourth previous occasion.				
25			Stop code on fifth previous occasion.				
26			Stop code on sixth previous occasion.				
27			Stop code on seventh previous occasion.				
28			Stop code on eighth previous occasion.				
29			Stop code on ninth previous occasion.				
30			Stop code on tenth previous occasion.				
Judgment							Examiner
Remarks							

(g) Inspection procedures corresponding to detail of trouble

Sensor error

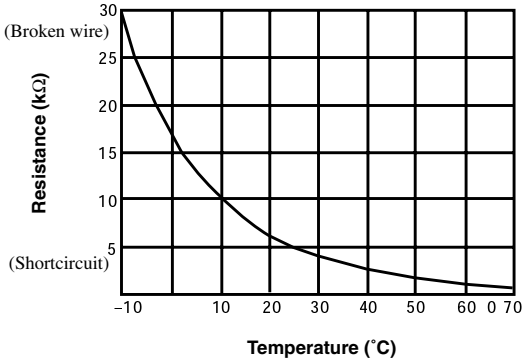
[Broken sensor wire, connector poor connection]



◆ **Discharge pipe sensor temperature characteristics**

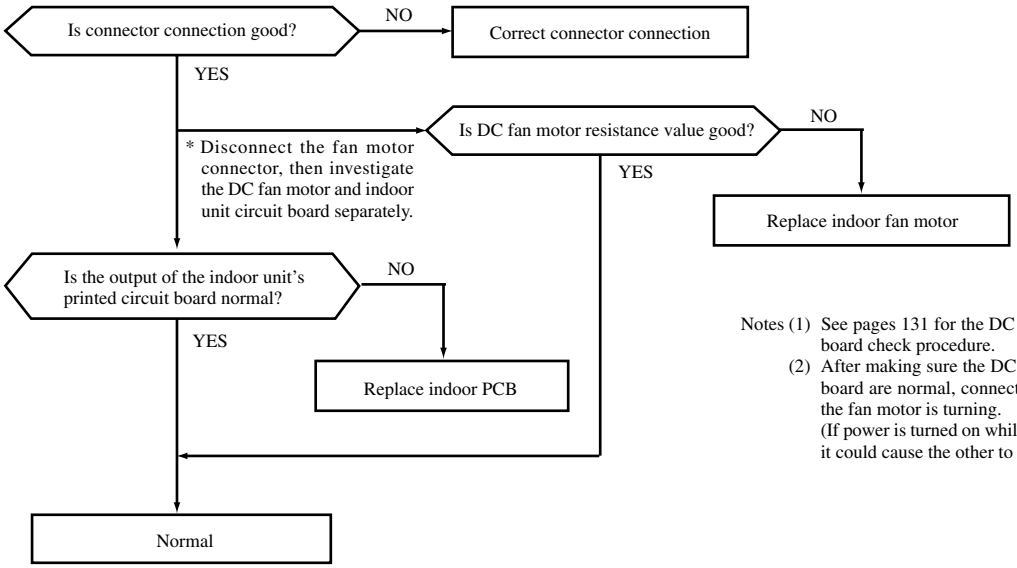
Temperature (˚C)	Resistance (kΩ)	Temperature (˚C)	Resistance (kΩ)
0	164	70	8.7
5	127	75	7.3
10	99	80	6.2
15	78	85	5.3
20	62	90	4.5
25	50	95	3.9
30	40	100	3.3
35	32	105	2.9
40	26	110	2.5
45	21	115	2.2
50	17	120	1.9
55	14	125	1.6
60	12	130	1.4
65	10	135	1.3

◆ **Sensor temperature characteristics (Room temp., indoor unit heat exchanger temp., outdoor unit heat exchanger temp., outdoor air temp.)**



Indoor fan motor error

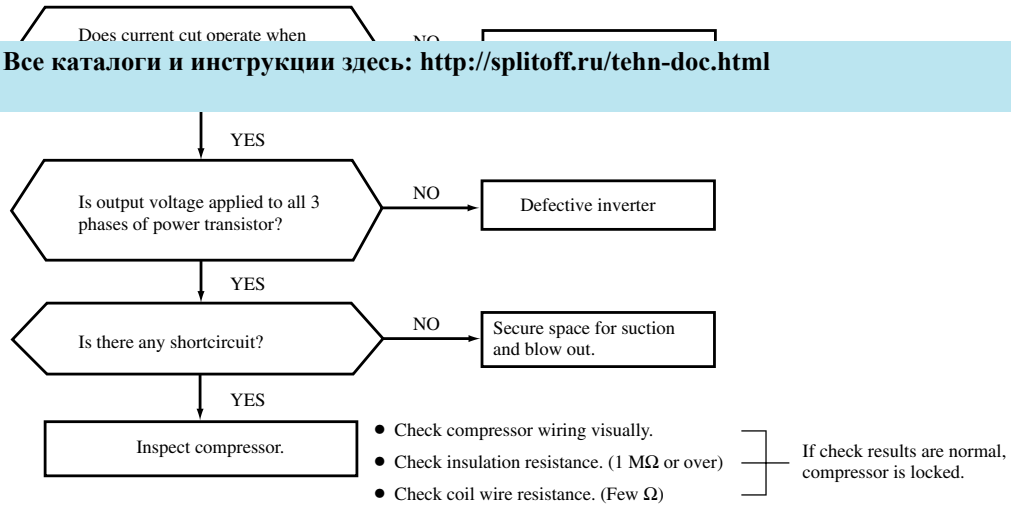
[Defective fan motor, connector poor connection, defective PCB]



Notes (1) See pages 131 for the DC fan motor and indoor unit circuit board check procedure.
(2) After making sure the DC fan motor and indoor unit circuit board are normal, connect the connectors and confirm that the fan motor is turning.
(If power is turned on while one or the other is broken down, it could cause the other to break down also.)

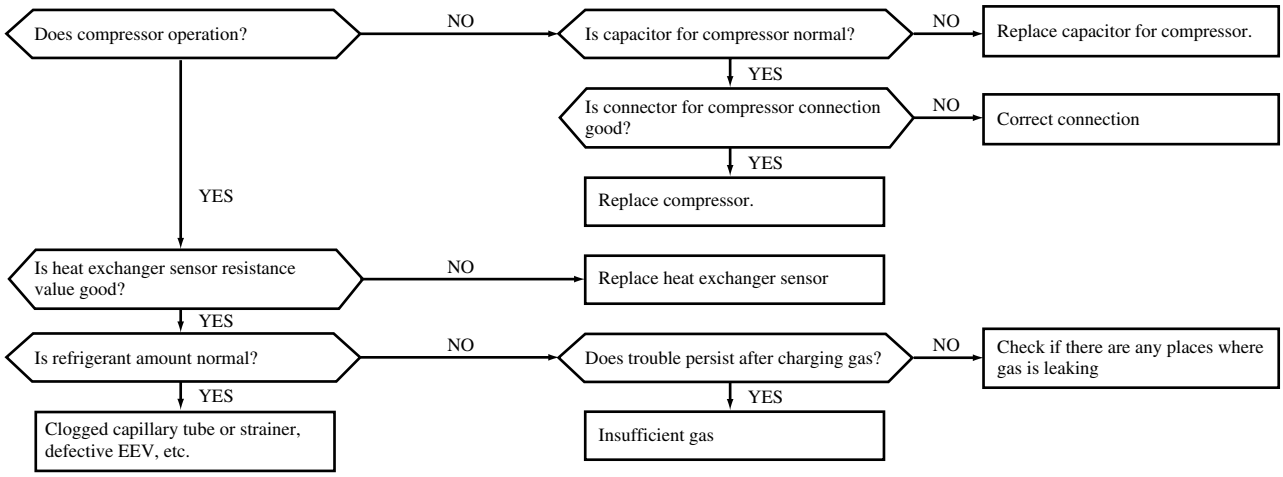
Current cut

[Open phase on compressor output terminal, compressor lock]



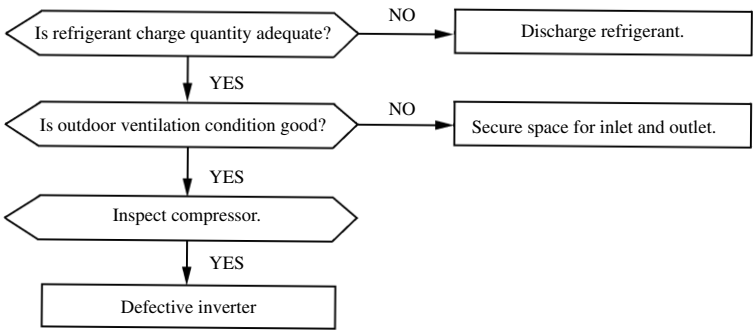
Abnormality of outdoor unit

[Compressor malfunction of insufficient gas (refrigerant)]



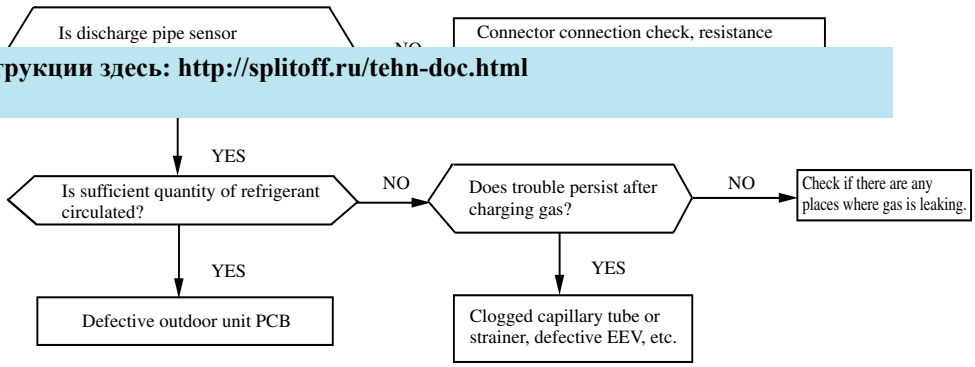
Current safe stop

[Overload operation, compressor lock, overcharge]



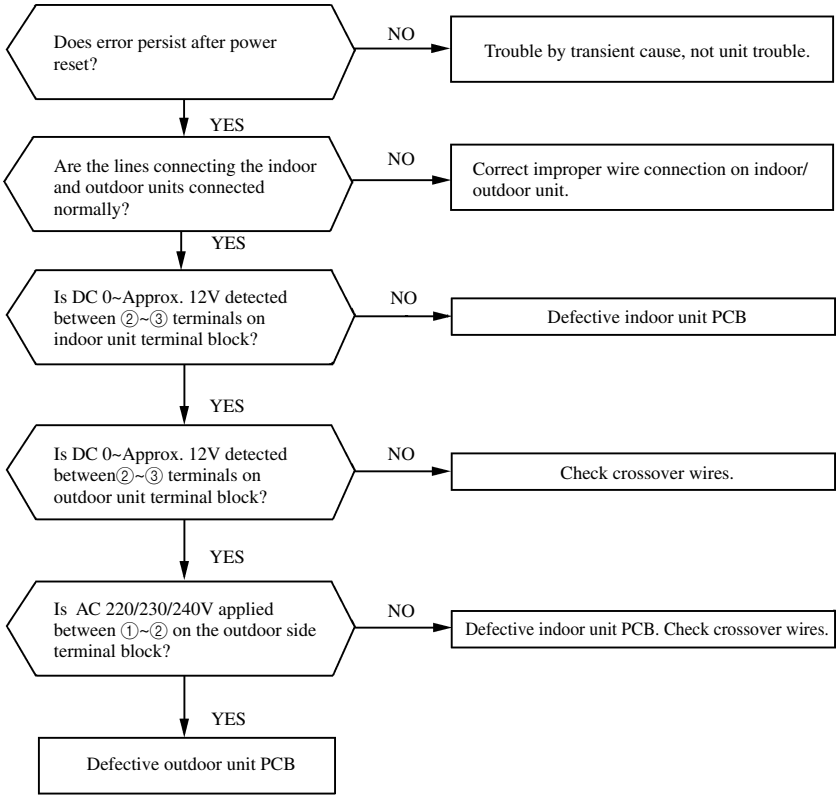
Over heat of compressor

[Gas shortage, defective discharge pipe sensor]



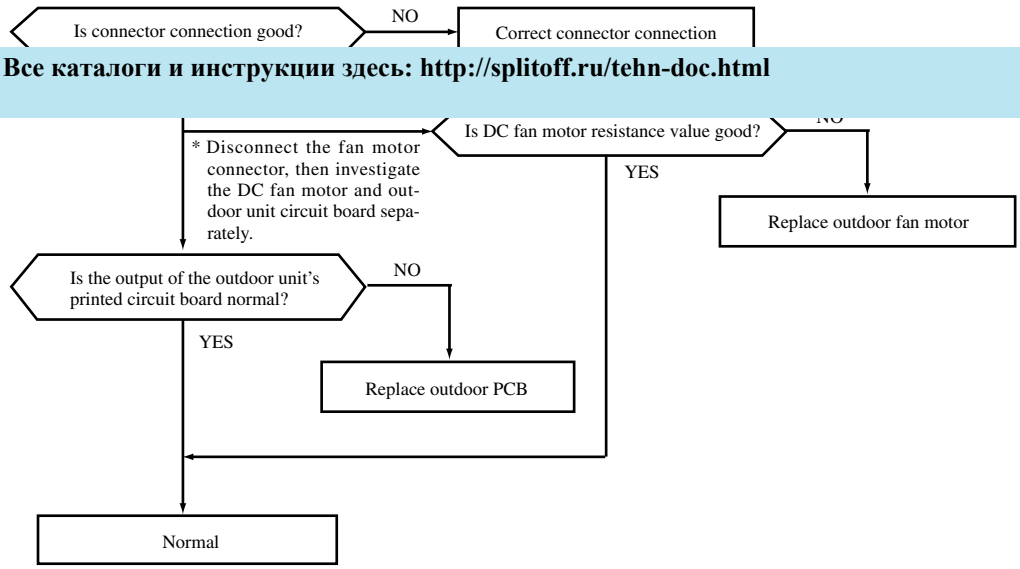
Error of signal transmission

[Wiring error including power cable, defective indoor/ outdoor unit PCB]



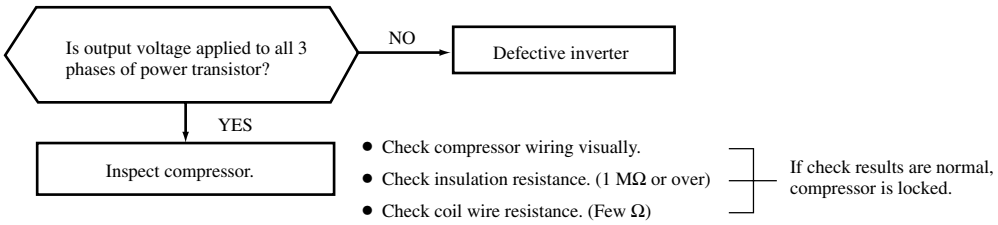
Outdoor fan motor error

[Defective fan motor, connector poor connection, defective PCB]



Rotor lock

[Compressor defect, outdoor unit circuit defect]



(h) Phenomenon observed after shortcircuit, wire breakage on sensor

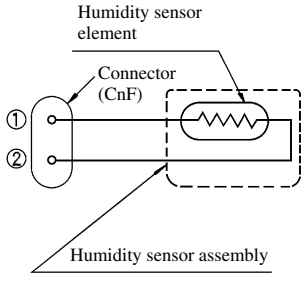
(i) Indoor unit

Sensor	Operation mode	Phenomenon	
		Shortcircuit	Broken wire
Room temperature sensor	Cooling	Release of continuous compressor operation command	Continuous compressor operation command is not released.
	Heating	Continuous compressor operation command is not released.	Release of continuous compressor operation command
Heat exchanger sensor	Cooling	Compressor stop. (Abnormality of outdoor unit)	Continuous compressor operation command is not released. (Anti-frosting)
	Heating	High pressure control mode	Hot keep (Indoor fan stop)
Humidity Sensor	Cooling	① in the table below.	① in the table below.
	Heating	Normal system operation is possible.	

① Humidity sensor operation

Failure mode		Control input circuit reading	Air conditioning system operation
Disconnected wire	① Disconnected wire	Humidity reading is 0%	Operates in the Dry region
	② Disconnected wire	Humidity reading is 0%	Operates in the Dry region
	①② Disconnected wire	Humidity reading is 0%	Operates in the Dry region
Short Circuit	① and ② are short circuited	Humidity reading is 100%	Operates in the Cooling region.

Remark: Do not perform a continuity check of the humidity sensor with a tester. If DC current is applied, it could damage the sensor.

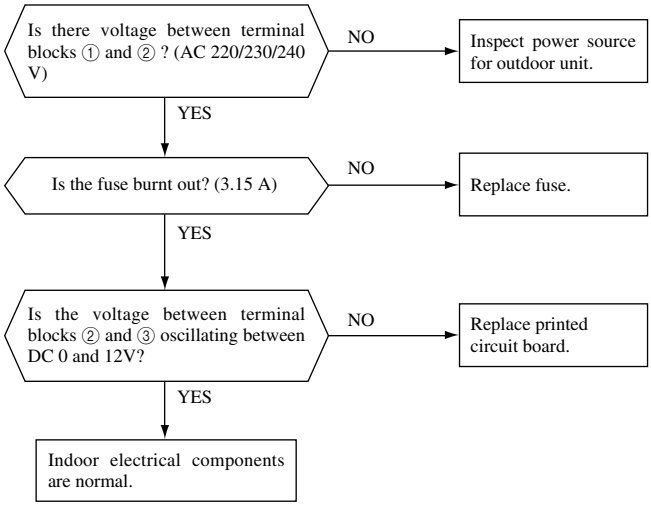


(ii) Outdoor unit

Sensor	Operation mode	Phenomenon	
		Shortcircuit	Broken wire
Heat exchanger sensor	Cooling	System can be operated normally.	System can be operated normally.
	Heating	Defrosting is not performed.	Defrosting is performed for 10 minutes at approx. 45 minutes.
Discharge pipe sensor	All modes	Compressor overload protection is disabled. (Can be operated.)	Compressor stop

(i) Checking the indoor electrical equipment

(i) Indoor unit circuit board check procedure



(ii) Indoor unit fan motor check procedure

This is a diagnostic procedure for determining if the indoor unit's fan motor or the circuit board is broken down.

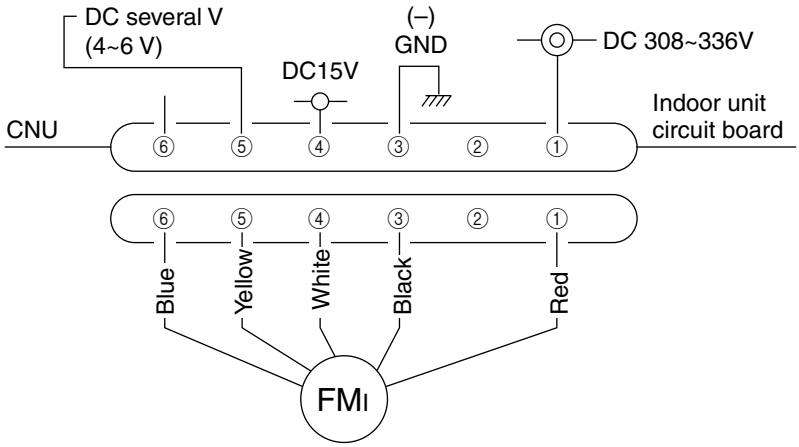
1) Indoor unit printed circuit board output check

a) Turn off the power.

b) Remove the front panel, then disconnect the fan motor lead wire connector.

c) Turn on the power. If the unit operates when the ON/OFF button is pressed, if trouble is detected after the voltages in the following figure are output for approximately 30 seconds, it means that the circuit board is normal and the fan motor is broken down.

If the voltages in the following figure are not output at connector pins No. ①, ④ and ⑤, the indoor unit's circuit board has failed and the fan motor is normal.



2) DC Fan motor resistance check

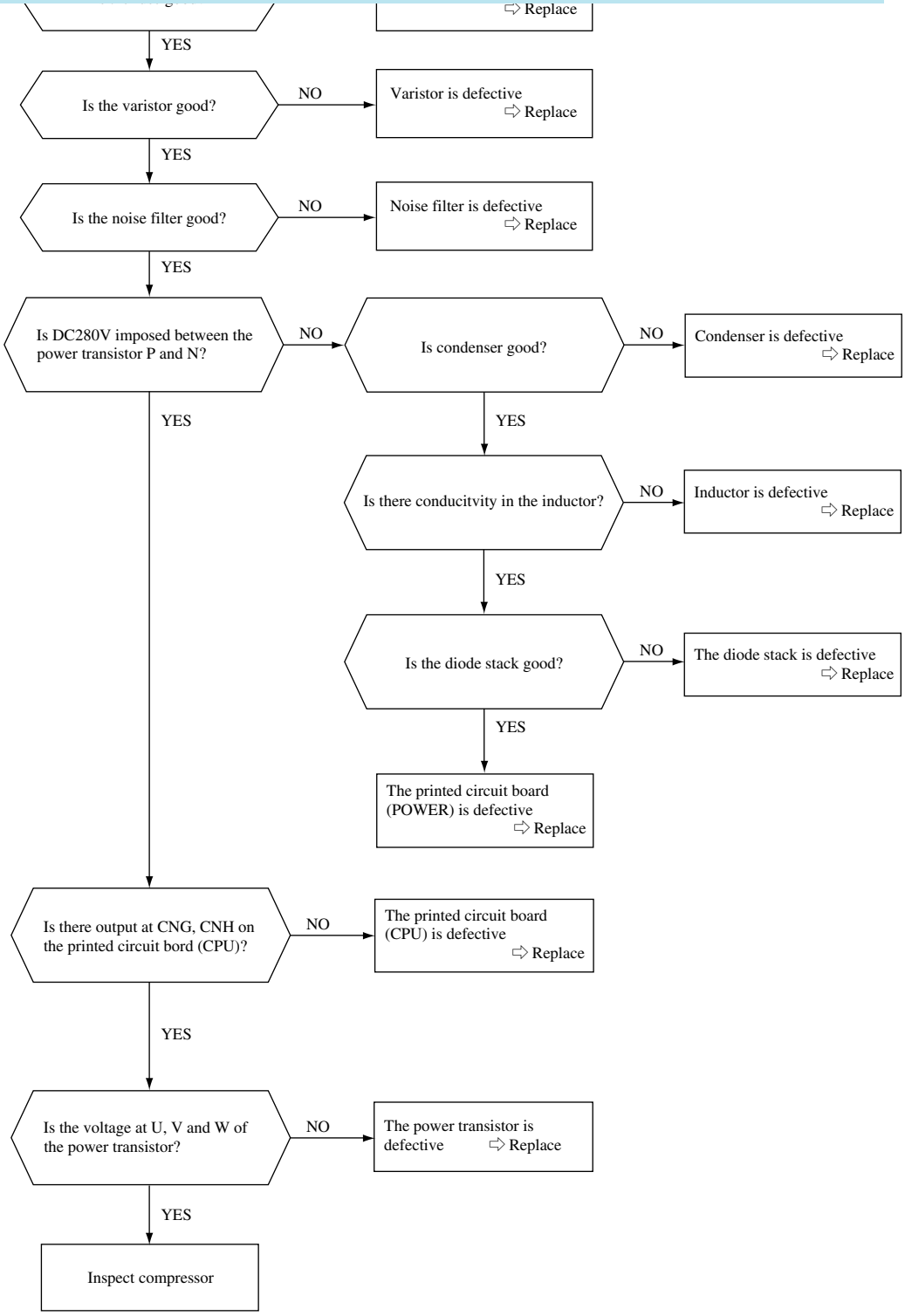
Measuring Point	Resistance when Normal
① – ③ (Red – Black)	25 MΩ or higher
④ – ③ (White – Black)	30 kΩ or higher

Notes (1) Remove the fan motor and measure it without power connected to it.
(2) If the measured value is below the value when the motor is normal, it means that the fan motor is faulty.

(j) Inverter failure diagnosis

If the results of the diagnosis in Item (h) indicate that the inverter is defective, perform the following inspection on the inverter.

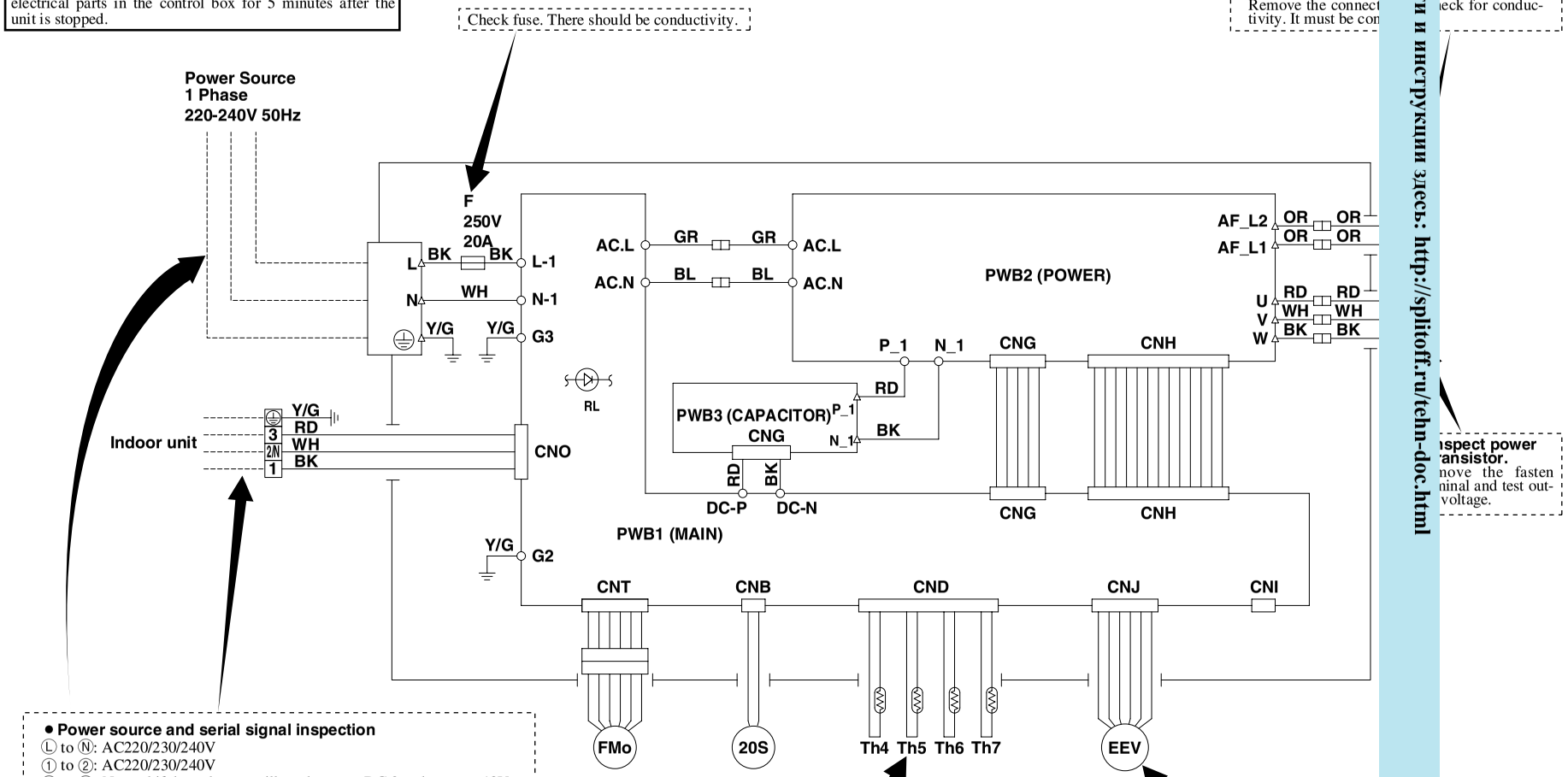
(i) Diagnosis procedure



(ii) Outdoor unit inspection points

◆SRC63ZE-S1, 71ZE-S1

⚠ CAUTION – HIGH VOLTAGE
High voltage is produced in the control box. Don't touch electrical parts in the control box for 5 minutes after the unit is stopped.



● **Power source and serial signal inspection**
Ⓛ to Ⓝ: AC220/230/240V
① to ②: AC220/230/240V
② to ③: Normal if the voltage oscillates between DC 0 and approx. 12V

Color symbol

BK	Black
BL	Blue
OR	Orange
RD	Red
Y	Yellow
WH	White
Y/G	Yellow/Green
GR	Green

● **Inspection of resistance value of dischargepipe sensor.**
Remove the connector and check the resistance value. See the section of sensor characteristics on page 127.

● **Inspection of electronic expansion valve**
To test if there is voltage.
(Voltage is only applied to the electronic expansion valve when the valve angle is being changed.)
Red to white
Red to Orange
Brown to yellow
Brown to blue
} Normal if there is approximately DC 5 V 10 seconds after the power supply is turned on.
If the expansion valve does not operate as shown above, it is defective.

● **Inspection of in conductivity**
Remove the connect eck for conduc-
tivity. It must be con

spect power ansistor.
nove the fasten minal and test out- voltage.

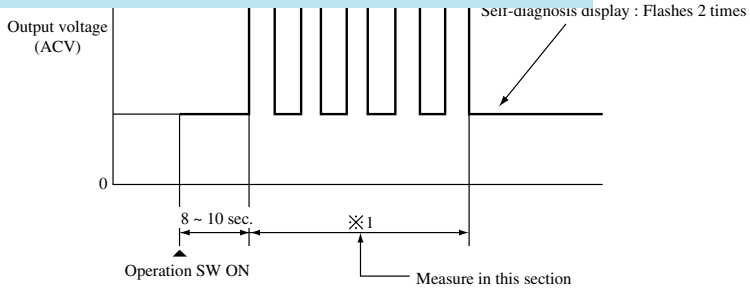
◆ **Power transistor inspection procedure**

[Use a tester with a needle indicator for the inspection. (Do not use a digital tester. Check in the AC 300 volt range.)]

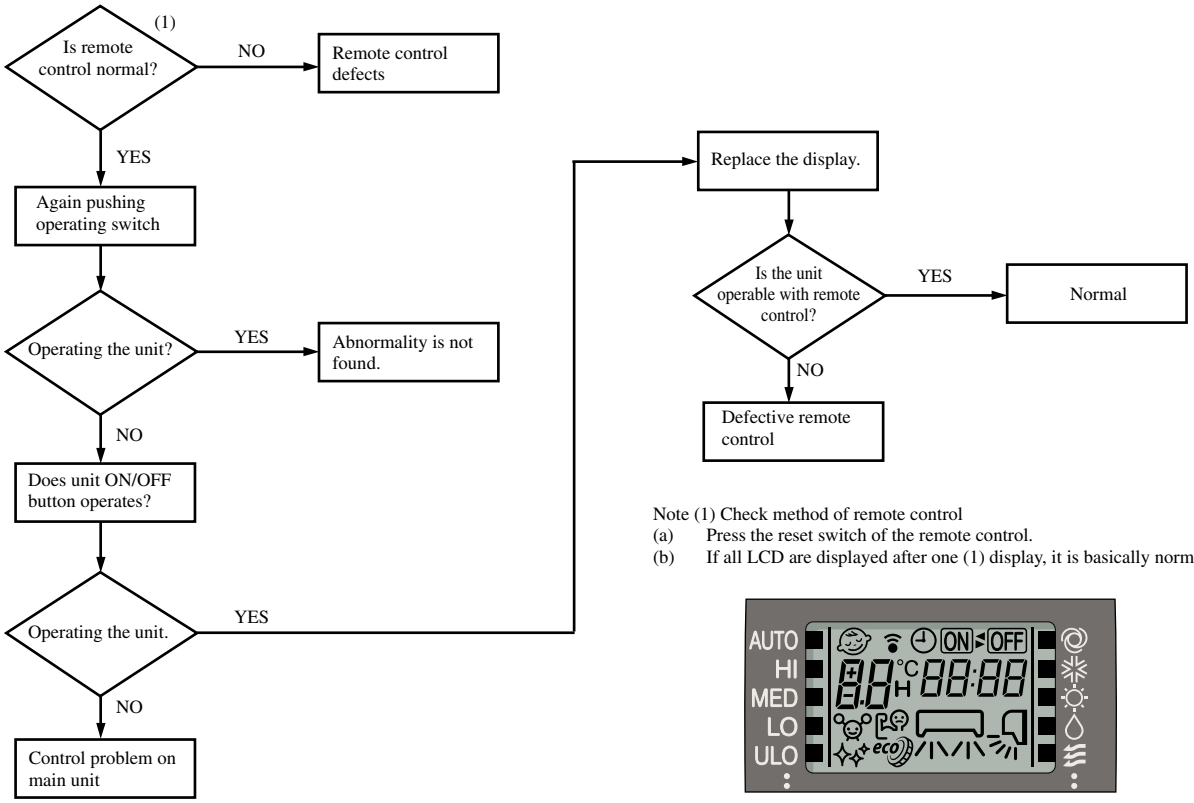
1) If there is a self-diagnosis display, inspect the compressor system (burns, wiring mistakes, etc.). If no problems are found, check the output of the power transistor.

sor. If an output such as the one shown in the figure on the right can be measured, the power transistor and the circuit board for the outdoor unit are normal.

* For about 50 seconds. After being switched on, there will be a delay of approximately one minute depending on the conditions.



(k) How to make sure of remote control



Note (1) Check method of remote control
(a) Press the reset switch of the remote control.
(b) If all LCD are displayed after one (1) display, it is basically normal.

(2) Servicing

(a) Evacuation

The evacuation is an procedure to purge impurities.....noncondensable gas, air, moisture from the refrigerant equipment by using

n the refrigerant

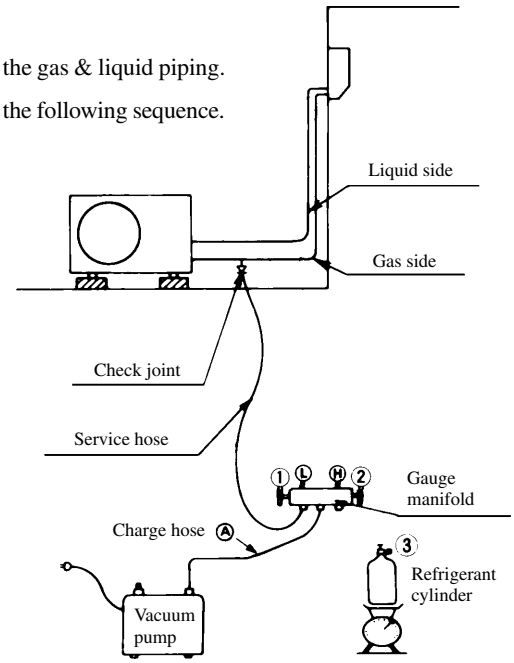
- Evacuation procedure

(i) Check to ensure that there is no internal pressure in the unit. If there is an internal pressure, it should be relieved through the check joint.

(ii) Connect the service hoses of the gauge manifold to the check joint of the gas & liquid piping.

(iii) Connect a vacuum pump to the charge hose Ⓐ. Repeat evacuation in the following sequence.

Start the vacuum pump.
↓
Compound pressure gauge indicates –0.1 MPa (–76 cmHg)
↓
Operate the vacuum pump for more than 15 minutes after –0.1 MPa (–76 cmHg) is indicated.
↓
Close low pressure valve ① of gauge manifold.
↓
Stop the vacuum pump.



Notes (1) Do not use the refrigerant pressure to expel air.
(2) Do not use the compressor for evacuation.
(3) Do not operate the compressor in the vacuum condition.

(b) Refrigerant charge

(i) Discharge refrigerant entirely from the unit and evacuate the unit.
Note: Addition of refrigerant without evacuation is unreasonable, because it will result in low charge or overcharge.

(ii) Keep the gauge manifold and connect a refrigerant cylinder to the unit.

(iii) Record the weight of the refrigerant cylinder on the balance. This is necessary for making sure of the charged refrigerant amount.

(iv) Purge air from the charge hose Ⓐ
Firstly loose the connecting portion of the charge hose Ⓐ at the gauge manihold side and open the valve ③ for a few seconds, and then immediately retighten it after observing that gas is blow out from the loosened portion.

(v) Open the valve ① and ③ after discharging air from the charge hose Ⓐ, then the liquid refrigerant begins flowing from the cylinder into the unit. Be sure to erect the refrigerant cylinder upright to let liquid refrigerant flow into the unit.

(vi) When refrigerant has been charged into the system to some extent, refrigerant flow becomes stagnant, when that happens, start the compressor in cooling cycle until the unit is filled with refrigerant to the specified weight.

(vii) Making sure of the refrigerant amount, close the valve ③

(viii) Disconnect the charge hose from the unit. Cover the valve ports of the refrigerant piping with caps and tighten them securely.

(ix) Check for gas leakage applying a gas leak detector along the piping line.

(x) Start the air conditioner and make sure of its operating condition.....high side and low side pressures and temperature difference between return air and supply air.

1.2.7 REFRIGERANT PIPING INSTALLATION/SERVICING MANUAL FOR AIR CONDITONERS USING R410A

This is same as chapter 1.1.7. Refer to page 55.

MEMO

2. WALL MOUNTED TYPE ROOM AIR-CONDITIONER

(Split system, air to air heat pump type)

CONTENTS

2.1.1 GENERAL INFORMATION

(1) Specific features

The “MITSUBISHI HEAVY INDUSTRIES, LTD.” room air-conditioner: SRK series are of split and wall mounted type and the unit

m air cooling or heating equipment with operation control switch and the outdoor unit is composed of condensing unit with compressor.

(a) Remote control flap

The flap can be automatically controlled by operating wireless remote controller.

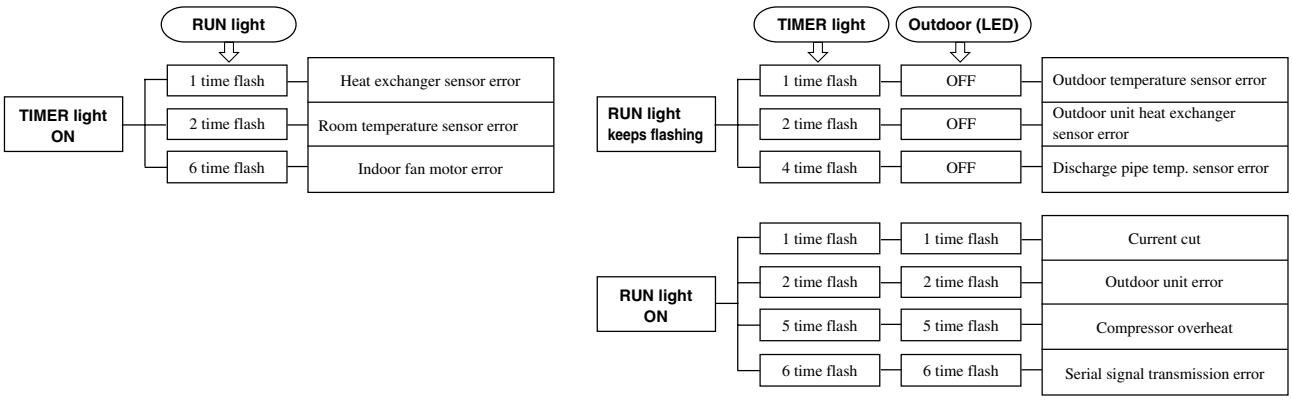
- Air scroll: Flap operation is automatically control.
- Swing: This will swing the flap up and down.
- Memory flap: Once the flap position is set, the unit memorizes the position and continues to operate at the same position from the next time.

(b) Automatic Operation

When the remote control switch is set on “auto(⧋)”, it will either automatically decide operation mode such as cooling, heating and thermal dry, or operate in the operation mode before it has been turned to automatic control.

(c) Self diagnosis function

- We are constantly trying to do better service to our customers by installing such judges that show abnormality of operation as follows.



(2) How to read the model name

Example : SR K 40 H D - S1

- S1 — R410A models
- D — Series No.
- H — Heat pump type
- 40 — Product capacity
- K — Wall mounted type
- SR — Split type room air-conditioner

2.1.2 SELECTION DATA

(1) Specifications

Model SRK20HD-S1 (Indoor unit)

220/230/240V)

Item						
					S1	
Cooling capacity(1)				W	2050	
Heating capacity(1)				W	2200	
Power source					1 Phase, 220–240V, 50Hz	
Operation data(1)	Cooling input			kW	0.63	
	Running current (Cooling)			A	3.1/3.0/2.9	
	Heating input			kW	0.6	
	Running current (Heating)			A	3.0/2.9/2.8	
	Inrush current			A	18.9	
	COP				Cooling: 3.21 Heating: 3.61	
	Noise level	Cooling	Sound level	dB	Hi 34, Me 28, Lo 26	46
			Power level		52	60
		Heating	Sound level		Hi 34, Me 31, Lo 27	46
			Power level		52	60
Exterior dimensions Height × Width × Depth				mm	250 × 815 × 249	540 × 720 × 290
Color					Cool white	Stucco white
Net weight				kg	9.0	32
Refrigerant equipment Compressor type & Q'ty					–	RM-B5077MNE4 (Rotary type) × 1
Motor				kW	–	0.65
Starting method					–	Line starting
Heat exchanger					Louver fins & inner grooved tubing	Straight fins & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control					Capillary tubes + Electronic expansion valve	
Refrigerant(3)				kg	R410A 0.9 (Pre-Charged up to the piping length of 15m)	
Refrigerant oil				ℓ	0.35 (MA68)	
Deice control					Microcomputer control	
Air handling equipment Fan type & Q'ty					Tangential fan × 1	Propeller fan × 1
Motor				W	14	12
Air flow (at High)			(Cooling)	CMM	7.5	26
			(Heating)		7.5	26
Air filter, Q'ty					Polypropylene net (washable) × 2	–
Shock & vibration absorber					–	Cushion rubber (for compressor)
Electric heater					–	–
Operation control Operation switch					Wireless-Remote controller	–
Room temperature control					Microcomputer thermostat	–
Pilot lamp					RUN (Green), TIMER (Yellow), HI POWER (Green), ECONO (Orange)	
Safety equipment					Compressor: Overheat protection, overcurrent protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection, Frost protection	
Refrigerant piping	O.D			mm (in)	Liquid line: ϕ6.35 (1/4″) Gas line: ϕ9.52 (3/8″)	
	Connecting method				Flare connecting	
	Attached length of piping				Liquid line: 0.4 m Gas line : 0.33 m	–
	Insulation				Necessary (Both sides)	
Drain hose					Connectable	
Power source cord					2.5 m (3 cores with Earth)	
Connection wiring	Size × Core number				1.5 mm² × 4 cores (Including earth cable)	
	Connecting method				Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Accessories (included)					Mounting kit, Clean filter (Natural enzyme filter x1, Photocatalytic washable deodorizing filter x1)	
Optional parts					–	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	Standards
Cooling	27ºC	19ºC	35ºC	24ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612
Heating	20ºC	–	7ºC	6ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612

The piping length is 7.5m.

(2) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively.

(3) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 15 m connecting piping.
(Purging is not required even in the short piping.)

Model SRK28HD-S1 (Indoor unit)
SRC28HD-S1 (Outdoor unit)

(220/230/240V)

Item				Model	SRK28HD-S1	SRC28HD-S1
Cooling capacity[1]				W	2550	
Operation data[1]	Cooling input			kW	0.79	
	Running current (Cooling)			A	3.9/3.7/3.5	
	Heating input			kW	0.77	
	Running current (Heating)			A	3.7/3.5/3.3	
	Inrush current			A	17.2	
	COP				Cooling: 3.21 Heating: 3.61	
	Noise level	Cooling	Sound level	dB	Hi 39, Me 33, Lo 30	46
			Power level		55	60
		Heating	Sound level		Hi 40, Me 33, Lo 29	46
			Power level		56	60
Exterior dimensions Height × Width × Depth				mm	250 × 815 × 249	540 × 720 × 290
Color					Cool white	Stucco white
Net weight				kg	9.0	32
Refrigerant equipment Compressor type & Q'ty					–	5PS102DAB [Rotary type] × 1
Motor				kW	–	0.7
Starting method					–	Line starting
Heat exchanger					Louver fins & inner grooved tubing	Straight fins & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control					Capillary tubes + Electronic expansion valve	
Refrigerant[3]				kg	R410A 0.9 (Pre-Charged up to the piping length of 15m)	
Refrigerant oil				ℓ	0.35 (RB68A)	
Deice control					Microcomputer control	
Air handling equipment Fan type & Q'ty					Tangential fan × 1	Propeller fan × 1
Motor				W	14	15
Air flow (at High)			(Cooling)	CMM	8.0	30
			(Heating)		8.5	30
Air filter, Q'ty					Polypropylene net (washable) × 2	–
Shock & vibration absorber					–	Cushion rubber (for compressor)
Electric heater					–	–
Operation control Operation switch					Wireless-Remote controller	–
Room temperature control					Microcomputer thermostat	–
Pilot lamp					RUN (Green), TIMER (Yellow), HI POWER (Green), ECONO (Orange)	
Safety equipment					Compressor: Overheat protection, overcurrent protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection, Frost protection	
Refrigerant piping	O.D			mm (in)	Liquid line: ϕ6.35 (1/4″) Gas line: ϕ9.52 (3/8″)	
	Connecting method				Flare connecting	
	Attached length of piping				Liquid line: 0.4 m Gas line : 0.33 m	–
	Insulation				Necessary (Both sides)	
Drain hose					Connectable	
Power source cord					2.5 m (3 cores with Earth)	
Connection wiring	Size × Core number				1.5 mm² × 4 cores (Including earth cable)	
	Connecting method				Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Accessories (included)					Mounting kit, Clean filter (Natural enzyme filter x1, Photocatalytic washable deodorizing filter x1)	
Optional parts					–	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	Standards
Cooling	27ºC	19ºC	35ºC	24ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612
Heating	20ºC	–	7ºC	6ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612

The piping length is 7.5m.

(2) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively.

(3) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 15 m connecting piping.
(Purging is not required even in the short piping.)

Model SRK40HD-S1 (Indoor unit)
SRC40HD-S1 (Outdoor unit)

(220/230/240V)

Item				Model	SRK40HD-S1	SRC40HD-S1
Cooling capacity[1]				W	3600	
Operation data[1]	Cooling input			kW	1.12	
	Running current (Cooling)			A	5.3/5.1/4.9	
	Heating input			kW	1.16	
	Running current (Heating)			A	5.5/5.3/5.1	
	Inrush current			A	25.2	
	COP				Cooling: 3.21 Heating: 3.42	
	Noise level	Cooling	Sound level	dB	Hi 40, Me 38, Lo 34	49
			Power level		56	63
		Heating	Sound level		Hi 41, Me 38, Lo 34	50
			Power level		57	64
Exterior dimensions Height × Width × Depth				mm	250 × 815 × 249	640 × 850 × 290
Color					Cool white	Stucco white
Net weight				kg	9.0	41
Refrigerant equipment Compressor type & Q'ty					–	5KS150DBB [Rotary type] × 1
Motor				kW	–	1.1
Starting method					–	Line starting
Heat exchanger					Louver fins & inner grooved tubing	Straight fins & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control					Capillary tubes + Electronic expansion valve	
Refrigerant[3]				kg	R410A 1.17 (Pre-Charged up to the piping length of 15m)	
Refrigerant oil				ℓ	0.43 (RB68A)	
Deice control					Microcomputer control	
Air handling equipment Fan type & Q'ty					Tangential fan × 1	Propeller fan × 1
Motor				W	14	35
Air flow (at High)			(Cooling)	CMM	9.0	38
			(Heating)		9.5	38
Air filter, Q'ty					Polypropylene net (washable) × 2	–
Shock & vibration absorber					–	Cushion rubber (for compressor)
Electric heater					–	–
Operation control Operation switch					Wireless-Remote controller	–
Room temperature control					Microcomputer thermostat	–
Pilot lamp					RUN (Green), TIMER (Yellow), HI POWER (Green), ECONO (Orange)	
Safety equipment					Compressor: Overheat protection, overcurrent protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection, Frost protection	
Refrigerant piping	O.D			mm (in)	Liquid line: ϕ6.35 (1/4″) Gas line: ϕ12.7 (1/2″)	
	Connecting method				Flare connecting	
	Attached length of piping				Liquid line: 0.4 m Gas line : 0.33 m	–
	Insulation				Necessary (Both sides)	
Drain hose					Connectable	
Power source cord					2.5 m (3 cores with Earth)	
Connection wiring	Size × Core number				1.5 mm² × 4 cores (Including earth cable)	
	Connecting method				Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Accessories (included)					Mounting kit, Clean filter (Natural enzyme filter x1, Photocatalytic washable deodorizing filter x1)	
Optional parts					–	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	Standards
Cooling	27ºC	19ºC	35ºC	24ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612
Heating	20ºC	–	7ºC	6ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612

The piping length is 7.5m.

(2) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively.

(3) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 15 m connecting piping.
(Purging is not required even in the short piping.)

Model SRK20HC-S2 (Indoor unit)
SRC20HC-S2 (Outdoor unit) **(220/230/240V)**

Item				Model	SRK20HC-S2	SRC20HC-S2
Cooling capacity(1)				W	2050	
Operation data(1)	Running current (Cooling)			A	3.1/3.0/2.9	
	Heating input			kW	0.6	
	Running current (Heating)			A	3.0/2.9/2.8	
	Inrush current			A	18.9	
	COP				Cooling: 3.21 Heating: 3.61	
	Noise level	Cooling	Sound level	dB	38	48
			Power level		52	60
		Heating	Sound level		38	48
			Power level		52	60
Exterior dimensions Height × Width × Depth				mm	250 × 815 × 247	540 × 720 × 290
Color					Cool white	Stucco white
Net weight				kg	9.0	32
Refrigerant equipment Compressor type & Q'ty					–	RM-B5077MNE4 (Rotary type) × 1
Motor				kW	–	0.65
Starting method					–	Line starting
Heat exchanger					Louver fins & inner grooved tubing	Straight fins & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control					Capillary tubes + Electric expansion valve	
Refrigerant(3)				kg	R410A 0.9 (Pre-Charged up to the piping length of 15m)	
Refrigerant oil				ℓ	0.35 (MA68)	
Deice control					Microcomputer control	
Air handling equipment Fan type & Q'ty					Tangential fan × 1	Propeller fan × 1
Motor				W	14	12
Air flow (at High)			(Cooling)	CMM	7.5	26
			(Heating)		7.5	26
Air filter, Q'ty					Polypropylene net (washable) × 2	–
Shock & vibration absorber					–	Cushion rubber (for compressor)
Electric heater					–	–
Operation control Operation switch					Wireless-Remote controller	–
Room temperature control					Microcomputer thermostat	–
Pilot lamp					RUN (Green), TIMER (Yellow), HI POWER (Green), ECONO (Orange)	
Safety equipment					Compressor: Overheat protection, overcurrent protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection	
Refrigerant piping	O.D			mm (in)	Liquid line: ϕ6.35 (1/4″) Gas line: ϕ9.52 (3/8″)	
	Connecting method				Flare connecting	
	Attached length of piping				Liquid line: 0.4 m Gas line : 0.33 m	–
	Insulation				Necessary (Both sides)	
Drain hose					Connectable	
Power source cord					2.5 m (3 cores with Earth)	
Connection wiring	Size × Core number				1.5 mm² × 4 cores (Including earth cable)	
	Connecting method				Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Accessories (included)					Mounting kit, Clean filter (Natural enzyme filter x2)	
Optional parts					–	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	Standards
Cooling	27ºC	19ºC	35ºC	24ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612
Heating	20ºC	–	7ºC	6ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612

The piping length is 7.5m.

(2) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively.

(3) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 15 m connecting piping.
(Purging is not required even in the short piping.)

Model SRK28HC-S2 (Indoor unit)
SRC28HC-S2 (Outdoor unit)

(220/230/240V)

Item				Model	SRK28HC-S2	SRC28HC-S2
Cooling capacity[1]				W	2550	
Operation data[1]	Cooling input			kW	0.79	
	Running current (Cooling)			A	3.9/3.7/3.5	
	Heating input			kW	0.77	
	Running current (Heating)			A	3.7/3.5/3.3	
	Inrush current			A	17.2	
	COP				Cooling: 3.21 Heating: 3.61	
	Noise level	Cooling	Sound level	dB	41	48
			Power level		55	60
		Heating	Sound level		42	48
			Power level		56	60
Exterior dimensions Height × Width × Depth				mm	250 × 815 × 247	540 × 720 × 290
Color					Cool white	Stucco white
Net weight				kg	9.0	32
Refrigerant equipment Compressor type & Q'ty					–	5PS102DBA [Rotary type] × 1
Motor				kW	–	0.7
Starting method					–	Line starting
Heat exchanger					Louver fins & inner grooved tubing	Straight fins & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control					Capillary tubes + Electric expansion valve	
Refrigerant[3]				kg	R410A 0.9 (Pre-Charged up to the piping length of 15m)	
Refrigerant oil				ℓ	0.35 (RB68A)	
Deice control					Microcomputer control	
Air handling equipment Fan type & Q'ty					Tangential fan × 1	Propeller fan × 1
Motor				W	14	15
Air flow (at High)			(Cooling)	CMM	8.0	30
			(Heating)		8.5	30
Air filter, Q'ty					Polypropylene net (washable) × 2	–
Shock & vibration absorber					–	Cushion rubber (for compressor)
Electric heater					–	–
Operation control Operation switch					Wireless-Remote controller	–
Room temperature control					Microcomputer thermostat	–
Pilot lamp					RUN (Green), TIMER (Yellow), HI POWER (Green), ECONO (Orange)	
Safety equipment					Compressor: Overheat protection, overcurrent protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection	
Refrigerant piping	O.D			mm (in)	Liquid line: ϕ6.35 (1/4″) Gas line: ϕ9.52 (3/8″)	
	Connecting method				Flare connecting	
	Attached length of piping				Liquid line: 0.4 m Gas line : 0.33 m	–
	Insulation				Necessary (Both sides)	
Drain hose					Connectable	
Power source cord					2.5 m (3 cores with Earth)	
Connection wiring	Size × Core number				1.5 mm² × 4 cores (Including earth cable)	
	Connecting method				Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Accessories (included)					Mounting kit, Clean filter (Natural enzyme filter x2)	
Optional parts					–	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	Standards
Cooling	27ºC	19ºC	35ºC	24ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612
Heating	20ºC	–	7ºC	6ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612

The piping length is 7.5m.

(2) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively.

(3) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 15 m connecting piping.
(Purging is not required even in the short piping.)

Model SRK40HC-S2 (Indoor unit)
SRC40HC-S2 (Outdoor unit)

(220/230/240V)

Item				Model	SRK40HC-S2	SRC40HC-S2
Cooling capacity[1]				W	3600	
Operation data[1]	Cooling input			kW	1.12	
	Running current (Cooling)			A	5.3/5.1/4.9	
	Heating input			kW	1.16	
	Running current (Heating)			A	5.5/5.3/5.1	
	Inrush current			A	25.2	
	COP (Cooling)				Cooling: 3.21 Heating: 3.42	
	Noise level	Cooling	Sound level	dB	42	51
			Power level		56	63
		Heating	Sound level		43	52
			Power level		57	64
Exterior dimensions Height × Width × Depth				mm	250 × 815 × 247	640 × 850 × 290
Color					Cool white	Stucco white
Net weight				kg	9.0	41
Refrigerant equipment Compressor type & Q'ty					–	5KS150DBB [Rotary type] × 1
Motor				kW	–	1.1
Starting method					–	Line starting
Heat exchanger					Louver fins & inner grooved tubing	Straight fins & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control					Capillary tubes + Electric expansion valve	
Refrigerant[3]				kg	R410A 1.17 (Pre-Charged up to the piping length of 15m)	
Refrigerant oil				ℓ	0.43 (RB68A)	
Deice control					Microcomputer control	
Air handling equipment Fan type & Q'ty					Tangential fan × 1	Propeller fan × 1
Motor				W	14	35
Air flow (at High)			(Cooling)	CMM	9.0	38
			(Heating)		9.5	38
Air filter, Q'ty					Polypropylene net (washable) × 2	–
Shock & vibration absorber					–	Cushion rubber (for compressor)
Electric heater					–	–
Operation control Operation switch					Wireless-Remote controller	–
Room temperature control					Microcomputer thermostat	–
Pilot lamp					RUN (Green), TIMER (Yellow), HI POWER (Green), ECONO (Orange)	
Safety equipment					Compressor: Overheat protection, overcurrent protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection	
Refrigerant piping	O.D			mm (in)	Liquid line: ϕ6.35 (1/4″) Gas line: ϕ12.7 (1/2″)	
	Connecting method				Flare connecting	
	Attached length of piping				Liquid line: 0.4 m Gas line : 0.33 m	–
	Insulation				Necessary (Both sides)	
Drain hose					Connectable	
Power source cord					2.5 m (3 cores with Earth)	
Connection wiring	Size × Core number				1.5 mm² × 4 cores (Including earth cable)	
	Connecting method				Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Accessories (included)					Mounting kit, Clean filter (Natural enzyme filter x2)	
Optional parts					–	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	Standards
Cooling	27ºC	19ºC	35ºC	24ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612
Heating	20ºC	–	7ºC	6ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612

The piping length is 7.5m.

(2) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively.

(3) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 15 m connecting piping.
(Purging is not required even in the short piping.)

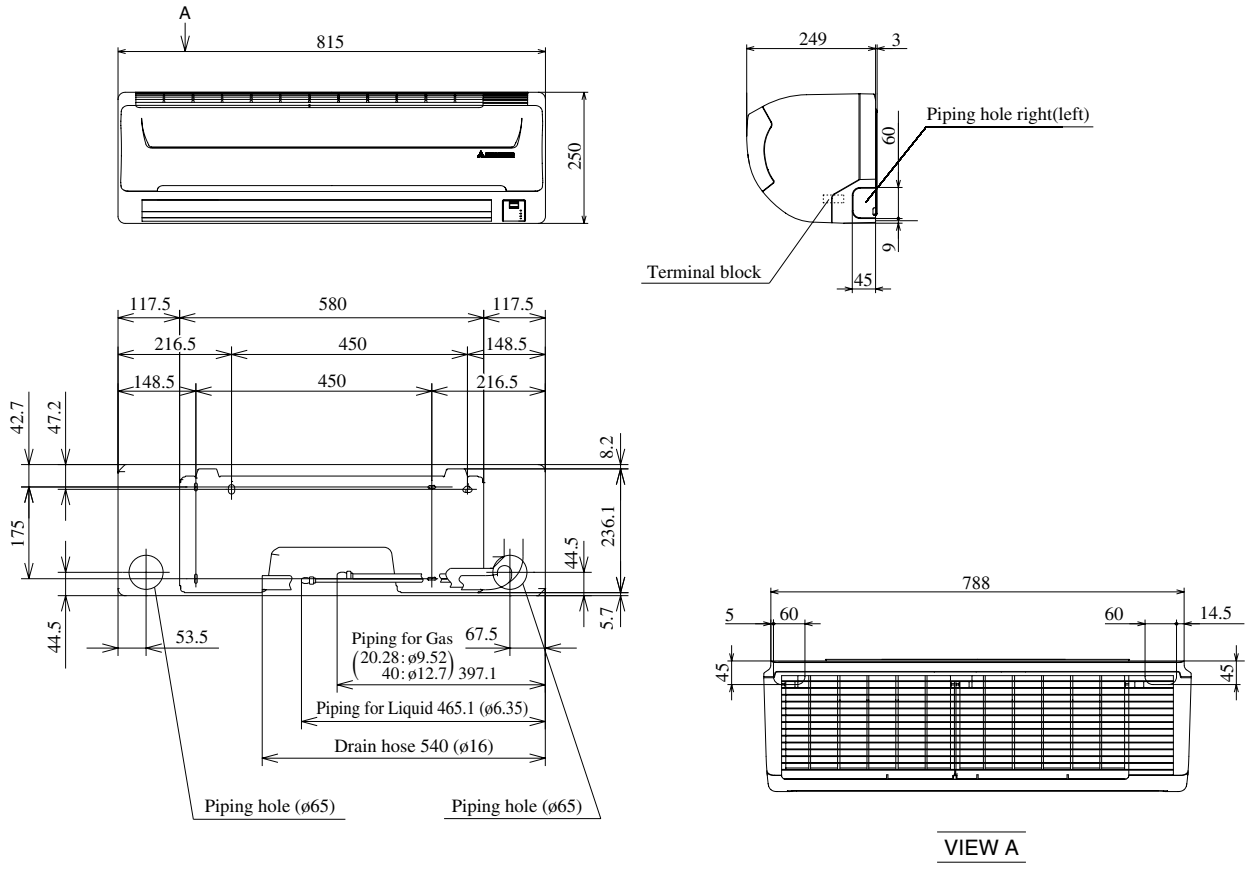
(2) Range of usage & limitations

Item \ Models	All models
Outdoor air temperature (Upper, lower limits)	Cooling operation : Approximately 21 to 43˚C Heating operation : Approximately -5 to 21˚C
Refrigerant line (one way) length	Max. 15m
Vertical height difference between outdoor unit and indoor unit	Max. 10m (Outdoor unit is higher) Max. 10m (Outdoor unit is lower)
Power source voltage	Rating ± 10%
Voltage at starting	Min. 85% of rating
Frequency of ON-OFF cycle	Max. 10 times/h
ON and OFF interval	Max. 3 minutes

(3) Exterior dimensions

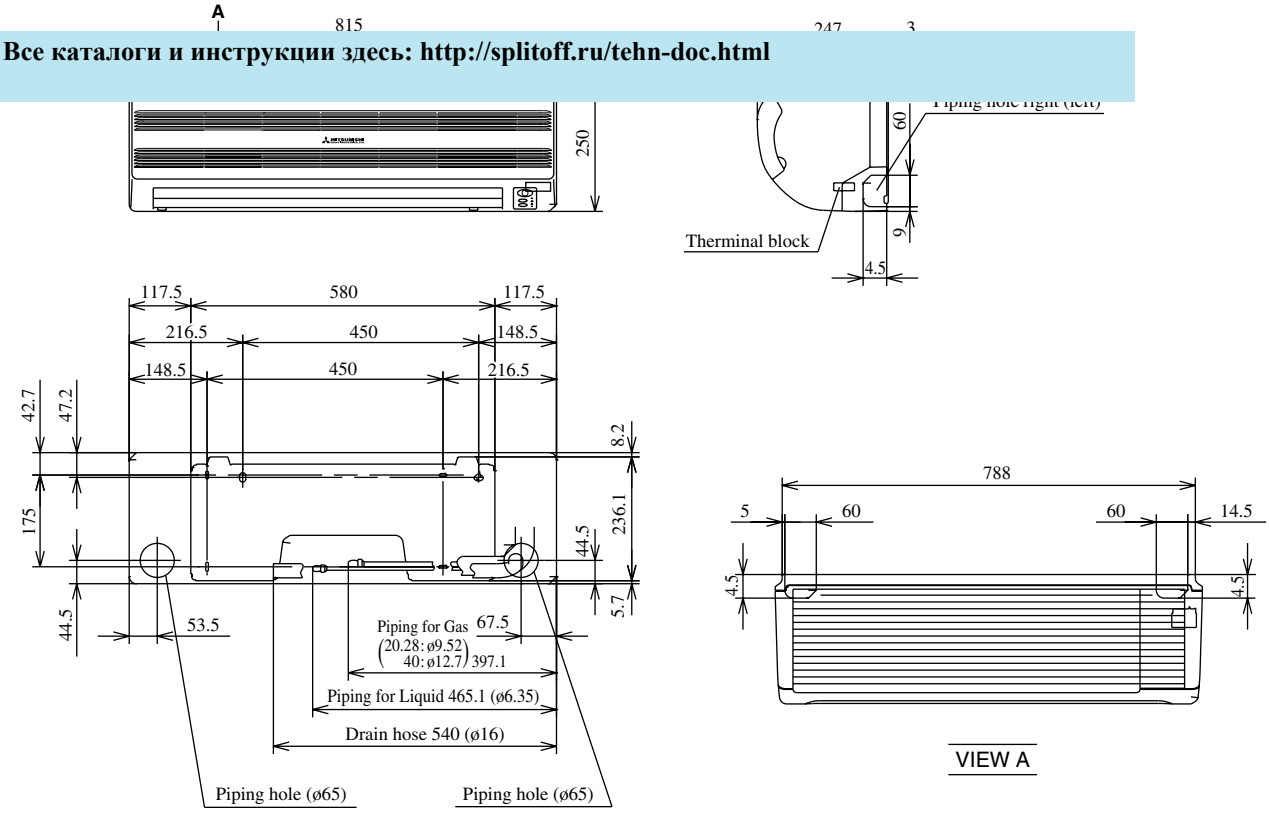
(a) Indoor unit
Models SRK20HD-S1, 28HD-S1, 40HD-S1

Unit: mm



Models SRK20HC-S2, 28HC-S2, 40HC-S2

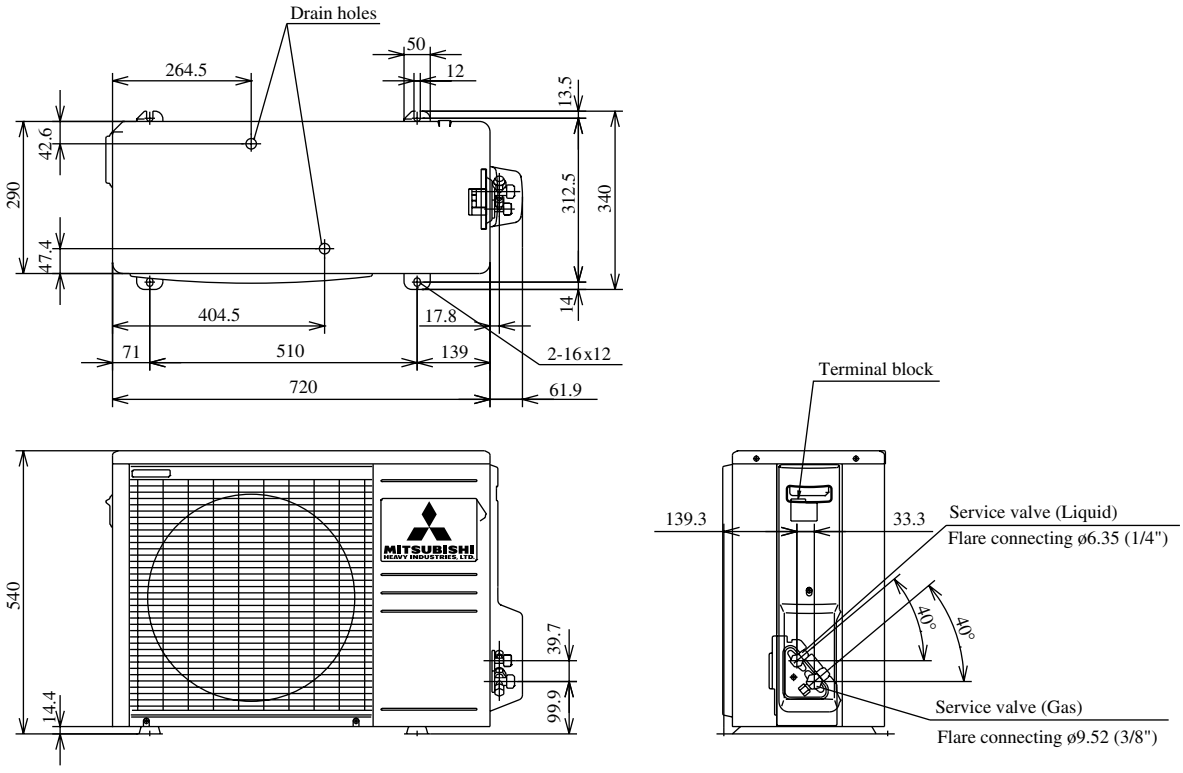
Unit: mm



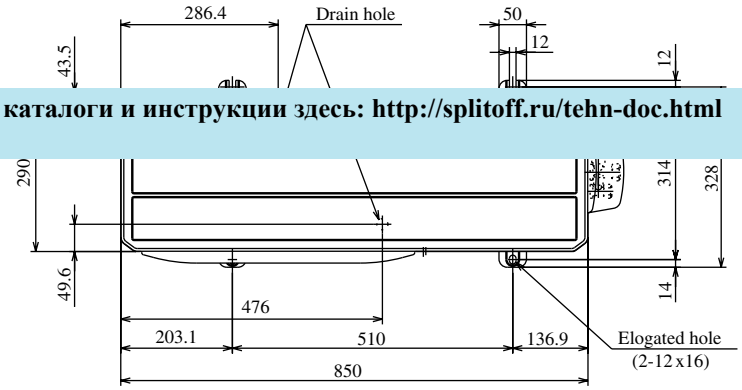
(b) Outdoor unit

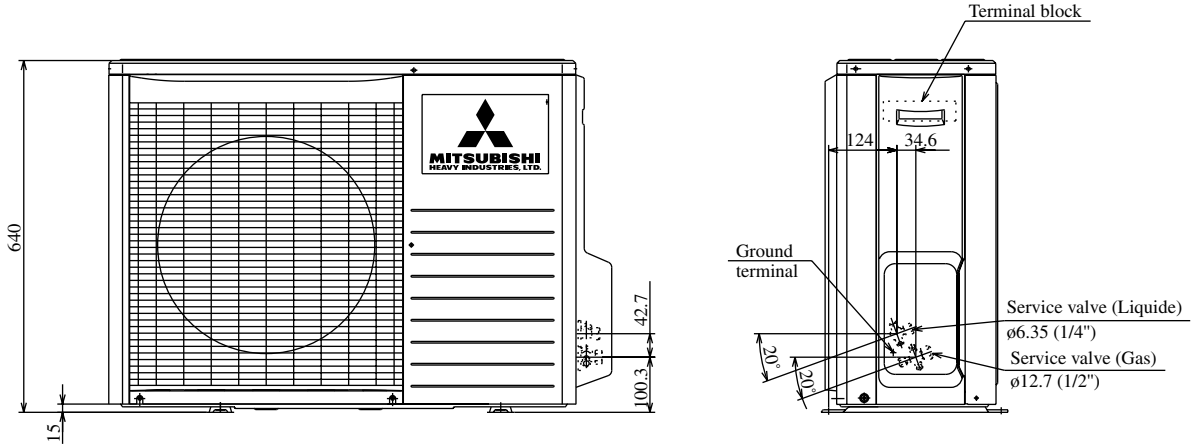
Models SRC20HD-S1, 28HD-S1, 20HC-S2, 28HC-S2

Unit: mm



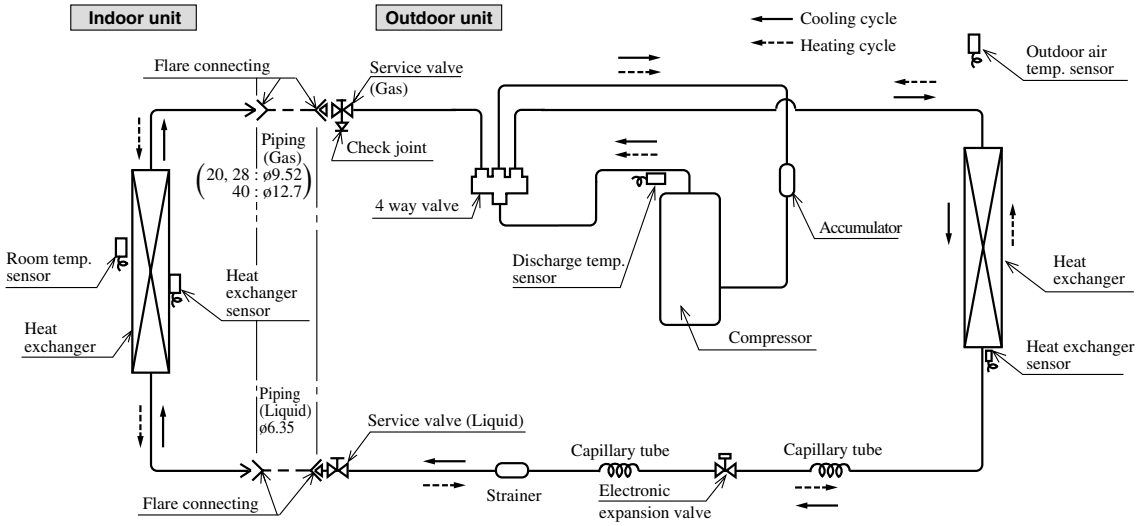
Models SRC40HD-S1, 40HC-S2





(4) Piping system

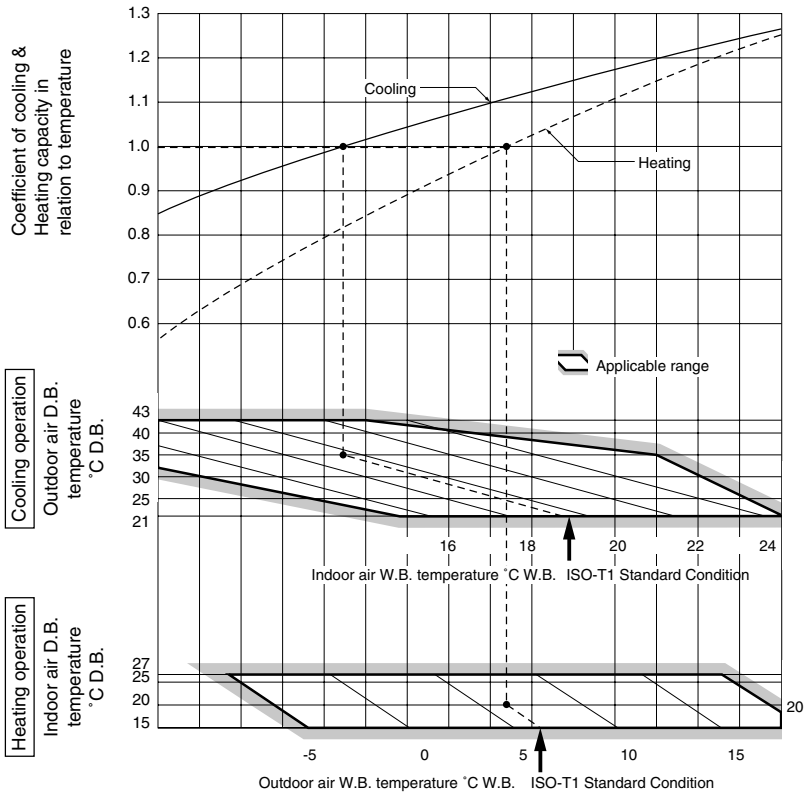
Models SRK20HD-S1, 28HD-S1, 40HD-S1, 20HC-S2, 28HC-S2, 40HC-S2



(5) Selection chart

Correct the cooling and heating capacity in accordance with the conditions as follows. The net cooling and heating capacity can be obtained in the following way.

(a) Coefficient of cooling and heating capacity in relation to temperature



(b) Correction of cooling and heating capacity in relation to one way length of refrigerant piping

It is necessary to correct the cooling and heating capacity in relation to the one way piping length between the indoor and outdoor units.

Piping length [m]	7	10	15
Cooling	1.0	0.99	0.975
Heating	1.0	1.0	1.0

(c) Correction relative to frosting on outdoor heat exchanger during heating

In additions to the foregoing corrections (a), (b) the heating capacity needs to be adjusted also with respect to the frosting on the outdoor heat exchanger.

Air inlet temperature of outdoor unit in ˚CWB	-5	-3	-1	1	3	5
Adjustment coefficient	0.91	0.88	0.86	0.87	0.92	1.00

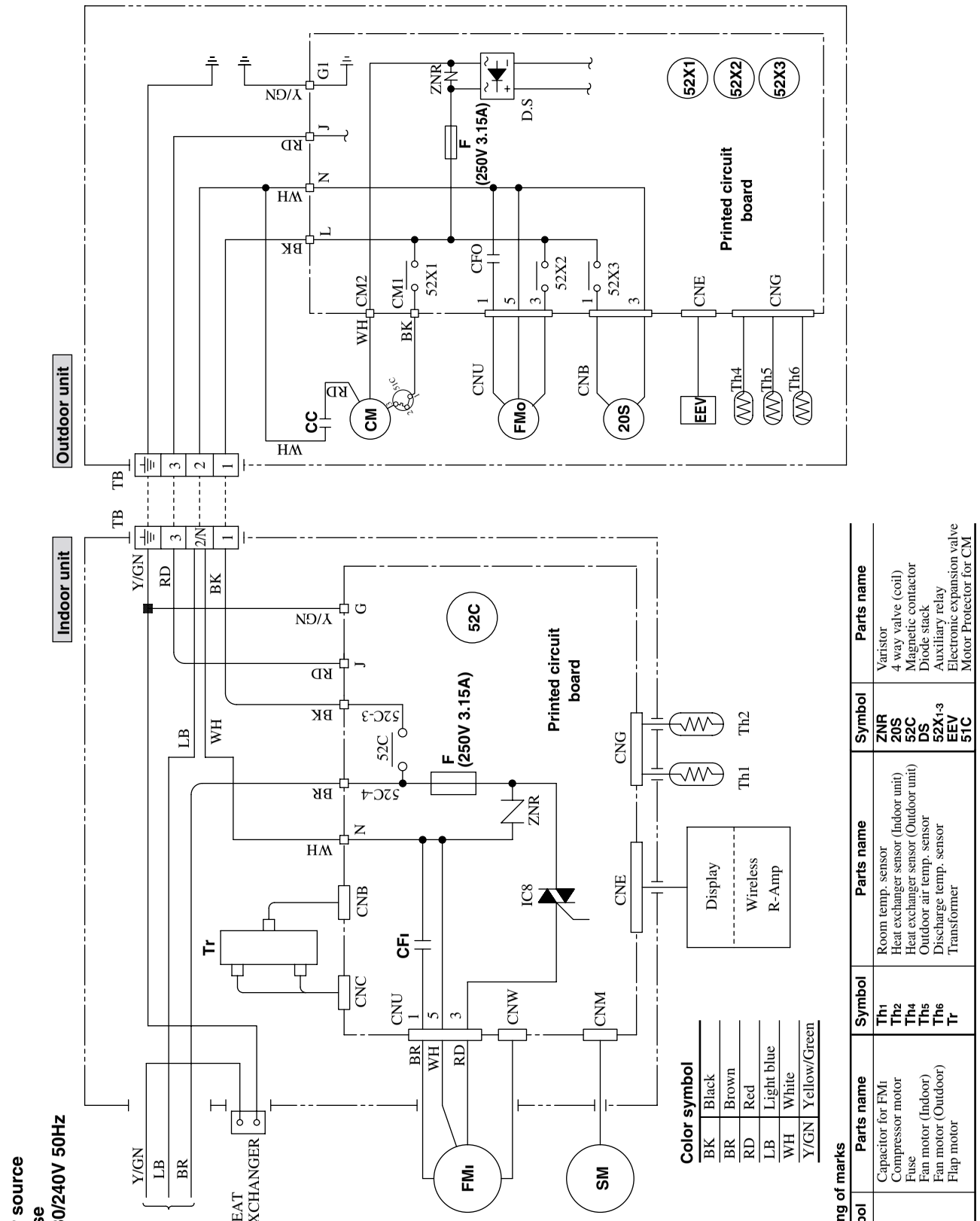
How to obtain the cooling and heating capacity

Example : The net cooling capacity of the model SRK40HD-S1 with the piping length of 15m, indoor wet-bulb temperature at 19.0˚C and outdoor dry-bulb temperature 35˚C is Net cooling capacity = $\frac{3600}{\text{SRK40HD-S1}} \times \frac{0.975}{\text{Length 15m}} \times \frac{1.0}{\text{Factor by air temperatures}} = 3510\ \text{W}$

2.1.3 ELECTRICAL DATA

(1) Electrical wiring

Models SRK20HD-S1, 28HD-S1, 40HD-S1, 20HC-S2, 28HC-S2, 40HC-S2



Meaning of marks

Symbol	Parts name	Symbol	Parts name	Symbol	Parts name
CFI	Capacitor for FMI	Th1	Room temp. sensor	ZNR	Varistor
CM	Compressor motor	Th2	Heat exchanger sensor (Indoor unit)	20S	4 way valve (coil)
F	Fuse	Th4	Heat exchanger sensor (Outdoor unit)	52C	Magnetic contactor
FMI	Fan motor (Indoor)	Th5	Outdoor air temp. sensor	DS	Diode stack
FMo	Fan motor (Outdoor)	Th6	Discharge temp. sensor	52X1-3	Auxiliary relay
SM	Flap motor	Tr	Transformer	EEV	Electronic expansion valve
				51C	Motor Protector for CM

2.1.4 OUTLINE OF OPERATION CONTROL BY MICROCOMPUTER

(1) Operation control function by remote control switch

Remote controller

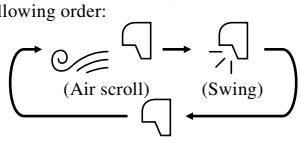
Models All models

◆ Operation section

FAN SPEED button
Each time the button is pushed, the ■ indicator is switched over in turn.

HI POWER button
This button changes the HI POWER mode.

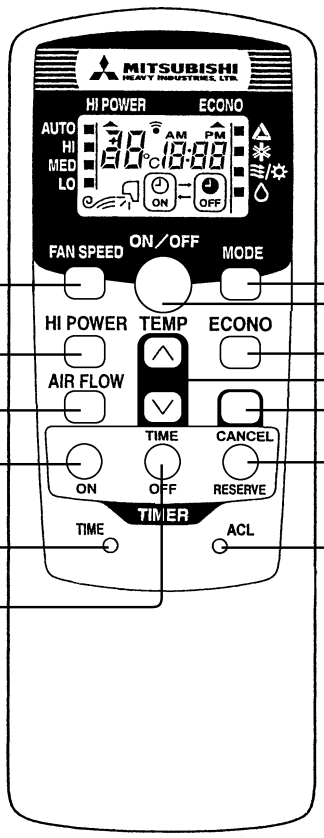
AIR FLOW button
This button changes the flap mode. When pressed, this button changes the mode in the following order:



ON TIMER button
This button selects ON TIMER operation.

TIME switch
This switch for setting the time.

OFF TIMER button
This button selects OFF TIMER operation.



- The above illustration shows all controls, but in practice only the relevant parts are shown.

OPERATION MODE select button
Each time the button is pushed, the ■ indicator is switched over in turn.

ON/OFF button
Press for starting operation, press again for stopping.

ECONOMY button
This button changes the ECONOMY mode.

TEMPERATURE button
This button sets the room temperature.
(This button changes the present time and TIMER time.)

CANCEL button
This button cancels the ON timer and OFF timer.

RESERVE button
This button sets the present time and TIMER time.

RESET switch
Switch for resetting microcomputer.

◆ Indication section

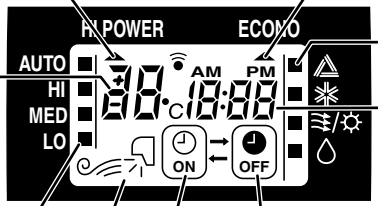
HI POWER MODE indicator
Indicates during Hi power mode operation.

TEMPERATURE indicator
Indicates set temperature.
(Does not indicate temperature when operation mode is on AUTO)

FAN SPEED indicator
Indicates set air flow rate with ■ lamp.

AIR FLOW indicator
Shows selected flap mode.

ON TIMER indicator
Indicates during ON TIMER operation.



ECONOMY MODE indicator
Indicates during economy mode operation.

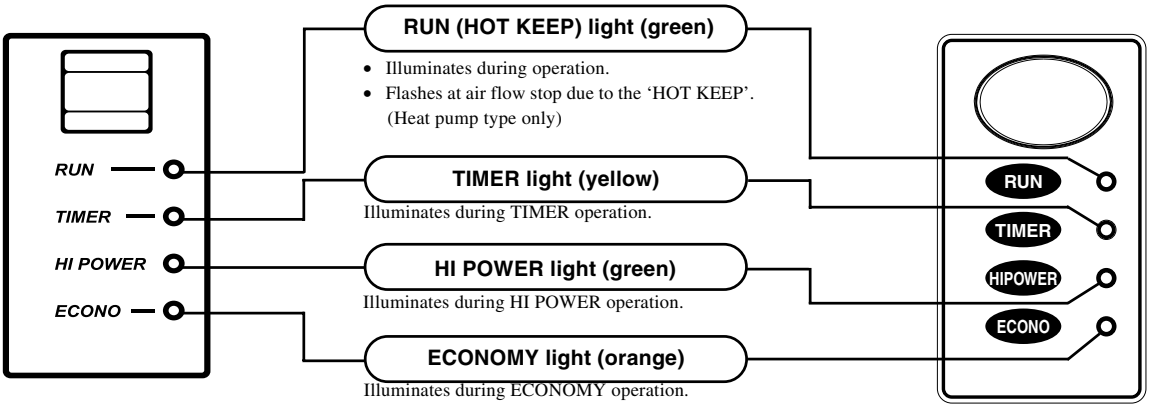
OPERATION MODE indicator
Indicates selected operation with ■ lamp.
Heat pump type:
[△ (Auto) • ✻ (Cool) • ≋/☼ (Heat) • ♢ (Dry)]
Cooling only type:
[△ (Auto) • ✻ (Cool) • ≋/☼ (Fan) • ♢ (Dry)]

TIME indicator
Indicates present time or timer setting time.

OFF TIMER indicator
Indicates during OFF TIMER operation.

Unit indication section

Models SRK20HD-S1, 28HD-S1, 40HD-S1
SRK20CD-S1, 28CD-S1, 40CD-S1



Models SRK20HC-S2, 28HC-S2, 40HC-S2
SRK20CC-S1, 28CC-S1, 40CC-S1

(2) Unit ON/OFF button

When the remote controller batteries become weak, or if the remote controller is lost or malfunctioning, this button may be used to turn the unit on and off.

(a) Operation

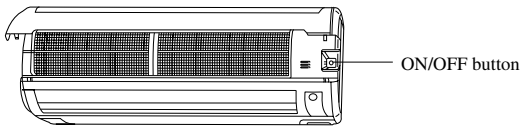
Push the button once to place the unit in the automatic mode. Push it once more to turn the unit off.

(b) Details of operation

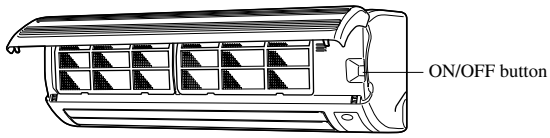
The unit will go into the automatic mode in which it automatically determines, from room temperature (as detected by sensor), whether to go into the cooling, thermal dry or heating modes.

Function / Operation mode	Room temperature setting	Fan speed	Flap	Timer switch
Cooling	About 25ºC	Auto	Auto	Continuous
Thermal dry	About 25ºC			
Heating	About 26ºC			

Models SRK20HD-S1, 28HD-S1, 40HD-S1
SRK20CD-S1, 28CD-S1, 40CD-S1



Models SRK20HC-S2, 28HC-S2, 40HC-S2
SRK20CC-S1, 28CC-S1, 40CC-S1



(3) Power blackout auto restart function

(a) Power blackout auto restart function is a function that records the operational status of the air-conditioner immediately prior to it being switched off by a power cut, and then automatically resumes operations at that point after the power has been restored.

(b) The following settings will be cancelled:

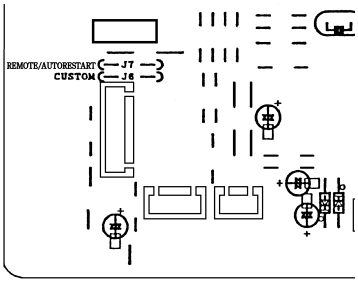
(i) Timer settings

(ii) High-power operations

Notes (1) The power blackout auto restart function is set at on when the air-conditioner is shipped from the factory. Consult with your dealer if this function needs to be switched off.

(2) When power failure ocurrs, the timer setting is cancelled. Once power is resumed, reset the timer.

(3) If the jumper wire (J7) "REMOTE/AUTORESTART" is cut, auto restart is disabled. (See the diagram at right)



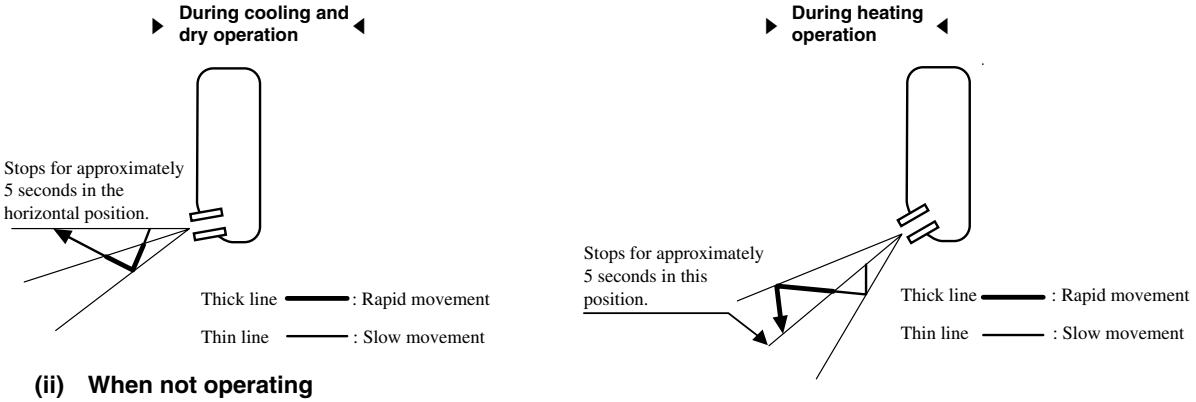
(4) Flap control

Control the flap by AIRFLOW button on the wireless remote controller.

(a) Air scroll

The flap will be automatically set to the angle of air flow best to operation.

(i) Starting time of operation



(ii) When not operating

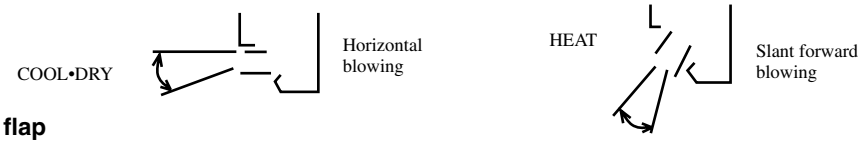
The flap returns to the position of air flow directly below, when operation has stopped.

(b) Memory flap

While the flap is operating if the AIRFLOW button is pushed once, it stops swinging at an angle.

As this angle is memorized in the microcomputer, the flap will be automatically set to the angle when next operation is started.

- Recommendable stopping angle of the flap



(c) Swing flap

Flap moves in upward and downward directions continuously.

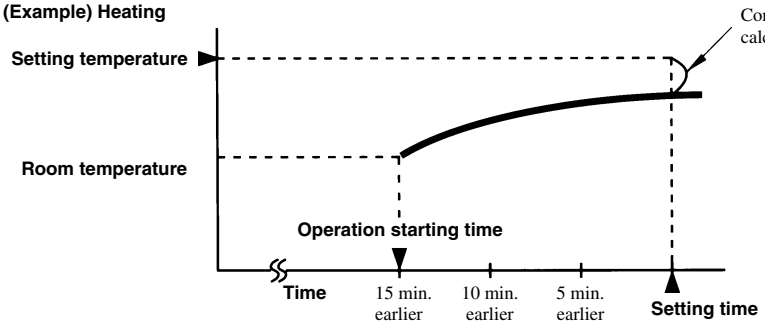
(5) Comfortable timer setting

If the timer is set at ON when the operation select switch is set at the cooling or heating, or the cooling or heating in auto mode operation is selected, the comfortable timer starts and determines the starting time of next operation based on the initial value of 15 minutes and the relationship between the room temperature at the setting time (temperature of room temperature sensor) and the setting temperature. (Max. 60 minutes)

Operation mode	Operation start time correction value (Min.)		
At cooling	3 < Room temp. – Setting temp.	1 < Room temp. – Setting temp. ≦ 3	Room temp. – Setting temp. ≦ 1
	+5	No change	–5
At heating	3 < Setting temp. – Room temp.	2 < Setting temp. – Room temp. ≦ 3	Setting temp. – Room temp. ≦ 2
	+5	No change	–5

Notes (1) At 5 minutes before the timer ON time, operation starts regardless of the temperature of the room temperature sensor (Th1).
(2) This function does not actuate when the operation select switch is set at the dehumidifying as well as the dehumidifying in the auto mode. However, the operation of item (1) above is performed during the dehumidifying in the auto mode.
(3) During the comfortable timer operation, both the RUN light and TIMER light illuminate and the TIMER light goes off after expiration of the timer, ON setting time.

(Example) Heating



Corrects the starting time of next operation by calculating the temperature difference.

- If the difference (= Setting temperature – Room temperature) is 4°C, the correction value is found to be +5 minutes from the table shown above so that the starting time of next operation is determined as follows:

  15 min. earlier + 5 min. = 20 min. earlier

  ↑ Current operation start time; ↑ Correction value

(6) Outline of heating operation (Heat pump type only)

(a) Operation of major functional components

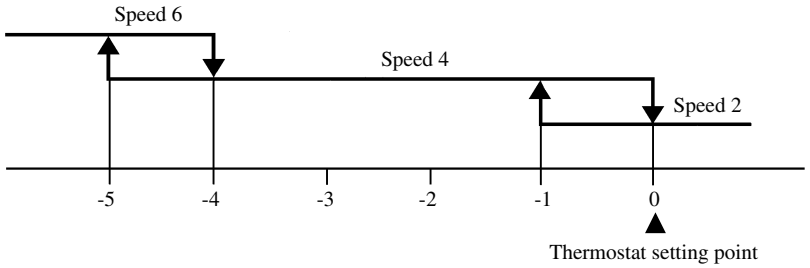
Item / Functional components	When the compressor command is OFF	When the compressor command is ON	When the compressor goes OFF due to an abnormal stop.
Indoor fan motor	ON	ON	OFF
Flaps	ON or OFF	ON or OFF	Stop position control
Display	Lights up	Lights up	Lights up or flashes
52C	ON	ON	OFF after stop mode
Outdoor fan motor	OFF	ON	OFF
4-way valve	Depending on the stop mode	ON	Depending on the stop mode

(b) Fan speed switching

Fan speed switching / Flow control	AUTO	HIGH	MED	LOW
Air scroll	Auto fan control	Speed 6	Speed 4	Speed 2
Swing flap		Speed 6	Speed 4	Speed 2
Swing stop		Speed 6	Speed 4	Speed 2

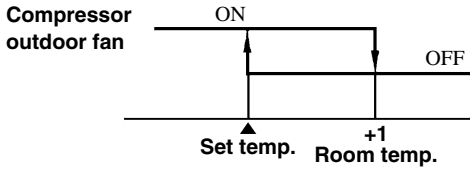
(i) Auto fan control

The indoor fan is automatically controlled in accordance with the difference between the room temperature (detected by the room temperature sensor) and the thermostat setting as shown below.



(c) Thermostat operation

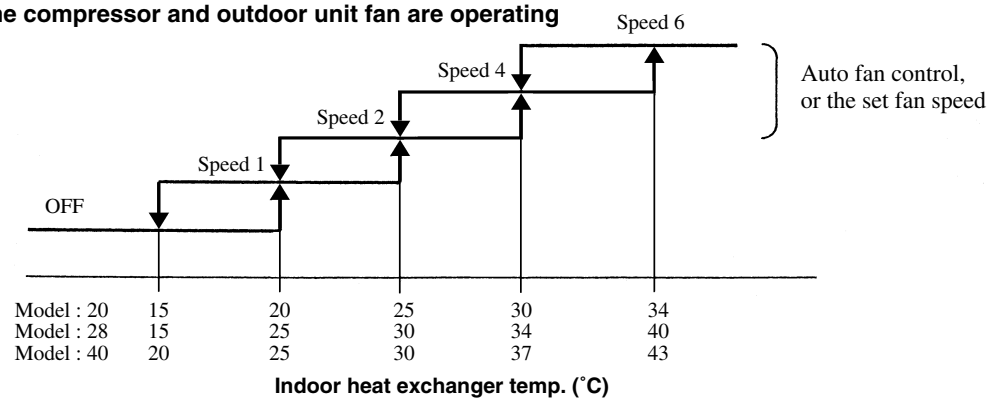
The compressor and outdoor fan and turned on and off as shown below according to the temperature setting.



(d) Hot keep

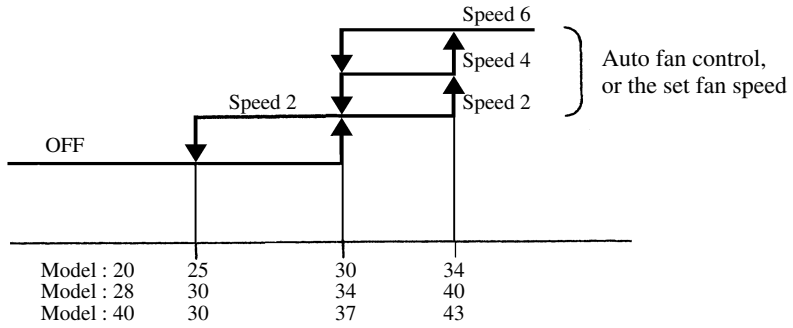
This function controls the indoor unit fan speed as shown below in accordance with the temperature sensed by the indoor heat exchanger sensor.

(i) When the compressor and outdoor unit fan are operating



(ii) When the compressor and outdoor fan are stopped

1) While the compressor operation is delayed.



2) Up until 5 minutes have passed since the end of a compressor start delay operation, when 52C goes OFF, the indoor unit's fan speed changes forcibly from OFF to speed 1.

(iii) To accomplish rapid recovery from the thermostat off state, after the compressor and outdoor unit's fan go OFF, the set temperature is raised by 1ºC until 1 minute passes after the hot keep end temperature has been reached following restarting.

(e) Hot Spurt

(i) For 40 minutes after a heating operation begins, the system runs with set temperature raised by 2ºC.

(ii) In the following cases, this function is canceled and does not activate afterwards.

1) When the compressor and outdoor unit fan have been turned OFF by the thermostat going off.

2) During high pressure control operation.

(f) High Power Operation ("HI POWER" button on the remote controller : ON)

The system runs under the following conditions for 15 minutes without relation to the set temperature or the fan speed setting.

Indoor unit fan	Speed 6 fixed
Outdoor unit fan	ON
Compressor	ON

Notes (1) Room temperature is not adjusted during the HI POWER operation.
(2) Protective function will actuate with priority even during the HI POWER operation.

(g) Defrost Operation

(i) Starting conditions (Defrost operation begins when all the following conditions are satisfied.)

① 40 minutes have passed since the heating operation began. (Accumulated operation time)

② 40 minutes have passed since the previous defrosting operation ended. (Accumulated operation time)

③ The outdoor unit heat exchanger sensor temperature is –5ºC or lower continuously for 3 minutes.

④ The difference between the outdoor temperature sensor temperature and the outdoor heat exchange sensor temperature is ≧ 4.5ºC.

⑤ The compressor is running.

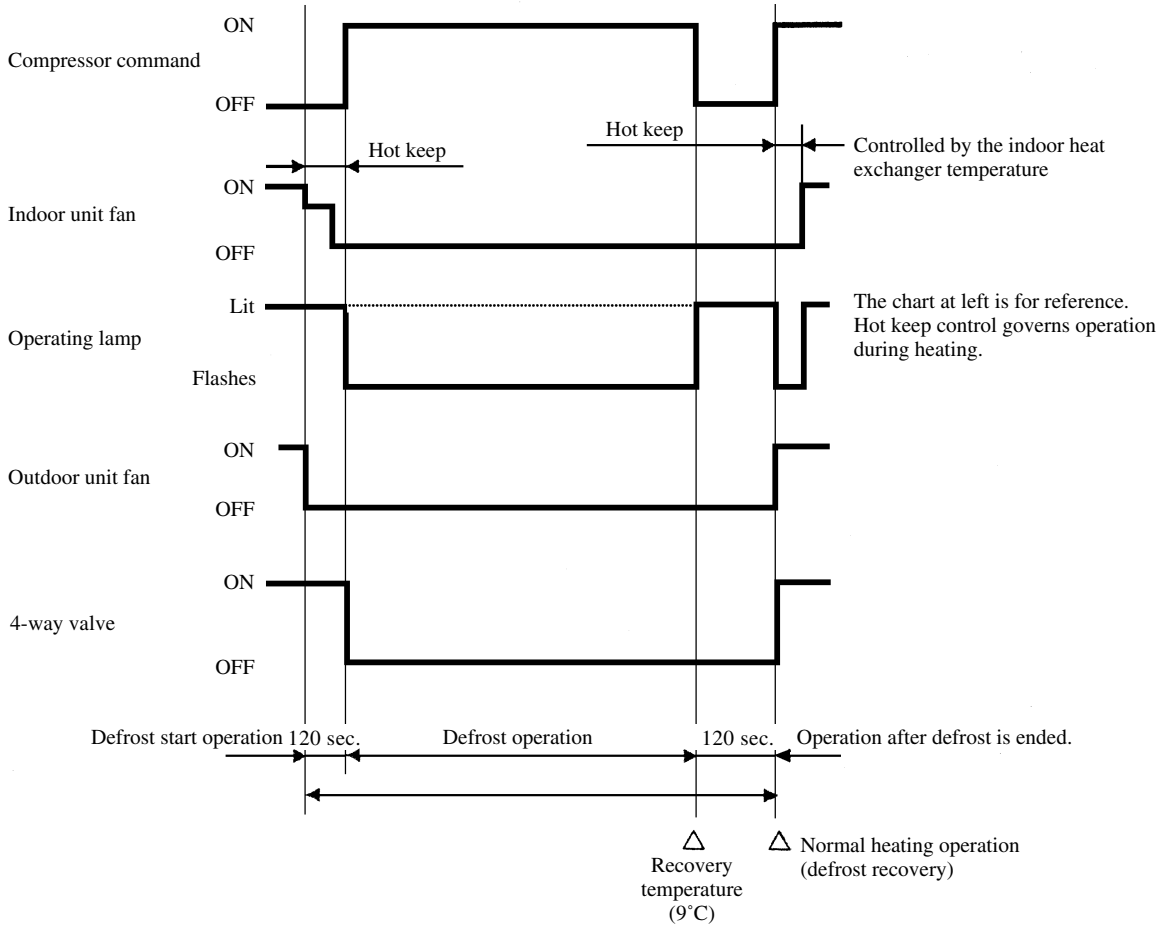
Also, the number of times the compressor goes OFF is counted, and when it reaches 10 or more times, if the conditions in ①, ② and ③ above (except that the outdoor heat exchanger sensor temperature is –1ºC), the defroster operation starts.

(ii) End conditions (when either of the following conditions is satisfied)

① Outdoor heat exchanger sensor temperature: 9ºC or higher

② Defrosting operation has continued for 10 minutes.

(iii) Operation of functional components during defrosting operation



(h) Forced Defrost

(i) During trial operation, if defrost operation is performed, defrost operation can be performed only once time, in accordance with the following operation.

1) Remote control operation

Operation	Run
Operation mode	Heating
Set temperature	19˚C
Fan speed select	Low
Air flow setting	Swing
On timer	ON
Current time	On after 180 min.condition
On timer time	

2) Functional components operation

Compressor	ON
4-way valve	OFF
Indoor unit fan	OFF
Flap	Fully closed
Outdoor unit fan	OFF
Display	Same as defrost

(ii) If remote control operation is performed, for 1 minute after 3-minute timer operation, the operation is canceled if one of the following conditions is satisfied.

① Outdoor heat exchanger sensor temperature: 14ºC or higher

② 10 minutes has passed (including the 1 minute of forced operation).

(i) ECONO operation ("ECONO" button on the remote controller : ON)

The set temperature changes as shown at right and the indoor unit fan runs at speed 3.

Running time	Set temperature compensation
Running start ~ 1 hour	Set temperature -1.0
1~2 hours	Set temperature -2.0
2 hours ~	Set temperature -2.5

(7) Outline of cooling operation

(a) Operation of major functional components

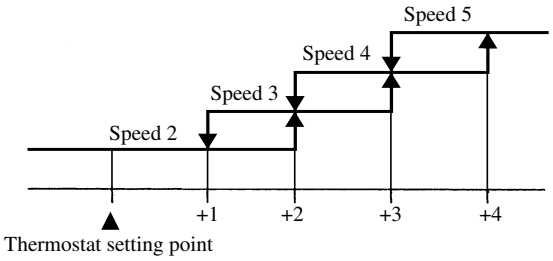
Item / Functional components	When the compressor command is OFF	When the compressor command is ON	When the compressor goes OFF due to an abnormal stop.
Indoor fan motor	ON	ON	OFF
Flaps	ON or OFF	ON or OFF	Stop position control
Display	Lights up	Lights up	Lights up or flashes
52C	ON	ON	OFF after stop mode
Outdoor fan motor	OFF	ON	OFF
4-way valve	Depending on the stop mode	OFF	Depending on the stop mode

(b) Fan speed switching

Fan speed switching / Flow control	AUTO	HIGH	MED	LOW
Air scroll	Auto fan control	Speed 5	Speed 3	Speed 2
Swing flap		Speed 5	Speed 3	Speed 2
Swing stop		Speed 5	Speed 3	Speed 2

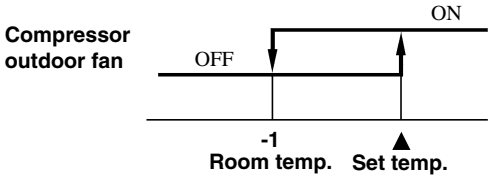
(i) Auto fan control

The indoor fan is automatically controlled in accordance with the difference between the room temperature (detected by the room temperature sensor) and the thermostat setting as shown below.



(c) Thermostat operation

The compressor and outdoor fan and turned on and off as shown below according to the temperature setting.



(d) High Power operation (“HI POWER” button on the remote controller : ON)

The following operation is performed for 15 minutes without relation to the set temperature or fan speed setting.

Indoor unit fan	Speed 6 fixed
Outdoor unit fan	ON
Compressor	ON

Notes (1) Room temperature is not adjusted during the HI POWER operation.
(2) Protective functions will actuate with priority even during the HI POWER operation.

(e) ECONO Operation (“ECONO” button on the remote controller : ON)

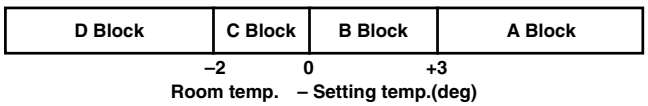
The set temperature changes as shown at right, and the indoor unit fan speed is set on speed 2.

Running time	Set temperature compensation
Running start ~ 1 hour	Set temperature +0.5
1~2 hours	Set temperature +1.0
2 hours ~	Set temperature +1.5

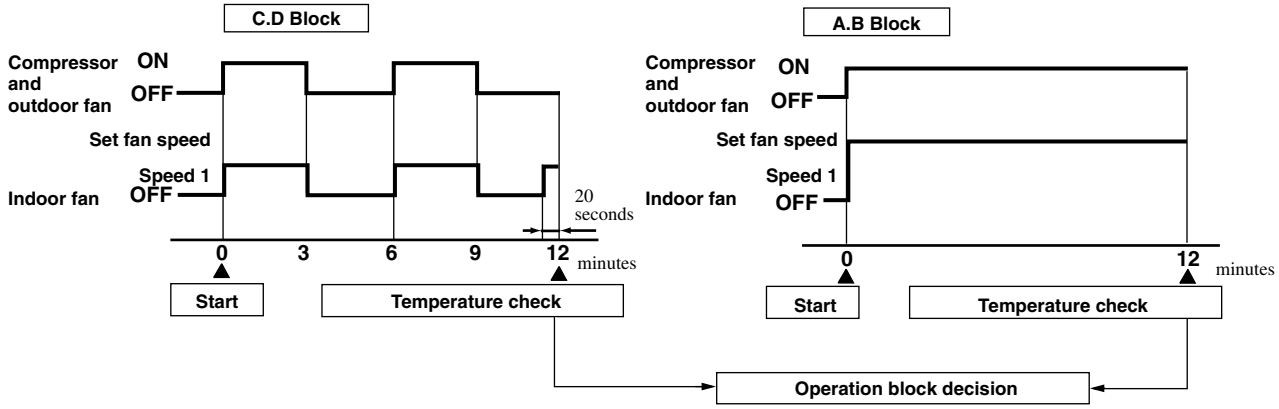
(8) Outline of dehumidifying operation

(a) Choose the appropriate operation block area by the difference between room temperature and thermostat setting temperature as shown below.

- **Operation block area**



(b) Start up operation

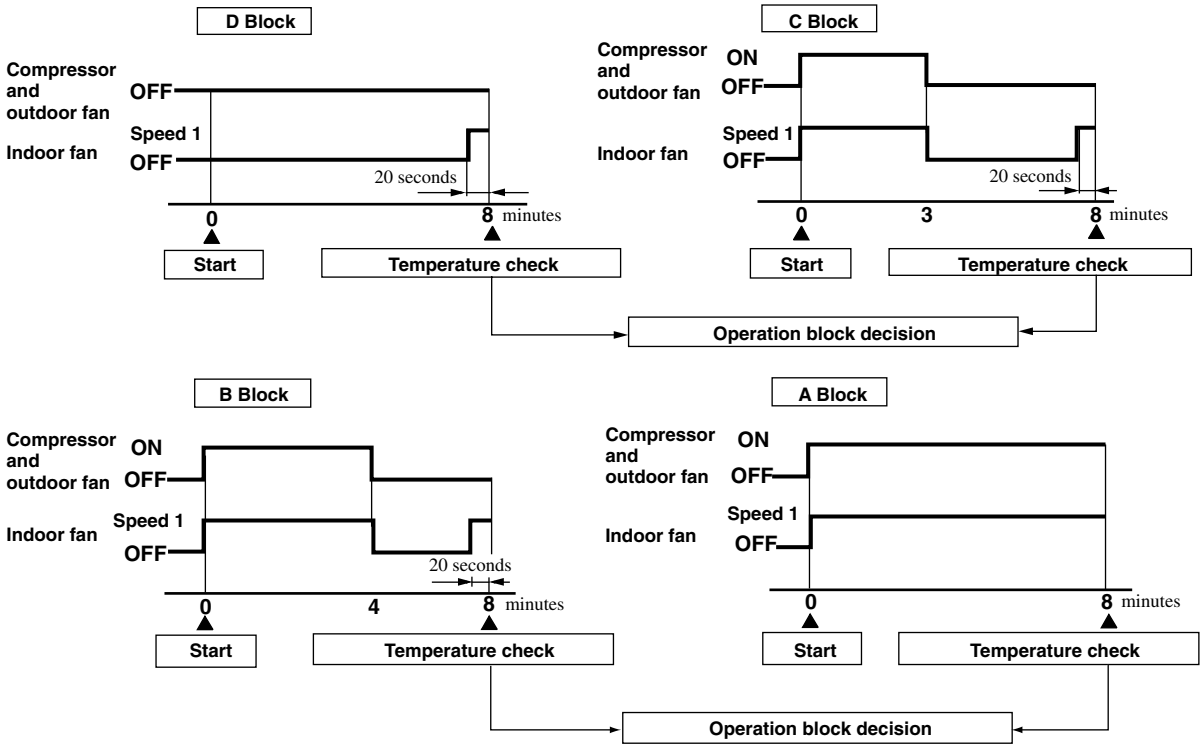


Note (1) Thermostat operation is performed in A, B Block. When compressor and indoor fan stop by thermostat operation within 12 minutes from start, temperature check is performed by operating indoor fan at speed 1 for 20 seconds before finishing 12 minutes and allowing decision of next operation block.

(c) DRY operation

After finishing start up operation described in (b) above, thermal dry operation is performed at 8 minutes intervals, according to the difference between room temperature and thermostat setting temperature as shown below.

Beside, 1 cycle of this operating time consists of 8 minutes, 7 cycle operation is performed then.



(d) ECONO Operation (“ECONO” button on the remote controller : ON)

The set temperature changes as shown at right, and the indoor unit fan speed is set on speed 2 .

Running time	Set temperature compensation
Running start ~ 1 hour	Set temperature +0.5
1~2 hours	Set temperature +1.0
2 hours ~	Set temperature +1.5

(9) Automatic operation

(a) Determination of operation mode

The blow operation of the indoor fan is carried out at the 1st speed for 20 seconds and the room temperature is checked to determine the operation mode automatically. (When the unit is operated by the turn-on timer, the blow operation is not carried out.)

Room temperature		Room temp.<21˚C	21˚C≦Room temp.<26˚C	26˚C≦Room temp.
Operation mode	Heat pump type	Heating	Dry	Cooling
	Cooling only type	Dry		

(b) Within 30 minutes after either auto or manual operation stops, if auto operation is started, or if you switch to auto operation during manual operation, the system runs in the previous operation mode.

(c) The temperature is checked 1 time in 30 minutes after the start of operation, and if the judgment differs from the previous operation mode, the operation mode changes.

(d) Setting temperature can be adjusted within the following range. There is the relationship as shown below between the signals of the wireless remote controller and the setting temperature.

		Signals of wireless remote controller (Display)												
		–6	–5	–4	–3	–2	–1	±0	+1	+2	+3	+4	+5	+6
Setting temperature	Cooling	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31
	Dehumidifying	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31
	Heating	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32

(10) Outline of fan operation (Cooling only type only)

(a) Operation of major functional components

Fan speed switching / Functional components	High power	AUTO	HIGH	MED	LOW	ECONO
52C	OFF					
Indoor fan motor	Speed 6	Speed 5	Speed 4	Speed 3	Speed 2	Speed 1
Outdoor fan motor	OFF					
Flaps	ON or OFF					

(b) High Power operation (“HI POWER” button on the remote controller : ON)

The following operation is performed for 15 minutes without relation to the set temperature or fan speed setting.

Indoor unit fan	Speed 6 fixed
Outdoor unit fan	OFF
Compressor	OFF

Note (1) Protective functions will actuate with priority even during the HI POWER operation.

(11) Protective control function

(a) Frost prevention for indoor heat exchanger (During cooling or dehumidifying)

(i) Operating conditions

1) Indoor heat exchanger temperature (detected with Th2) is lower than 2.5ºC.

2) 3 minutes elapsed after the start of operation.

(ii) Detail of anti-frost operation

Compressor	OFF
Indoor fan	1st speed
Outdoor fan	OFF
4-way valve	Stop mode

(iii) Reset conditions: Indoor heat exchanger temperature (Th2) is higher than 8ºC.

(b) Indoor fan motor protection

When the air conditioner is operating and the indoor fan motor is turned ON, if the indoor fan motor has operated at 300 rpm or under for more than 30 seconds, the unit enters first in the stop mode and then stops the entire system.

Timer light illuminates simultaneously and the operation lamp flashing 6 times at each 8-second.

(c) Dew condensation prevention control for cooling operation

This prevents dew condensation, in the indoor unit, from occurring.

(i) **Operating condition:** when compressor is kept ON for 30 min. after the unit starts operation.

(ii) **Operation content:** forces the indoor fan to change from Speed 1 to Speed 2.

(iii) **Resetting condition:** When compressor is off, or when dew condensation prevention control has been operating continuously for 30 minutes.

(d) Three-minute forced operation

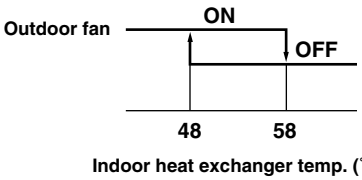
When the compressor begins operating the thermal operation is not effective for 3 minutes, so operation continues as is in the operation mode. (After 3 minutes has passed the thermal operation is effective.)

However, stopping the compressor via a stop signal or protection control has priority.

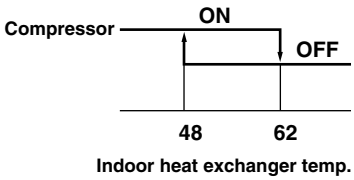
(e) High-pressure control

The indoor heat exchanger sensor detection temperature controls the outdoor fan and compressor.

- **When the indoor heat exchanger temperature is ≧ 58˚C**



- **When the indoor heat exchanger temperature is ≧ 62˚C**

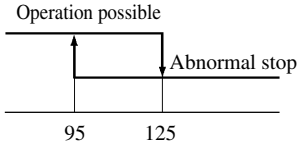


(f) Current Cut

If current that is higher than the set current flows for 0.5 second continuously, the current to the compressor is cut off. After a 3-minute delay, if the current is 1.5 ~ 2 A or less, the compressor restarts, but if the overcurrent is detected 5 times within 60 minutes after it is detected the first time, it results in an abnormal stop. Also, if the overcurrent continues for 60 minutes, it results in an abnormal stop.

(g) Compressor Overheat Protection

If the discharge pipe temperature (sensed by Th6) exceeds the set temperature value, the compressor stops. If the temperature is 95ºC or lower after a 3-minute delay, it starts again, but if this function is reactivated again within 60 minutes, it results in an abnormal stop.



(h) Serial signal transmission error protection

(i) Purpose: Prevents malfunction resulting from error on the indoor ↔ outdoor signals.

(ii) Detail of operation: When the indoor unit controller ↔ outdoor unit controller signals cannot be received, the compressor is stopped immediately. Simultaneously, the red LED on the printed circuit board of outdoor unit controller flashing 6 times for 0.5 second at intervals of 8 seconds. Once the operation stops, it does not start any more.
(Timer light on the indoor unit flashing at the same time.)

(i) Sensor disconnection (room temperature, indoor heat exchanger, outdoor heat exchanger, outdoor air temperature, discharge pipe)

(i) Room temperature sensor

If the temperature detected by the room temperature sensor is –20ºC or lower continuously for 15 seconds or longer while operation is stopped, an error indication is displayed.

(ii) Indoor heat exchanger sensor

If the temperature detected by the indoor heat exchanger sensor is –20ºC or lower continuously for 15 seconds or longer while operation is stopped, an error indication is displayed.

Also, if the temperature detected by the indoor heat exchanger sensor is –20ºC or lower continuously for 3 minutes after heating operation has started, the indoor unit's fan speed is forcibly raised to speed 5. After this, the air conditioner is stopped if the detected temperature remains at –20ºC continuously for 40 minutes.

(iii) Outdoor heat exchanger sensor

If the temperature detected by the outdoor heat exchanger sensor is –50ºC or lower continuously for 15 seconds or longer while operation is stopped, an error indication is displayed.

Also, the air conditioner is stopped if the temperature detected by the outdoor heat exchanger sensor remains at –50ºC or lower continuously for 40 minutes after heating operation has started.

(iv) Outdoor air temperature sensor

If the temperature detected by the outdoor air temperature sensor is –40ºC or lower continuously for 15 seconds or longer while operation is stopped, an error indication is displayed.

(v) Discharge pipe sensor

After the compressor has operated for 9 minutes continuously, if there is a disconnected signal for the discharge pipe sensor detected temperature for 15 seconds (less than 7ºC), the compressor stops. After a 3-minute delay, it restarts, but if an abnormality is detected 4 times continuously, the air conditioner is stopped fully and an error indication is displayed.

2.1.5 APPLICATION DATA

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Please read these "Safety Precautions" first then accurately execute the installation work.
- Though the precautionary points indicated herein are divided under two headings, ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION , those points which are related to the strong possibility of an installation done in error resulting in death or serious injury are listed in the ⚠WARNING section. However, there is also a possibility of serious consequences in relationship to the points listed in the ⚠CAUTION section as well. In either case, important safety related information is indicated, so by all means, properly observe all that is mentioned.
- After completing the installation, along with confirming that no abnormalities were seen from the operation tests, please explain operating methods as well as maintenance methods to the user (customer) of this equipment, based on the owner's manual. Moreover, ask the customer to keep this sheet together with the owner's manual.

⚠ WARNING

- To disconnect the appliance from the mains supply this appliance must be connected to the mains by means of a circuit breaker or a switch (use a recognized 16A) with a contact separation of at least 3mm.
- The appliance shall be installed in accordance with national wiring regulations.
- This system should be applied to places as households, residences and the like. Application to inferior environment such as engineering shop could cause equipment malfunction.
- Please entrust installation to either the company which sold you the equipment or to a professional contractor. Defects from improper installations can be the cause of water leakage, electric shocks and fires.
- Execute the installation accurately, based on following the installation manual. Again, improper installations can result in water leakage, electric shocks and fires.
- For installation, confirm that the installation site can sufficiently support heavy weight. When strength is insufficient, injury can result from a falling of the unit.
- For electrical work, please see that a licensed electrician executes the work while following the safety standards related to electrical equipment, and local regulations as well as the installation instructions, and that only exclusive use circuits are used.
  Insufficient power source circuit capacity and defective installment execution can be the cause of electric shocks and fires.
- Accurately connect wiring using the proper cable, and insure that the external force of the cable is not conducted to the terminal connection part, through properly securing it improper connection or securing can result in heat generation or fire.
- Take care that wiring does not rise upward ,and accurately install the lid/service panel.It's improper installation can also result heat generation or fire.
- When setting up or moving the location of the air conditioner, do not mix air etc. or anything other than the designated refrigerant (R410A) within the refrigeration cycle.
  Rupture and injury caused by abnormal high pressure can result from such mixing.
- Always use accessory parts and authorized parts for installation construction. Using parts not authorized by this company can result in water leakage, electric shock, fire and refrigerant leakage.
- Ventilate the work area when refrigerant leaks during the operation.
  Coming in contact with fire, refrigerant could generate toxic gas.
- Confirm after the foundation construction work that refrigerant does not leak.
  If coming in contact with fire of a fan heater, a stove or movable cooking stove, etc., refrigerant leaking in the room could generate toxic gas.
- In joining pipes, do not use conventional (R22) pipng flare nuts, etc. The use of conventional pipng materials may lead to the rapture of piping due to higher pressure used for the refrigerant cycle and possible personal injury.
  (Use only piping material designed specifically for R410A)

⚠ CAUTION

- Execute proper grounding. Do not connect the ground wire to a gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod or a telephone ground wire.
  Improper placement of ground wires can result in electric shock.
- The installation of an earth leakage breaker is necessary depending on the established location of the unit.
  No installing an earth leakage breaker may result in electric shock.
- Do not install the unit where there is a concern about leakage of combustible gas.
  The rare even of leaked gas collecting around the unit could result in an outbreak of fire.
- For the drain pipe, follow the installation manual to insure that it allows proper drainage and thermally insulate it to prevent condensation. Inadequate plumbing can result in water leakage and water damage to interior items.
- Do not place objects near the outdoor unit or allow leaves to gather around the unit. If there are objects or leaves around the outdoor unit, small animals may enter unit and contact electrical parts resulting in break down, emission of smoke or flame.

(1) Selection of location for installation

(a) Indoor unit

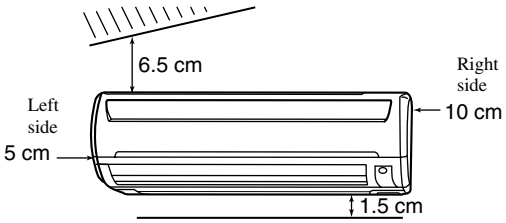
(i) Where there is no obstructions to the air flow and where the cooled air can be evenly distributed.

(ii) A solid place where the unit or the wall will not vibrate.

(iii) A place where there will be enough space for servicing. (Where space mentioned right can be secured)

(iv) Where wiring and the piping work will be easy to conduct.

(v) The place where receiving part is not exposed to the direct rays of the sun or the strong rays of the street lighting.



(b) Outdoor unit

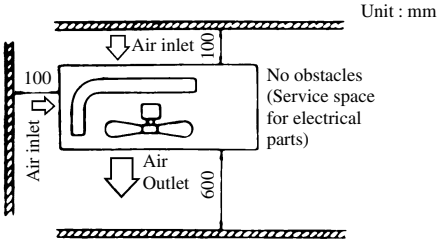
(i) A place where good air circulation can be obtained and where rain, snow or sunshine will not directly strike the unit.

(ii) A place where discharged hot air or unit's operating sound will not be a nuisance to the neighborhood.

(iii) A place where servicing space can be secured.

(iv) A place where vibration will not be enlarged.

(v) Do not install the unit near the seaside, or where there is possibility of chlorine gas generation.



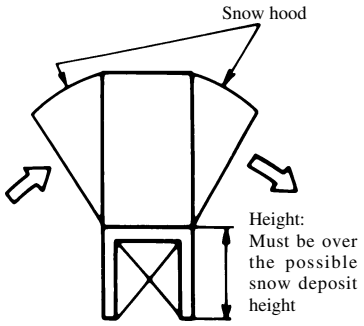
Notes (1) Blowing out port and suction port on the back side of the unit can be installed at a distance of 10cm from walls.
(In case the barrier is 1.2m or above in height, or is overhead, the sufficient space between the unit and wall shall be secured.)

(2) When the unit is installed, the space of the following dimension and above shall be secured.

(vi) In heating operation, snow deposit on the heat-exchanger of outdoor unit must be prevented for keeping the normal performance capacity. (Heat pump type only)

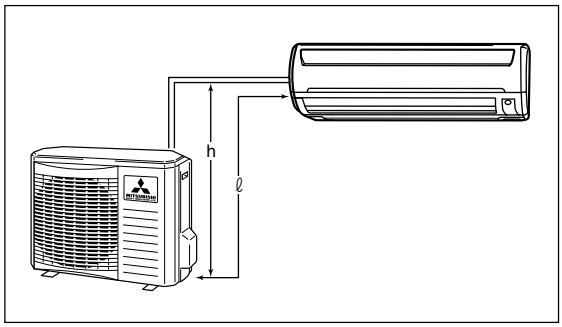
1) Snow-hood on outdoor unit as in drawing, will reduce the frequency of defrost operation.
When installing the snow hood, take care so that the air outlet of the snow hood will not face directly into the most windy direction.

2) Design the base higher than possible snow deposit.



(c) Limitations for one way piping length and vertical height difference.

Item	Model	All models
One way piping length (ℓ)		15 m
Vertical height difference (h)	Outdoor unit is lower	10 m
	Outdoor unit is higher	10 m

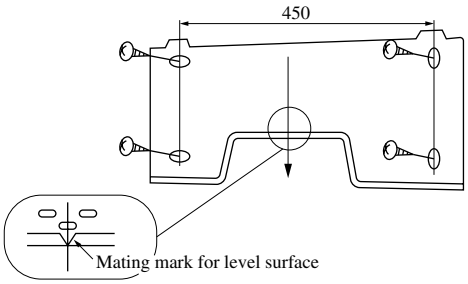


(2) Installation of indoor unit

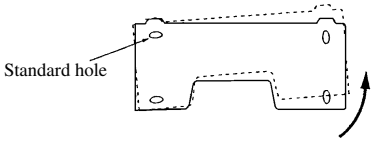
(a) Installation of installation board

(i) Fixing of installation board

Look for the inside wall structures (Intersediate support or pillar and firaly install the unit after level surface has been checked.)



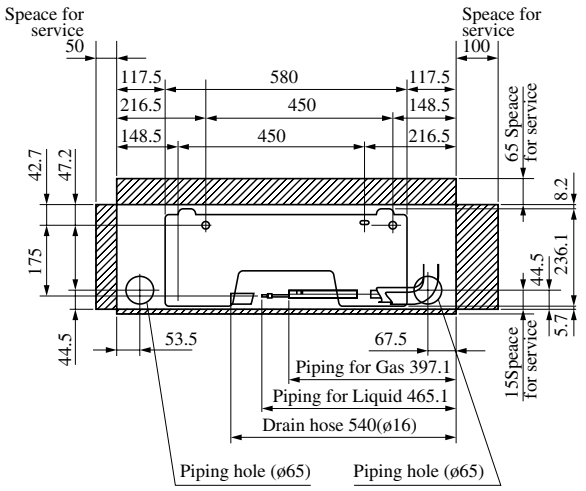
Adjustment of the installation board in the horizontal direction is to be conducted with four screws in a temporary tightened state.



Adjust so that board will be level by turning the board with the standard hole as the center.

INSTALLATION SPACE (INDOOR UNIT) (FRONT VIEW)

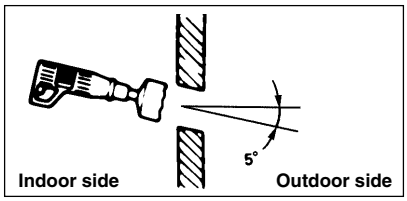
Unit : mm



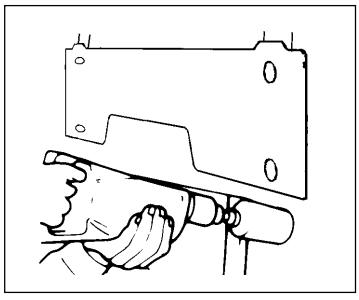
(b) Drilling of holes and fixture sleeve (Option Parts)

When drilling the wall that contains a metal lath, wire lath or metal plate, be sure to use pipe hole sleeve sold separately.

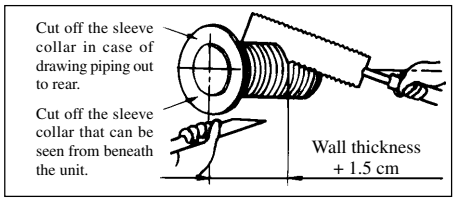
(i) Drill a hole with ø65 whole core drill



Note (1) Drill a hole with incline of 5 degree from indoor side to outdoor side.

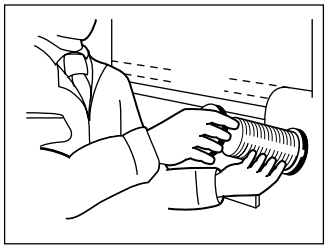


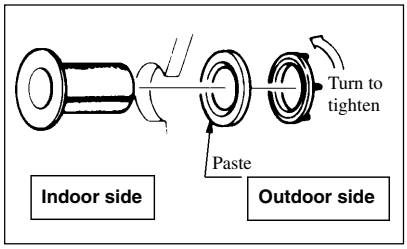
(ii) Adjusting sleeve length

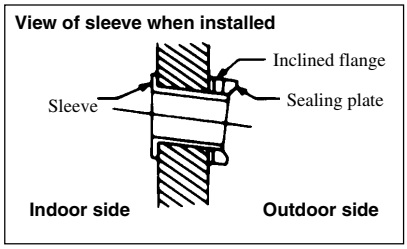


(iii) Install the sleeve

(Inserting sleeve) (*Sleeve + *Inclined + *Sealing plate)







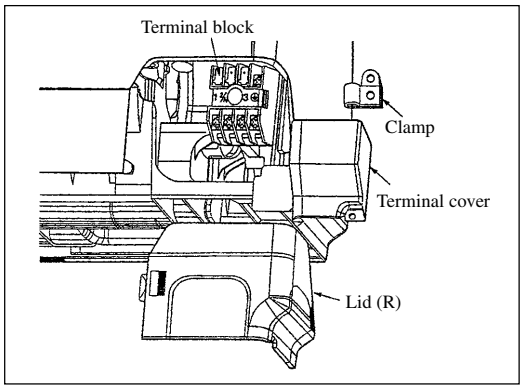
(c) Preparation of indoor unit

(i) Mounting of connecting wires

1) Remove the lid (R).
2) Remove the terminal cover.
3) Remove the wiring clamp.
4) Connect the connecting wire securely to the terminal block.

Use cables for interconnection wiring to avoid loosening of the wires.
CENELEC code for cables. Required field cables.
H05RNR3G1.5 (Example) or 245IEC57

H	Harmonized cable type
05	300/500 volts
R	Natural-and/or synth, rubber wire insulation
N	Polychloroprene rubber conductors insulation
R	Standed core
4or5	Number of conductors
G	One conductor of the cable is the earth conductor (yellow/ green)
1.5	Section of copper wire (mm^2)



① Connect the connection wire securely to the terminal block. If the wire is not affixed completely, contact will be poor,and it is dangerous as the terminal block may heat up and catch fire.

② Take care not to confuse the terminal numbers for indoor and outdoor connections.

③ Affix the connection wire using the wiring clamp.

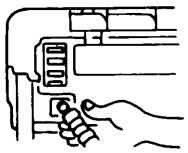
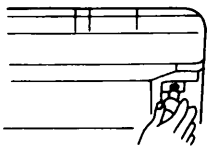
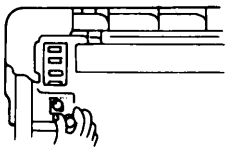
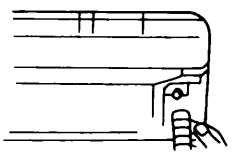
5) Fix the connecting wire by wiring clamp.
6) Attach the lid.
7) Close the suction grille.

(ii) Protective taping (Protect the cable with tape at the section where the cable passes through the hole opened on the wall.)

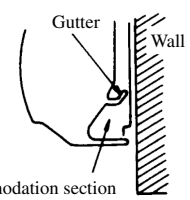
(iii) Forming of pipe (Holding down the pipe at the root, change the pipe direction, extend it and adjust according to the circumstance.)

[When the pipe is extended to left and taken out from the rear center]

(Drain pipe relocation procedure)

1. Remove the drain pipe.	2. Remove the drain cap.	3. Insert the drain cap.	4. Connect the drain pipe.
			
● Loosen the spring clamp to remove.	● Remove by hand or use cutting pliers, etc.	● Securely insert the drain cap removed in the step 2. Note: If it is inserted in sufficiently, water leakage could result.	● Loosen the spring clamp and securely insert the drain pipe. Note: If it is inserted insufficiently, water leakage could result.

Since this air conditioner has been designed to collect dew drops on the rear surface to the drain pan, do not attach the power cord above the gutter.

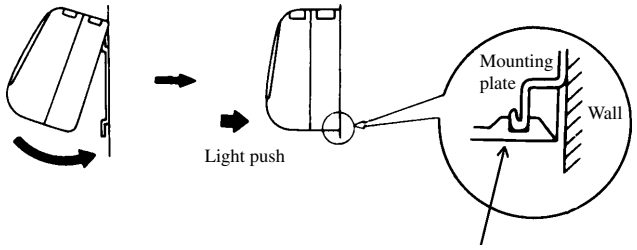


(d) Installation of indoor unit

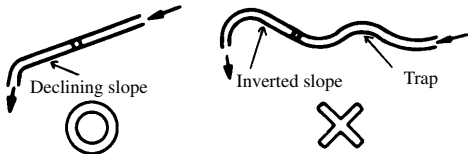
(i) Install the indoor unit on the mounting plate.

Hook the upper part of the indoor unit on the stoppers disposed at the upper part of the mounting plate and lightly push the lower part of the indoor unit so that the unit is fixed in position.

- When removing the indoor unit
  1) Disconnect the lid at right and left.
  2) Pull down the stoppers (right and left) provided at the bottom of the indoor unit base. (See the detail view shown at right.)



(ii) Be sure not to leave any trap on the drain pipe.



(3) Installation of outdoor unit

(a) Installation of outdoor unit

(i) Make sure that sufficient space for installation and service is secured.

(ii) Fix the leg sections of the unit on a firm base which will not play.
Attach cushion pads, etc. between the unit and the mounting fixtures not to transmit vibration to the building.

(iii) Attach a drain elbow, etc. under the drain port of the bottom plate to guide drain water.
(Drain elbow should not be used where days when temperature drops below 0°C continue for several days. Draining may be disturbed by frozen water.)

(iv) When installing the unit at a higher place or where it could be toppled with strong winds, secure the unit firmly with foundation bolts, wire, etc.

(b) Connection of indoor and outdoor connecting wiring

(i) Connect the wiring according to the number of the indoor terminal block. (Mis-wiring may cause the burning damage, and make sure to connect correctly.)

1 **Brown**	For power supply, indoor outdoor
2 **Blue**	Connecting wiring
3 **Black**	Indoor/outdoor signal wire (Low voltage)
⏚ **Yellow/Green**	Earth wiring terminal

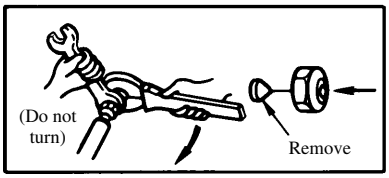
Notes (1) To prevent the mis-operation by noise, when the connecting wire too long for indoor and outdoor. Please hide the fixed wire in the pipe or use vinyl tape to set. Do not put wire into the unit.
(2) Please let the anchorized personal to decide by indoor wiring code whether connect the leakage breaker or not.

(4) Refrigerant piping

(a) Preparation

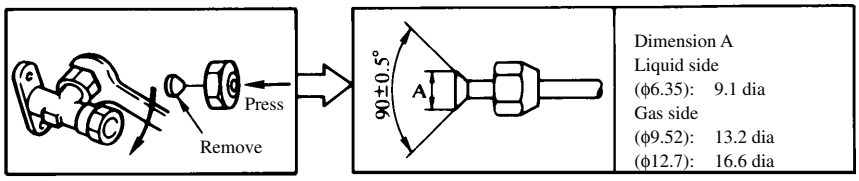
Keep the openings of the pipes covered with tapes etc. to prevent dust, sand, etc. from entering them.

Indoor unit side



- Remove the flared nuts. (on both liquid and gas sides)

Outdoor unit side

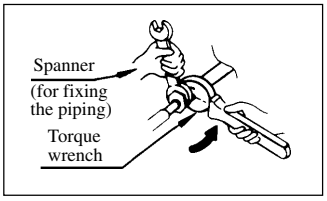


- Remove the flared nuts. (on both liquid and gas sides)
- Install the removed flared nuts to the pipes to be connected, then flare the pipes.

(b) Connection of refrigerant piping

Indoor unit side

- Connect firmly gas and liquid side pipings by Torque wrench.

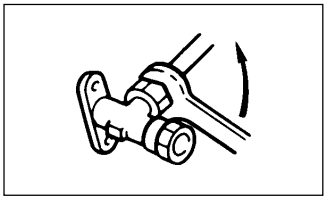


- Specified torquing value:

Liquid side (ø6.35) : 14.0~18.0N·m (1.4~1.8kgf·m)
Gas side (ø9.52) : 34.0~42.0N·m (3.4~4.2kgf·m)
(ø12.7) : 49.0~61.0N·m (4.9~6.1kgf·m)

Outdoor unit side

- Connect firmly gas and liquid side pipings by Torque wrench.



- Specified torquing value:

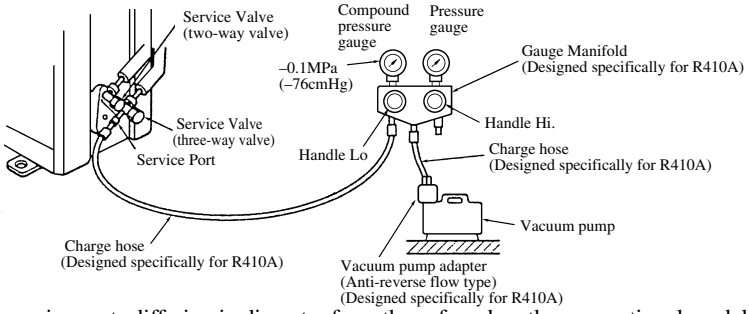
Liquid side (ø6.35) : 14.0~18.0N·m (1.4~1.8kgf·m)
Gas side (ø9.52) : 34.0~42.0N·m (3.4~4.2kgf·m)
(ø12.7) : 49.0~61.0N·m (4.9~6.1kgf·m)

- Use one more spanner to fix the valve.

- Always use a Torque wrench and back up spanner to tighten the flare nut.

(c) Air purge

(i) Tighten all flare nuts in the pipings both indoor and outside will so as not to cause leak.
(ii) Connect service valve, charge hose, manifold valve and vacuum pump as is illustrated below.
(iii) Open manifold valve handle Lo to its full width, and perform vacuum or evacuation.
Continue the vacuum or evacuation operation for 15 minutes or more and check to see that the vacuum gauge reads – 0.1 MPa (– 76 cmHg).
(iv) After completing vacuum operation, fully open service valve (Both gas and liquid sides) with hexagon headed wrench.
(v) Detach the charge hoses.
(vi) Check for possible leakage of gas in the connection parts of both indoor and outdoor.



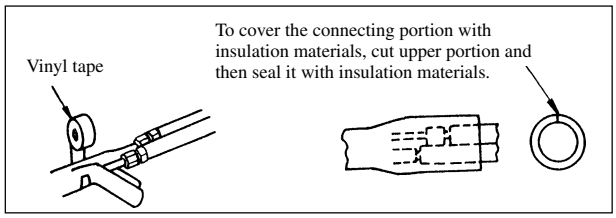
- Since the system uses service ports differing in diameter from those found on the conventional models, a charge hose (for R22) presently in use is not applicable.
Please use one designed specifically for R410A
- Please use an anti-reverse flow type vacuum pump adapter so as to prevent vacuum pump oil from running back into the system.
Oil running back into an air-conditioning system may cause the refrigerant cycle to break down.

Additional refrigerant charge

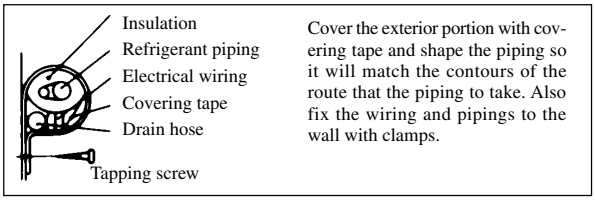
Additional refrigerant charge is not required at all.

(d) Insulation of connecting portion

(i) Cover the connecting portion of the refrigerant piping with the pipe cover and seal them.
If neglecting to do so, moisture occurs on the piping and water will drip out.



(ii) Finishing and fixing
1) Tie up the piping with wrapping tape, and shape it so that it conforms to which the pipe is attached.
2) Fix them with clamps as right figure.



(5) Test run

(a) Conduct trial run after confirming that there is no gas leaks.

(b) When conducting trial run set the remote controller thermostat to continuous operation position. However when the power source is cut off or when the unit's operation switch is turned off or was turned to fan operation position, the unit will not go into operation in order to protect the compressor.

(c) Insert in electric plug into the electric outlet and make sure that it is not loose.

(i) When there is something wrong with the electric outlet and if the insertion of the electric plug is insufficient, there may occur a burn out.

(ii) It is very important to be careful of above when plugging in the unit to an already furnished electrical outlet.

(d) Explain to the customer on the correct usage of the air conditioner in simple layman's terms.

(e) Make sure that drain flows properly.

(f) Standard operation data

(220/230/240V)

Item \ Model		SRK20HD-S1 SRK20HC-S2	SRK28HD-S1 SRK28HC-S2	SRK40HD-S1 SRK40HC-S2
High pressure MPa (kgf/cm²)	Cooling	–	–	–
	Heating	2.55~2.74 (26~28)	2.55~2.74 (26~28)	2.55~2.74 (26~28)
Low pressure MPa (kgf/cm²)	Cooling	0.78~0.98 (8~10)	0.78~0.98 (8~10)	0.69~0.88 (7~9)
	Heating	–	–	–
Temp. difference between return air and supply air (°C)	Cooling	13~15	13~15	14~16
	Heating	15~17	15~17	20~22
Running current (A)	Cooling	3.1/3.0/2.9	3.9/3.7/3.5	5.3/5.1/4.9
	Heating	3.0/2.9/2.8	3.7/3.5/3.3	5.5/5.3/5.1

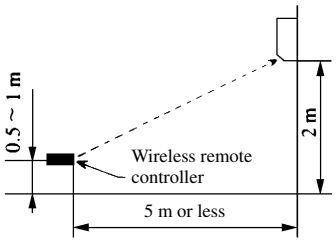
Item \ Model		SRK20CD-S1 SRK20CC-S1	SRK28CD-S1 SRK28CC-S1	SRK40CD-S1 SRK40CC-S1
Low pressure MPa (kgf/cm²)	Cooling	0.78~0.98 (8~10)	0.78~0.98 (8~10)	0.69~0.88 (7~9)
Temp. difference between return air and supply air (°C)	Cooling	13~15	13~15	14~16
Running current (A)	Cooling	3.1/3.0/2.9	3.9/3.7/3.5	5.3/5.1/4.9

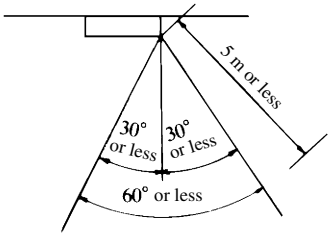
Note (1) The data are measured at following conditions
Ambient air temperature
Indoor side: Cooling ... 27˚C DB, 19˚C WB, Heating ... 20˚C DB
Outdoor side: Cooling ... 35˚C DB, 24˚C WB, Heating ... 7˚C DB, 6˚C WB

(6) Precautions for wireless remote controller installation and operation

(a) Wireless remote controller covers the following distances:

(i) When operating facing the air conditioner:

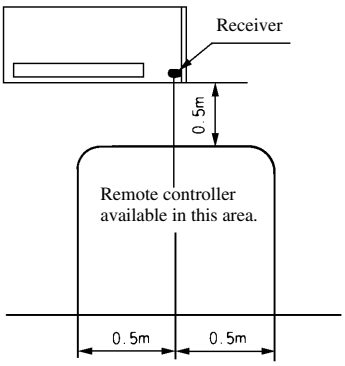




Notes (1) The remote controller is correctly facing the sensing element of the air conditioner when being manipulated.
(2) The typical coverage is indicated (in the left illustration). It may be more or less depending on the installation.
(3) The coverage may be less or even nil. If the sensing element is exposed to strong light, such as direct sunlight, illumination, etc., or dust is deposited on it or it is used behind a curtain, etc.

(ii) When manipulating the remote controller mounted on a wall:

Make sure that it works normally (i.e., transmission/reception signal is audible) before mounting.

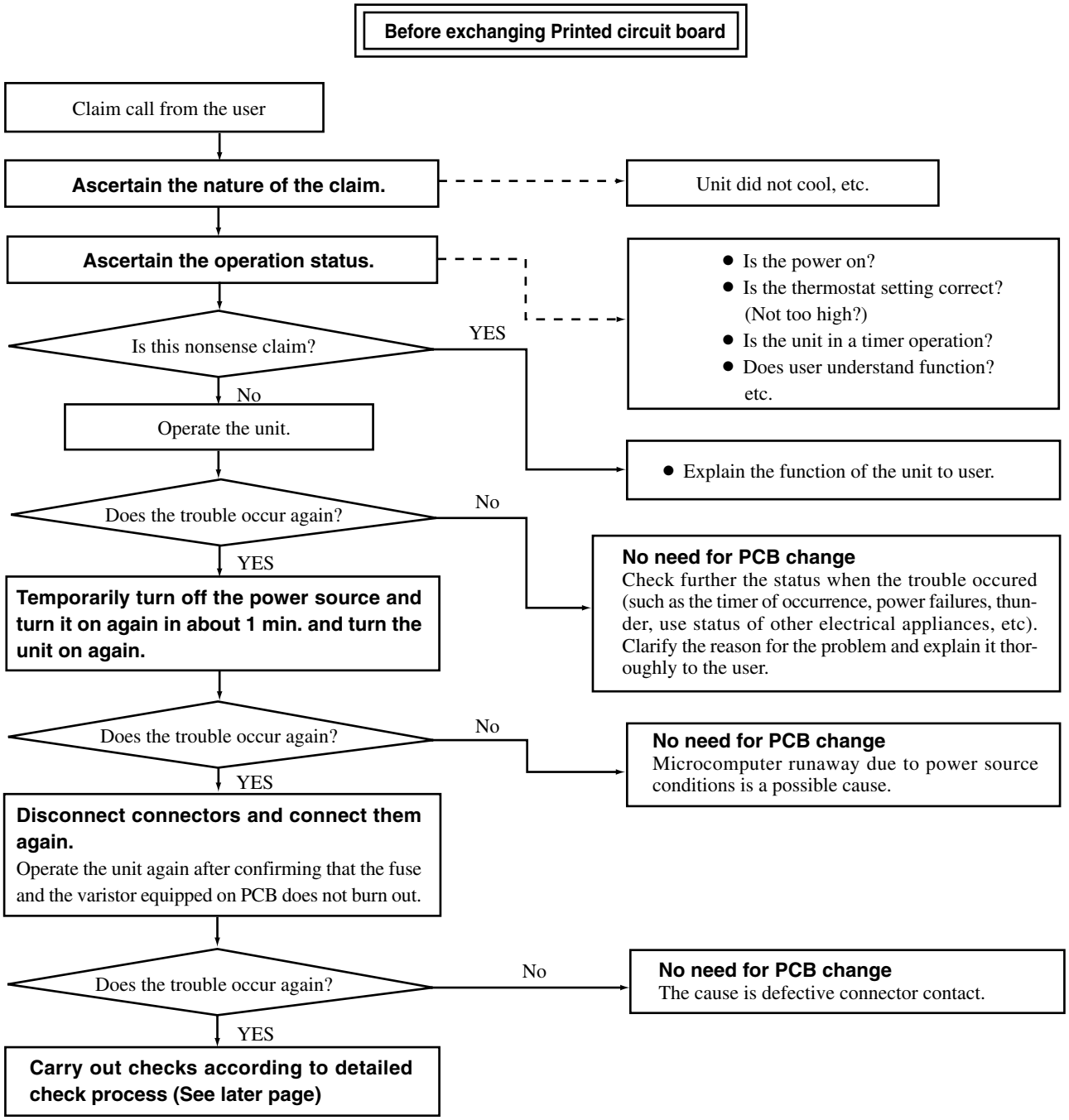


2.1.6 MAINTENANCE DATA

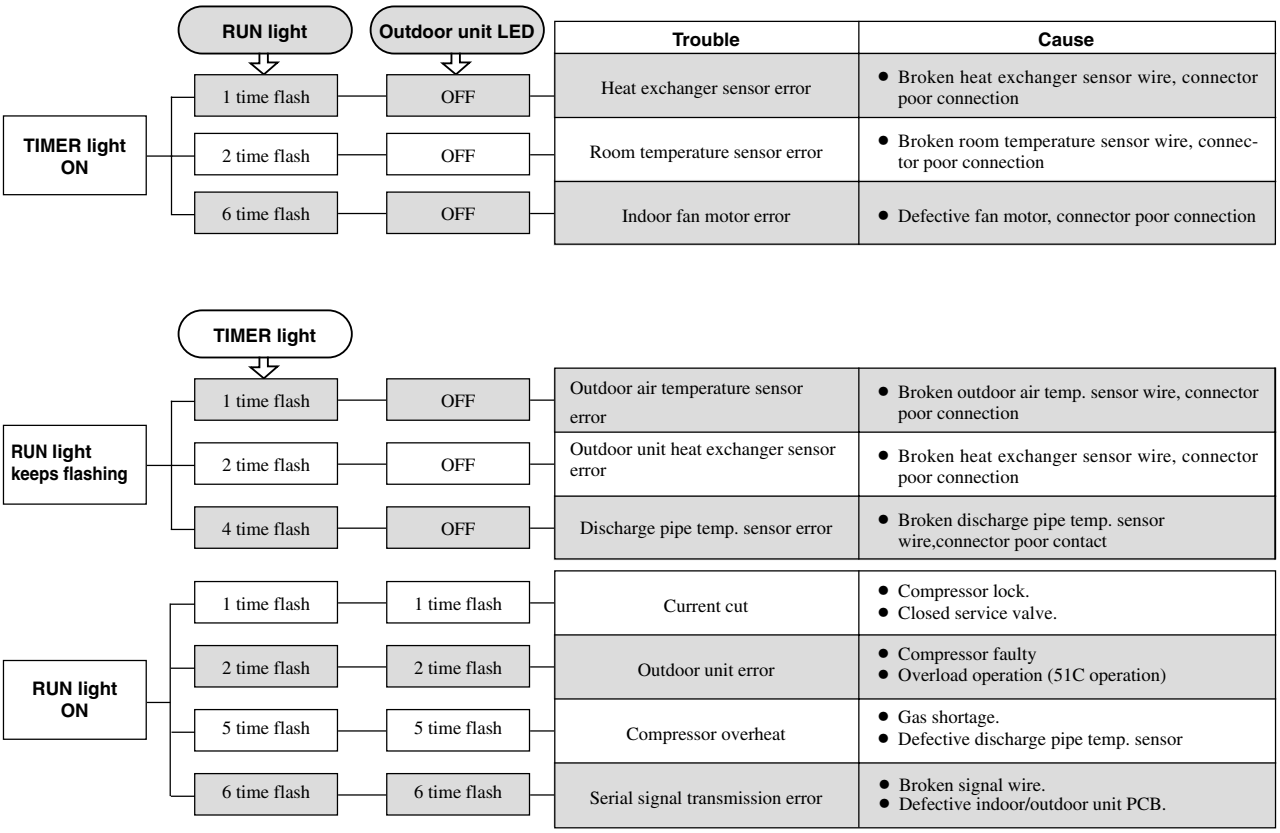
(1) Trouble shooting

(a) Trouble shooting to be performed prior to exchanging PCB, (Printed circuit board) [Common to all models]

All the models described in this chapter are controlled by a microcomputer. When providing maintenance service to customers it is necessary to understand the function controlled by a micro computer thoroughly, so as not to mistakenly identify correct operations as mis-operations. It is also necessary to perform the following simple checks before conducting detailed checks or exchanging printed circuit board.



(b) Self diagnosis display on indoor unit

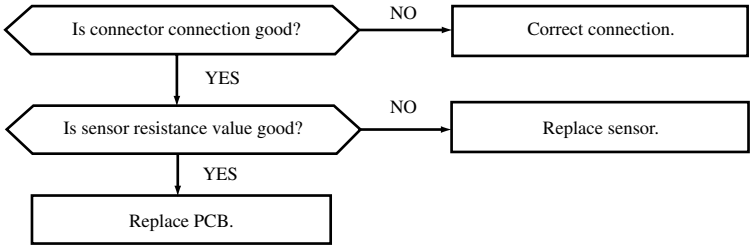


Trouble	Cause
Heat exchanger sensor error	● Broken heat exchanger sensor wire, connector poor connection
Room temperature sensor error	● Broken room temperature sensor wire, connector poor connection
Indoor fan motor error	● Defective fan motor, connector poor connection
Outdoor air temperature sensor error	● Broken outdoor air temp. sensor wire, connector poor connection
Outdoor unit heat exchanger sensor error	● Broken heat exchanger sensor wire, connector poor connection
Discharge pipe temp. sensor error	● Broken discharge pipe temp. sensor wire,connector poor contact
Current cut	● Compressor lock. ● Closed service valve.
Outdoor unit error	● Compressor faulty ● Overload operation (51C operation)
Compressor overheat	● Gas shortage. ● Defective discharge pipe temp. sensor
Serial signal transmission error	● Broken signal wire. ● Defective indoor/outdoor unit PCB.

(c) Inspection procedures corresponding to detail of trouble

Sensor error

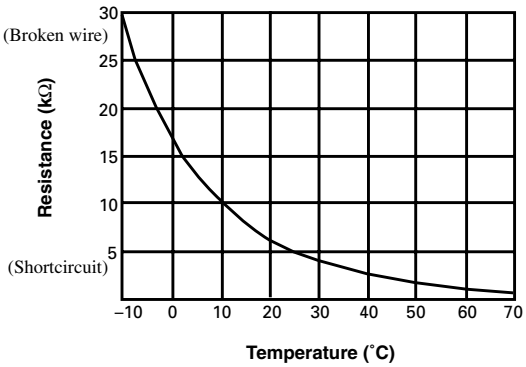
[Broken sensor wire, connector poor connection]



◆ Discharge pipe temp. sensor temperature characteristics

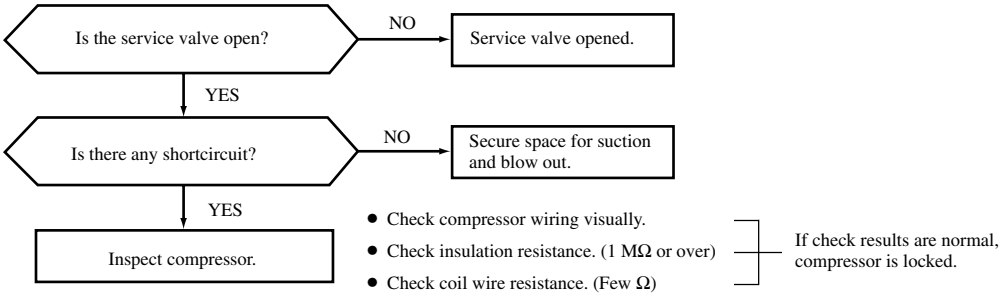
Temperature (˚C)	Resistance (kΩ)	Temperature (˚C)	Resistance (kΩ)
0	164	70	8.7
5	127	75	7.3
10	99	80	6.2
15	78	85	5.3
20	62	90	4.5
25	50	95	3.9
30	40	100	3.3
35	32	105	2.9
40	26	110	2.5
45	21	115	2.2
50	17	120	1.9
55	14	125	1.6
60	12	130	1.4
65	10	135	1.3

◆ Sensor temperature characteristics (Room temp., indoor unit heat exchanger temp., outdoor unit heat exchanger temp., outdoor temp.)



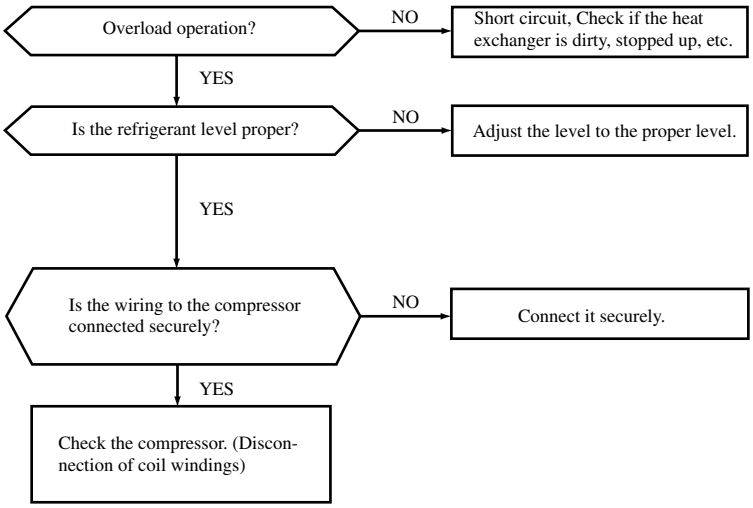
Current cut

[compressor lock]



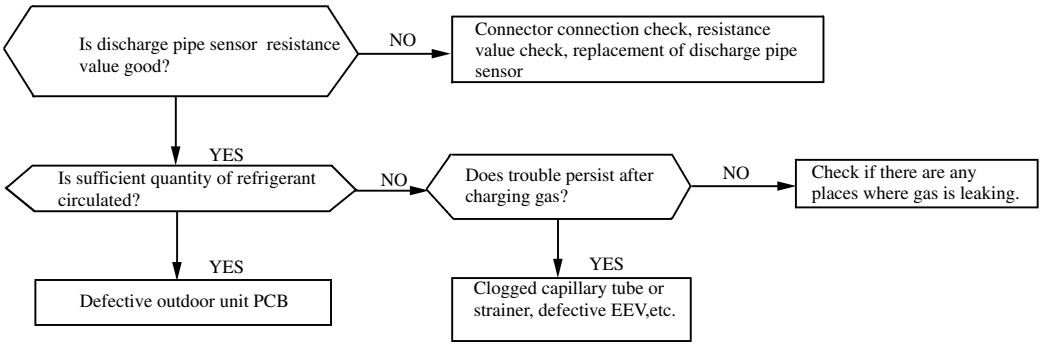
Outdoor unit abnormal

[Compressor faulty, compressor wiring disconnected.]



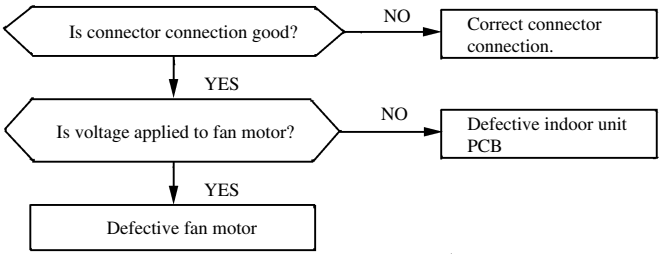
Compressor overheat

[Gas shortage, defective discharge pipe sensor]



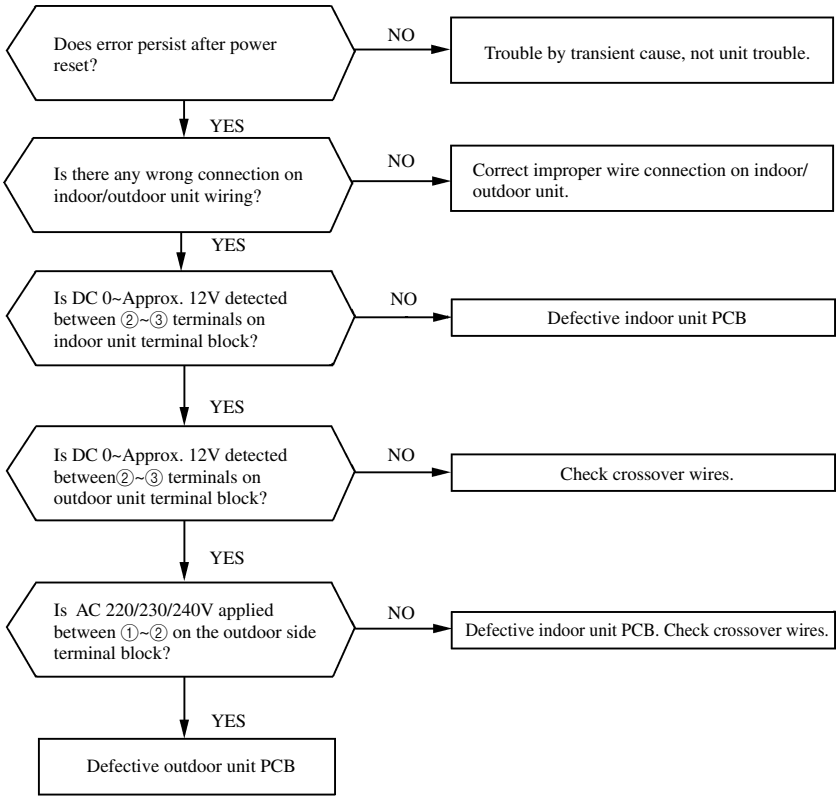
Indoor fan motor error

[Defective fan motor, defective PCB]



Serial signal transmission error

[Wiring error including power cable, defective indoor/ outdoor unit PCB]



(d) Phenomenon observed after shortcircuit, wire breakage on sensor.

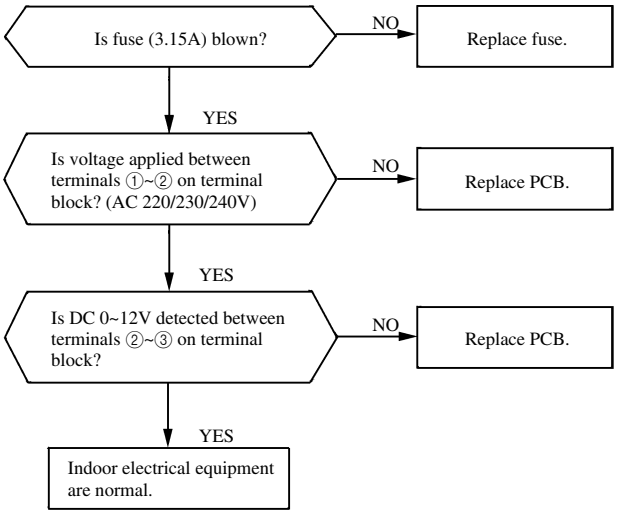
(i) Indoor unit

Sensor	Operation mode	Phenomenon	
		Shortcircuit	Broken wire
Room temperature sensor	Cooling	Release of continuous compressor operation command	Continuous compressor operation command is not released.
	Heating	Continuous compressor operation command is not released.	Release of continuous compressor operation command
Heat exchanger sensor	Cooling	System can be operated normally.	Continuous compressor operation command is not released. (Anti-frosting)
	Heating	High pressure control mode	Hot keep (Indoor fan stop)

(ii) Outdoor unit

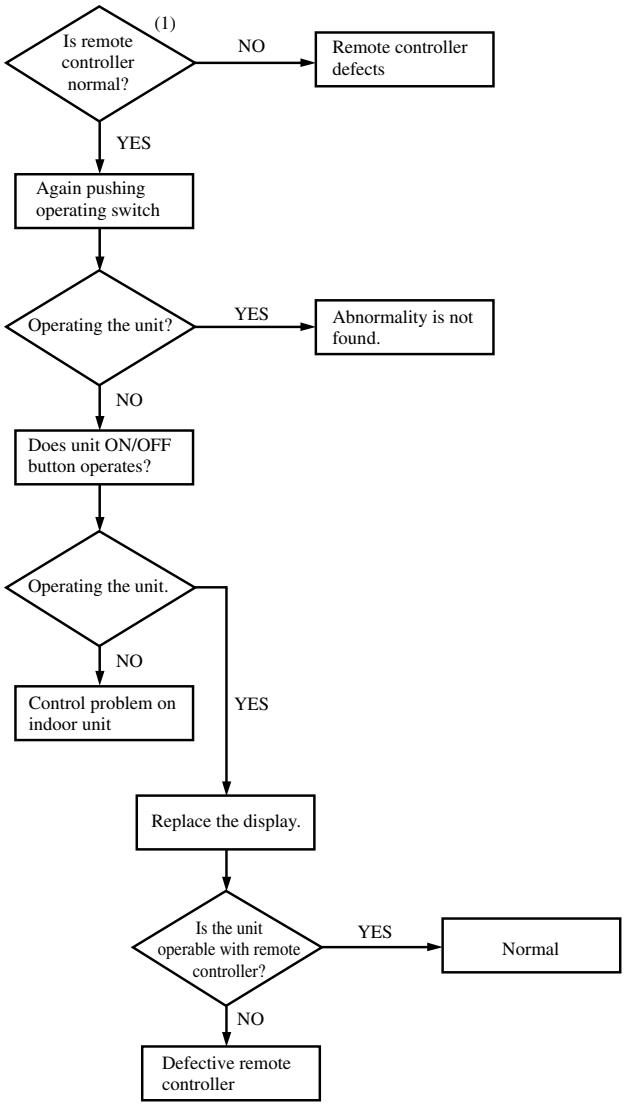
Sensor	Operation mode	Phenomenon	
		Shortcircuit	Broken wire
Heat exchanger sensor	Cooling	System can be operated normally.	System can be operated normally.
	Heating	Defrosting is not performed.	Defrosting is performed for 10 minutes at approx. 1 hour.
Outdoor temperature sensor	Cooling	System can be operated normally.	System can be operated normally.
	Heating	Defrosting is not operated.	Defrosting is performed for 10 minutes at intervals of approx. 1 hour.
Discharge pipe sensor	All modes	Compressor overload protection is disabled. (Can be operated.)	Compressor stop

(e) Inspection procedures of indoor electrical equipment

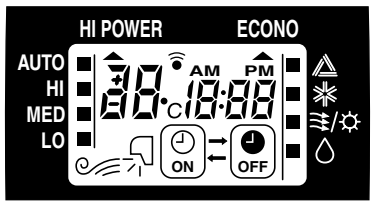


Notes (1) Since the communication timing signal is transmitted only when the 52C is turned ON, check it under the operating condition.
(2) Check the voltage on the terminal block.
- Power supply: Between ①~② (AC 220/230/240V)
- Signal: Between ②~③ (Changing between DC 0~Approx. 12V)

(f) How to make sure of remote controller



Note (1) Check method of remote controller
(a) Press the reset switch of the remote controller.
(b) If all LCD are displayed after zero (0) display, it is basically normal.



(2) Servicing

(a) Evacuation

The evacuation is an procedure to purge impurities.....noncondensable gas, air, moisture from the refrigerant equipment by using a vacuum pump. Since the refrigerant R410A is very insoluble in water, even a small amount of moisture left in the refrigerant equipment will freeze, causing what is called water clogging.

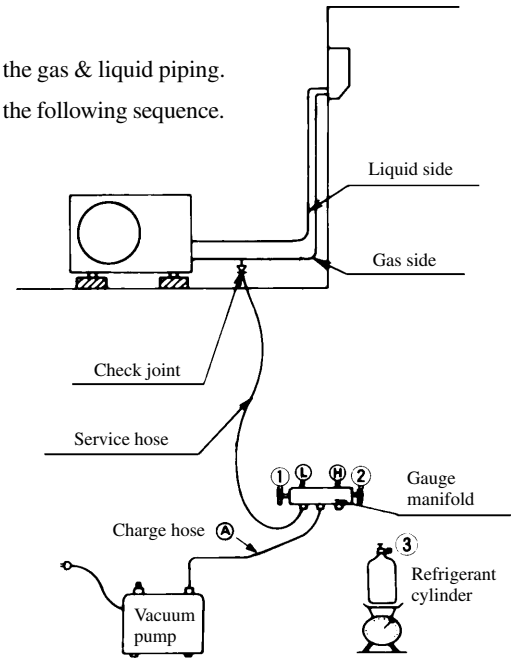
- Evacuation procedure

(i) Check to ensure that there is no internal pressure in the unit. If there is an internal pressure, it should be relieved through the check joint.

(ii) Connect the service hoses of the gauge manifold to the check joint of the gas & liquid piping.

(iii) Connect a vacuum pump to the charge hose Ⓐ. Repeat evacuation in the following sequence.

Start the vacuum pump.
⇩
Compound pressure gauge indicates –0.1 MPa (–76 cmHg)
⇩
Operate the vacuum pump for more than 15 minutes after –0.1 MPa (–76 cmHg) is indicated.
⇩
Close low pressure valve ① of gauge manifold.
⇩
Stop the vacuum pump.



Notes (1) Do not use the refrigerant pressure to expel air.
(2) Do not use the compressor for evacuation.
(3) Do not operate the compressor in the vacuum condition.

(b) Refrigerant charge

(i) Discharge refrigerant entirely from the unit and evacuate the unit.
Note: Addition of refrigerant without evacuation is unreasonable, because it will result in low charge or overcharge.

(ii) Keep the gauge manifold and connect a refrigerant cylinder to the unit.

(iii) Record the weight of the refrigerant cylinder on the balance. This is necessary for making sure of the charged refrigerant amount.

(iv) Purge air from the charge hose Ⓐ
Firstly loose the connecting portion of the charge hose Ⓐ at the gauge manihold side and open the valve ③ for a few seconds, and then immediately retighten it after observing that gas is blow out from the loosened portion.

(v) Open the valve ① and ③ after discharging air from the charge hose Ⓐ, then the liquid refrigerant begins flowing from the cylinder into the unit. Be sure to erect the refrigerant cylinder upright to let liquid refrigerant flow into the unit.

(vi) When refrigerant has been charged into the system to some extent, refrigerant flow becomes stagnant, when that happens, start the compressor in cooling cycle until the unit is filled with refrigerant to the specified weight.

(vii) Making sure of the refrigerant amount, close the valve ③

(viii) Disconnect the charge hose from the unit. Cover the valve ports of the refrigerant piping with caps and tighten them securely.

(ix) Check for gas leakage applying a gas leak detector along the piping line.

(x) Start the air conditioner and make sure of its operating condition.....high side and low side pressures and temperature difference between suction air and outlet air.

2.1.7 REFRIGERANT PIPING INSTALLATION/SERVICING MANUAL FOR AIR CONDITIONERS USING R410A

This is same as chapter 1.1.7. Refer to Page 55.

CONTENTS

2.2.1 GENERAL INFORMATION

(1) Specific features

The “MITSUBISHI HEAVY INDUSTRIES, LTD.” room air-conditioner: SRK series are of split and wall mounted type and the unit consists of indoor unit and outdoor unit with refrigerant precharged in factory. The indoor unit is composed of room air cooling or heating equipment with operation control switch and the outdoor unit is composed of condensing unit with compressor.

(a) Remote control flap

The flap can be automatically controlled by operating wireless remote controller.

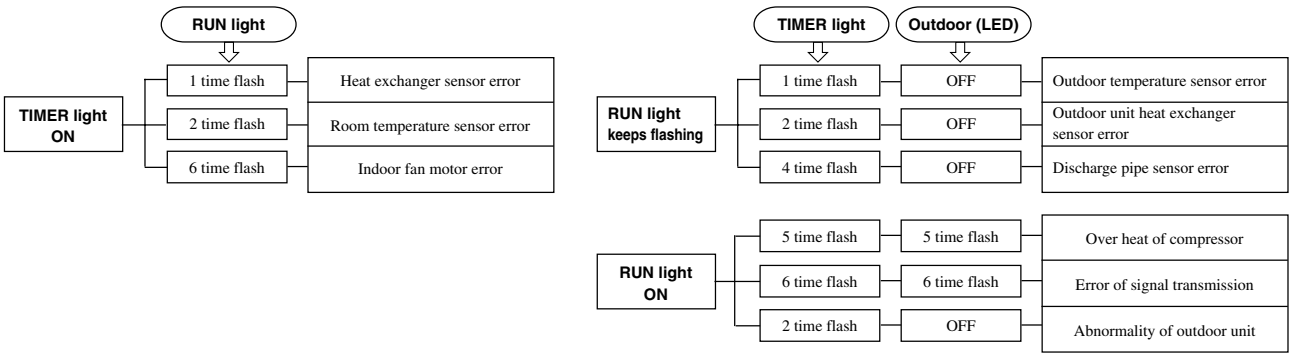
- Air scroll: Flap operation is automatically control.
- Swing: This will swing the flap up and down.
- Memory flap: Once the flap position is set, the unit memorizes the position and continues to operate at the same position from the next time.

(b) Automatic operation

When the remote control switch is set on “auto(⧋)”, it will either automatically decide operation mode such as cooling, heating and thermal dry, or operate in the operation mode before it has been turned to automatic control.

(c) Self diagnosis function

- We are constantly trying to do better service to our customers by installing such judges that show abnormality of operation as follows.



(2) How to read the model name

Example : SR K 50 H E - S1

- S1 — R410A models
- E — Series No.
- H — Heat pump type
- 50 — Product capacity
- K — Wall mounted type
- SR — Split type room air-conditioner

2.2.2 SELECTION DATA

(1) Specifications

Model SRK50HE-S1 (Indoor unit)
SRC50HE-S1 (Outdoor unit)

(220/230/240V)

Item				Model	SRK50HE-S1	SRC50HE-S1
Cooling capacity(1)				W	4700	
Heating capacity(1)				W	5300	
Power source					1 Phase, 220-240V, 50Hz	
Operation data(1)	Cooling input			kW	1.41	
	Running current (Cooling)			A	6.5/6.3/6.0	
	Heating input			kW	1.40	
	Running current (Heating)			A	6.5/6.2/6.0	
	Inrush current			A	39.6	
	COP				Cooling: 3.33 Heating: 3.79	
	Noise level	Cooling	Sound level	dB	Hi 43, Me 39, Lo 34	47
			Power level		58	63
		Heating	Sound level		Hi 44, Me 39, Lo 35	49
			Power level		61	64
Exterior dimensions Height × Width × Depth				mm	298 × 840 × 259	640 × 850 × 290
Color					Cool white	Stucco white
Net weight				kg	12	44
Refrigerant equipment Compressor type & Q'ty					–	RM-B5118MNE5 (Rotary type) × 1
Motor				kW	–	1.4
Starting method					–	Line starting
Heat exchanger					Louver fins & inner grooved tubing	Straight fins & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control					Capillary tubes + Electronic expansion valve	
Refrigerant(3)				kg	R410A 1.4 (Pre-Charged up to the piping length of 15m)	
Refrigerant oil				ℓ	0.7 (MA68)	
Deice control					Microcompter control	
Air handling equipment Fan type & Q'ty					Tangential fan × 1	Propeller fan × 1
Motor				W	27	35
Air flow (at High)			(Cooling)	CMM	10.0	38.0
			(Heating)		12.5	38.0
Air filter, Q'ty					Polypropylene net (washable) × 2	–
Shock & vibration absorber					–	Cushion rubber (for compressor)
Electric heater					–	–
Operation control Operation switch					Wireless-Remote controller	–
Room temperature control					Microcomputer thermostat	–
Pilot lamp					RUN (Green), TIMER (Yellow), HI POWER (Green), ECONO (Orange)	
Safety equipment					Compressor: Overheat protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection, Frost protection	
Refrigerant piping	O.D			mm (in)	Liquid line: ϕ6.35 (1/4″) Gas line: ϕ12.7 (1/2″)	
	Connecting method				Flare Connection	
	Attached length of piping				Liquid line: 0.54 m Gas line : 0.47 m	–
	Insulation				Necessary (Both sides)	
Drain hose					Connectable	
Power source cord					2 m (3 cores with earth)	
Connection wiring	Size × Core number				1.5 mm² × 4 cores (Including earth cable)	
	Connecting method				Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Accessories (included)					Mounting kit, Clean filter (Natural enzyme filter × 1, Photocatalytic washable deodorizing filter × 1)	
Optional parts					–	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	Standards
Cooling	27ºC	19ºC	35ºC	24ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612
Heating	20ºC	–	7ºC	6ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612

The piping length is 7.5m.

(2) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively.

(3) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 15 m connecting piping.
(Purging is not required even for the short piping.)
If the piping length is longer, when it is 15 to 25 m, add 20 g refrigerant per meter.

Model SRK56HE-S1 (Indoor unit)
SRC56HE-S1 (Outdoor unit)

(220/230/240V)

Item				Model	SRK56HE-S1	SRC56HE-S1
Cooling capacity(1)				W	5100	
Heating capacity(1)				W	5800	
Power source					1 Phase, 220-240V, 50Hz	
Operation data(1)	Cooling input			kW	1.59	
	Running current (Cooling)			A	7.3/7.1/6.8	
	Heating input			kW	1.58	
	Running current (Heating)			A	7.4/7.1/6.8	
	Inrush current			A	45.2	
	COP				Cooling: 3.21 Heating: 3.67	
	Noise level	Cooling	Sound level	dB	Hi 44, Me 40, Lo 35	49
			Power level		59	64
		Heating	Sound level		Hi 44, Me 39, Lo 35	51
			Power level		61	65
Exterior dimensions Height × Width × Depth				mm	298 × 840 × 259	640 × 850 × 290
Color					Cool white	Stucco white
Net weight				kg	12	44
Refrigerant equipment Compressor type & Q'ty					–	RM-B5120MNE5 [Rotary type] × 1
Motor				kW	–	1.5
Starting method					–	Line starting
Heat exchanger					Louver fins & inner grooved tubing	Straight fins & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control					Capillary tubes + Electronic expansion valve	
Refrigerant(3)				kg	R410A 1.4 (Pre-Charged up to the piping length of 15m)	
Refrigerant oil				ℓ	0.7 (MA68)	
Deice control					Microcomputer control	
Air handling equipment Fan type & Q'ty					Tangential fan × 1	Propeller fan × 1
Motor				W	27	35
Air flow (at High)			(Cooling)	CMM	11.0	38.0
			(Heating)		12.5	38.0
Air filter, Q'ty					Polypropylene net (washable) × 2	–
Shock & vibration absorber					–	Cushion rubber (for compressor)
Electric heater					–	–
Operation control Operation switch					Wireless-Remote controller	–
Room temperature control					Microcomputer thermostat	–
Pilot lamp					RUN (Green), TIMER (Yellow), HI POWER (Green), ECONO (Orange)	
Safety equipment					Compressor: Overheat protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection, Frost protection	
Refrigerant piping	O.D			mm (in)	Liquid line: ϕ6.35 (1/4″) Gas line: ϕ12.7 (1/2″)	
	Connecting method				Flare connection	
	Attached length of piping				Liquid line: 0.54 m Gas line : 0.47 m	–
	Insulation				Necessary (Both sides)	
Drain hose					Connectable	
Power source cord					2 m (3 cores with earth)	
Connection wiring	Size × Core number				1.5 mm² × 4 cores (Including earth cable)	
	Connecting method				Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Accessories (included)					Mounting kit, Clean filter (Natural enzyme filter × 1, Photocatalytic washable deodorizing filter × 1)	
Optional parts					–	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	Standards
Cooling	27ºC	19ºC	35ºC	24ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612
Heating	20ºC	–	7ºC	6ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612

The piping length is 7.5m.

(2) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively.

(3) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 15 m connecting piping.
(Purging is not required even for the short piping.)
If the piping length is longer, when it is 15 to 25 m, add 20 g refrigerant per meter.

(2) Range of usage & limitations

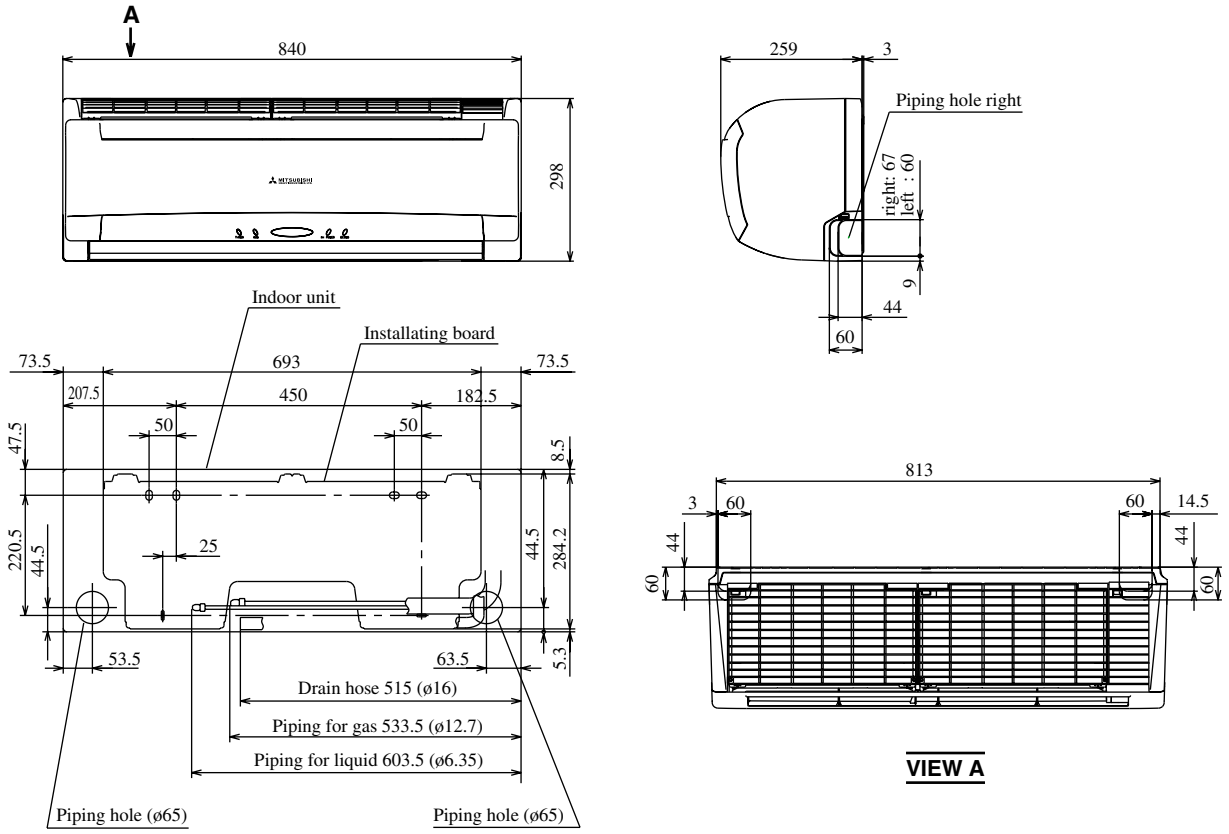
Item \ Models	All models
Indoor return air temperature (Upper, lower limits)	Cooling operation : Approximately 21 to 32˚C Heating operation : Approximately 15 to 30˚C
Outdoor air temperature (Upper, lower limits)	Cooling operation : Approximately 21 to 43˚C Heating operation : Approximately -5 to 21˚C
Refrigerant line (one way) length	Max. 25m
Vertical height difference between outdoor unit and indoor unit	Max. 15m (Outdoor unit is higher) Max. 15m (Outdoor unit is lower)
Power source voltage	Rating ± 10%
Voltage at starting	Min. 85% of rating
Frequency of ON-OFF cycle	Max. 10 times/h
ON and OFF interval	Max. 3 minutes

(3) Exterior dimensions

(a) Indoor unit

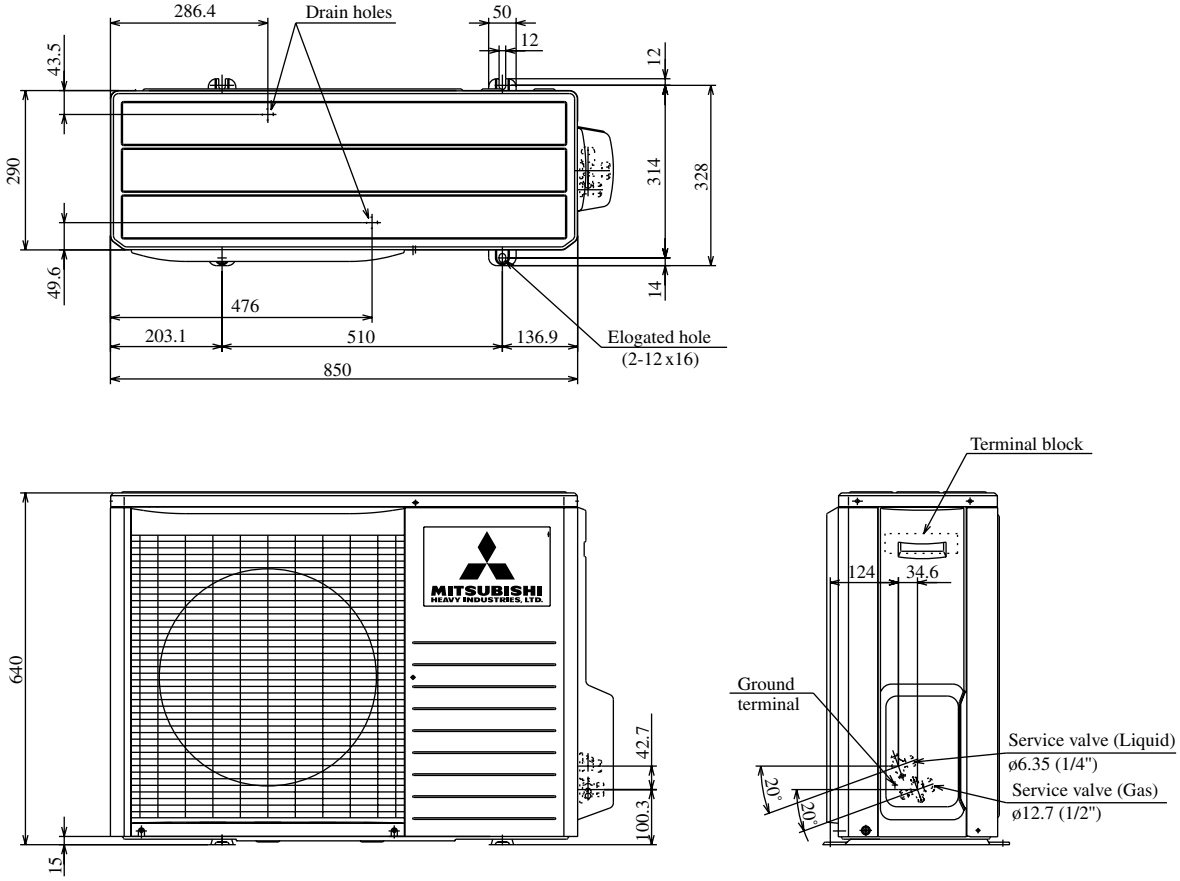
Models All models

Unit: mm



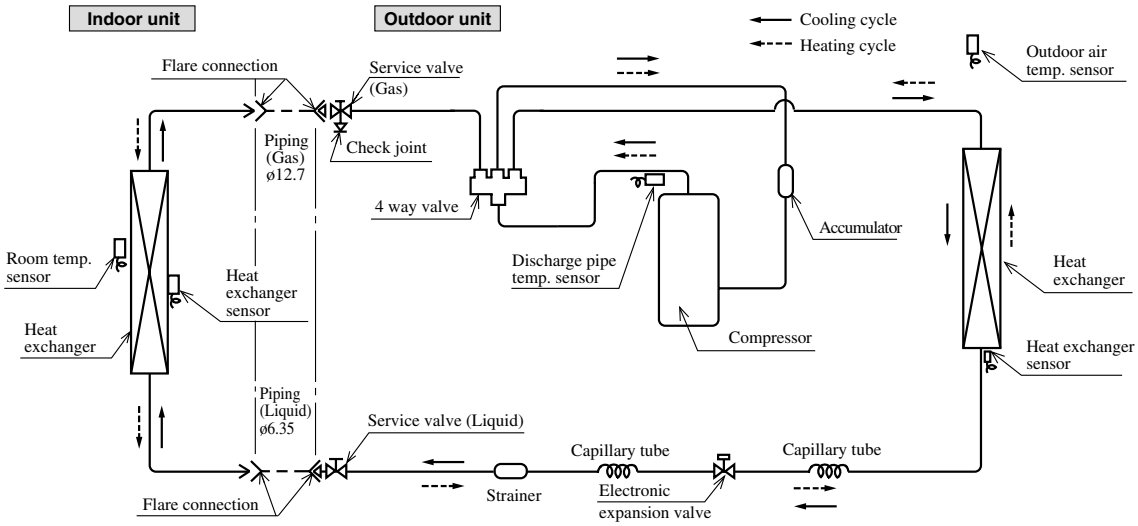
(b) Outdoor unit

Models All models



(4) Piping system

Models SRK50HE-S1, 56HE-S1

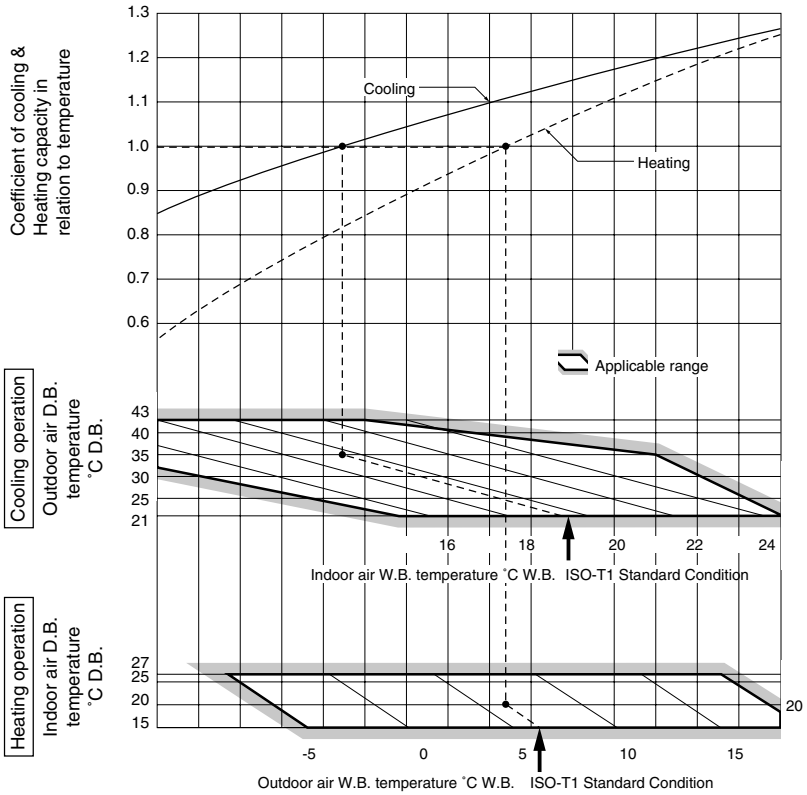


(5) Selection chart

Correct the cooling and heating capacity in accordance with the conditions as follows. The net cooling and heating capacity can be obtained in the following way.

Net capacity = Capacity shown on specification × Correction factors as follows.

(a) Coefficient of cooling and heating capacity in relation to temperatures



(b) Correction of cooling and heating capacity in relation to one way length of refrigerant piping

It is necessary to correct the cooling and heating capacity in relation to the one way piping length between the indoor and outdoor units.

Piping length [m]	7	10	15	20	25
Cooling	1.0	0.99	0.975	0.965	0.95
Heating	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0

(c) Correction relative to frosting on outdoor heat exchanger during heating

In additions to the foregoing corrections (a), (b) the heating capacity needs to be adjusted also with respect to the frosting on the outdoor heat exchanger.

Air inlet temperature of outdoor unit in ˚CWB	-5	-3	-1	1	3	5
Adjustment coefficient	0.91	0.88	0.86	0.87	0.92	1.00

How to obtain the cooling and heating capacity

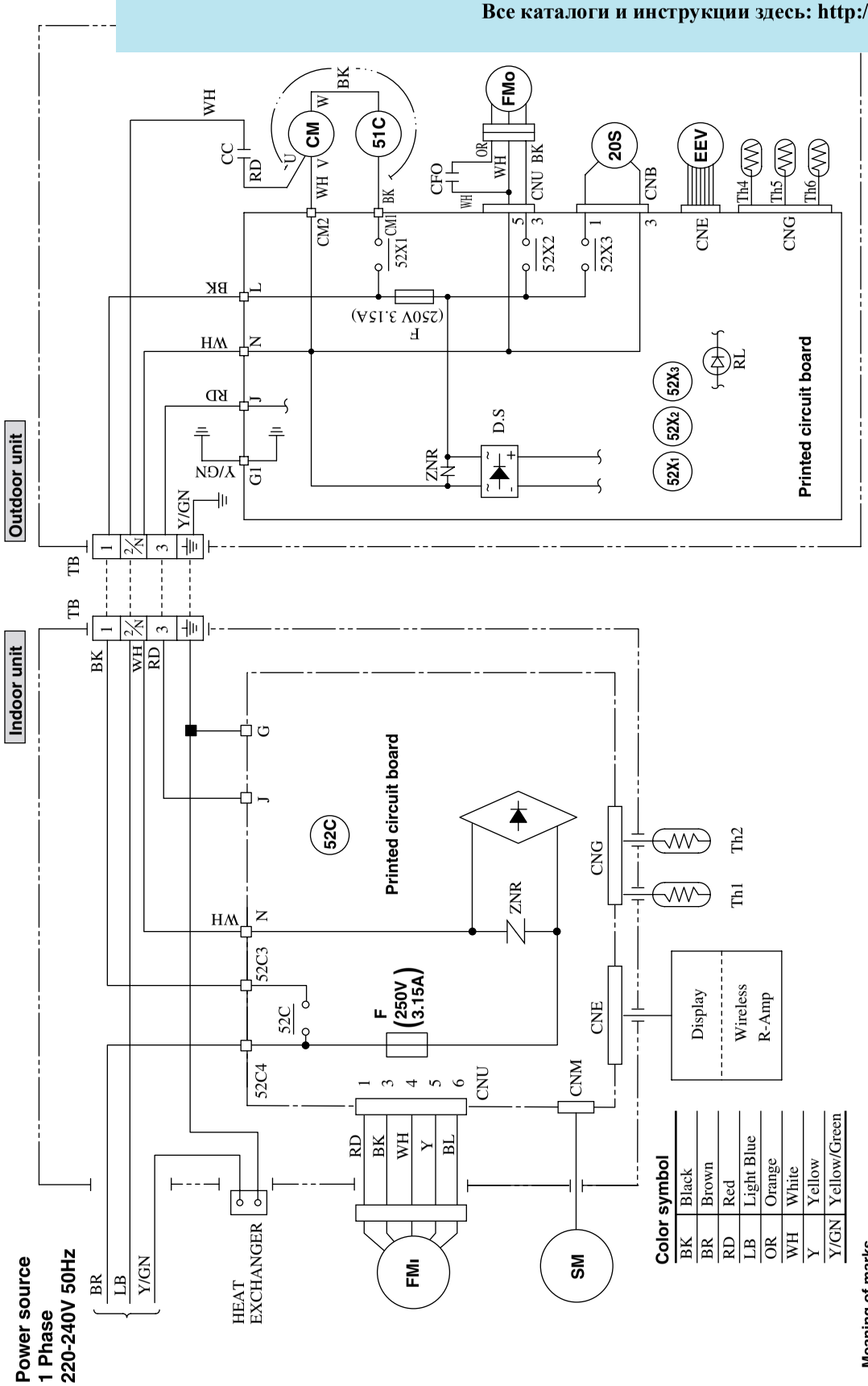
Example : The net cooling capacity of the model SRK50HE-S1 with the piping length of 15m, indoor wet-bulb temperature at 19.0˚C and outdoor dry-bulb temperature 35˚C is Net cooling capacity = 4700 × 0.975 × 1.0 = 4583 W

SRK50HE-S1 — Length 15m — Factor by air temperatures

2.2.3 ELECTRICAL DATA

(1) Electrical wiring

Models SRK50HE-S1, 56HE-S1



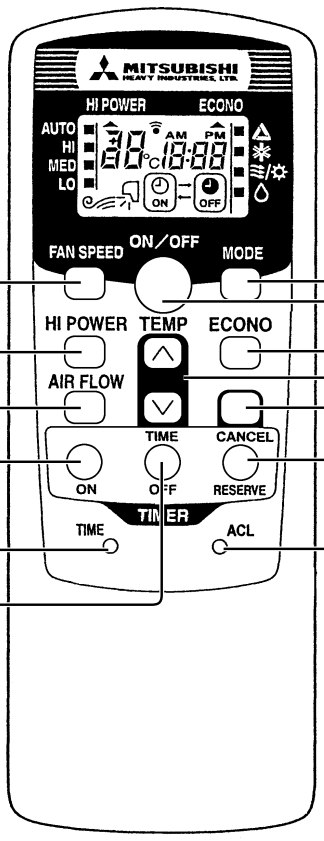
Meaning of marks

Symbol	Parts name	Symbol	Parts name	Symbol	Parts name
CM	Compressor motor	Th2	Heat exchanger sensor (Indoor unit)	DS	Diode stack
F	Fuse	Th4	Heat exchanger sensor (Outdoor unit)	52X1-3	Auxiliary relay
FM1	Fan motor (Indoor)	Th5	Outdoor air temp. sensor	EEV	Electronic expansion valve
FMo	Fan motor (Outdoor)	Th6	Discharge pipe sensor	51C	Motor Protector for CM
SM	Flap motor	ZNR	Varistor	TB	Terminal block
RL	Inspection lamp	20S	4 way valve (coil)		
Th1	Room temp. sensor	52C	Magnetic contactor		

2.2.4 OUTLINE OF OPERATION CONTROL BY MICROCOMPUTER

(1) Operation control function by remote control switch

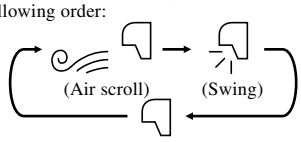
◆ Operation section



FAN SPEED button
Each time the button is pushed, the ■ indicator is switched over in turn.

HI POWER button
This button changes the HIGH POWER mode.

AIR FLOW button
This button changes the flap mode. When pressed, this button changes the mode in the following order:



ON TIMER button
This button selects ON TIMER operation.

Time switch
This switch for setting the time.

OFF TIMER button
This button selects OFF TIMER operation.

OPERATION MODE select button
Each time the button is pushed, the ■ indicator is switched over in turn.

ON/OFF button
Press for starting operation, press again for stopping.

ECONO button
This button changes the ECONOMY mode.

TEMPERATURE button
This button sets the room temperature.
(This button changes the present time and TIMER time.)

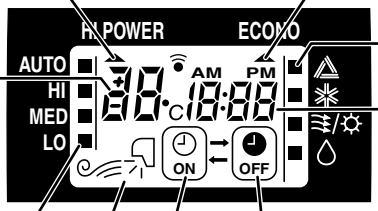
CANCEL button
This button cancels the ON timer and OFF timer.

RESERVE button
This button sets the present time and TIMER time.

RESET switch
Switch for resetting microcomputer.

- The above illustration shows all controls, but in practice only the relevant parts are shown.

◆ Indication section



HIGH POWER MODE indicator
Indicates during high power mode operation.

TEMPERATURE indicator
Indicates set temperature.
(Does not indicate temperature when operation mode is on AUTO)

FAN SPEED indicator
Indicates set air flow rate with ■ lamp.

AIR FLOW indicator
Shows selected flap mode.

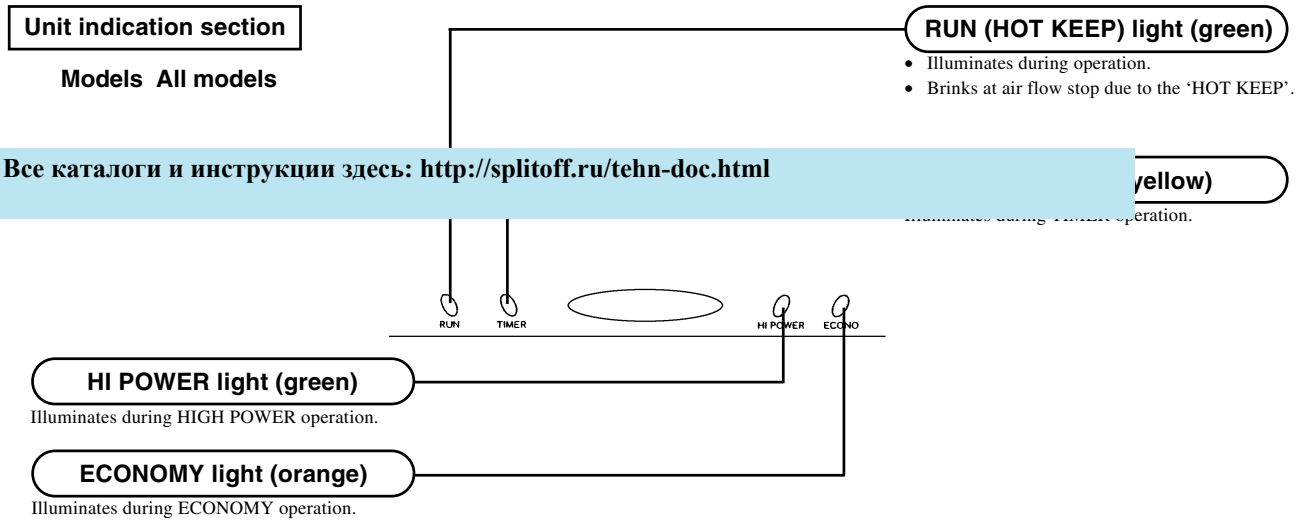
ON TIMER indicator
Indicates during ON TIMER operation.

ECONOMY MODE indicator
Indicates during economy mode operation.

OPERATION MODE indicator
Indicates selected operation with ■ lamp.
Heat pump type:
[⧋ (Auto) • ❄ (Cool) • ≋/☼ (Heat) • ◊ (Dry)]
Cooling only type:
[⧋ (Auto) • ❄ (Cool) • ≋/☼ (Fan) • ◊ (Dry)]

TIME indicator
Indicates present time or timer setting time.

OFF TIMER indicator
Indicates OFF TIMER operation.



(2) Unit ON/OFF button

When the remote controller batteries become weak, or if the remote controller is lost or malfunctioning, this button may be used to turn the unit on and off.

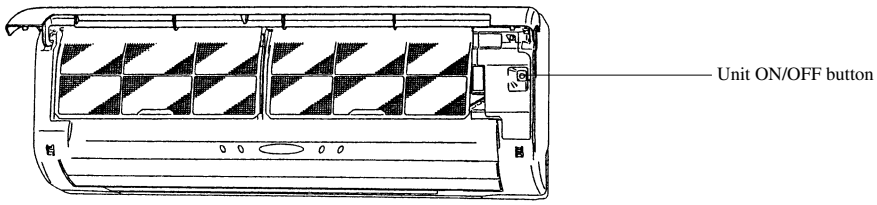
(a) Operation

Push the button once to place the unit in the automatic mode. Push it once more to turn the unit off.

(b) Details of operation

The unit will go into the automatic mode in which it automatically determines, from room temperature (as detected by sensor), whether to go into the cooling, thermal dry or heating modes.

Function / Operation mode	Room temperature setting	Fan speed	Flap	Timer switch
Cooling	About 25ºC	Auto	Auto	Continuous
Thermal dry	About 25ºC			
Heating	About 26ºC			



(3) Power blackout auto restart function

(a) Power blackout auto restart function is a function that records the operational status of the air-conditioner immediately prior to it being switched off by a power cut, and then automatically resumes operations at that point after the power has been restored.

(b) The following settings will be cancelled:

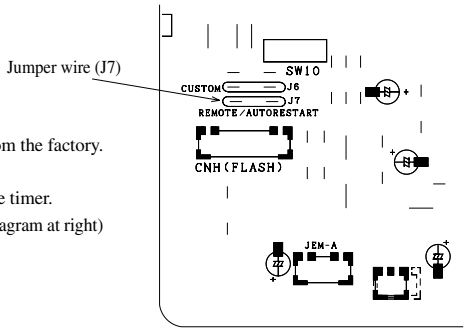
(i) Timer settings

(ii) High-power operations

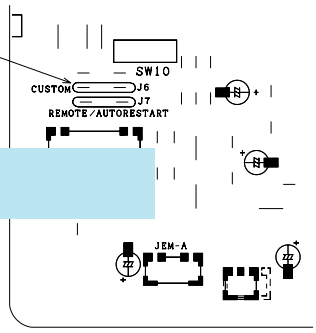
Notes (1) The power blackout auto restart function is set at on when the air-conditioner is shipped from the factory. Consult with your dealer if this function needs to be switched off.

(2) When power failure ocurrs, the timer setting is cancelled. Once power is resumed, reset the timer.

(3) If the jumper wire (J7) "REMOTE/AUTORESTART" is cut, auto restart is disabled. (See the diagram at right)



(4) Custom cord switching procedure



If two wireless remote controllers are installed in one room, in order to prevent wrong operation due to mixed signals, please modify the printed circuit board in the indoor unit's control box and the

(a) Modifying the indoor unit's printed circuit board

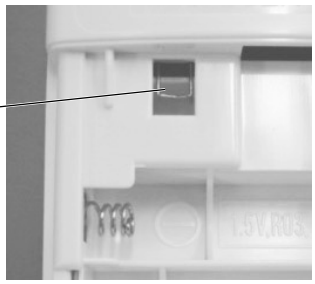
Take out the printed circuit board from the control box and cut off jumper wire (J6) using wire cutters.

After cutting of the jumper wire, take measures to prevent contact with the other the lead wires, etc.

(b) Modifying the wireless remote controller

(i) Remove the battery.

(ii) Cut the jumper wire shown in the figure at right.



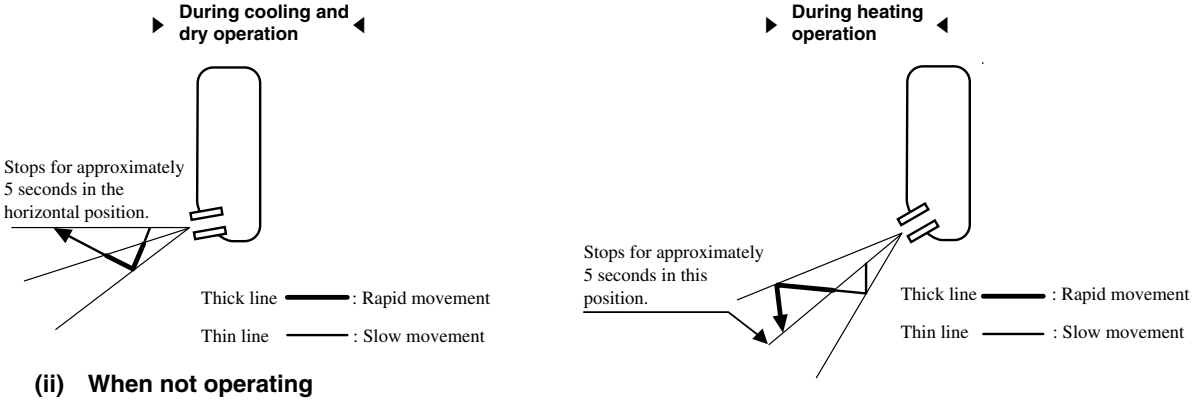
(5) Flap control

Control the flap by AIRFLOW button on the wireless remote controller.

(a) Air scroll

The flap will be automatically set to the angle of air flow best to operation.

(i) Starting time of operation



(ii) When not operating

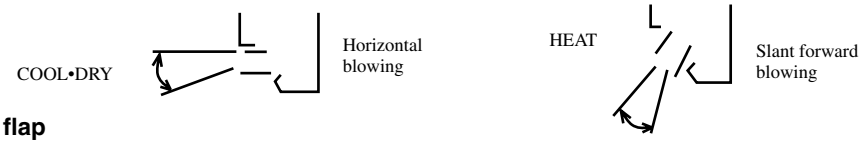
The flap returns to the position of air flow directly below, when operation has stopped.

(b) Memory flap

While the flap is operating if the AIRFLOW button is pushed once, it stops swinging at an angle.

As this angle is memorized in the microcomputer, the flap will be automatically set to the angle when next operation is started.

- Recommendable stopping angle of the flap



(c) Swing flap

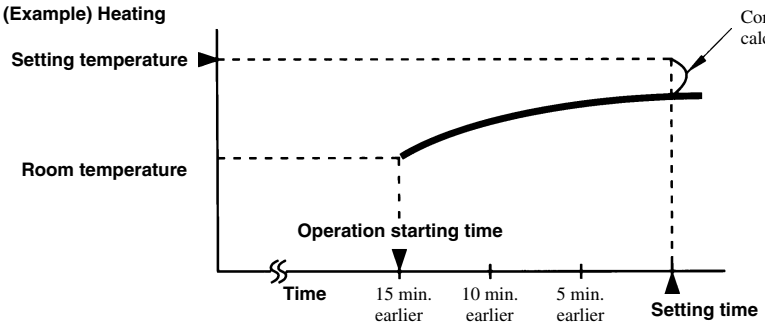
Flap moves in upward and downward directions continuously.

(6) Comfortable timer setting

If the timer is set at ON when the operation select switch is set at the cooling or heating, or the cooling or heating in auto mode operation is selected, the comfortable timer starts and determines the starting time of next operation based on the initial value of 15 minutes and the relationship between the room temperature at the setting time (temperature of room temperature sensor) and the setting temperature.

Operation mode	Operation start time correction value (min.)		
At cooling	3 < Room temp. – Setting temp.	1 < Room temp. – Setting temp. ≦ 3	Room temp. – Setting temp. ≦ 1
	+5	No change	–5
At heating	3 < Setting temp. – Room temp.	2 < Setting temp. – Room temp. ≦ 3	Setting temp. – Room temp. ≦ 2
	+5	No change	–5

Notes (1) At 5 minutes before the timer ON time, operation starts regardless of the temperature of the room temperature sensor (Th1).
(2) This function does not actuate when the operation select switch is set at the dehumidifying as well as the dehumidifying in the auto mode. However, the operation of item (1) above is performed during the dehumidifying in the auto mode.
(3) During the comfortable timer operation, both the run light and timer light illuminate and the timer light goes off after expiration of the timer, ON setting time.



Corrects the starting time of next operation by calculating the temperature difference.

- If the difference (= Setting temperature – Room temperature) is 4°C, the correction value is found to be +5 minutes from the table shown above so that the starting time of next operation is determined as follows:
  15 min. earlier + 5 min. = 20 min. earlier
  (Current operation start time; Correction value)

(7) Outline of heating operation (Heat pump type only)

(a) Operation of major functional components

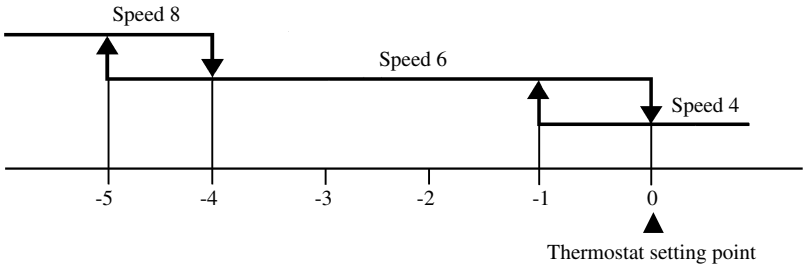
Item / Functional components	When the compressor command is OFF	When the compressor command is ON	When the compressor goes OFF due to an anomalous stop.
Indoor fan motor	ON	ON	OFF
Flaps	ON or OFF	ON or OFF	Stop position control
Display	Lights up	Lights up	Lights up or flashes
52C	ON	ON	OFF after stop mode
Outdoor fan motor	OFF	ON	OFF
4-way valve	Depending on the stop mode	ON	Depending on the stop mode
Electric expansion valve		Depending on the EEV control	

(b) Fan speed switching

Fan speed switching / Flow control	AUTO	HIGH	MED	LOW
Air scroll	Auto fan control	Speed 8	Speed 6	Speed 4
Swing flap		Speed 8	Speed 6	Speed 4
Swing stop		Speed 8	Speed 6	Speed 4

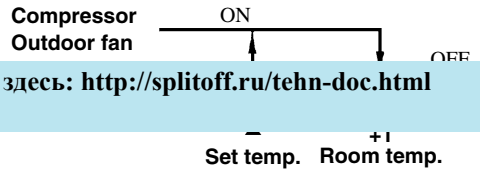
(i) Auto fan control

The indoor fan is automatically controlled in accordance with the difference between the room temperature (detected by the room temperature sensor) and the thermostat setting as shown below.



(c) Thermostat operation

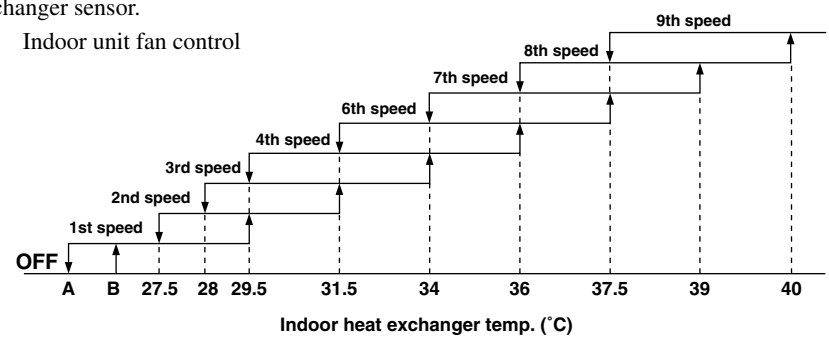
The compressor and outdoor fan and turned on and off as shown below according to the temperature setting.



(d) Hot keep

This function controls the indoor unit fan speed as shown below in accordance with the temperature sensed by the indoor heat exchanger sensor.

(i) Indoor unit fan control



● **Values of A, B**

	A	B
When the compressor command is OFF	22	25
When the compressor command is ON	17	19

Note (1) Refer to the table shown above right for the values A and B.

(ii) To accomplish rapid recovery from the thermostat off state, after the compressor and outdoor unit's fan go OFF, the set temperature is raised by 1ºC until 1 minute passes after the hot keep end temperature has been reached following restarting.

(e) Hot spurt

(i) For 40 minutes after a heating operation begins, the system runs with set temperature raised by 2ºC.

(ii) In the following cases, this function is canceled and does not activate afterwards.

1) When the compressor and outdoor unit fan have been turned OFF by the thermostat going off.
2) During high pressure control operation.

(f) HIGH POWER operation ("HI POWER" button on the remote controller : ON)

The system runs under the following conditions for 15 minutes without relation to the set temperature or the fan speed setting.

Indoor unit fan	Speed 9 fixed
Outdoor unit fan	ON
Compressor	ON

Notes (1) Room temperature is not adjusted during the HIGH POWER operation.
(2) Protective function will actuate with priority even during the HIGH POWER operation.

(g) Defrost operation

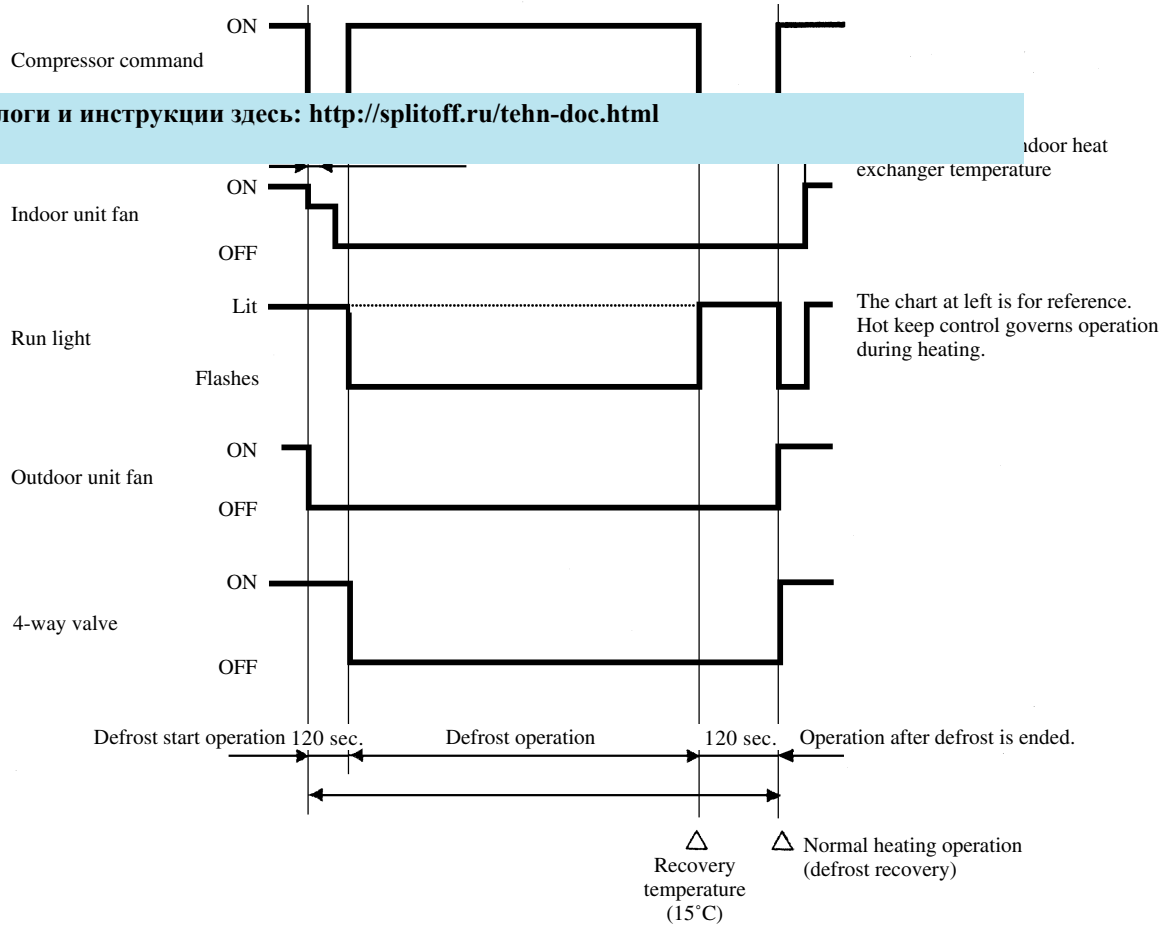
(i) Starting conditions (Defrost operation begins when all the following conditions are satisfied.)

① 35 minutes have passed since the heating operation began. (Accumulated operation time)
② 35 minutes have passed since the previous defrosting operation ended. (Accumulated operation time)
③ The outdoor unit heat exchanger temperature sensor is –5ºC or lower continuously for 3 minutes.
④ ● The outdoor temperature ≧ -15°C
The difference between the outdoor temperature sensor temperature and the outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor temperature is ≧ 6.0ºC.
● The outdoor temperature < -15°C
The difference between the outdoor temperature sensor temperature and the outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor temperature is ≧ -5ºC.
⑤ The compressor is running.
Also, the number of times the compressor goes OFF is counted, and when it reaches 10 or more times, if the conditions in ①, ② and ③ above (except that the outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor is –1ºC), the defroster operation starts.

(ii) End conditions (when either of the following conditions is satisfied)

① Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor: 15ºC or higher
② Defrosting operation has continued for 10 minutes.

(iii) Operation of functional components during defrosting operation



(h) Forced Defrost

(i) Forced defrost operation can be performed only once time within 20 second, after the power source is turned on, in accordance with the following operation.

1) Remote control operation

Operation	Run
Operation mode	Heating
Set temperature	19˚C
Fan speed select	Low
Air flow setting	Swing
On timer	ON
Current time	On after 180 min.condition
On timer time	

2) Functional components operation

Compressor	ON
4-way valve	OFF
Indoor unit fan	OFF
Flap	Fully closed
Outdoor unit fan	OFF
Display	Same as defrost

(ii) If remote control operation is performed, for 1 minute after 3-minute timer operation, the operation is canceled if one of the following conditions is satisfied.

① Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor: 14ºC or higher

② 10 minutes has passed (including the 1 minute of forced operation).

(i) ECONOMY operation (“ECONO” button on the remote controller : ON)

The set temperature changes as shown at right and the indoor unit fan runs at speed 4.

Running time	Set temperature compensation
Running start ~ 1 hour	Set temperature -1.0
1~2 hours	Set temperature -2.0
2 hours ~	Set temperature -2.5

(8) Outline of cooling operation

(a) Operation of major functional components

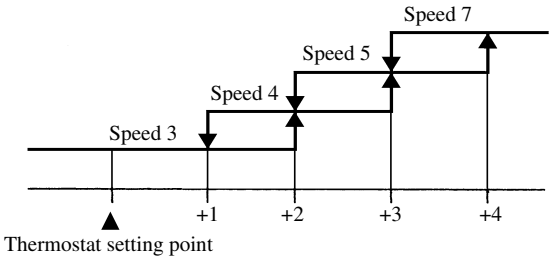
Item	When the compressor	When the compressor	When the compressor goes
			omalous stop.
			F
Flaps	ON or OFF	ON or OFF	Stop position control
Display	Lights up	Lights up	Lights up or flashes
52C	ON	ON	OFF after stop mode
Outdoor fan motor	OFF	ON	OFF
4-way valve	Depending on the stop mode	OFF	Depending on the stop mode
Electric expansion valve		Depending on the EEV control	

(b) Fan speed switching

Fan speed switching / Flow control	AUTO	HIGH	MED	LOW
Air scroll	Auto fan control	Speed 7	Speed 5	Speed 3
Swing flap		Speed 7	Speed 5	Speed 3
Swing stop		Speed 7	Speed 5	Speed 3

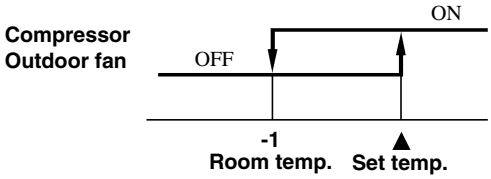
(i) Auto fan control

The indoor fan is automatically controlled in accordance with the difference between the room temperature (detected by the room temperature sensor) and the termostat setting as shown below.



(c) Thermostat operation

The compressor and outdoor fan and turned on and off as shown below according to the temperature setting.



(d) HIGH POWER operation (“HI POWER” button on the remote controller : ON)

The following operation is performed for 15 minutes without relation to the set temperature or fan speed setting.

Indoor unit fan	Speed 8 fixed
Outdoor unit fan	ON
Compressor	ON

Notes (1) Room temperature is not adjusted during the HIGH POWER operation.
(2) Protective functions will actuate with priority even during the HIGH POWER operation.

(e) ECONOMY operation (“ECONO” button on the remote controller : ON)

The set temperature changes as shown at right, and the indoor unit fan speed is set on speed 3.

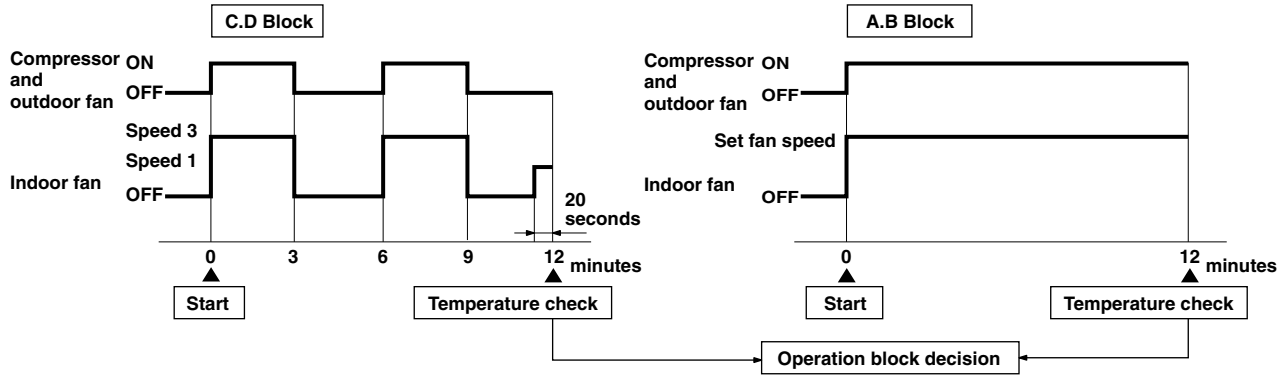
Running time	Set temperature compensation
Running start ~ 1 hour	Set temperature +0.5
1~2 hours	Set temperature +1.0
2 hours ~	Set temperature +1.5

(9) Outline of dehumidifying operation

(a) Choose the appropriate operation block area by the difference between room temperature and thermostat setting temperature as shown below.

- **Operation block area**

(b) Start up operation

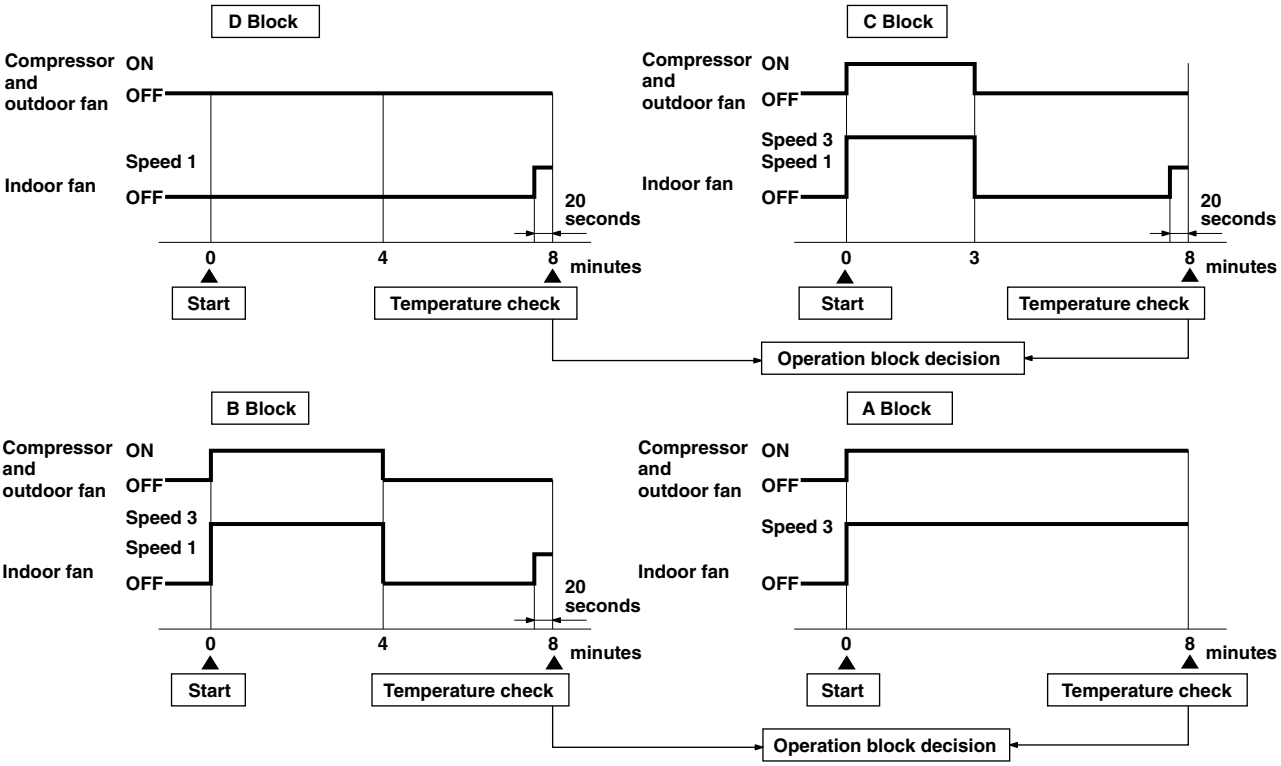


Note (1) Thermostat operation is performed in A, B Block. When compressor and indoor fan stop by thermostat operation within 12 minutes from start, temperature check is performed by operating indoor fan at speed 1 for 20 seconds before finishing 12 minutes and allowing decision of next operation block.

(c) DRY operation

After finishing start up operation described in (b) above, thermal dry operation is performed at 8 minutes intervals, according to the difference between room temperature and thermostat setting temperature as shown below.

Beside, 1 cycle of this operating time consists of 8 minutes, 7 cycle operation is performed then.



(d) ECONOMY operation (“ECONO” button on the remote controller : ON)

The set temperature changes as shown at right, and the indoor unit fan speed is set on speed 3 .

Running time	Set temperature compensation
Running start ~ 1 hour	Set temperature +0.5
1~2 hours	Set temperature +1.0
2 hours ~	Set temperature +1.5

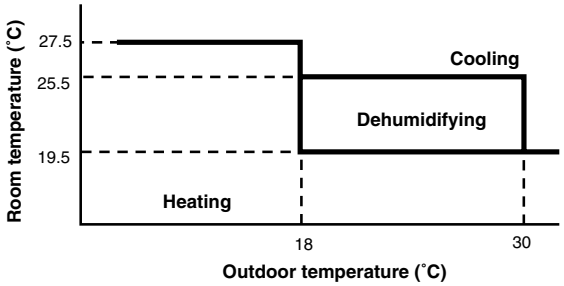
(10) Outline of automatic operation

(a) Determination of operation mode

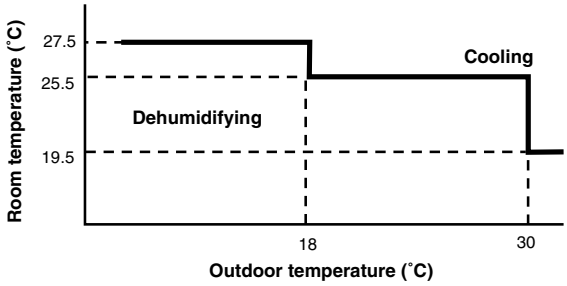
The unit checks the room temperature and the outdoor air temperature after operating the indoor and outdoor blowers for 20

in the automatic

- **Heat pump type**



- **Cooling only type**



(b) Within 30 minutes after either auto or manual operation stops, if auto operation is started, or if you switch to auto operation during manual operation, the system runs in the previous operation mode.

(c) The temperature is checked 1 time in 30 minutes after the start of operation, and if the judgment differs from the previous operation mode, the operation mode changes.

(d) Setting temperature can be adjusted within the following range. There is the relationship as shown below between the signals of the wireless remote controller and the setting temperature.

		Signals of wireless remote controller (Display)												
		–6	–5	–4	–3	–2	–1	±0	+1	+2	+3	+4	+5	+6
Setting temperature	Cooling	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31
	Dehumidifying	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31
	Heating	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32

(11) Outline of fan operation (Cooling only type only)

(a) Operation of major functional components

Fan speed switching / Functional components	High power	AUTO	HIGH	MED	LOW	ECONO
52C	OFF					
Indoor fan motor	Speed 8	Speed 7	Speed 6	Speed 5	Speed 4	Speed 3
Outdoor fan motor	OFF					
Flaps	Depend on the flap control					

(b) HIGH POWER operation (“HI POWER” button on the remote controller : ON)

The following operation is performed for 15 minutes without relation to the set temperature or fan speed setting.

Indoor unit fan	Speed 8 fixed
Outdoor unit fan	OFF
Compressor	OFF

Note (1) Protective functions will actuate with priority even during the HIGH POWER operation.

(12) Protective control function

(a) Frost prevention for indoor heat exchanger (During cooling or dehumidifying)

(i) Operating conditions

(ii) Detail of frost prevention operation

Compressor	OFF
Indoor fan	Protects the fan tap just before frost prevention control.
Outdoor fan	OFF
4-way valve	Stop mode

(iii) Reset conditions: Indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor (Th2) is higher than 8ºC.

(b) Indoor fan motor protection

When the air-conditioner is operating and the indoor fan motor is turned ON, if the indoor fan motor has operated at 300 rpm or under for more than 30 seconds, the unit enters first in the stop mode and then stops the entire system.
Timer light illuminates simultaneously and the run light flashing 6 times at each 8-second.

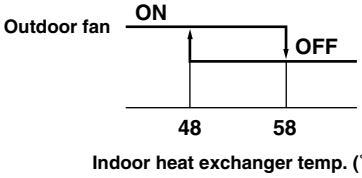
(c) Three-minute forced operation

When the compressor begins operating the thermal operation is not effective for 3 minutes, so operation continues as is in the operation mode. (After 3 minutes has passed the thermal operation is effective.)
However, stopping the compressor via a stop signal or protection control has priority.

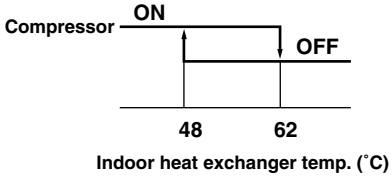
(d) High-pressure control

The indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor detection temperature controls the outdoor fan and compressor.

- **When the indoor heat exchanger temperature is ≧ 58˚C**



- **When the indoor heat exchanger temperature is ≧ 62˚C**



(e) Heating overload protective control

(i) Operating conditions: when the unit is heating with the compressor is on, and the outdoor air temperature rose beyond 17°C for 30 seconds continuously.

(ii) Detail of operation: indoor fan speed is raised forcibly by 1 step.

(iii) Reset conditions: when the outdoor air temperature drops below 16°C.

(f) Abnormality of outdoor unit

(i) Cooling operation

When the indoor heat exchanger temperature does not fall to 25°C or below for 40 minutes after 5 minutes have elapsed since the compressor operation start, the abnormality stop occurs. (The timer light flashes 2 times.)

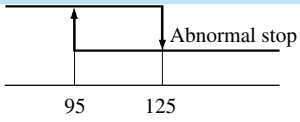
(ii) Heating operation

① The indoor heat exchanger temperature < 5°C for 5 minutes and more
The unit is stopped due to the outdoor unit abnormality excepting the defrost operation time. (The timer light flashes 2 times.)

② 5°C ≦ the indoor heat exchanger temperature < 30°C for 40 minutes and more
When the indoor heat exchanger temperature does not rise to 30°C or over for more than 40 minutes after 5 minutes have elapsed since the compressor operation start, the abnormality stop occurs. However, when the indoor fan began operation once, this function is not activated until the unit is stopped or the mode is changed. (The timer light flashes 2 times when 20 minutes have elapsed.)

(g) Compressor overheat protection

If the discharge pipe temperature (sensed by Th6) exceeds the set temperature value, the compressor stops. If the temperature is 95ºC or lower after a 3-minute delay, it starts again, but if this function is reactivated again within 60 minutes, it results in an abnormal stop.



Discharge pipe temperature (˚C)

(h) Serial signal transmission error protection

(i) Purpose: Prevents malfunction resulting from error on the indoor ↔ outdoor signals.

(ii) Detail of operation: When the indoor unit controller ↔ outdoor unit controller signals cannot be received, the compressor is stopped immediately. Simultaneously, the red LED on the printed circuit board of outdoor unit controller flashing 6 times for 0.5 second at intervals of 8 seconds. Once the operation stops, it does not start any more.

(The run light illuminates simultaneously and timer light on the indoor unit flashing 6 times at the same time.)

(i) Sensor disconnection (room temperature, indoor heat exchanger, outdoor heat exchanger, outdoor temperature, discharge pipe)

(i) Room temperature sensor

If the temperature detected by the room temperature sensor is –20ºC or lower continuously for 15 seconds or longer while operation is stopped, an error indication is displayed. (Run light: 2 time flash, Time light: ON)

(ii) Indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor

If the temperature detected by the indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor is –20ºC or lower continuously for 15 seconds or longer while operation is stopped, an error indication is displayed.

Also, if the temperature detected by the indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor is –20ºC or lower continuously for 3 minutes after heating operation has started, the indoor unit's fan speed is forcibly raised to speed 5. After this, the air-conditioner is stopped if the detected temperature remains at –20ºC continuously for 40 minutes. (Run light : 1 time flash, Timer light : ON)

(iii) Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor

If the temperature detected by the outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor is –64ºC or lower continuously for 15 seconds or longer while operation is stopped, an error indication is displayed.

Also, the air-conditioner is stopped if the temperature detected by the outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor remains at –50ºC or lower continuously for 40 minutes after heating operation has started. (Run light : keep flashing, Timer light : 2 time flash)

(iv) Outdoor air temperature sensor

If the temperature detected by the outdoor air temperature sensor is –64ºC or lower continuously for 15 seconds or longer while operation is stopped, an error indication is displayed. (Run light : keep flashing, Timer light : 1 time flash)

(v) Discharge pipe temperature sensor

After the compressor has operated for 9 minutes continuously, if there is a disconnected signal for the discharge pipe temperature sensor detected -64°C for 15 seconds, the compressor stops. After a 3-minute delay, it restarts, but if an abnormality is detected 4 times continuously, the air-conditioner is stopped fully and an error indication is displayed. (Run light : keep flashing, Timer light : 4 time flash)

2.2.5 APPLICATION DATA

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Please read these "Safety Precautions" first then accurately execute the installation work.

ON , those points are listed in the ⚠WARNING section. However, there is also a possibility of serious consequences in relationship to the points listed in the ⚠CAUTION section as well. In either case, important safety related information is indicated, so by all means, properly observe all that is mentioned.

- After completing the installation, along with confirming that no abnormalities were seen from the operation tests, please explain operating methods as well as maintenance methods to the user (customer) of this equipment, based on the owner's manual. Moreover, ask the customer to keep this sheet together with the owner's manual.

⚠ WARNING

- To disconnect the appliance from the mains supply this appliance must be connected to the mains by means of a circuit breaker or a switch (use a recognized 16A) with a contact separation of at least 3mm.
- The appliance shall be installed in accordance with national wiring regulations.
- This system should be applied to places as households, residences and the like. Application to inferior environment such as engineering shop could cause equipment malfunction.
- Please entrust installation to either the company which sold you the equipment or to a professional contractor. Defects from improper installations can be the cause of water leakage, electric shocks and fires.
- Execute the installation accurately, based on following the installation manual. Again, improper installations can result in water leakage, electric shocks and fires.
- For installation, confirm that the installation site can sufficiently support heavy weight. When strength is insufficient, injury can result from a falling of the unit.
- For electrical work, please see that a licensed electrician executes the work while following the safety standards related to electrical equipment, and local regulations as well as the installation instructions, and that only exclusive use circuits are used.
  Insufficient power source circuit capacity and defective installment execution can be the cause of electric shocks and fires.
- Accurately connect wiring using the proper cable, and insure that the external force of the cable is not conducted to the terminal connection part, through properly securing it. Improper connection or securing can result in heat generation or fire.
- Take care that wiring does not rise upward, and accurately install the lid/service panel.It's improper installation can also result heat generation or fire.
- When setting up or moving the location of the air conditioner, do not mix air etc. or anything other than the designated refrigerant (R410A) within the refrigeration cycle.
  Rupture and injury caused by abnormal high pressure can result from such mixing.
- Always use accessory parts and authorized parts for installation construction. Using parts not authorized by this company can result in water leakage, electric shock, fire and refrigerant leakage.
- Ventilate the work area when refrigerant leaks during the operation.
  Coming in contact with fire, refrigerant could generate toxic gas.
- Confirm after the foundation construction work that refrigerant does not leak.
  If coming in contact with fire of a fan heater, a stove or movable cooking stove, etc., refrigerant leaking in the room could generate toxic gas.
- In joining pipes, do not use conventional (R22) pipng flare nuts, etc. The use of conventional pipng materials may lead to the rapture of piping due to higher pressure used for the refrigerant cycle and possible personal injury.
  (Use only piping material designed specifically for R410A)

⚠ CAUTION

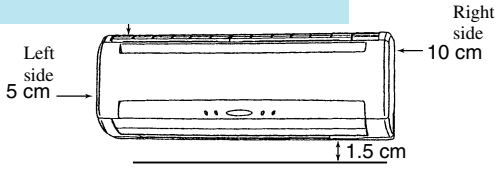
- Execute proper grounding. Do not connect the ground wire to a gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod or a telephone ground wire.
  Improper placement of ground wires can result in electric shock.
- The installation of an earth leakage breaker is necessary depending on the established location of the unit.
  Not installing an earth leakage breaker may result in electric shock.
- Do not install the unit where there is a concern about leakage of combustible gas.
  The rare even of leaked gas collecting around the unit could result in an outbreak of fire.
- For the drain pipe, follow the installation manual to insure that it allows proper drainage and thermally insulate it to prevent condensation. Inadequate plumbing can result in water leakage and water damage to interior items.
- Do not place objects near the outdoor unit or allow leaves to gather around the unit. If there are objects or leaves around the outdoor unit, small animals may enter unit and contact electrical parts resulting in break down, emission of smoke or flame.

(1) Selection of location for installation

(a) Indoor unit

(i) Where there is no obstructions to the air flow and where the cooled

(iii) A place where there will be enough space for servicing. (Where space mentioned right can be secured)



(iv) Where wiring and the piping work will be easy to conduct.

(v) The place where receiving part is not exposed to the direct rays of the sun or the strong rays of the street lighting.

(b) Outdoor unit

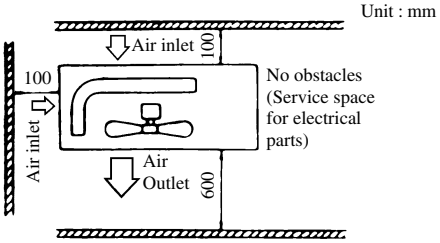
(i) A place where good air circulation can be obtained and where rain, snow or sunshine will not directly strike the unit.

(ii) A place where discharged hot air or unit's operating sound will not be a nuisance to the neighborhood.

(iii) A place where servicing space can be secured.

(iv) A place where vibration will not be enlarged.

(v) Do not install the unit near the seaside, or where there is possibility of chlorine gas generation.



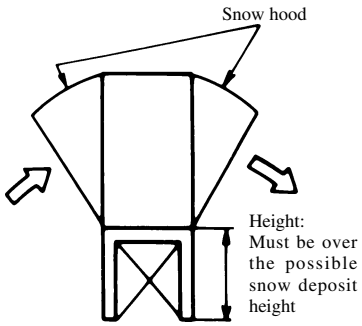
Notes (1) Blowing out port and suction port on the back side of the unit can be installed at a distance of 10cm from walls.
(In case the barrier is 1.2m or above in height, or is overhead, the sufficient space between the unit and wall shall be secured.)

(2) When the unit is installed, the space of the following dimension and above shall be secured.

(vi) In heating operation, snow deposit on the heat-exchanger of outdoor unit must be prevented for keeping the normal performance capacity. (Heat pump type only)

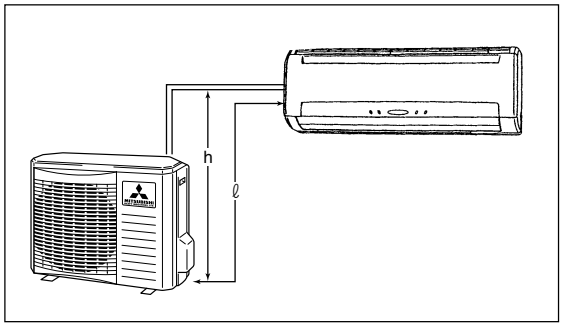
1) Snow-hood on outdoor unit as in drawing, will reduce the frequency of defrost operation.
When installing the snow hood, take care so that the air outlet of the snow hood will not face directly into the most windy direction.

2) Design the base higher than possible snow deposit.



(c) Limitations for one way piping length and vertical height difference.

Item \ Model		All models
One way piping length (ℓ)		25 m
Vertical height difference (h)	Outdoor unit is lower	15 m
	Outdoor unit is higher	15 m

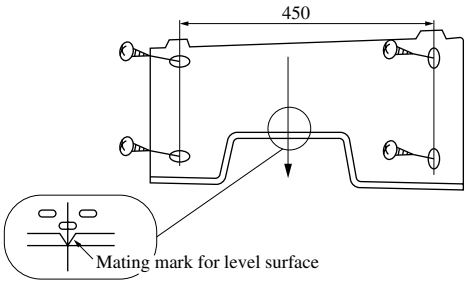


(2) Installation of indoor unit

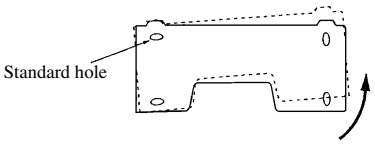
(a) Installation of installation board

(i) Fixing of installation board

checked.)



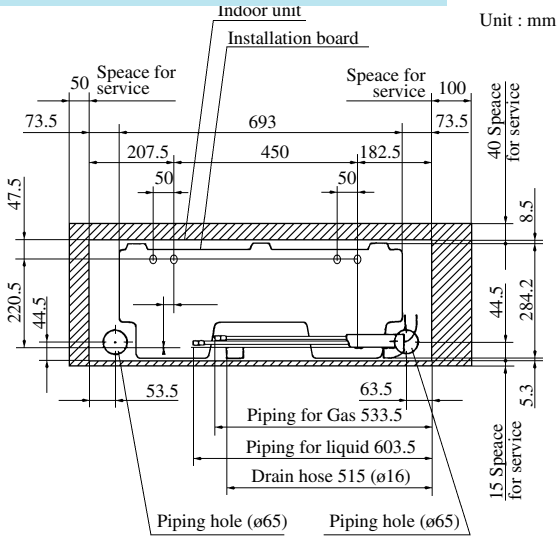
Adjustment of the installation board in the horizontal direction is to be conducted with four screws in a temporary tightened state.

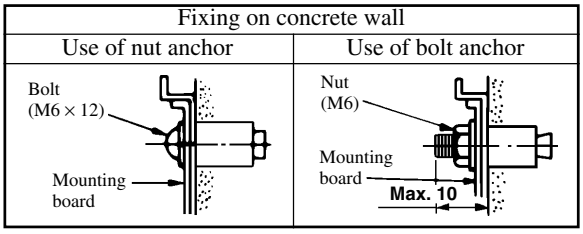


Adjust so that board will be level by turning the board with the standard hole as the center.

T VIEW)

Unit : mm

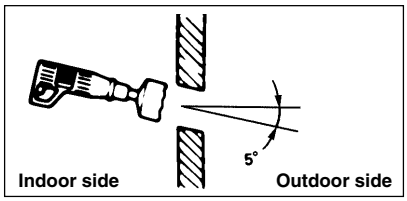




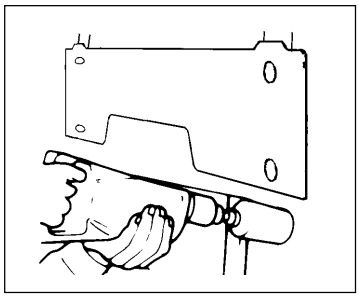
(b) Drilling of holes and fixture sleeve (Option parts)

When drilling the wall that contains a metal lath, wire lath or metal plate, be sure to use pipe hole sleeve sold separately.

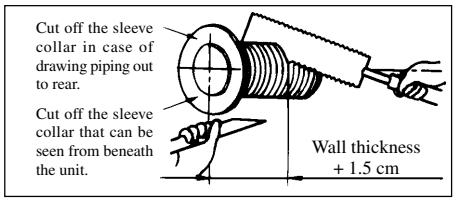
(i) Drill a hole with ø65 whole core drill



Note (1) Drill a hole with incline of 5 degree from indoor side to outdoor side.

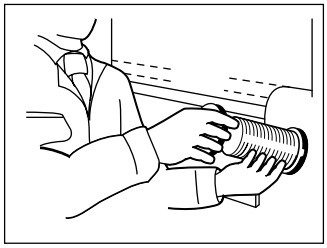


(ii) Adjusting sleeve length

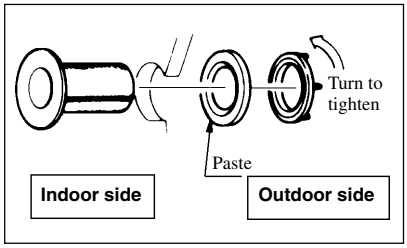


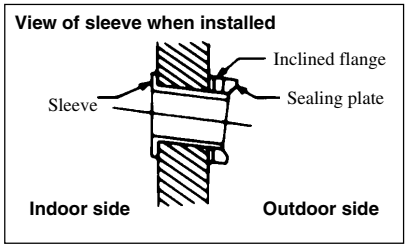
(iii) Install the sleeve

(Inserting sleeve)



(*Sleeve + *Inclined + *Sealing plate)





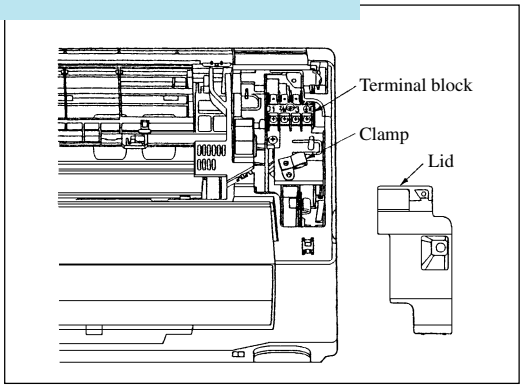
(c) Preparation of indoor unit

(i) Mounting of connecting wires

1) Remove the lid.

Use cables for interconnection wiring to avoid loosening of the wires.
CENELEC code for cables. Required field cables.
H05RNR3G1.5 (Example) or 245IEC57

H	Harmonized cable type
05	300/500 volts
R	Natural-and/or synth, rubber wire insulation
N	Polychloroprene rubber conductors insulation
R	Standed core
4or5	Number of conductors
G	One conductor of the cable is the earth conductor (yellow/ green)
1.5	Section of copper wire (mm^2)



② Connect the connection wire securely to the terminal block. If the wire is not affixed completely, contact will be poor, and it is dangerous as the terminal block may heat up and catch fire.

② Take care not to confuse the terminal numbers for indoor and outdoor connections.

③ Affix the connection wire using the wiring clamp.

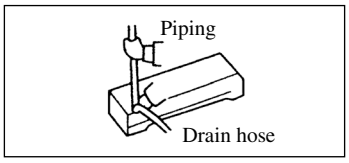
4) Fix the connecting wire by wiring clamp.

5) Attach the lid.

6) Close the air inlet panel.

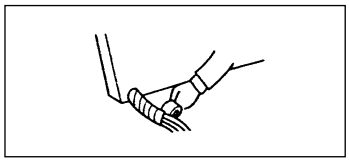
(ii) Installing the support of piping

[Shaping the piping]



- Hold the bottom of the piping and fix direction before stretching it and shaping it.

[Taping of the exterior]



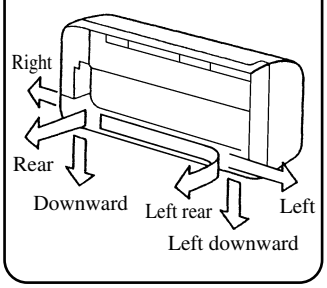
- Tape only the portion that goes through the wall. Always tape the crossover wiring with the piping.

[When the hose is extended to left and taken out from the rear center]

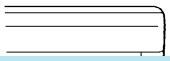
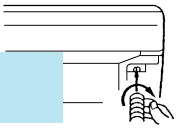
[Top View]

Left-hand-sided-piping	Right-hand-sided-piping
Piping in the left rear direction Piping in the left direction	Piping in the right rear direction Piping in the right direction

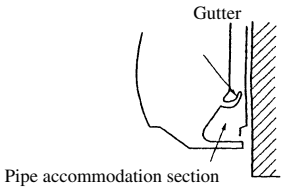
Piping is possible in the rear, left, left lear, left downward, right or downward direction.



[Drain hose changing procedures]

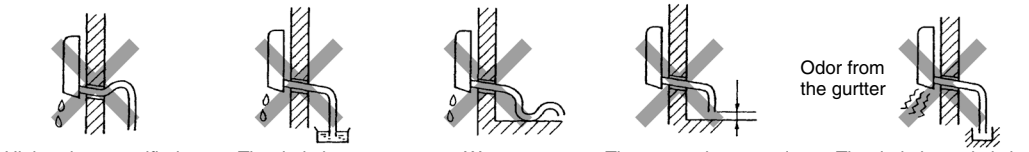
1. Remove the drain hose.	2. Remove the drain cap.	3. Insert the drain cap.	4. Connect the drain hose.
			
● Remove the drain hose, making it rotate.	● Remove it with hand or pliers.	● Insert the drain cap which was removed at proce-dure "2" securely using a hexagonal wrench, etc. Note: Be careful that if it is not inserted securely, water leakage may occur.	● Insert the drain hose securely, makingit rotate. Note: Be careful that if it is not inserted securely, water leakage may occur.

Since this air conditioner has been designed to collect dew drops on the rear surface to the drain pan, do not attach the power cord above the gutter.

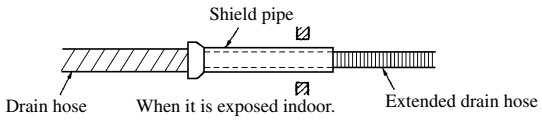


Drainage

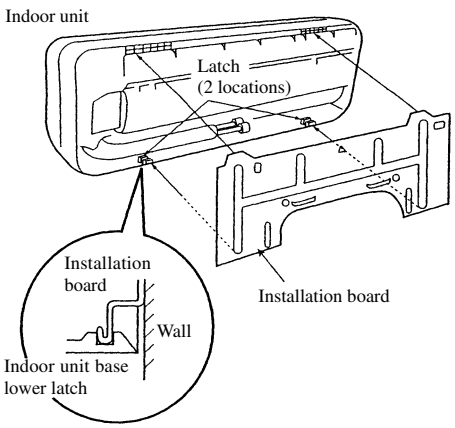
- Arrange the drain hose in a downward angle.
- Avoid the following drain piping.



- Pour water to the drain pan located under the heat exchanger, and ensure that the water is discharged outdoor.
- When the extended drain hose is indoor, always use a shield pipe (to be arranged by the user) and ensure it is thermally insulated.



(iii) Fixing of indoor unit

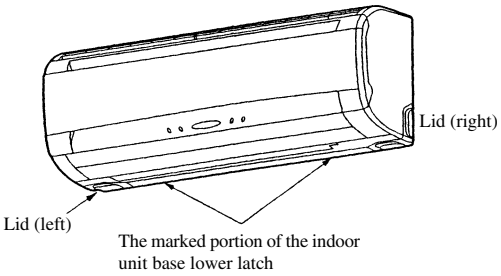


Installation Steps

① Pass the pipe through the hole in the wall, and hook the upper part of the indoor unit to the installation board.

② Gently push the lower part to secure the unit.

- How to remove the indoor unit from the installation board
  ① Remove the right and left lids.
  ② At the marked portion of the indoor unit base lower latch, pull downward with fingers.
  (both right and left hand sides)
  (The indoor unit base lower latch can be removed from the installation board)



(3) Installation of outdoor unit

(a) Installation of outdoor unit

(i) Make sure that sufficient space for installation and service is secured.

(ii) Fix the leg sections of the unit on a firm base which will not play

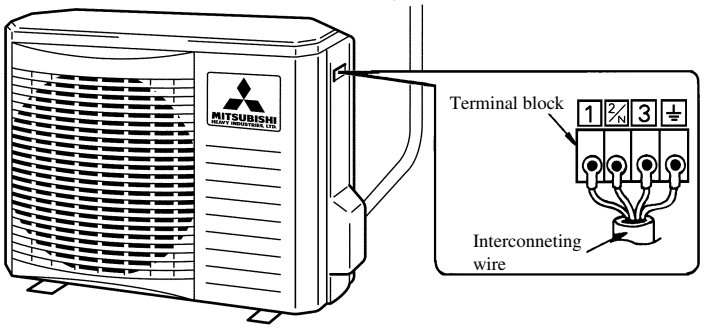
ng.

(Drain elbow should not be used where days when temperature drops below 0°C continue for several days. Draining may be disturbed by frozen water.)

(iv) When installing the unit at a higher place or where it could be toppled with strong winds, secure the unit firmly with foundation bolts, wire, etc.

(b) Connection of indoor and outdoor connecting wiring

(i) Connect the wiring according to the number of the indoor terminal block. (Mis-wiring may cause the burning damage, and make sure to connect correctly.)



1	**Brown**	For power supply, indoor outdoor
2 N	**Blue**	Connecting wiring
3	**Black**	Indoor/outdoor signal wire (Low voltage)
⏚	**Yellow/Green**	Earth wiring terminal

Notes (1) To prevent the mis-operation by noise, when the connecting wire too long for indoor and outdoor. Please hide the fixed wire in the pipe or use vinyl tape to set. Do not put wire into the unit.

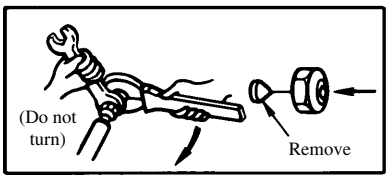
(2) Please let the anchorized personal to decide by indoor wiring code whether connect the leakage breaker or not.

(4) Refrigerant piping

(a) Preparation

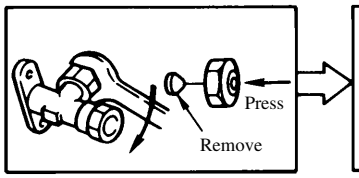
Keep the openings of the pipes covered with tapes etc. to prevent dust, sand, etc. from entering them.

Indoor unit side

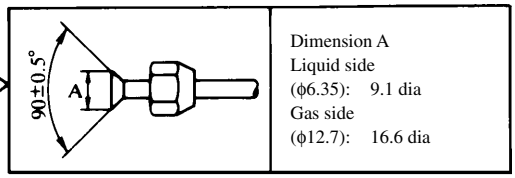


- Remove the flared nuts. (on both liquid and gas sides)

Outdoor unit side



- Remove the flared nuts. (on both liquid and gas sides)

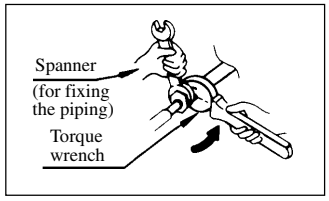


- Install the removed flared nuts to the pipes to be connected, then flare the pipes.

(b) Connection of refrigerant piping

Indoor unit side

- Connect firmly gas and liquid side pipings by Torque wrench.



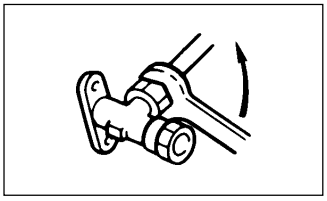
- Specified torquing value:

Liquid side (ø6.35) : 14.0~18.0N·m (1.4~1.8kgf·m)
Gas side (ø12.7) : 49.0~61.0N·m (4.9~6.1kgf·m)

- Always use a Torque wrench and back up spanner to tighten the flare nut.

Outdoor unit side

- Connect firmly gas and liquid side pipings by Torque wrench.



- Specified torquing value:

Liquid side (ø6.35) : 14.0~18.0N·m (1.4~1.8kgf·m)
Gas side (ø12.7) : 49.0~61.0N·m (4.9~6.1kgf·m)

- Use one more spanner to fix the valve.

(c) Air purge

(i) Tighten all flare nuts in the pipings both indoor and outside will so as not to cause leak.

(ii) Connect service valve, charge hose, manifold valve and vacuum pump as is illustrated below.

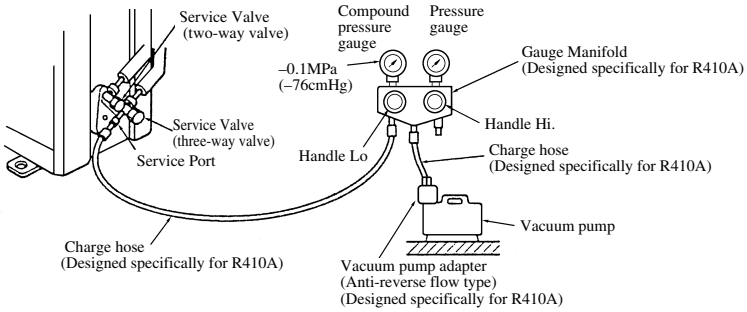
(iii) Open manifold valve handle Lo to its full width, and perform vacuum or evacuation.

Continue the vacuum or evacuation operation for 15 minutes or more and check to see that the vacuum gauge reads – 0.1

ded wrench.

(v) Detach the charge hoses.

(vi) Check for possible leakage of gas in the connection parts of both indoor and outdoor.



- Since the system uses service ports differing in diameter from those found on the conventional models, a charge hose (for R22) presently in use is not applicable.
  Please use one designed specifically for R410A
- Please use an anti-reverse flow type vacuum pump adapter so as to prevent vacuum pump oil from running back into the system.
  Oil running back into an air-conditioning system may cause the refrigerant cycle to break down.

Additional refrigerant charge

When refrigerant piping exceeds 15m conduct additional refrigerant charge by weight after refrigerant piping completion.
Additional charge amount per meter = 20g/m

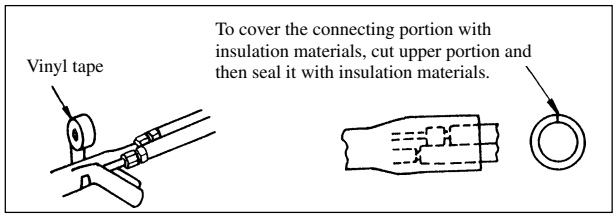
[Example]

How much amount of additional charge for 25m piping?

(25 – 15)m × 20g/m = 200g | 200g for additional charge

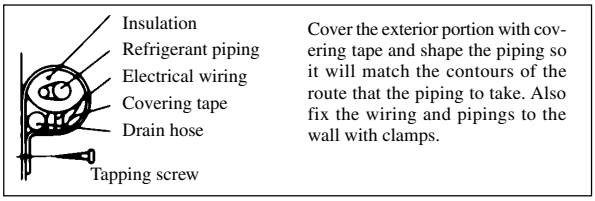
(d) Insulation of connecting portion

(i) Cover the connecting portion of the refrigerant piping with the pipe cover and seal them.
If neglecting to do so, moisture occurs on the piping and water will drip out.



(ii) Finishing and fixing

1) Tie up the piping with wrapping tape, and shape it so that it conforms to which the pipe is attached.
2) Fix them with clamps as right figure.



(5) Test run

(a) Conduct trial run after confirming that there is no gas leaks.

(b) When conducting trial run set the remote controller thermostat to continuous operation position. However when the power source is cut off or when the unit's operation switch is turned off or was turned to fan operation position, the unit will not go into operation in order to protect the compressor.

(c) Insert in electric plug into the electric outlet and make sure that it is not loose.

1) When there is something wrong with the electric outlet and if the insertion of the electric plug is insufficient, there may occur a burn out.
2) It is very important to be careful of above when plugging in the unit to an already furnished electrical outlet.

(d) Explain to the customer on the correct usage of the air conditioner in simple layman's terms.

(e) Make sure that drain flows properly.

(f) Standard operation data

(220/230/240V)

			S1
High pressure (MPa)	Cooling	–	–
	Heating	2.6~2.8	2.8~3.0
Low pressure (MPa)	Cooling	0.8~1.0	0.8~1.0
	Heating	–	–
Temp. difference between return air and supply air (°C)	Cooling	14~16	15~17
	Heating	20~22	23~25
Running current (A)	Cooling	6.5/6.3/6.0	7.3/7.1/6.8
	Heating	6.5/6.2/6.0	7.4/7.1/6.8

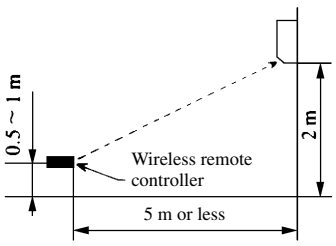
Item \ Model		SRK50CE-S1	SRK56CE-S1
Low pressure (MPa)	Cooling	0.8~1.0	0.8~1.0
Temp. difference between return air and supply air (°C)	Cooling	14~16	15~17
Running current (A)	Cooling	6.5/6.3/6.0	7.3/7.1/6.8

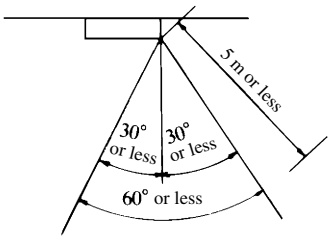
Note (1) The data are measured at following conditions
Ambient air temperature
Indoor side: Cooling ... 27°C DB, 19°C WB, Heating ... 20°C DB
Outdoor side: Cooling ... 35°C DB, 24°C WB, Heating ... 7°C DB, 6°C WB

(6) Precautions for wireless remote controller installation and operation

(a) Wireless remote controller covers the following distances:

(i) When operating facing the air conditioner:

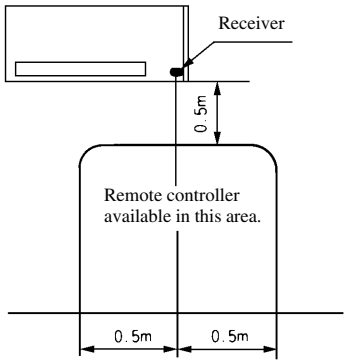




Notes (1) The remote controller is correctly facing the sensing element of the air conditioner when being manipulated.
(2) The typical coverage is indicated (in the left illustration). It may be more or less depending on the installation.
(3) The coverage may be less or even nil. If the sensing element is exposed to strong light, such as direct sunlight, illumination, etc., or dust is deposited on it or it is used behind a curtain, etc.

(ii) When manipulating the remote controller mounted on a wall:

Make sure that it works normally (i.e., transmission/reception signal is audible) before mounting.



2.2.6 MAINTENANCE DATA

(1) Troubleshooting procedures for electrical equipment

(a) Cautions

① When working on indoor units, let the unit sit for about 1 minute after turning off the power before you begin work. When working on an outdoor unit, there may be an electrical charge applied to the main circuit (electrolytic condenser), so begin work only after discharging this electrical charge (to DC 10 V or lower).

② When taking out printed circuit boards, be sure to do so without exerting force on the circuit boards or package components.

③ When disconnecting and connecting connectors, take hold of the connector housing and do not pull on the lead wires.

(b) Items to check before troubleshooting

① Have you thoroughly investigated the details of the trouble which the customer is complaining about?

② Is the air conditioner running? Is it displaying any self-diagnosis information?

③ Is a power supply with the correct voltage connected?

④ Are the control lines connecting the indoor and outdoor units wired correctly and connected securely?

⑤ Is the outdoor unit's refrigerant service valve open?

(c) Troubleshooting procedure (If the air conditioner does not run at all)

If the air conditioner does not run at all, diagnose the trouble using the following troubleshooting procedure. If the air conditioner is running but breaks down, proceed to troubleshooting step (d).

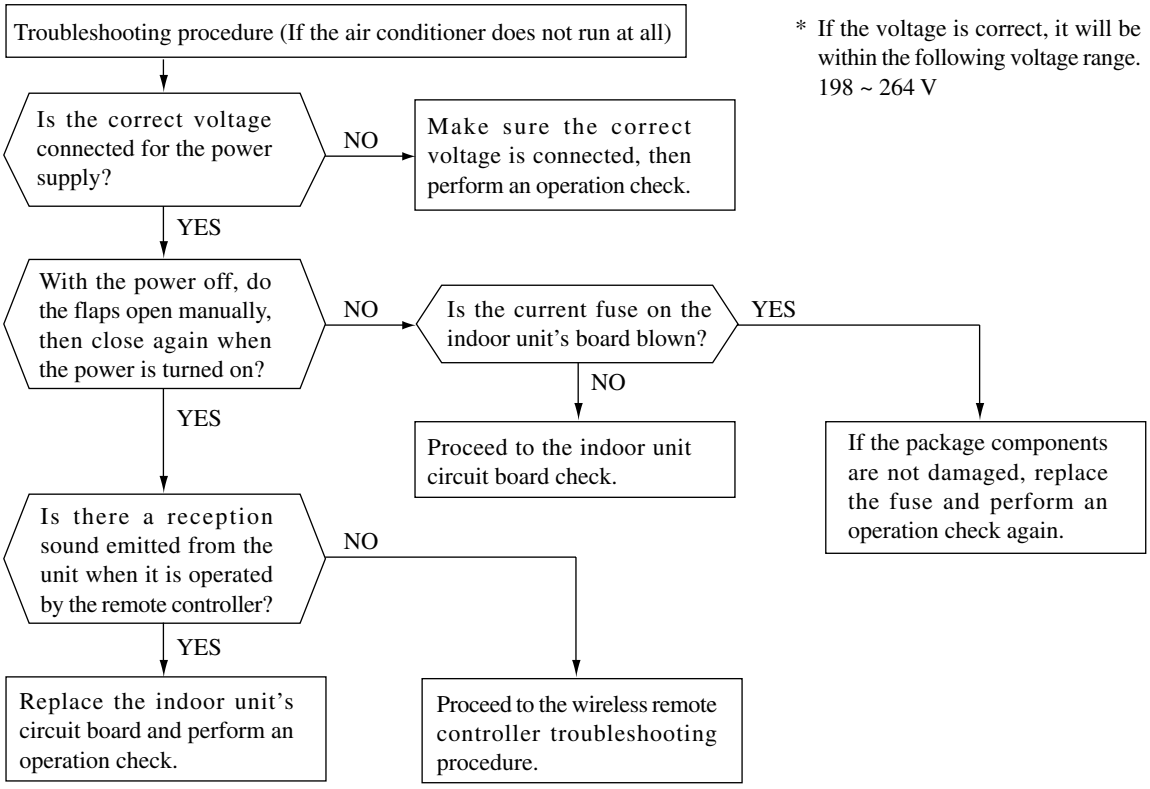
Important When all the following conditions are met, we say that the air conditioner will not run at all.

① The Run light does not light up.

② The flaps do not open.

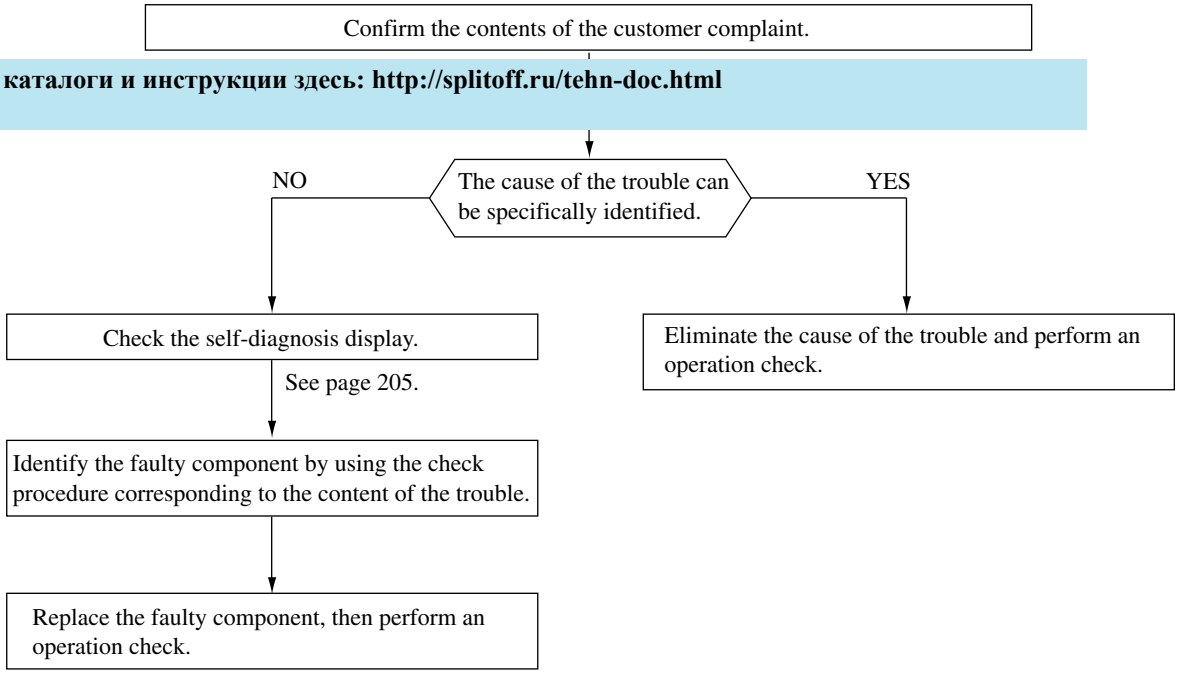
③ The indoor unit fan motors do not run.

④ The self-diagnosis display does not function.



* If the voltage is correct, it will be within the following voltage range.
198 ~ 264 V

(d) Troubleshooting procedure (If the air conditioner runs)



Note (1) Even in cases where only intermittent stop data are generated, the air conditioning system is normal. However, if the same protective operation recurs repeatedly (3 or more times), it will lead to customer complaints. Judge the conditions in comparison with the contents of the complaints.

(e) Self-diagnosis table

When this air conditioner performs an emergency stop, the reason why the emergency stop occurred is displayed by the flashing of display lights. If the air conditioner is operated using the remote controller 3 minutes or more after the emergency stop, the trouble

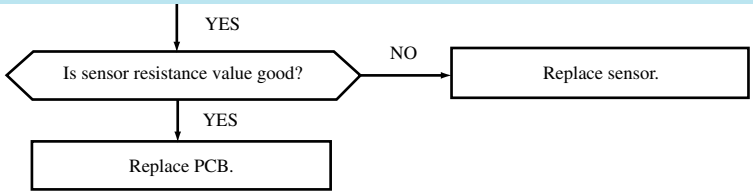
Indoor unit display panel		Outdoor unit LED	Description of trouble	Cause	Display (flashing) condition
Run light	Timer light				
ON	6 time flash	6 time flash	Error of signal transmission	• Defective power supply, Broken signal wire, defective in/outdoor unit boards	When there is no signal between the indoor unit's board and outdoor unit's board for 10 seconds or longer (when the power is turned on), or when there is no signal for 1 minute 50 seconds or longer (during operation)(the compressor is stopped).
1 time flash	ON	OFF	Heat exchanger sensor error	• Broken heat exchanger sensor wire, poor connector connection	When a heat exchanger sensor wire disconnection is detected while operation is stopped. (If a temperature of –20ºC or lower is detected for 3 minutes, it is judged that the wire is disconnected.) (Not displayed during operation.)
2 time flash	ON	OFF	Room temperature sensor error	• Broken room temperature sensor wire, poor connector connection	When a room temperature sensor wire disconnection is detected while operation is stopped. (If a temperature of –20ºC or lower is detected for 15 seconds, it is judged that the wire is disconnected.) (Not displayed during operation.)
6 time flash	ON	OFF	Indoor fan motor error	• Defective fan motor, poor connector connection	When conditions for turning the indoor unit's fan motor on exist during air conditioner operation, an indoor unit fan motor speed of 300 rpm or lower is measured for 30 seconds or longer. (The air conditioner stops.)
ON	5 time flash	5 time flash	Over heat of compressor	• Gas shortage, defective discharge pipe sensor, closed service valve	When the value of the discharge pipe sensor exceeds the set value. (The air conditioner stops.)
Keeps flashing	2 time flash	OFF	Outdoor heat exchanger sensor error	• Broken heat exchanger sensor wire, poor connector connection	When a sensor wire disconnection is detected while operation is stopped. (If a temperature of –64ºC or lower is detected for 15 seconds, it is judged that the wire is disconnected.) (Not displayed during operation.)
Keeps flashing	1 time flash	OFF	Outdoor air temperature sensor error	• Broken outdoor air temp. sensor wire, poor connector connection	When an outdoor air temperature sensor wire disconnection is detected while operation is stopped. (If a temperature of –64ºC or lower is detected for 15 seconds, it is judged that the wire is disconnected.) (Not displayed during operation.)
Keeps flashing	4 time flash	OFF	Discharge pipe sensor error	• Broken discharge pipe sensor wire, poor connector connection	After the compressor has operated for 9 minutes continuously, if there is a disconnected signal for the discharge pipe temperature sensor detected -64°C for 15 seconds.
ON	2 time flash	OFF	Abnormality of outdoor unit	• Broken compressor wire • Broken discharge pipe sensor wire, poor connector connection • Compressor blockage	Cooling operation When the indoor heat exchanger temperature does not fall to 25°C or below for 40 minutes after 5 minutes have elapsed since the compressor operation start. Heating operation ① The indoor heat exchanger temperature < 5°C for 5 minutes and more ② 5°C ≦ the indoor heat exchanger temperature < 30°C for 40 minutes and more

Notes (1) The air conditioner cannot be restarted using the remote controller for 3 minutes after operation stops.
(2) The outdoor unit's power supply is cut off 3 minutes after an abnormal stop, so the outdoor unit LED cannot be checked (52C OFF).

(f) Inspection procedures corresponding to detail of trouble

Sensor error

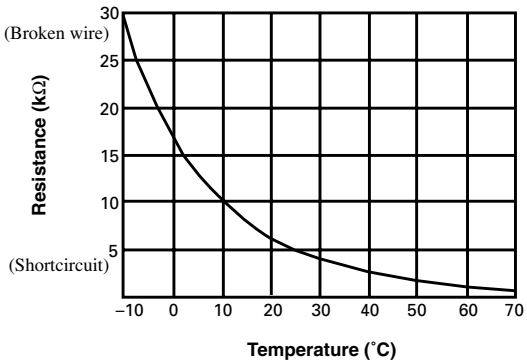
[Broken sensor wire, connector poor connection]



◆ **Discharge pipe sensor temperature characteristics**

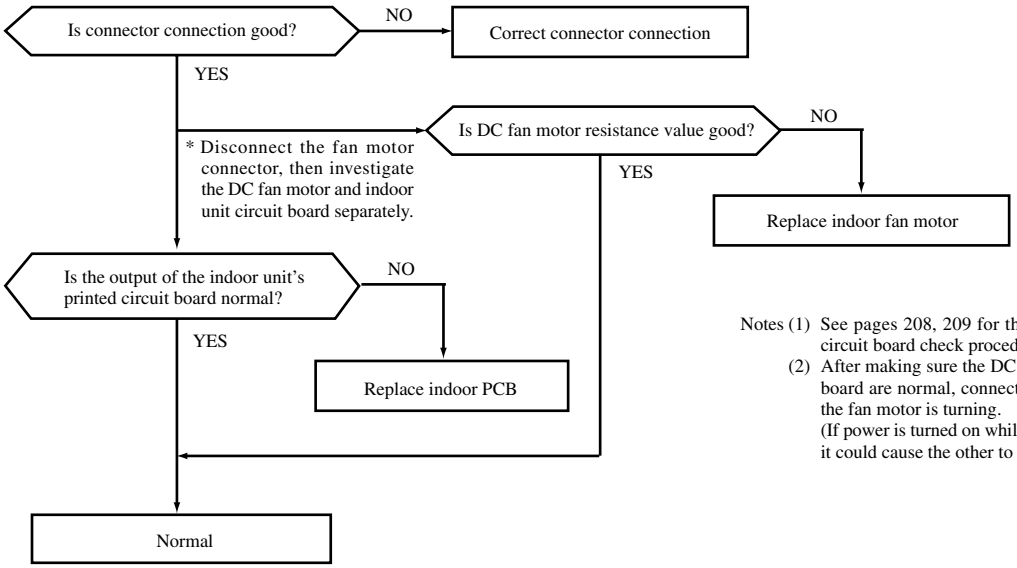
Temperature (˚C)	Resistance (kΩ)	Temperature (˚C)	Resistance (kΩ)
0	164	70	8.7
5	127	75	7.3
10	99	80	6.2
15	78	85	5.3
20	62	90	4.5
25	50	95	3.9
30	40	100	3.3
35	32	105	2.9
40	26	110	2.5
45	21	115	2.2
50	17	120	1.9
55	14	125	1.6
60	12	130	1.4
65	10	135	1.3

◆ **Sensor temperature characteristics (Room temp., indoor unit heat exchanger temp., outdoor unit heat exchanger temp., outdoor air temp.)**



Indoor fan motor error

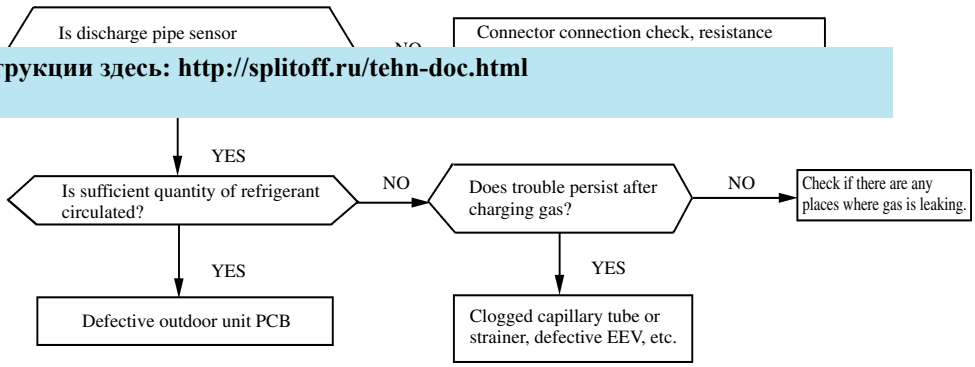
[Defective fan motor, connector poor connection, defective PCB]



Notes (1) See pages 208, 209 for the DC fan motor and indoor unit circuit board check procedure.
(2) After making sure the DC fan motor and indoor unit circuit board are normal, connect the connectors and confirm that the fan motor is turning.
(If power is turned on while one or the other is broken down, it could cause the other to break down also.)

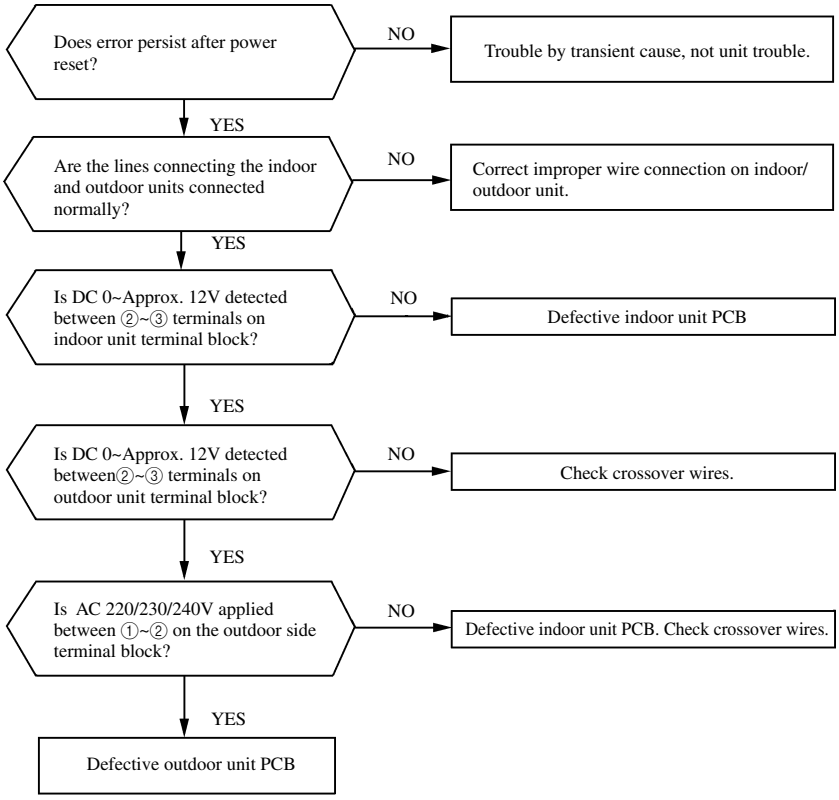
Over heat of compressor

[Gas shortage, defective discharge pipe sensor]



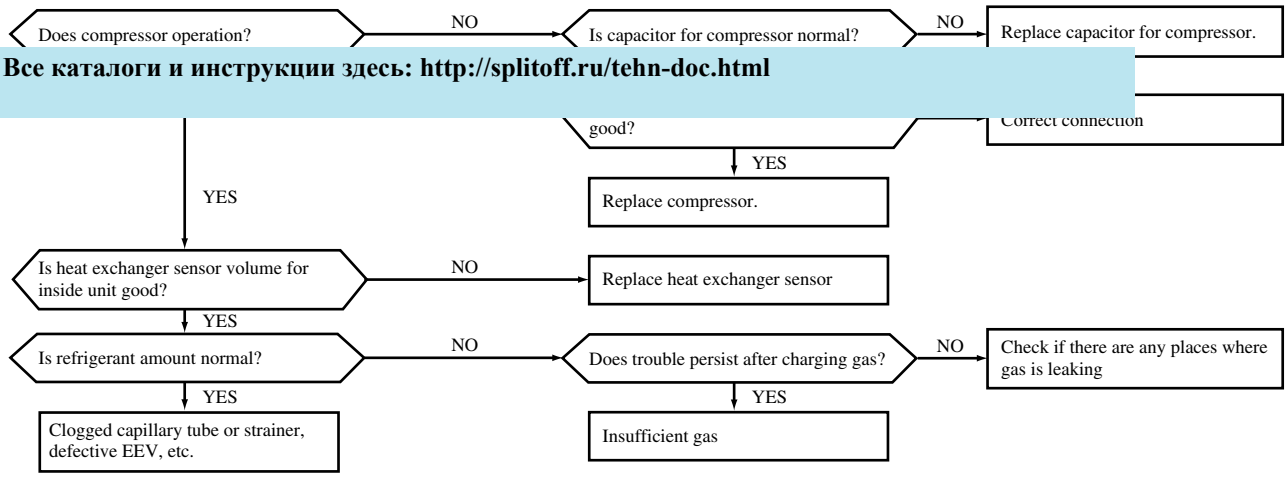
Error of signal transmission

[Wiring error including power cable, defective indoor/ outdoor unit PCB]



Abnormality of outdoor unit

[Compressor malfunction of insufficient gas (refrigerant)]



(g) Phenomenon observed after shortcircuit, wire breakage on sensor.

(i) Indoor unit

Sensor	Operation mode	Phenomenon	
		Shortcircuit	Broken wire
Room temperature sensor	Cooling	Release of continuous compressor operation command	Continuous compressor operation command is not released.
	Heating	Continuous compressor operation command is not released.	Release of continuous compressor operation command
Heat exchanger sensor	Cooling	Compressor stop. (Abnormality of outdoor unit)	Continuous compressor operation command is not released. (Anti-frosting)
	Heating	High pressure control mode	Hot keep (Indoor fan stop)

(ii) Outdoor unit

Sensor	Operation mode	Phenomenon	
		Shortcircuit	Broken wire
Heat exchanger sensor	Cooling	System can be operated normally.	System can be operated normally.
	Heating	Defrosting is not performed.	Defrosting is performed for 10 minutes at approx. 35 minutes.
Outdoor air temperature sensor	Cooling	System can be operated normally.	System can be operated normally.
	Heating	Defrosting is not operated.	Defrosting is performed for 10 minutes at approx. 35 minutes.
Discharge pipe sensor	All modes	Compressor overload protection is disabled. (Can be operated.)	Compressor stop

(h) Checking the indoor electrical equipment

(i) Indoor unit circuit board check procedure

1) Turn off the power.
2) Disconnect the wires connected between the indoor and outdoor units at the terminal block. (They can be disconnected at either the indoor or outdoor unit's terminal block.)
3) Turn on the power.
4) The voltage between ① and ② on the terminal block should not be AC 220-240 V.
5) Press the unit's ON/OFF button for 5 seconds or longer (a beep which indicates receiving will be emitted). Then check the following items.
   ① The indoor unit's fan motor runs.
   ② The run light lights up.
6) There should be voltage (AC 220-240 V) between terminals ① and ② on the terminal block.
   With the analog tester set in the DC 30 V range, if the voltage at ② (+) and ③ (-) is measured, the needle oscillates at about 12V.
7) It is possible to run and stop the unit using the remote controller. (The hot keep function is activated.)
   If operation is as described above, the indoor unit's board is normal.

Notes (1) Since the communication timing signal is transmitted only when the 52C is turned ON, check it under the operating condition.
(2) Check the voltage on the terminal block.
- Power supply : Between ①-② (AC 220-240V)
- Signal : Between ②-③ (Changing between DC 0-Approx. 12V)

(ii) Indoor unit fan motor check procedure

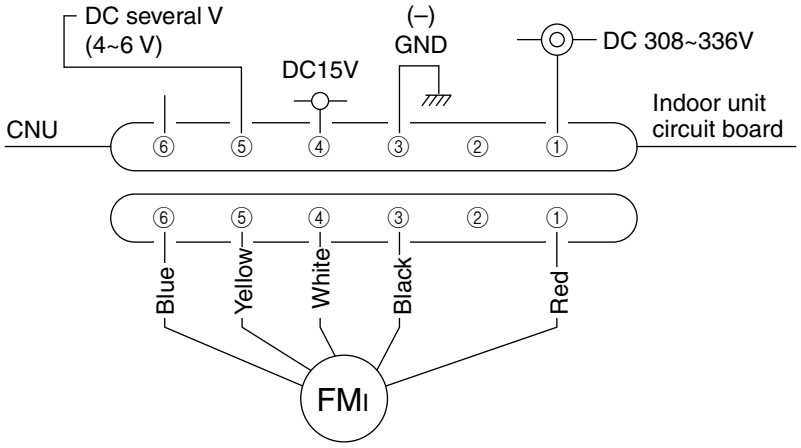
This is a diagnostic procedure for determining if the indoor unit's fan motor or the circuit board is broken down.

1) Indoor unit printed circuit board output check

a) Turn off the power.

er the voltages in the following figure are output for approximately 30 seconds, it means that the circuit board is normal and the fan motor is broken down.

If the voltages in the following figure are not output at connector pins No. ①, ④ and ⑤, the indoor unit's circuit board has failed and the fan motor is normal.

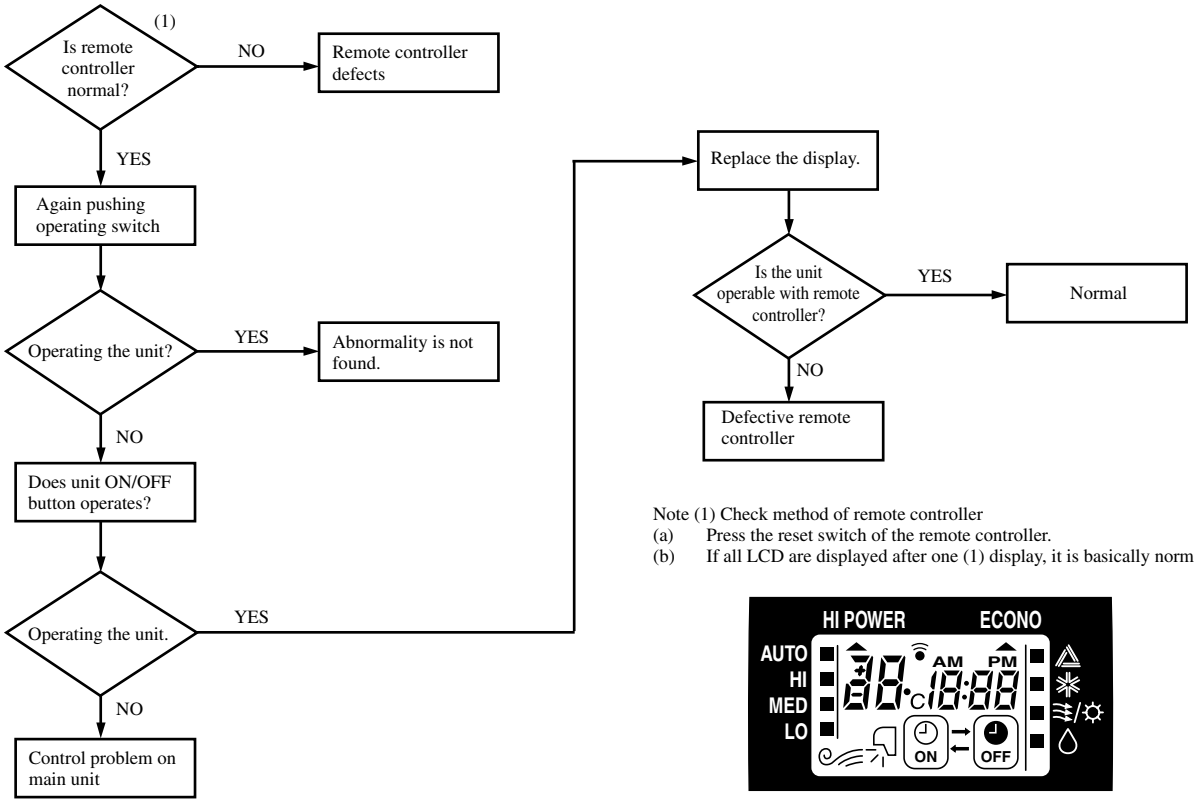


2) DC Fan motor resistance check

Measuring Point	Resistance when Normal
① – ③ (Red – Black)	25 MΩ or higher
④ – ③ (White – Black)	30 kΩ or higher

Notes (1) Remove the fan motor and measure it without power connected to it.
(2) If the measured value is below the value when the motor is normal, it means that the fan motor is faulty.

(i) How to make sure of remote controller



Note (1) Check method of remote controller
(a) Press the reset switch of the remote controller.
(b) If all LCD are displayed after one (1) display, it is basically normal.

(2) Servicing

(a) Evacuation

The evacuation is an procedure to purge impurities.....noncondensable gas, air, moisture from the refrigerant equipment by using

n the refrigerant

equipment with freeze, causing what is called water clogging.

- Evacuation procedure

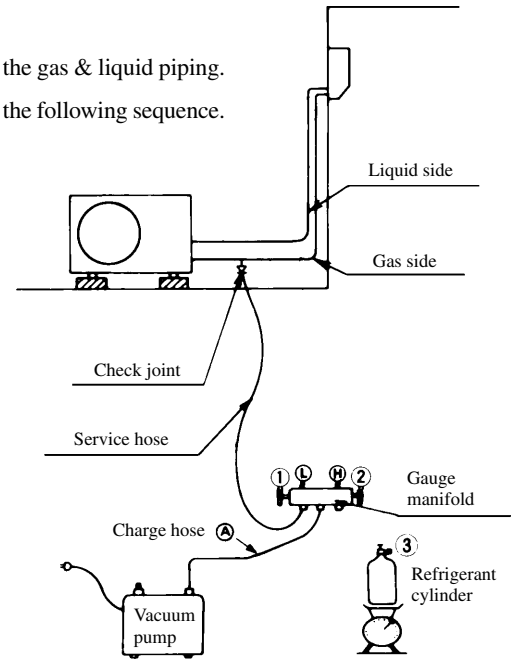
(i) Check to ensure that there is no internal pressure in the unit. If there is an internal pressure, it should be relieved through the check joint.

(ii) Connect the service hoses of the gauge manifold to the check joint of the gas & liquid piping.

(iii) Connect a vacuum pump to the charge hose Ⓐ. Repeat evacuation in the following sequence.

Start the vacuum pump.
↓
Compound pressure gauge indicates –0.1 MPa (–76 cmHg)
↓
Operate the vacuum pump for more than 15 minutes after –0.1 MPa (–76 cmHg) is indicated.
↓
Close low pressure valve ① of gauge manifold.
↓
Stop the vacuum pump.

Notes (1) Do not use the refrigerant pressure to expel air.
(2) Do not use the compressor for evacuation.
(3) Do not operate the compressor in the vacuum condition.



(b) Refrigerant charge

(i) Discharge refrigerant entirely from the unit and evacuate the unit.
Note: Addition of refrigerant without evacuation is unreasonable, because it will result in low charge or overcharge.

(ii) Keep the gauge manifold and connect a refrigerant cylinder to the unit.

(iii) Record the weight of the refrigerant cylinder on the balance. This is necessary for making sure of the charged refrigerant amount.

(iv) Purge air from the charge hose Ⓐ
Firstly loose the connecting portion of the charge hose Ⓐ at the gauge manihold side and open the valve ③ for a few seconds, and then immediately retighten it after observing that gas is blow out from the loosened portion.

(v) Open the valve ① and ③ after discharging air from the charge hose Ⓐ, then the liquid refrigerant begins flowing from the cylinder into the unit. Be sure to erect the refrigerant cylinder upright to let liquid refrigerant flow into the unit.

(vi) When refrigerant has been charged into the system to some extent, refrigerant flow becomes stagnant, when that happens, start the compressor in cooling cycle until the unit is filled with refrigerant to the specified weight.

(vii) Making sure of the refrigerant amount, close the valve ③

(viii) Disconnect the charge hose from the unit. Cover the valve ports of the refrigerant piping with caps and tighten them securely.

(ix) Check for gas leakage applying a gas leak detector along the piping line.

(x) Start the air conditioner and make sure of its operating condition.....high side and low side pressures and temperature difference between return air and supply air.

2.2.7 REFRIGERANT PIPING INSTALLATION/SERVICING MANUAL FOR AIR CONDITIONERS USING R410A

This is same as chapter 1.1.7 Refer to page 55.

CONTENTS

2.3.1 GENERAL INFORMATION

(1) Specific features

The “MITSUBISHI HEAVY INDUSTRIES, LTD.” room air-conditioner: SRK series are of split and wall mounted type and the unit

m air cooling or heating equipment with operation control switch and the outdoor unit is composed of condensing unit with compressor.

(a) Remote control flap & louver

The flap & louver can be automatically controlled by operating wireless remote control.

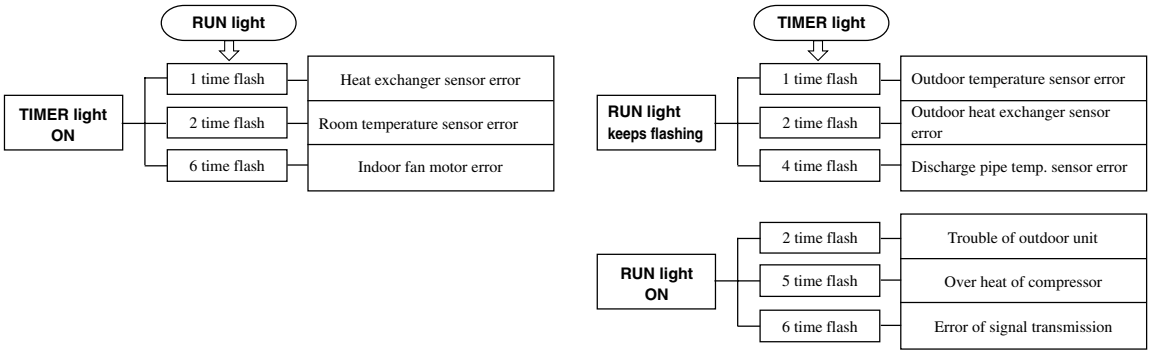
- Flap swing : The flaps swing up and down successively.
- Louver swing : The louvers swing left and right successively.
- Multi-directional Air Flow (up/down air scroll and left/right air scroll) : Activating both up/down air swing and left/right air swing at the same time results in a multi-directional air flow.
- Memory flap : Once the flap & louver position is set, the unit memorizes the position and continues to operate at the same position from the next time.

(b) Automatic operation

When the remote control switch is set on “auto( )”, it will either automatically decide operation mode such as cooling, heating and thermal dry, or operate in the operation mode before it has been turned to automatic control.

(c) Self diagnosis function

- We are constantly trying to do better service to our customers by installing such judges that show abnormality of operation as follows.



(2) How to read the model name

Example : SR K 63 H E - S1

- S1 — R410A models
- E — Series No.
- H — Heat pump type
- 63 — Product capacity
- K — Wall mounted type
- SR — Split type room air-conditioner

2.3.2 SELECTION DATA

(1) Specifications

Model SRK63HE-S1 (Indoor unit)

(220/230/240V)

Item						
					S1	
Cooling capacity(1)				W	6300	
Heating capacity(1)				W	6700	
Power source					1 Phase, 220-240V, 50Hz	
Operation data(1) (2)	Cooling input			kW	2.19	
	Running current (Cooling)			A	10.9/10.5/10.0	
	Heating input			kW	1.85	
	Running current (Heating)			A	9.2/8.8/8.5	
	Inrush current			A	53	
	COP				Cooling: 2.88 Heating: 3.62	
	Noise level	Cooling	Sound level	dB	Hi 44, Me 40, Lo 37	49
			Power level		59	65
		Heating	Sound level		Hi 45, Me 41, Lo 37	49
			Power level		60	65
Exterior dimensions Height × Width × Depth				mm	318 × 1098 × 248	640 × 850 × 290
Color					Yellowish white	Stucco white
Net weight				kg	15	47
Refrigerant equipment Compressor type & Q'ty					–	RM-B5125MNE5 (Rotary type) × 1
Motor				kW	–	1.9
Starting method					–	Line starting
Heat exchanger					Slit fins & inner grooved tubing	Straight fin & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control					Capillary tubes + Electric expansion valve	
Refrigerant(3)				kg	R410A 1.5 (Pre-Charged up to the piping length of 15m)	
Refrigerant oil				ℓ	0.7 (MA68)	
Deice control					Microcomputer control	
Air handling equipment Fan type & Q'ty					Tangential fan × 1	Propeller fan × 1
Motor				W	46	43
Air flow (at High)			(Cooling)	CMM	18	42
			(Heating)		20.5	42
Air filter, Q'ty					Polypropylene net (washable) × 2	–
Shock & vibration absorber					–	Cushion rubber (for compressor)
Electric heater					–	–
Operation control Operation switch					Wireless-Remote control	–
Room temperature control					Microcomputer thermostat	–
Pilot lamp					RUN (Green), TIMER (Yellow), HI POWER (Green), ECONO (Orange)	
Safety equipment					Compressor: overheat protection, Heating overload protection (High pressure control), Frost protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection	
Refrigerant piping	O.D			mm (in)	Liquid line: ϕ6.35 (1/4″) Gas line: ϕ12.7 (1/2″)	
	Connecting method				Flare connecting	
	Attached length of piping				Liquid line: 0.70m Gas line: 0.63m	–
	Insulation				Necessary (Both sides)	
Drain hose					Connectable	
Power source supply					Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Connection wiring	Size × Core number				1.5 mm² × 4 cores (Including earth cable)	
	Connecting method				Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Accessories (included)					Mounting kit, Clean filter (Natural enzyme filter × 1, Photocatalytic washable deodorizing filter × 1)	
Optional parts					Wired-Remote control	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	Standards
Cooling	27ºC	19ºC	35ºC	24ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612
Heating	20ºC	–	7ºC	6ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612

The piping length is 7.5m.

(2) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively.

(3) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 15 m connecting piping.
(Purging is not required even in the short piping.)
If the piping length is longer, when it is 15 to 25m, add 20g refrigerant per meter.

Model SRK71HE-S1 (Indoor unit)
SRC71HE-S1 (Outdoor unit)

(220/230/240V)

Item				Model	SRK71HE-S1	SRC71HE-S1
Cooling capacity[1]				W	7100	
Operation data[1] [2]	Cooling input			kW	2.21	
	Running current (Cooling)			A	11.0/10.6/10.1	
	Heating input			kW	2.07	
	Running current (Heating)			A	10.3/9.9/9.5	
	Inrush current			A	49	
	COP				Cooling: 3.21 Heating: 3.62	
	Noise level	Cooling	Sound level	dB	Hi 45,Me 41,Lo 38	54
			Power level		59	69
		Heating	Sound level		Hi 46, Me 41, Lo 38	55
			Power level		60	70
Exterior dimensions Height × Width × Depth				mm	318 × 1098 × 248	750 × 880 × 340
Color					Yellowish white	Stucco white
Net weight				kg	15	68
Refrigerant equipment Compressor type & Q'ty					–	5JS270DAA01
Motor				kW	–	1.8
Starting method					–	Line starting
Heat exchanger					Slit fins & inner grooved tubing	Straight fin & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control					Capillary tubes + Electric expansion valve	
Refrigerant[3]				kg	R410A 2.0 (Pre-charged up to the piping length of 15m)	
Refrigerant oil				ℓ	1.13 (RB68A or Freol Alpha 68M)	
Deice control					Microcomputer control	
Air handling equipment Fan type & Q'ty					Tangential fan × 1	Propeller fan × 1
Motor				W	46	85
Air flow (at High)			(Cooling)	CMM	19	60
			(Heating)		21	60
Air filter, Q'ty					Polypropylene net (washable) × 2	–
Shock & vibration absorber					–	Cushion rubber (for compressor)
Electric heater					–	–
Operation control Operation switch					Wireless-Remote control	–
Room temperature control					Microcomputer thermostat	–
Pilot lamp					RUN (Green), TIMER (Yellow), HI POWER (Green), ECONO (Orange)	
Safety equipment					Compressor: overheat protection, Heating overload protection (High pressure control), Frost protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection	
Refrigerant piping	O.D			mm (in)	Liquid line: ϕ6.35 (1/4″) Gas line: ϕ15.88 (5/8″)	
	Connecting method				Flare connecting	
	Attached length of piping				Liquid line: 0.70m Gas line : 0.63m	–
	Insulation				Necessary (Both sides)	
Drain hose					Connectable	
Power source supply					Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Connection wiring	Size × Core number				1.5 mm² × 4 cores (Including earth cable)	
	Connecting method				Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Accessories (included)					Mounting kit, Clean filter (Natural enzyme filter × 1, Photocatalytic washable deodorizing filter × 1)	
Optional parts					Wired-Remote control	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	Standards
Cooling	27ºC	19ºC	35ºC	24ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612
Heating	20ºC	–	7ºC	6ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612

The piping length is 7.5m.

(2) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively.

(3) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 15 m connecting piping.
(Purging is not required even in the short piping.)
If the piping length is longer, when it is 15 to 25m, add 25g refrigerant per meter.

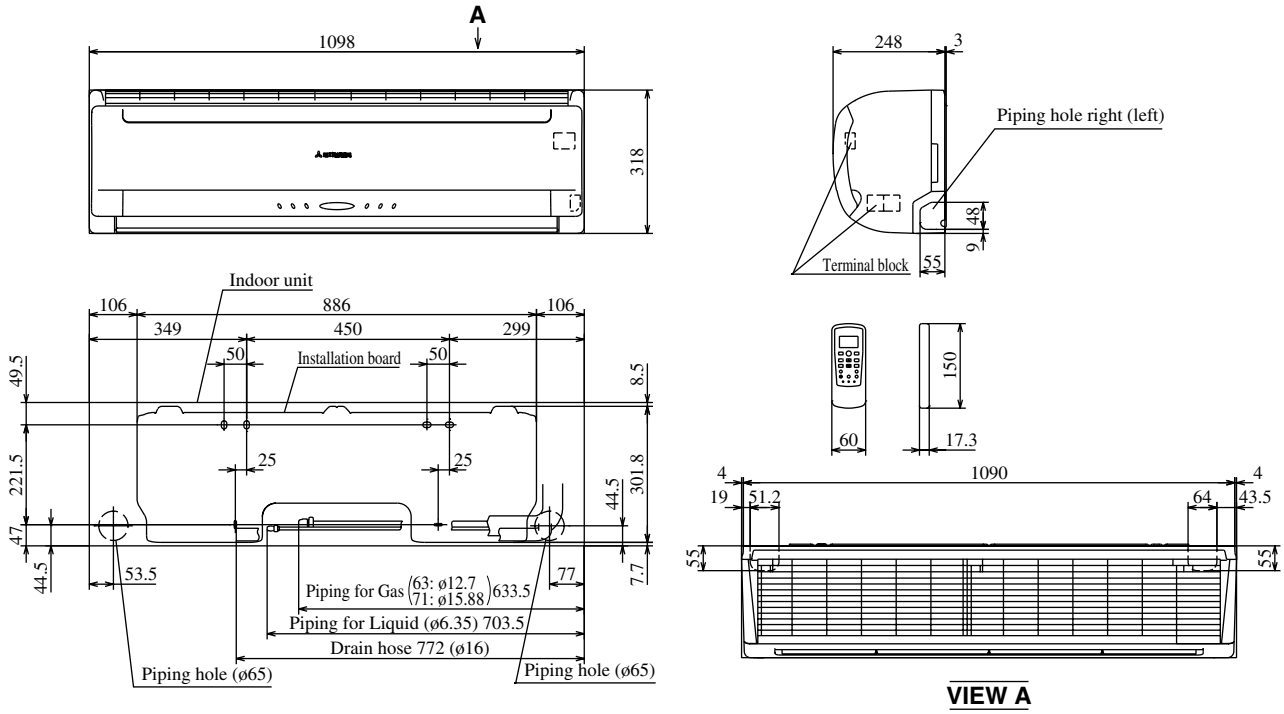
(2) Range of usage & limitations

Item \ Models	All models
Outdoor air temperature (Upper, lower limits)	Cooling operation : Approximately 21 to 43˚C Heating operation : Approximately -5 to 21˚C
Refrigerant line (one way) length	Max. 25m
Vertical height difference between outdoor unit and indoor unit	Max. 15m
Power source voltage	Rating ± 10%
Voltage at starting	Min. 85% of rating
Frequency of ON-OFF cycle	Max. 10 times/h
ON and OFF interval	Max. 3 minutes

(3) Exterior dimensions

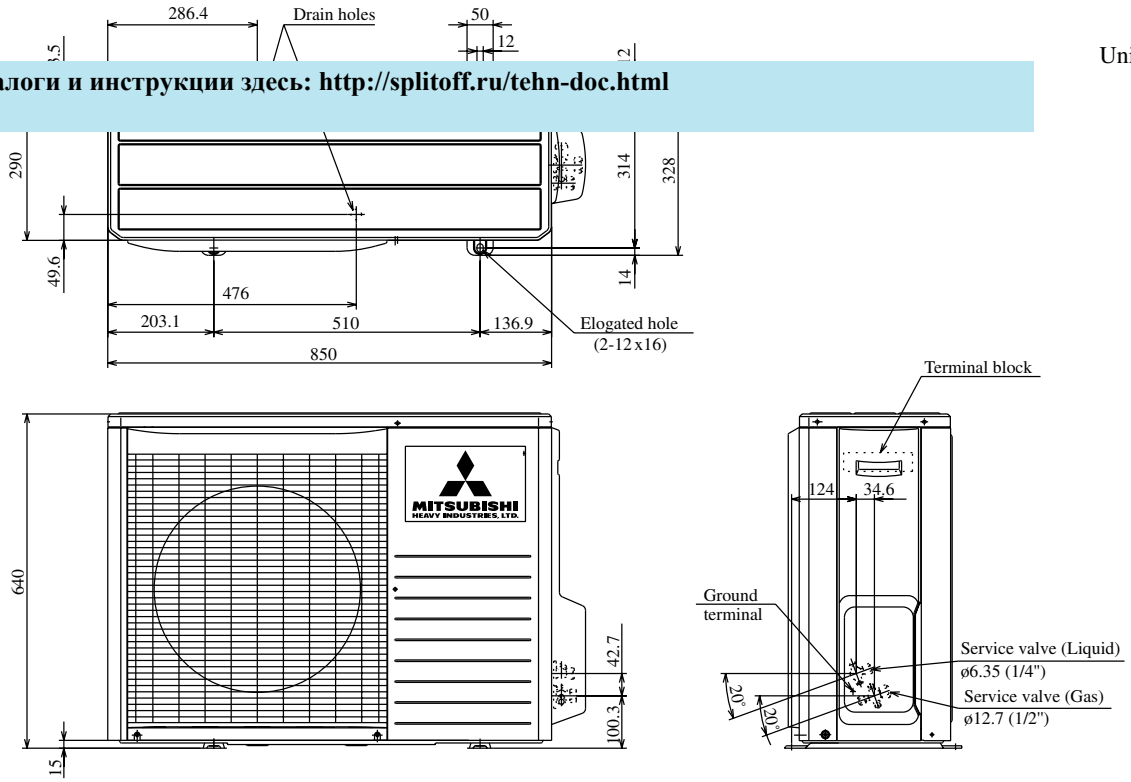
(a) Indoor unit
Models SRK63HE-S1, 71HE-S1

Unit: mm



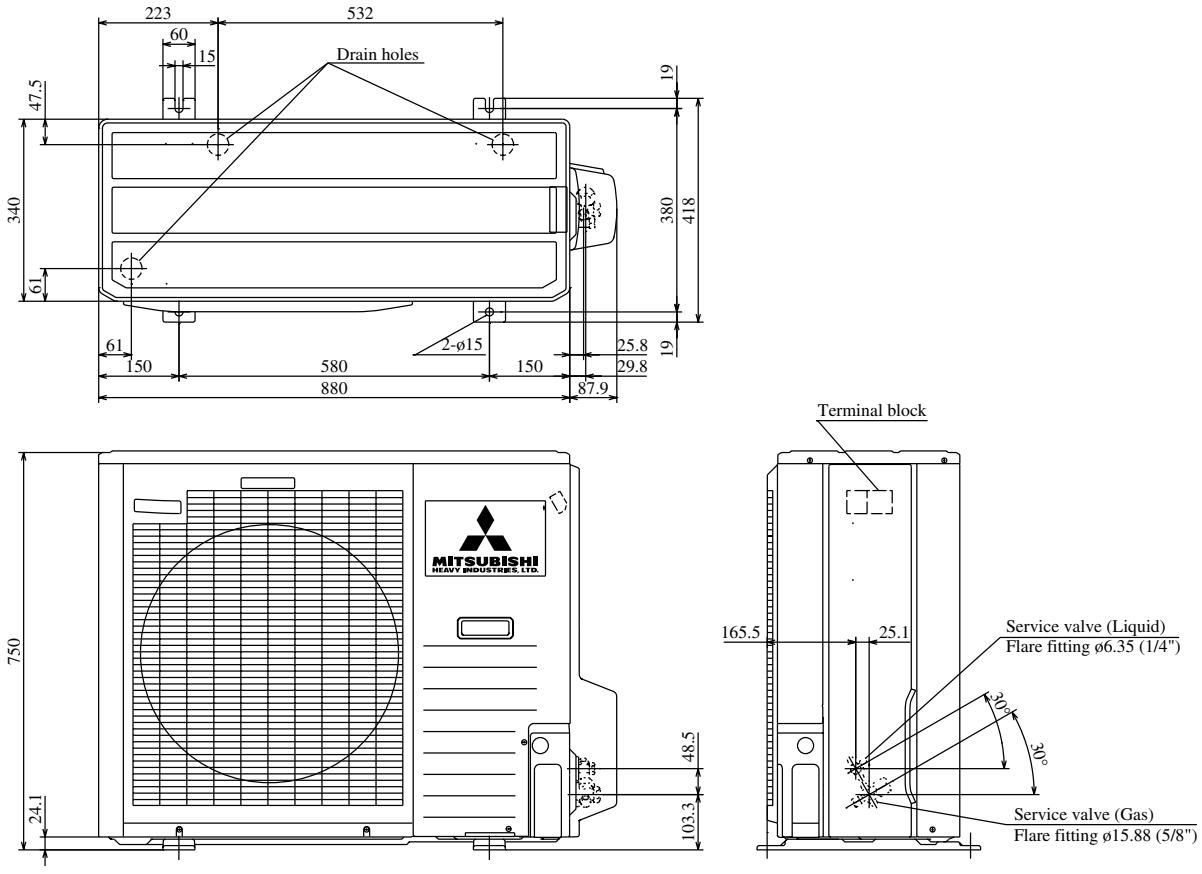
(b) Outdoor unit
Model SRC63HE-S1

Unit: mm



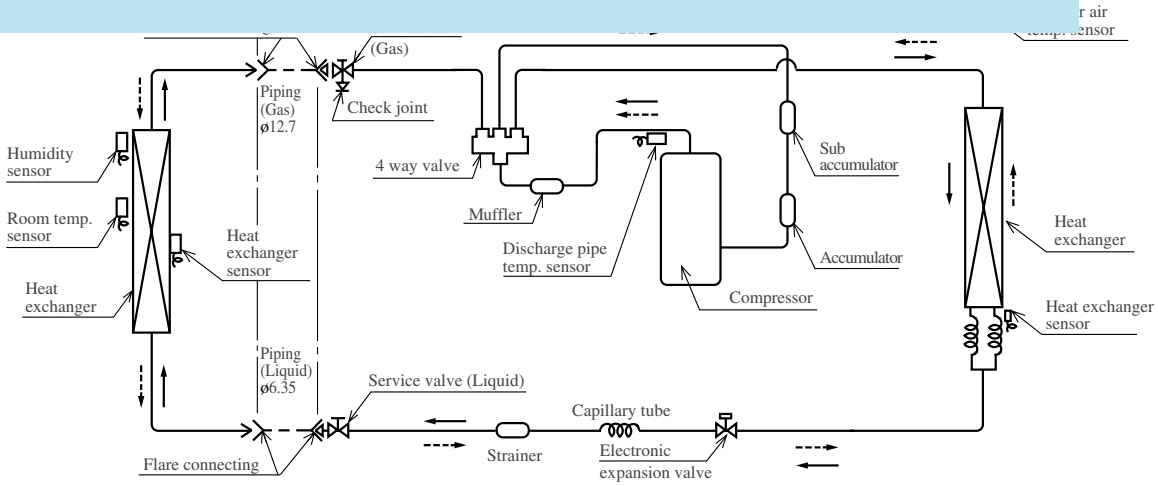
Model SRC71HE-S1

Unit: mm

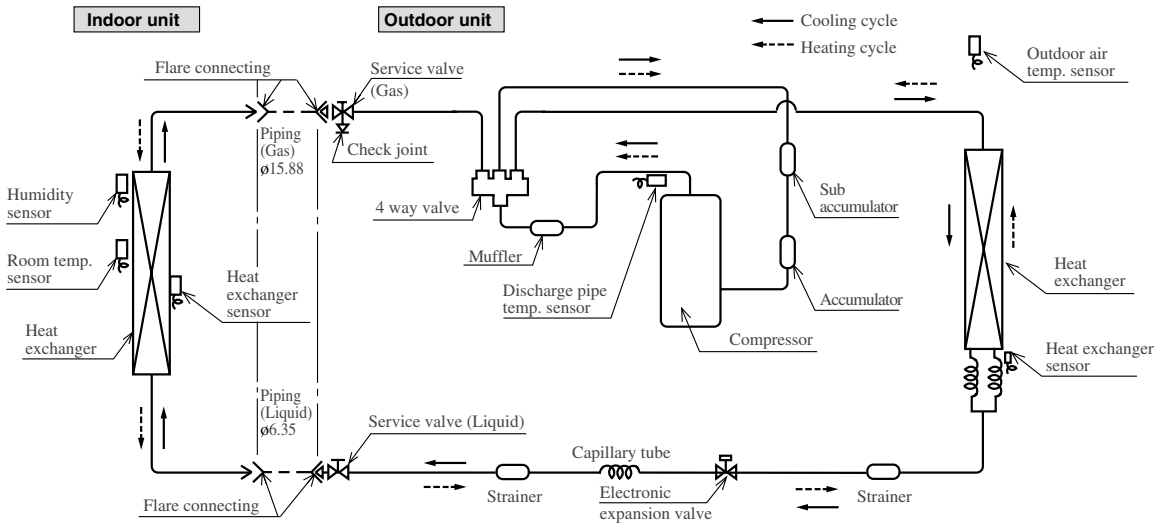


(4) Piping system

Model SRK63HE-S1



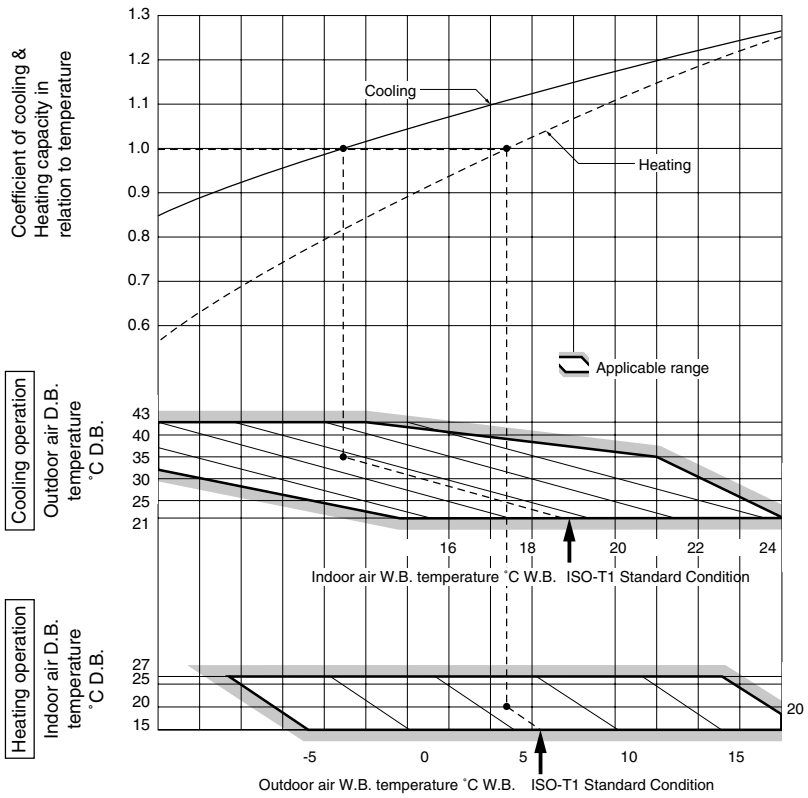
Model SRK71HE-S1



(5) Selection chart

Correct the cooling and heating capacity in accordance with the conditions as follows. The net cooling and heating capacity can be obtained in the following way.

(a) Coefficient of cooling and heating capacity in relation to temperature



(b) Correction of cooling and heating capacity in relation to one way length of refrigerant piping

It is necessary to correct the cooling and heating capacity in relation to the one way piping length between the indoor and outdoor units.

Piping length [m]	7	10	15	20	25
Cooling	1.0	0.99	0.975	0.965	0.95
Heating	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0

(c) Correction relative to frosting on outdoor heat exchanger during heating

In additions to the foregoing corrections (a), (b) the heating capacity needs to be adjusted also with respect to the frosting on the outdoor heat exchanger.

Air inlet temperature of outdoor unit in ˚CWB	-5	-3	-1	1	3	5
Adjustment coefficient	0.91	0.88	0.86	0.87	0.92	1.00

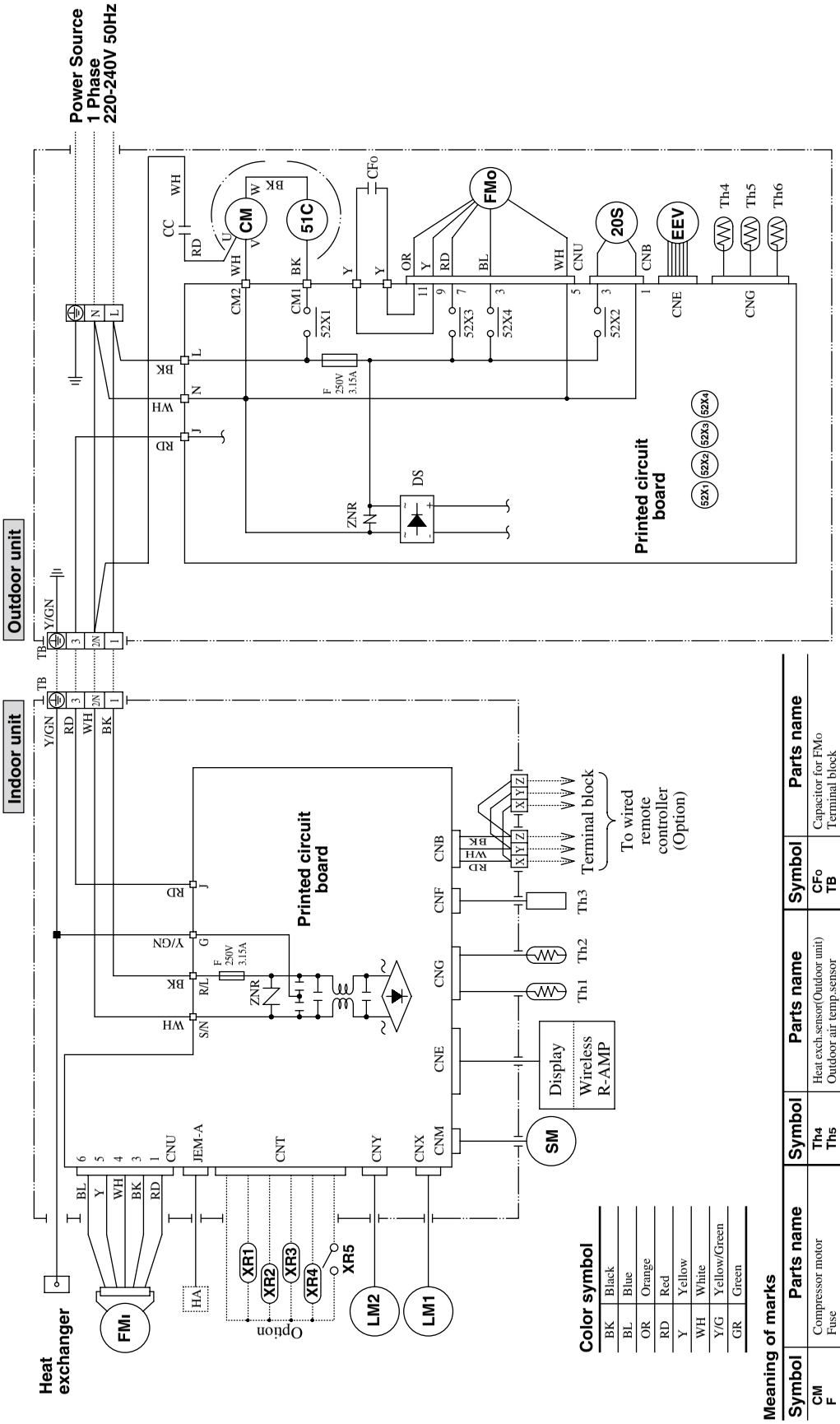
How to obtain the cooling and heating capacity

Example : The net cooling capacity of the model SRK63HE-S1 with the piping length of 15m, indoor wet-bulb temperature at 19.0˚C and outdoor dry-bulb temperature 35˚C is Net cooling capacity = $\underset{\text{SRK63HE-S1}}{6300} \times \underset{\text{Length 15m}}{0.975} \times \underset{\text{Factor by air temperatures}}{1.0} = 6143\text{W}$

2.3.3 ELECTRICAL DATA

(1) Electrical wiring

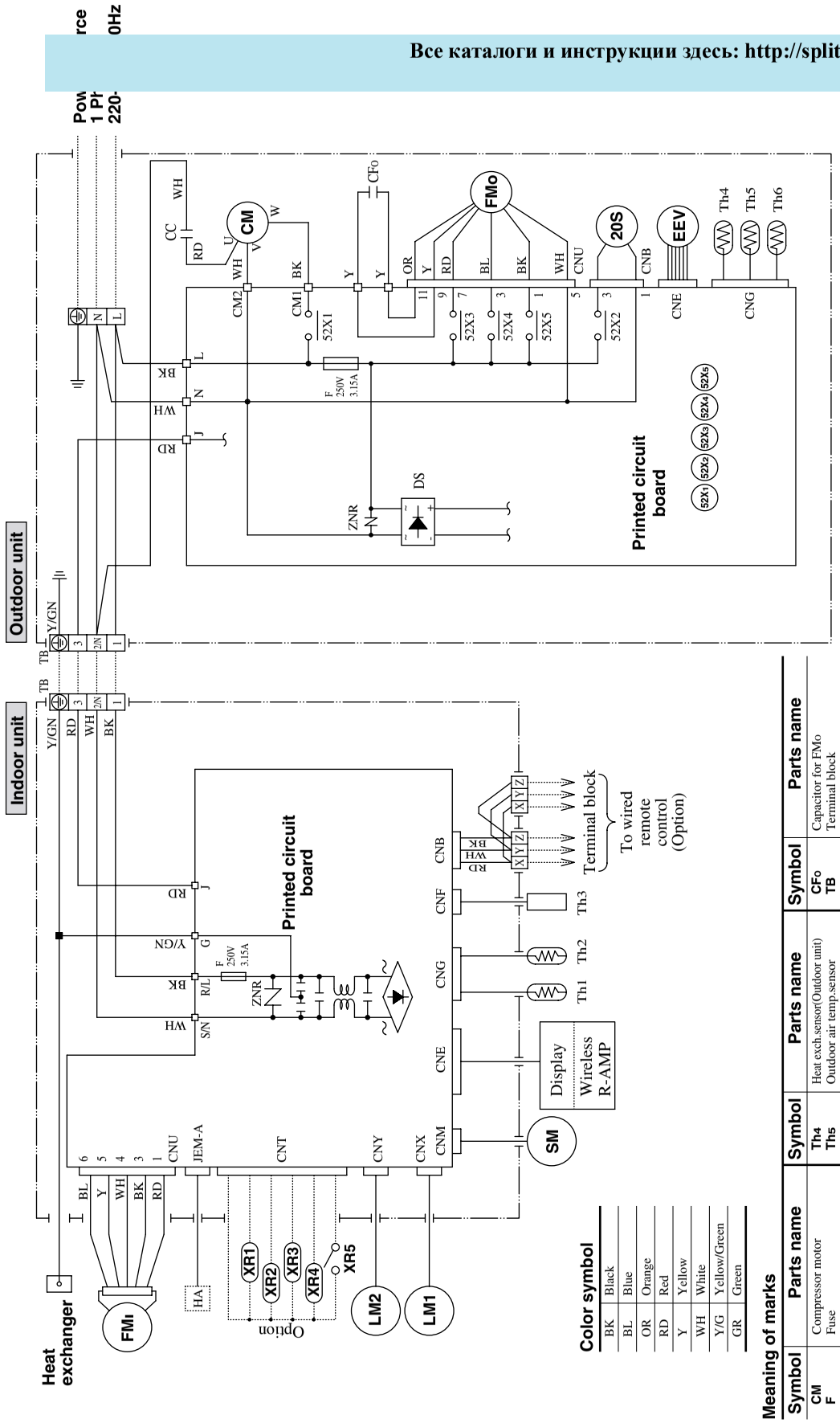
Model SRK63HE-S1



Meaning of marks

Symbol	Parts name	Symbol	Parts name	Symbol	Parts name
CM	Compressor motor	Th4	Heat exch.sensor(Outdoor unit)	CFo	Capacitor for FMo
F	Fuse	Th5	Outdoor air temp.sensor	TB	Terminal block
FMI	Fan motor(Indoor)	Th6	Discharge pipe temp.sensor	51C	Motor protector for CM
FMo	Fan motor(Outdoor)	ZNR	Varistor	XR1	Operation indication (DC12)
SM	Flap motor	20S	4 way valve(coil)	XR2	Heating indication (DC12)
LM1,2	Louver motor	EEV	Electronic expansion valve	XR3	ON indication for CM(DC12)
Th1	Room temp.sensor	DS	Diode stack	XR4	Check indication (DC12)
Th2	Heat exch.sensor(Indoor unit)	52X1~4	Auxiliary relay	XR5	Distant operation
Th3	Humidity sensor	CC	Capacitor for CM		

Model SRK71HE-S1



Meaning of marks

Symbol	Parts name	Symbol	Parts name	Symbol	Parts name
CM	Compressor motor	Th4	Heat exch.sensor(Outdoor unit)	CFo	Capacitor for FMo
F	Fuse	Th5	Outdoor air temp.sensor	TB	Terminal block
FMI	Fan motor(Indoor)	Th6	Discharge pipe temp.sensor	XR1	Operation indication (DC12)
FMo	Fan motor(Outdoor)	ZNR	Varistor	XR2	Heating indication (DC12)
SM	Flap motor	20S	4 way valve(coil)	XR3	ON indication for CM(DC12)
LM1,2	Louver motor	EEV	Electronic expansion valve	XR4	Check indication (DC12)
Th1	Room temp.sensor	DS	Diode stack	XR5	Distant operation
Th2	Heat exch.sensor(Indoor unit)	52X1~5	Auxiliary relay		
Th3	Humidity sensor	CC	Capacitor for CM		

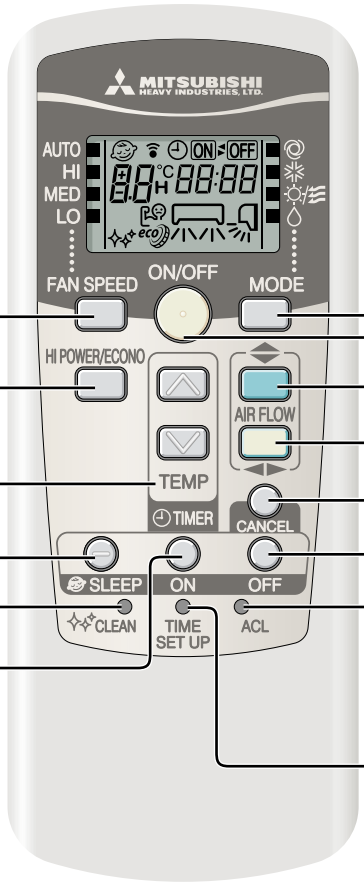
2.3.4 OUTLINE OF OPERATION CONTROL BY MICROCOMPUTER

(1) Operation control function by remote control switch

(a) Wireless remote control

Models: All models

◆ Operation section



FAN SPEED button
Each time the button is pushed, the ■ indicator is switched over in turn.

HI POWER/ECONO button
This button changes the HIGH POWER/ ECONOMY mode.

TEMPERATURE button
This button sets the room temperature.
(This button changes the present time and TIMER time.)

SLEEP button
This button changes to SLEEP operation.

CLEAN switch
This switch changes the CLEAN mode.

ON TIMER button
This button selects ON TIMER operation.

OPERATION MODE select button
Each time the button is pushed, the ■ indicator is switched over in turn.

ON/OFF (luminous) button
Press for starting operation, press again for stopping.

AIR FLOW (UP/DOWN) button
This button changes the air flow (up/down) mode.

AIR FLOW (LEFT/RIGHT) button
This button changes the air flow (left/right) mode.

CANCEL button
This button cancels the ON timer, OFF timer, and SLEEP operation.

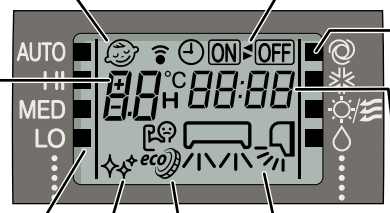
OFF TIMER button
This button selects OFF TIMER operation.

RESET switch
Switch for resetting microcomputer.

TIME SET UP switch
This switch for setting the time.

- The above illustration shows all controls, but in practice only the relevant parts are shown.

◆ Indication section



SLEEP indicator
Indicates during SLEEP operation.

TEMPERATURE indicator
Indicates set temperature.
(Does not indicate temperature when operation mode is on AUTO)

FAN SPEED indicator
Indicates set air flow rate with ■ lamp.

CLEAN indicator
Indicates during CLEAN operation.

ON/OFF TIMER indicator
Indicates during ON/OFF TIMER operation.

OPERATION MODE indicator
Indicates selected operation with ■ lamp.
Heat pump type (HE)
[(Auto) • (Cool) • (Heat) • (Dry)]
Cooling only type (CE)
[(Auto) • (Cool) • (Fan) • (Dry)]

TIME indicator
Indicates present time or timer setting time.

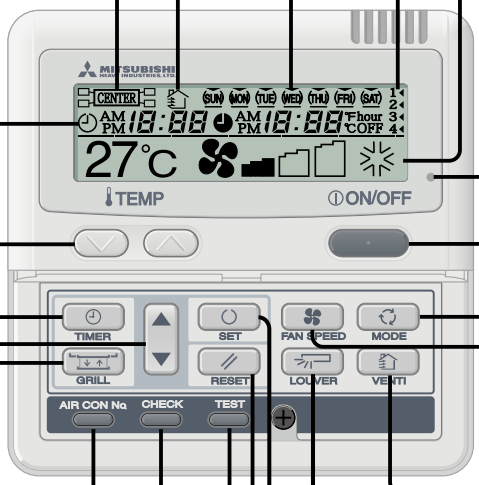
AIR FLOW indicator
Shows selected flap and louver mode.

HI POWER/ ECONO MODE indicator
Indicates during High power/economy mode operation.

(b) Wired remote control (Optional parts)

The figure below shows the remote control with the cover opened. Note that all the items that may be displayed in the liquid crystal display area are shown in the figure for the sake of explanation.

Pull the cover downward to open it.



Central control display
Displayed when the air conditioning system is controlled by the option controller.

Timer operation display
Displays the settings related to timer operation.

Temperature setting switches
These switches are used to set the temperature of the room.

TIMER switch
This switch is used to select a timer mode.
(The comfortable timer or sleep operation cannot be selected.)

Timer setting switches
These switches are used to set the timer mode and time.

[GRILL switch]
This switch has no function.
When this switch is pressed,
INVALID OPER(Invalid Operation)
is displayed, but it does not mean a failure.

AIR CON No. (Air conditioning system No.) switch
Displays the number of the connected air conditioning system.
("00" appears.)

[CHECK switch]
This switch is used at servicing.

[TEST switch]
This switch is used during test operation.

[Vent indicator]
Indicates operation in the ventilation mode.

Weekly timer display
Displays the settings of the weekly timer.

Operation setting display area
Displays setting temperature, airflow volume, operation mode and operation message.

Operation/Check indicator light
During operation: Lit in green
In case of error: Flashing in red

Operation/Stop switch
This switch is used to operate and stop the air conditioning system.
Press the switch once to operate the system and press it once again to stop the system.

MODE switch
This switch is used to switch between operation modes.
(The clean operation cannot be selected.)

FAN SPEED switch
This switch is used to set the airflow volume.
(AUTO, HI POWER or ECONO cannot be selected.)

[VENT switch]
Switch that operates the connected ventilator.

LOUVER switch
This switch is used to operate/stop the swing louver.
(UP/down swing only)

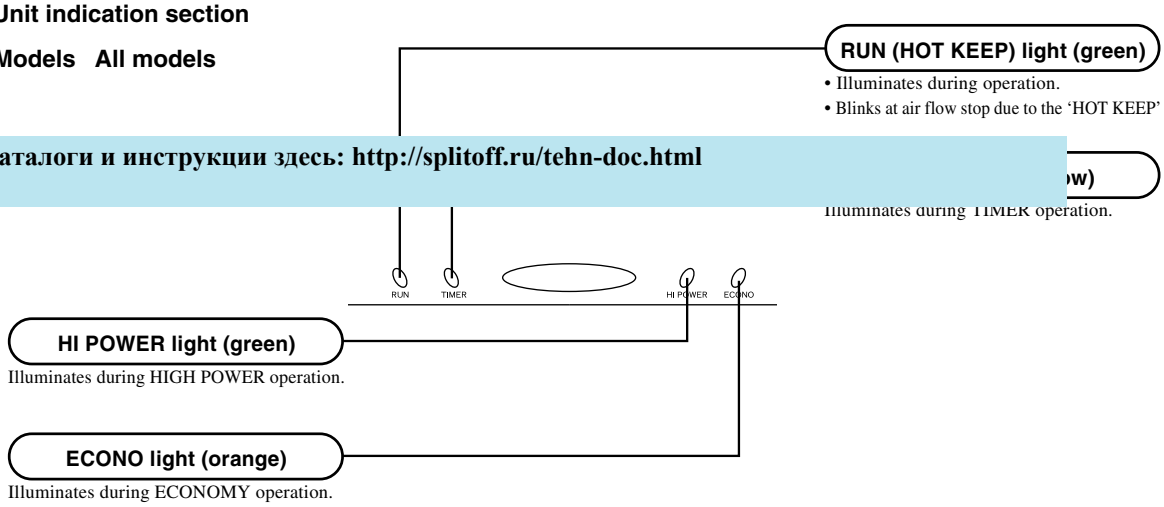
SET switch
This switch is used to apply the timer operation setting.
This switch is also used to make silent mode operation settings.

[RESET switch]
Press this switch while making settings to go back to the previous operation.
This switch is also used to reset the "FILTER CLEANING" message display.
(Press this switch after cleaning the air filter.)

* If you oress any of the switches above and " INVALID OPER" is display, the switch has no function.
But it does not mean a failure.

(c) Unit indication section

Models All models



(2) Unit ON/OFF button

When the remote control batteries become weak, or if the remote control is lost or malfunctioning, this button may be used to turn the unit on and off.

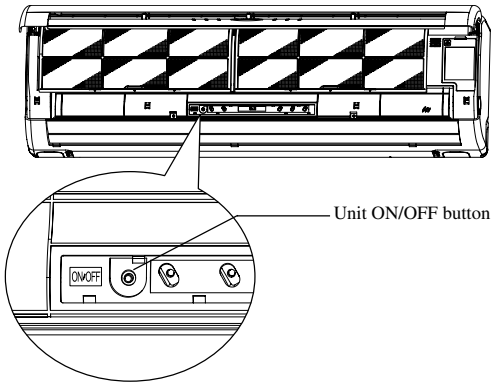
(a) Operation

Push the button once to place the unit in the automatic mode. Push it once more to turn the unit off.

(b) Details of operation

The unit will go into the automatic mode in which it automatically determines, from room temperature (as detected by sensor), whether to go into the cooling, thermal dry or heating modes.

Function / Operation mode	Room temperature setting	Fan speed	Flap	Timer switch
Cooling	About 24ºC	Auto	Auto	Continuous
Thermal dry	About 24ºC			
Heating	About 26ºC			



(3) Power blackout auto restart function

(a) Power blackout auto restart function is a function that records the operational status of the air-conditioner immediately prior to it being switched off by a power cut, and then automatically resumes operations at that point after the power has been restored.

(b) The following settings will be cancelled:

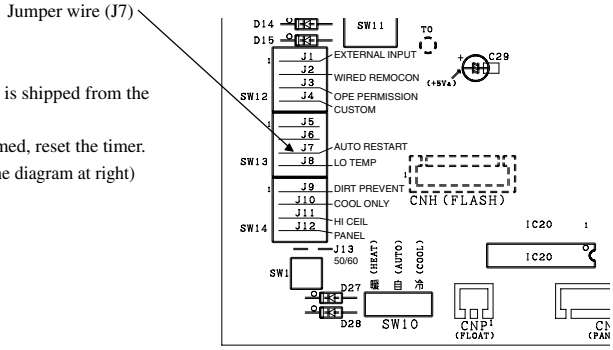
(i) Timer settings

(ii) High-power operations

Notes (1) The power blackout auto restart function is set at on when the air-conditioner is shipped from the factory. Consult with your dealer if this function needs to be switched off.

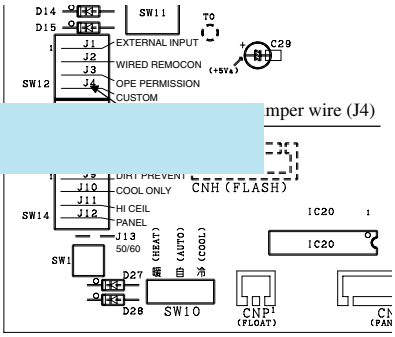
(2) When power failure ocurrs, the timer setting is cancelled. Once power is resumed, reset the timer.

(3) If the jumper wire (J7) "AUTO RESTART" is cut, auto restart is disabled. (See the diagram at right)



(4) Custom cord switching procedure

If two wireless remote controls are installed in one room, in order to prevent wrong operation due to mixed signals, please modify the printed circuit board in the indoor



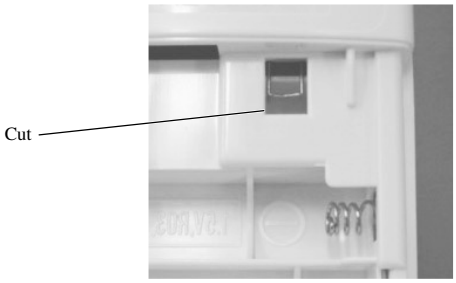
(a) Modifying the indoor unit's printed circuit board

Take out the printed circuit board from the control box and cut off jumper wire (J4) using wire cutters.

After cutting of the jumper wire, take measures to prevent contact with the other the lead wires, etc.

(b) Modifying the wireless remote control

1) Remove the battery.
2) Cut the jumper wire shown in the figure at right.



(5) Flap and louver control

Control the flap and louver by AIRFLOW ▲▼ (UP/DOWN) and ◀▶ (LEFT/RIGHT) button on the wireless remote control.

(a) Swing flap

Flap moves in upward and downward directions continuously.

(b) Swing louver

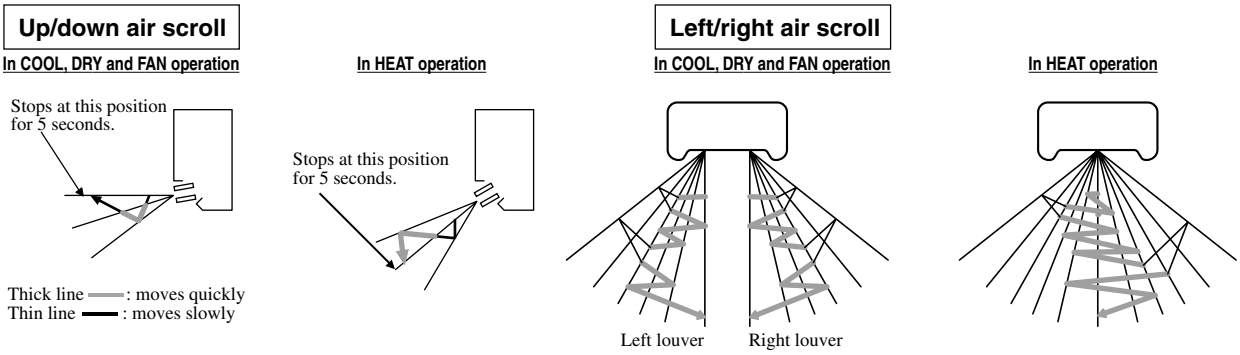
Louver moves in left and right directions continuously.

(c) When not operating

The flap returns to the position of air flow directly below, when operation has stopped.

(d) Multi-directional Air Flow (up/down air scroll and left/right air scroll)

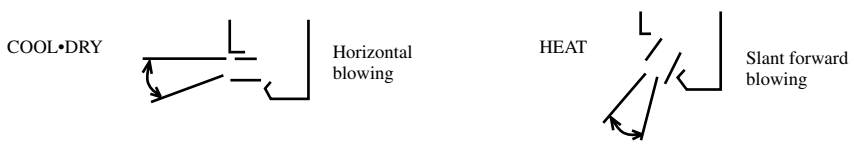
Activating both up/down air swing and left/right air swing at the same time results in a multi-directional air flow.



(e) Memory flap (Flap or Louver stopped)

When you press the AIRFLOW (UP/DOWN or LEFT/RIGHT) button once while the flap or louver is operating, it stops swinging at an angle. Since this angle is memorized in the microcomputer, the flap or louver will automatically be set at this angle when the next operation is started.

- Recommendable stopping angle of the flap

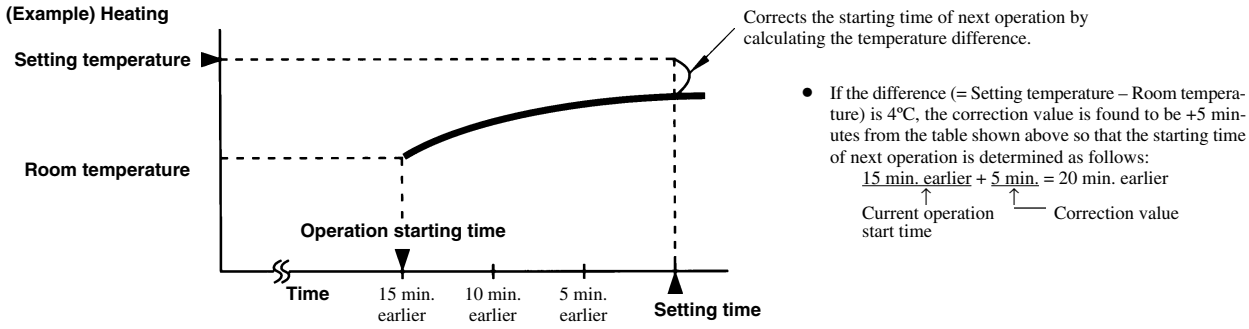


(6) Comfortable timer setting

If the timer is set at ON when the operation select switch is set at the cooling or heating, or the cooling or heating in auto mode operation is selected, the comfortable timer starts and determines the starting time of next operation based on the initial value of 15 minutes and the relationship between the room temperature at the setting time (temperature of room temperature sensor) and the setting temperature.

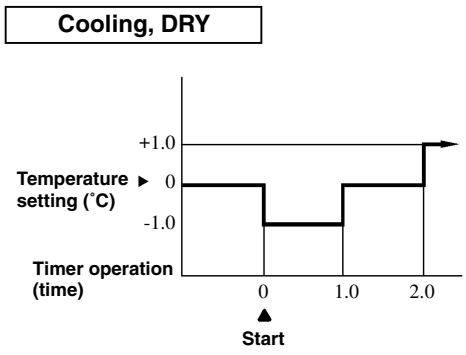
Operation mode	Operation start time correction value (min.)		
At cooling	3 < Room temp. – Setting temp.	1 < Room temp. – Setting temp. ≦ 3	Room temp. – Setting temp. ≦ 1
	+5	No change	–5
At heating	3 < Setting temp. – Room temp.	2 < Setting temp. – Room temp. ≦ 3	Setting temp. – Room temp. ≦ 2
	+5	No change	–5

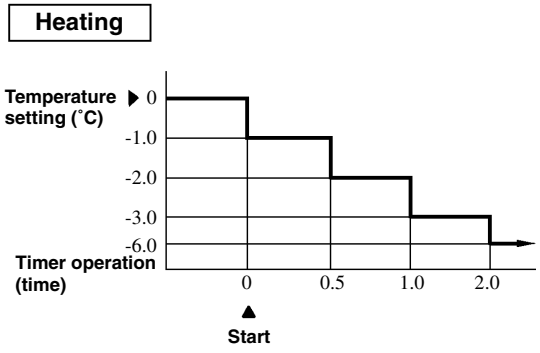
Notes (1) At 5 minutes before the timer ON time, operation starts regardless of the temperature of the room temperature sensor (Th1).
(2) This function does not actuate when the operation select switch is set at the dehumidifying as well as the dehumidifying in the auto mode. However, the operation of item (1) above is performed during the dehumidifying in the auto mode.
(3) During the comfortable timer operation, both the run light and timer light illuminate and the timer light goes off after expiration of the timer, ON setting time.



(7) Sleep timer operation

Pressing the SLEEP button causes the temperature to be controlled as shown in the following chart with respect to the set temperature.





(8) Outline of heating operation (Heat pump type only)

(a) Operation of major functional components

Item / Functional	When the compressor	When the compressor	When the compressor goes OFF by anomalous stop.
Flap and louver	ON or OFF	ON or OFF	Stop position control
Display	Lights up	Lights up	Lights up or flashes
Outdoor fan motor	OFF	ON	Depending on the stop mode
4-way valve	Depending on the stop mode	ON	
Electric expansion valve		Depending on the EEV control	

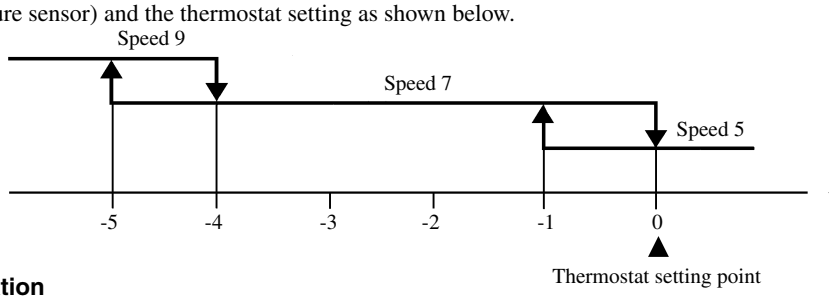
∗ However, the outdoor fan motor doesn't stop for one minute after the compressor stops.

(b) Fan speed switching

Flow control / Fan speed switching	AUTO	HIGH	MED	LOW
Air scroll	Auto fan control	Speed 9	Speed 7	Speed 5
Swing flap or louver		Speed 9	Speed 7	Speed 5
Swing stop		Speed 9	Speed 7	Speed 5

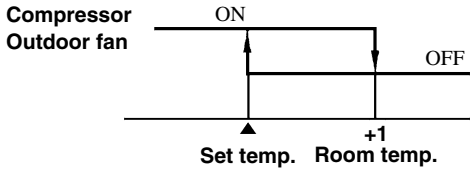
(i) Auto fan control

The indoor fan is automatically controlled in accordance with the difference between the room temperature (detected by the room temperature sensor) and the thermostat setting as shown below.



(c) Thermostat operation

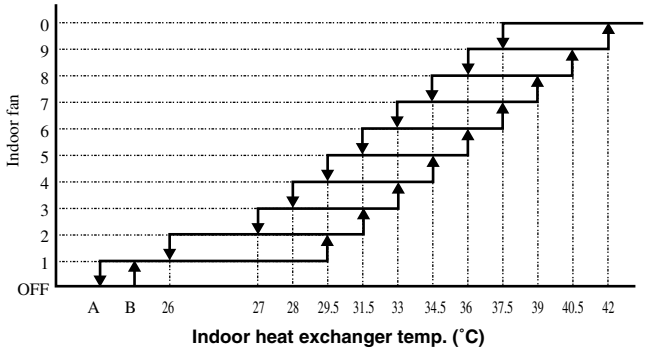
The compressor and outdoor fan and turned on and off as shown below according to the temperature setting.



(d) Hot keep

This function controls the indoor unit fan speed as shown below in accordance with the temperature sensed by the indoor heat exchanger sensor.

(i) Indoor unit fan control



● **Values of A, B**

	A	B
When the compressor command is OFF	22	25
When the compressor command is ON	17	19

Note (1) Refer to the table shown above right for the values A and B.

(ii) To accomplish rapid recovery from the thermostat off state, after the compressor and outdoor unit's fan go OFF, the set temperature is raised by 1ºC until 1 minute passes after the hot keep end temperature has been reached following restarting.

(e) Hot spurt

(i) For 40 minutes after a heating operation begins, the system runs with set temperature raised by 2ºC.

(ii) In the following cases, this function is canceled and does not activate afterwards.

1) When the compressor and outdoor unit fan have been turned OFF by the thermostat going off.

The system runs under the following conditions for 15 minutes without relation to the set temperature or the fan speed setting.

Indoor unit fan	Speed 10 fixed
Outdoor unit fan	ON
Compressor	ON

Notes (1) Room temperature is not adjusted during the HIGH POWER operation.
(2) Protective function will actuate with priority even during the HIGH POWER operation.

(g) Defrost operation

(i) Starting conditions (Defrost operation begins when all the following conditions are satisfied.)

1) ① 45 minutes have passed since the heating operation began. (Accumulated operation time)
② 45 minutes have passed since the previous defrosting operation ended. (Accumulated operation time)
③ The outdoor unit heat exchanger temperature sensor is –5ºC or lower continuously for 3 minutes.
④ ● The outdoor temperature ≧ -7°C
The difference between the outdoor temperature sensor temperature and the outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor temperature is ≧ 7ºC.
● The outdoor temperature < -7°C
The difference between the outdoor temperature sensor temperature and the outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor temperature is ≧ -5ºC.
⑤ The compressor is running.(Defrost shall not be performed once the Compressor has been ON for 10 minutes.)

2) Also, the number of times the compressor goes OFF is counted, and when it reaches 10 or more times, if the conditions in ①, ②, ③ above (except that the outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor is –1ºC) and outdoor temperature is 3ºC or lower, the defroster operation starts.

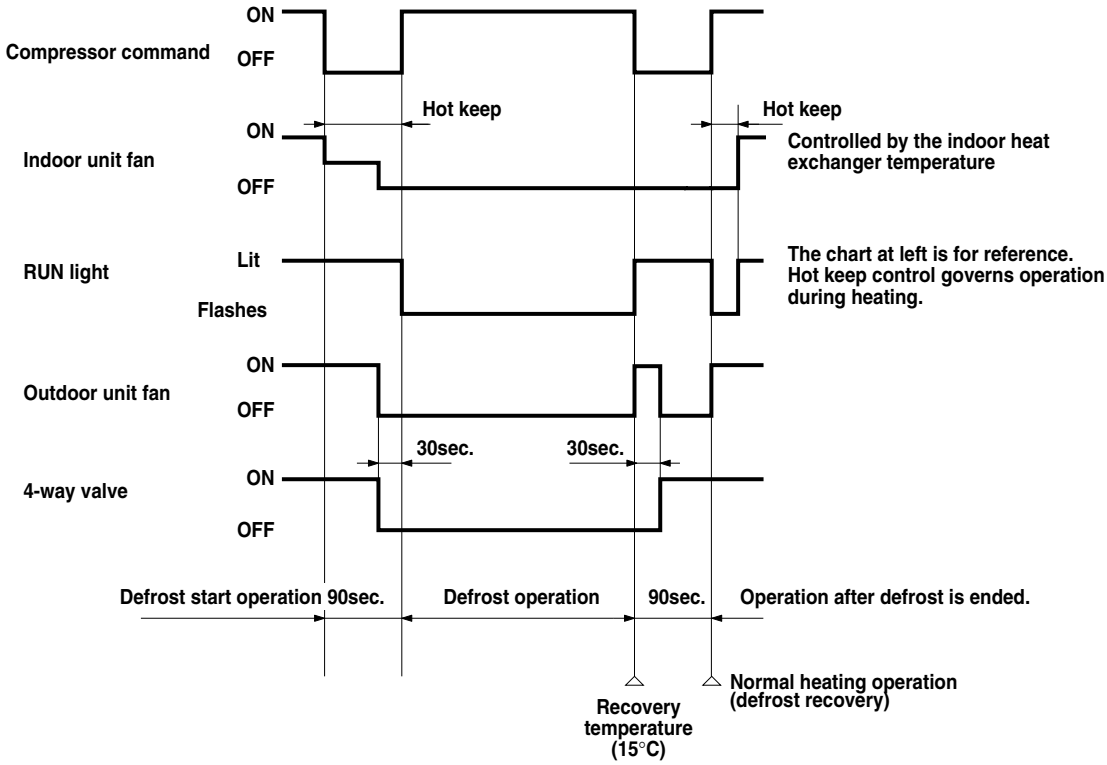
3) ① Less than 45 minutes since the heating operation began. (Accumulated operation time)
② Less than 45 minutes since the previous defrosting operation ended. (Accumulated operation time)
③ The outdoor unit heat exchanger temperature sensor is –5ºC or lower continuously for 3 minutes.
④ The difference between the outdoor temperature sensor temperature and the outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor temperature is ≧ 11ºC (15ºC).

Note (1) Values in ( ) are for type 71.

(ii) End conditions (when either of the following conditions is satisfied)

① Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor: 15ºC or higher
② Defrosting operation has continued for 10 minutes.

(iii) Operation of functinal components during defrosting operation



(h) Forced defrost

(i) Forced defrost operation can be performed only once time within 20 second, after the power source is turned on, in accordance with the following operation.

1) Remote control operation

2) Functional components operation

Operation mode	Heating
Set temperature	19˚C
Fan speed select	Low
Air flow setting	Up/down swing
On timer	ON
Current time	On after 180 min.condition
On timer time	

4-way valve	OFF
Indoor unit fan	OFF
Flap and louver	Fully closed
Outdoor unit fan	OFF
Display	Same as defrost

(ii) If remote control operation is performed, for 1 minute after 3-minute timer operation, the operation is canceled if one of the following conditions is satisfied.

① Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor: 14ºC or higher

② 10 minutes has passed (including the 1 minute of forced operation).

(i) ECONOMY operation (“ECONO” button on the remote control : ON)

The set temperature changes as shown at right and the indoor unit fan runs at speed 5.

Running time	Set temperature compensation
Running start ~ 1 hour	Set temperature -1.0
1~2 hours	Set temperature -2.0
2 hours ~	Set temperature -2.5

(9) Outline of cooling operation

(a) Operation of major functional components

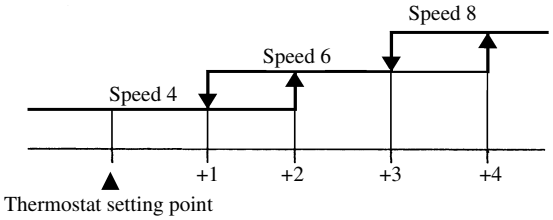
Item / Functional components	When the compressor command is OFF	When the compressor command is ON	When the compressor goes OFF due to an anomalous stop.
Indoor fan motor	ON	ON	OFF
Flap and louver	ON or OFF	ON or OFF	Stop position control
Display	Lights up	Lights up	Lights up or flashes
Outdoor fan motor	Depending on the stop mode	ON	Depending on the stop mode
4-way valve		OFF	
Electric expansion valve		Depending on the EEV control	

(b) Fan speed switching

Fan speed switching / Flow control	AUTO	HIGH	MED	LOW
Air scroll	Auto fan control	Speed 8	Speed 6	Speed 4
Swing flap or louver		Speed 8	Speed 6	Speed 4
Swing stop		Speed 8	Speed 6	Speed 4

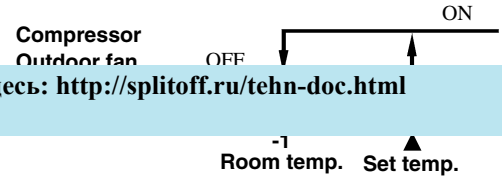
(i) Auto fan control

The indoor fan is automatically controlled in accordance with the difference between the room temperature (detected by the room temperature sensor) and the termostat setting as shown below.



(c) Thermostat operation

The compressor and outdoor fan and turned on and off as shown below according to the temperature setting.



(d) HIGH POWER operation (“HI POWER” button on the remote control : ON)

The following operation is performed for 15 minutes without relation to the set temperature or fan speed setting.

Indoor unit fan	Speed 9 fixed
Outdoor unit fan	ON
Compressor	ON

Notes (1) Room temperature is not adjusted during the HIGH POWER operation.
(2) Protective functions will actuate with priority even during the HIGH POWER operation.

(e) ECONOMY operation (“ECONO” button on the remote control : ON)

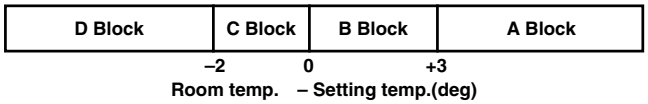
The set temperature changes as shown at right, and the indoor unit fan speed is set on speed 4.

Running time	Set temperature compensation
Running start ~ 1 hour	Set temperature +0.5
1~2 hours	Set temperature +1.0
2 hours ~	Set temperature +1.5

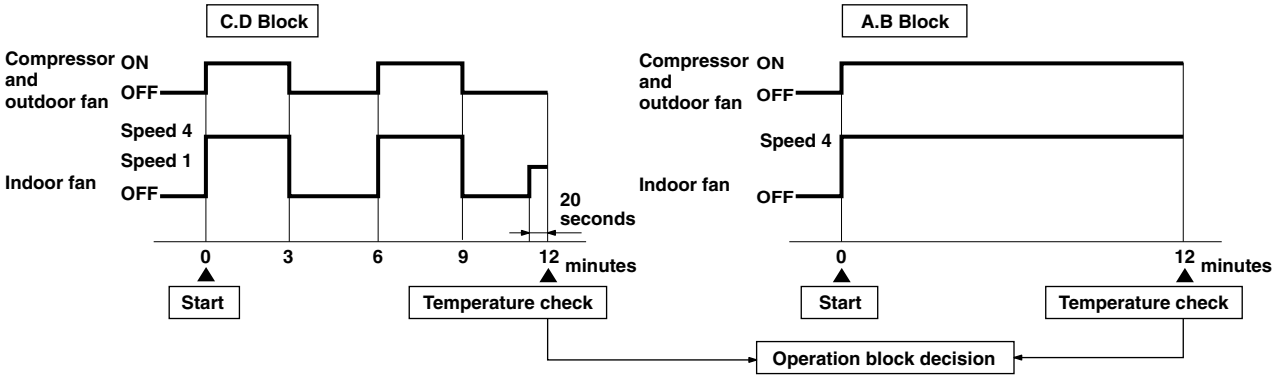
(10) Outline of dehumidifying operation

(a) Choose the appropriate operation block area by the difference between room temperature and thermostat setting temperature as shown below.

- **Operation block area**



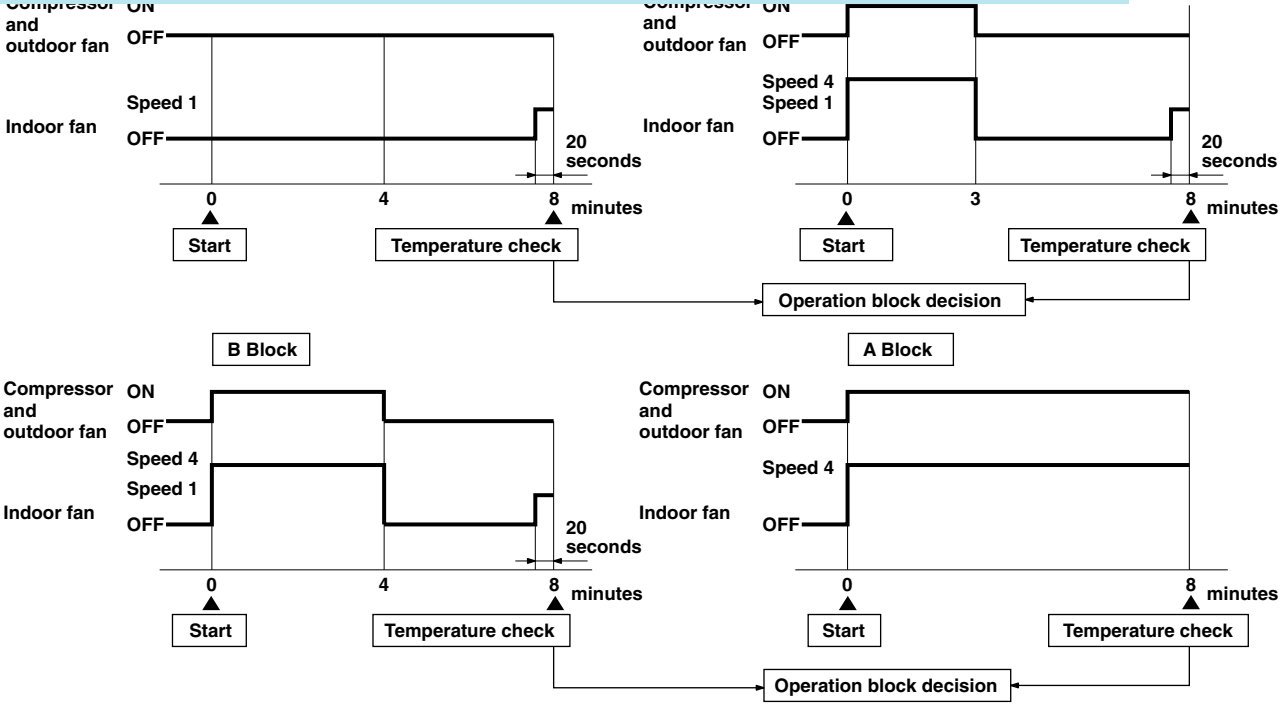
(b) Start up operation



Note (1) Thermostat operation is performed in A, B Block. When compressor and indoor fan stop by thermostat operation within 12 minutes from start, temperature check is performed by operating indoor fan at speed 1 for 20 seconds before finishing 12 minutes and allowing decision of next operation block.

(c) DRY operation

After finishing start up operation described in (b) previous page, thermal dry operation is performed at 8 minutes intervals, according to the difference between room temperature and thermostat setting temperature as shown below.
Beside, 1 cycle of this operating time consists of 8 minutes, 7 cycle operation is performed then.



(d) ECONOMY operation (“ECONO” button on the remote control : ON)

The set temperature changes as shown at right, and the indoor unit fan speed is set on speed 4 .

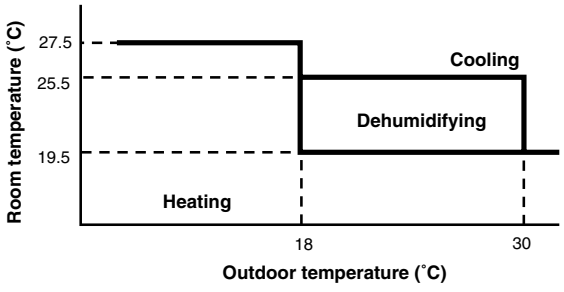
Running time	Set temperature compensation
Running start ~ 1 hour	Set temperature +0.5
1~2 hours	Set temperature +1.0
2 hours ~	Set temperature +1.5

(11) Outline of automatic operation

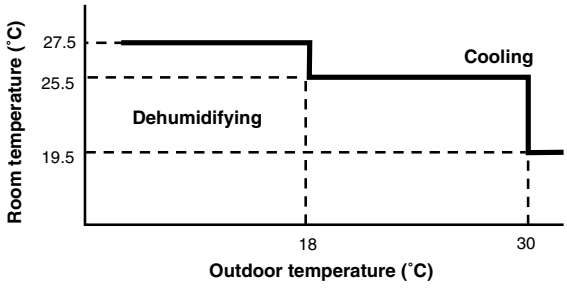
(a) Determination of operation mode

The unit checks the room temperature and the outdoor air temperature after operating the indoor and outdoor blowers for 20 seconds, determines the operation mode and the room temperature setting correction value, and then begins in the automatic operation.

- **Heat pump type**



- **Cooling only type**



(b) Within 30 minutes after either auto or manual operation stops, if auto operation is started, or if you switch to auto operation during manual operation, the system runs in the previous operation mode.

(c) The temperature is checked 1 time in 30 minutes after the start of operation, and if the judgment differs from the previous operation

en the signals of the wireless remote control and the setting temperature.

		Signals of wireless remote control (Display)												
		–6	–5	–4	–3	–2	–1	±0	+1	+2	+3	+4	+5	+6
Setting temperature	Cooling	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
	Dehumidifying	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
	Heating	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32

(12) Outline of fan operation (Cooling only type only)

(a) Operation of major functional components

Functional components \ Fan speed switching	High power	AUTO	HIGH	MED	LOW	ECONO
52C	OFF					
Indoor fan motor	Speed 9	Speed 8	Speed 8	Speed 6	Speed 4	Speed 2
Outdoor fan motor	OFF					
Flap and louver	Depend on the flap and louver control					

(b) HIGH POWER operation ("HI POWER" button on the remote control : ON)

The following operation is performed for 15 minutes without relation to the set temperature or fan speed setting.

Indoor unit fan	Speed 9 fixed
Outdoor unit fan	OFF
Compressor	OFF

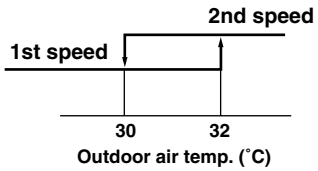
Note (1) Protective functions will actuate with priority even during the HIGH POWER operation.

(13) Regulation of outdoor air flow

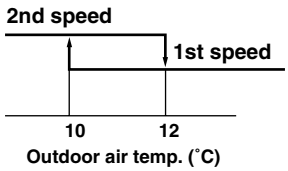
The fan operates as follows according to the outdoor air temperature. (Except during defrost.)

◆ **SRK63 HE-S1, 63CE-S1**

Cooling, thermaldry

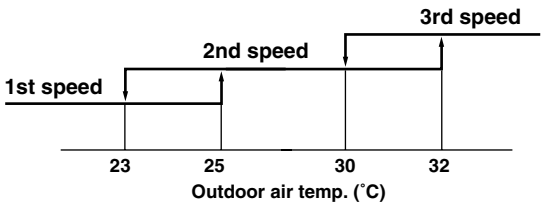


Heating

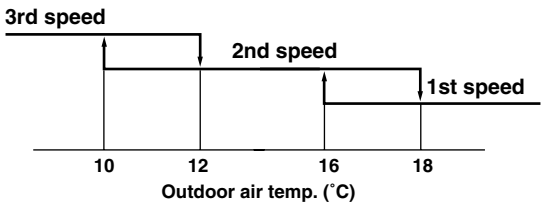


◆ **SRK71 HE-S1, 71CE-S1**

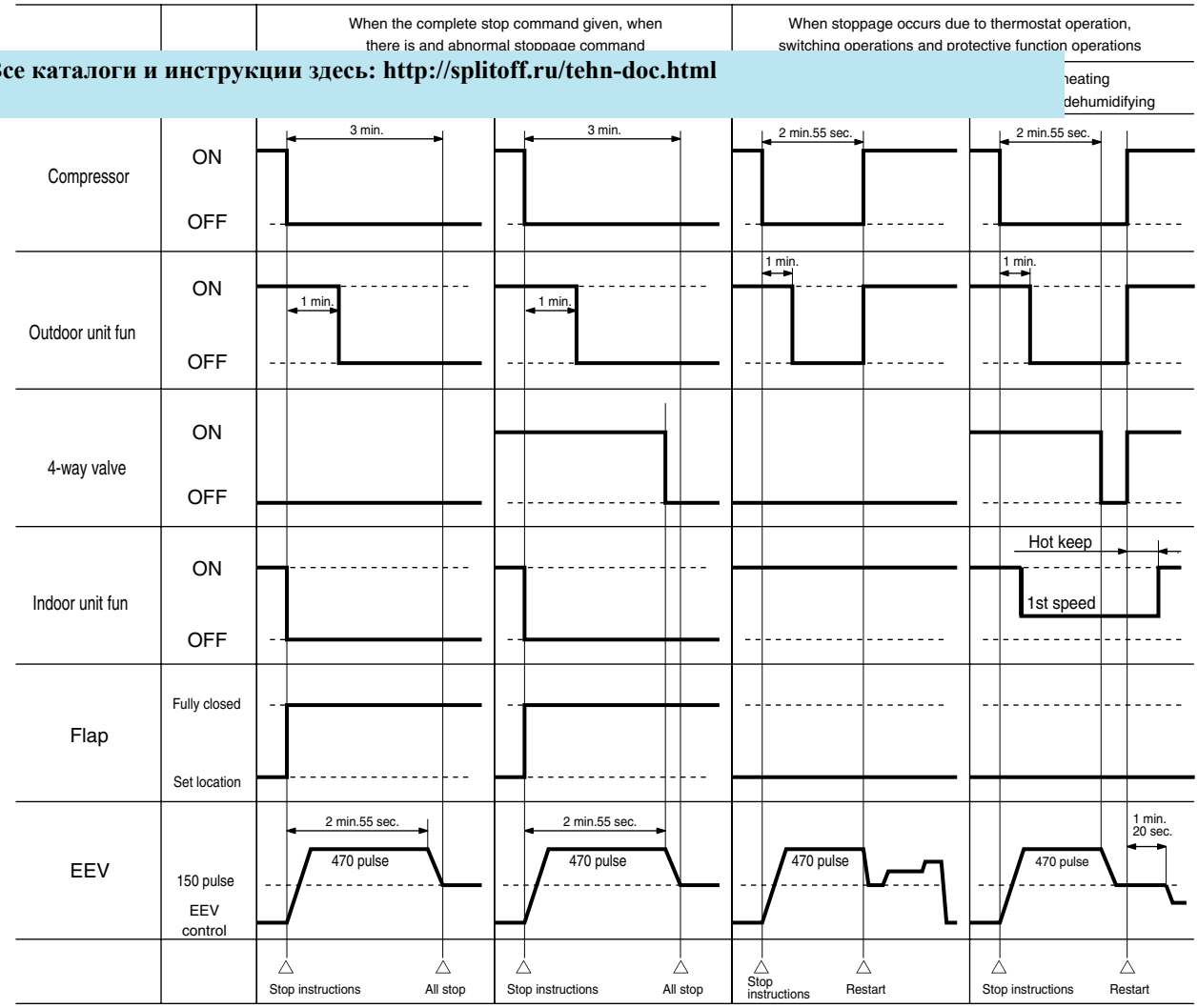
Cooling, thermaldry



Heating



(14) Stop mode



(15) External control (remote display)/control of input signal

Make sure to connect the wired remote control unit. Control of input signal is not available without the wired remote control unit.

(a) External control (remote display) output

(ii) Heating output: Power to engage DC 12V relay (provided by the customer) is outputted during the heating operation.

(iii) Compressor ON output: Power to engage DC 12V relay (provided by the customer) is outputted while the compressor is operating.

(iv) Error output: When any error occurs, the power to engage DC 12V relay (provided by the customer) is outputted.

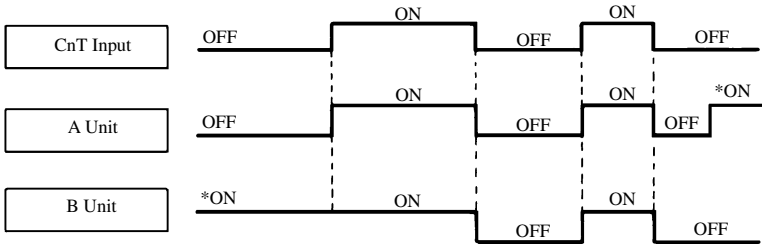
(b) Control of input signal

Control of input signal (switch input, timer input) connectors (CNT) are provided on the control circuit board of the indoor unit. However, when the operation of air conditioner is under the Center Mode, the remote control by CnT is invalid.

(i) If the factory settings (Jumper wire J1 EXTERNAL INPUT on the PCB) are set, or "LEVEL INPUT" is selected in the wired remote control's indoor unit settings.

1) Input signal to CnT OFF → ON – – – – Air conditioner ON

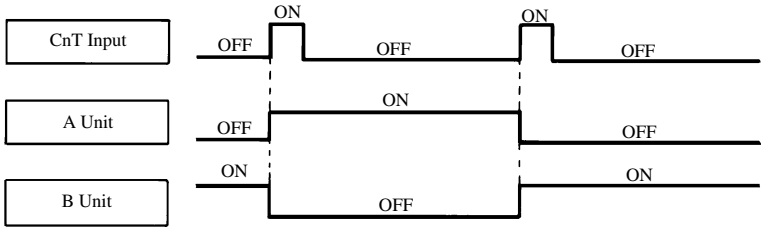
2) Input signal to CnT ON → OFF – – – – Air conditioner OFF



Note (1) The ON with the * mark indicates an ON operation using the remote control unit switch, etc.

(ii) When Jumper wire J1 on the PCB of indoor unit is cut at the field or "PULSE INPUT" is selected in the wired remote control's indoor unit settings.

Input signal to CnT becomes valid at OFF → ON only and the motion of air conditioner [ON/OFF] is inverted.



(16) Operation permission/prohibition control

The air conditioner operation is controlled by releasing the jumper wire (J3) on the indoor control board and inputting the external signal into the CnT.

nper wire (J3)

When the jumper wire (J3) is short circuited	When the jumper wire (J3) is released
Normal operation is enable (when shipping) When CnT input is set to ON, the operation starts and if the input is set to OFF, the operation stops. For the CnT and remote control inputs, the input which is activated later has priority and can start and stop the operation.	Permission / Prohibition mode When Cnt input is set to ON, the operation mode is changed to permission and if input is set to OFF the operation is prohibited.

(b) When the CnT input is set to ON (Operation permission)

(i) The air conditioner can be operated or stopped by the signal from the remote control signal line.
(When the "CENTER" mode is set, the operation can be controlled only by the center input.)

(ii) When the CnT input is changed from OFF to ON, the air conditioner operation mode is changed depending on the status of the jumper wire (J1) on the indoor control board.

When the jumper wire (J1) is short circuited	When the jumper wire (J1) is released
The signal (i) above starts the air conditioner. (Shipping status)	When the CnT input is set to ON, the air conditioner starts operation. After that, the operation of the air conditioner depends on (i) above. (Local status)

(c) When the CnT input is set to OFF (Prohibition)

(i) The air conditioner cannot be operated or stopped by the signal from the remote control signal line.

(ii) The air conditioner operation is stopped when the CnT input is changed from ON to OFF.

(d) When the operation permission / prohibition mode is set to effective by the indoor function setting selected by the remote control, the operation depends on (a) above.

(17) Protective control function

(a) Frost prevention for indoor heat exchanger (During cooling or dehumidifying)

(i) Operating conditions

1) Indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor (detected with Th2) is lower than 2.5ºC.
2) 5 minutes elapsed after the start of operation.

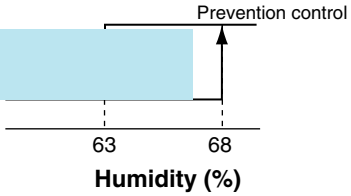
(ii) Detail of frost prevention operation

Compressor	OFF
Indoor fan	Protects the fan tap just before frost prevention control.
Outdoor fan	Depending on the stop mode
4-way valve	Stop mode

(iii) Reset condition: Indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor (Th2) is higher than 8ºC.

(b) Dew condensation prevention control [Cooling (including automatic), cooling oriented dehumidifying operation]

(i) Operating condition: When the following conditions are met after 5 minutes or more of continuous operation after operation starts.



1) Command of the electronic expansion valve.
2) When such a command is continued for 30 minutes or more, air direction controls will be as listed below:

UP/ DOWN air scroll	Flap swing, UP/DOWN air scroll	Executes the command to the left.
	Situations besides the ones described above	Controls the level of the UP/DOWN flap.
LEFT/ RIGHT air scroll	Louver swing, LEFT/RIGHT air scroll, Multi-directional Air Flow	Executes the command to the left.
	Situations besides the ones described above	Controls the front of the LEFT/RIGHT louver .

(iii) Reset condition: When the following condition is satisfied.

- The humidity sensor value is less than 63%.

(c) Indoor fan motor protection

When the air-conditioner is operating and the indoor fan motor is turned ON, if the indoor fan motor has operated at 300 rpm or under for more than 30 seconds, the unit enters first in the stop mode and then stops the entire system.
Timer light illuminates simultaneously and the run light flashing 6 times at each 8-second.

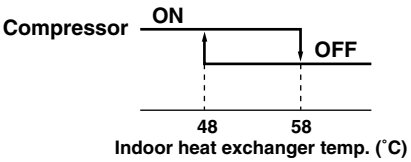
(d) Three-minute forced operation

When the compressor begins operating the thermal operation is not effective for 3 minutes, so operation continues as is in the operation mode. (After 3 minutes has passed the thermal operation is effective.)
However, stopping the compressor via a stop signal or protection control has priority.

(e) High-pressure control (During heating)

The indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor detection temperature controls the compressor.

- **When the indoor heat exchanger temperature is ≧ 58˚C**



(f) Abnormality of outdoor unit

(i) Cooling operation

When the indoor heat exchanger temperature does not fall to 25°C or below for 40 minutes after 5 minutes have elapsed since the compressor operation start, the abnormality stop occurs. (The timer light flashes 2 times.)

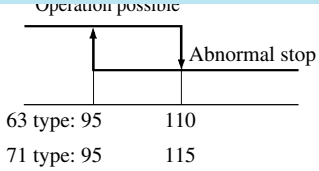
(ii) Heating operation

① The indoor heat exchanger temperature < 5°C for 5 minutes and more
The unit is stopped due to the outdoor unit abnormality excepting the defrost operation time. (The timer light flashes 2 times.)

② 5°C ≦ the indoor heat exchanger temperature < 30°C for 40 minutes and more
When the indoor heat exchanger temperature does not rise to 30°C or over for more than 40 minutes after 5 minutes have elapsed since the compressor operation start, the abnormality stop occurs. However, when the indoor fan began operation once, this function is not activated until the unit is stopped or the mode is changed. (The timer light flashes 2 times when 20 minutes have elapsed.)

(g) Compressor overheat protection

If the discharge pipe temperature (sensed by Th6) exceeds the set temperature value, the compressor stops. If the temperature is 95ºC or lower after a 3-minute delay, it starts again, but if this function is reactivated again within 60 minutes, it results in an abnormal stop.



Discharge pipe temperature (˚C)

(h) Serial signal transmission error protection

(i) Purpose: Prevents malfunction resulting from error on the indoor ↔ outdoor signals.

(ii) Detail of operation: If the compressor is operating and a serial signal cannot be received from the indoor control with outdoor control having serial signals continuously for 1 minute and 55 seconds, the compressor is stopped.

After the compressor has been stopped, it will be restarted after the compressor start delay if a serial signal can be received again from the indoor control.

(RUN light: ON, TIMER light: 6 time flash)

(i) Sensor disconnection (room temperature, indoor heat exchanger, outdoor heat exchanger, outdoor temperature, discharge pipe)

(i) Room temperature sensor

If the temperature detected by the room temperature sensor is –20ºC or lower continuously for 15 seconds or longer while operation is stopped, an error indication is displayed. (Run light: 2 time flash, Time light: ON)

(ii) Indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor

If the temperature detected by the indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor is –20ºC or lower continuously for 15 seconds or longer while operation is stopped, an error indication is displayed.

Also, if the temperature detected by the indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor is –20ºC or lower continuously for 3 minutes after heating operation has started, the indoor unit's fan speed is forcibly raised to speed 5. After this, the air-conditioner is stopped if the detected temperature remains at –20ºC continuously for 40 minutes. (Run light : 1 time flash, Timer light : ON)

(iii) Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor

If the temperature detected by the outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor is –64ºC or lower continuously for 15 seconds or longer while operation is stopped, an error indication is displayed.

Also, the air-conditioner is stopped if the temperature detected by the outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor remains at –50ºC or lower continuously for 40 minutes after heating operation has started. (Run light : keep flashing, Timer light : 2 time flash)

(iv) Outdoor air temperature sensor

If the temperature detected by the outdoor air temperature sensor is –64ºC or lower continuously for 15 seconds or longer while operation is stopped, an error indication is displayed. (Run light : keep flashing, Timer light : 1 time flash)

(v) Discharge pipe temperature sensor

After the compressor has operated for 9 minutes continuously, if there is a disconnected signal for the discharge pipe temperature sensor detected -64°C for 15 seconds, the compressor stops. After a 3-minute delay, it restarts, but if an abnormality is detected 4 times continuously, the air-conditioner is stopped fully and an error indication is displayed. (Run light : keep flashing, Timer light : 4 time flash)

2.3.5 APPLICATION DATA

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Please read these "Safety Precautions" first then accurately execute the installation work.

ON , those points are listed in the ⚠WARNING section. However, there is also a possibility of serious consequences in relationship to the points listed in the ⚠CAUTION section as well. In either case, important safety related information is indicated, so by all means, properly observe all that is mentioned.

- After completing the installation, along with confirming that no abnormalities were seen from the operation tests, please explain operating methods as well as maintenance methods to the user (customer) of this equipment, based on the owner's manual. Moreover, ask the customer to keep this sheet together with the owner's manual.

⚠ WARNING

- To disconnect the appliance from the mains supply this appliance must be connected to the mains by means of a circuit breaker or a switch (use a recognized 20A) with a contact separation of at least 3mm.
- The appliance shall be installed in accordance with national wiring regulations.
- This system should be applied to places as households, residences and the like. Application to inferior environment such as engineering shop could cause equipment malfunction.
- Please entrust installation to either the company which sold you the equipment or to a professional contractor. Defects from improper installations can be the cause of water leakage, electric shocks and fires.
- Execute the installation accurately, based on following the installation manual. Again, improper installations can result in water leakage, electric shocks and fires.
- For installation, confirm that the installation site can sufficiently support heavy weight. When strength is insufficient, injury can result from a falling of the unit.
- For electrical work, please see that a licensed electrician executes the work while following the safety standards related to electrical equipment, and local regulations as well as the installation instructions, and that only exclusive use circuits are used.
  Insufficient power source circuit capacity and defective installment execution can be the cause of electric shocks and fires.
- Accurately connect wiring using the proper cable, and insure that the external force of the cable is not conducted to the terminal connection part, through properly securing it. Improper connection or securing can result in heat generation or fire.
- Take care that wiring does not rise upward, and accurately install the lid/service panel.It's improper installation can also result heat generation or fire.
- When setting up or moving the location of the air conditioner, do not mix air etc. or anything other than the designated refrigerant (R410A) within the refrigeration cycle.
  Rupture and injury caused by abnormal high pressure can result from such mixing.
- Always use accessory parts and authorized parts for installation construction. Using parts not authorized by this company can result in water leakage, electric shock, fire and refrigerant leakage.
- Ventilate the work area when refrigerant leaks during the operation.
  Coming in contact with fire, refrigerant could generate toxic gas.
- Confirm after the foundation construction work that refrigerant does not leak.
  If coming in contact with fire of a fan heater, a stove or movable cooking stove, etc., refrigerant leaking in the room could generate toxic gas.
- In joining pipes, do not use conventional (R22) pipng flare nuts, etc. The use of conventional piping materials may lead to the rapture of piping due to higher pressure used for the refrigerant cycle and possible personal injury.
  (Use only piping material designed specifically for R410A)

⚠ CAUTION

- Execute proper grounding. Do not connect the ground wire to a gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod or a telephone ground wire.
  Improper placement of ground wires can result in electric shock.
- The installation of an earth leakage breaker is necessary depending on the established location of the unit.
  Not installing an earth leakage breaker may result in electric shock.
- Do not install the unit where there is a concern about leakage of combustible gas.
  The rare event of leaked gas collecting around the unit could result in an outbreak of fire.
- For the drain pipe, follow the installation manual to insure that it allows proper drainage and thermally insulate it to prevent condensation. Inadequate plumbing can result in water leakage and water damage to interior items.
- Do not place objects near the outdoor unit or allow leaves to gather around the unit. If there are objects or leaves around the outdoor unit, small animals may enter unit and contact electrical parts resulting in break down, emission of smoke or flame.

(1) Selection of location for installation

(a) Indoor unit

(i) Where there is no obstructions to the air flow and where the cooled

(iii) A place where there will be enough space for servicing. (Where space mentioned right can be secured)

(iv) Where wiring and the piping work will be easy to conduct.

(v) The place where receiving part is not exposed to the direct rays of the sun or the strong rays of the street lighting.

(vi) A place where it can be easily drained.

(vii) A place separated at least 1m away from the television or the radio. (To prevent interfence to images and sound.)

(b) Outdoor unit

(i) A place where good air circulation can be obtained and where rain, snow or sunshine will not directly strike the unit.

- A place where intake air temperature is over 46°C , it is desirable to install a roof avoiding the sunlight.

(ii) A place where discharged hot air or unit's operating sound will not be a nuisance to the neighborhood.

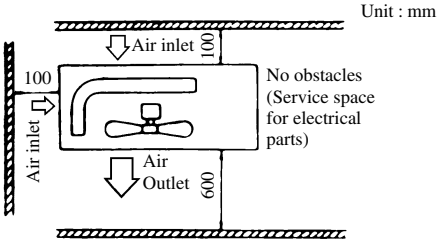
(iii) A place where servicing space can be secured.

(iv) A place where vibration will not be enlarged.

(v) Avoid installing in the following places.

- A place near the bedroom and the like, so that the operation noise will cause no trouble.
- A place where there is possibility of flammable gas leakage.
- A place exposed to strong wind.

(vi) Do not install the unit near the seaside, or where there is possibility of chlorine gas generation.



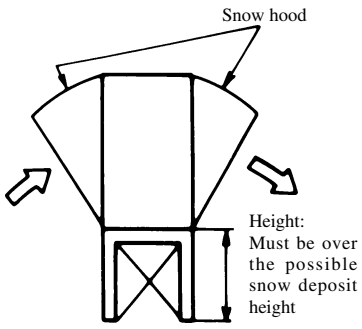
Notes (1) Blowing out port and suction port on the back side of the unit can be installed at a distance of 10cm from walls.
(In case the barrier is 1.2m or above in height, or is overhead, the sufficient space between the unit and wall shall be secured.)

(2) When the unit is installed, the space of the following dimension and above shall be secured.

(vii) In heating operation, snow deposit on the heat-exchanger of outdoor unit must be prevented for keeping the normal performance capacity. (Heat pump type only)

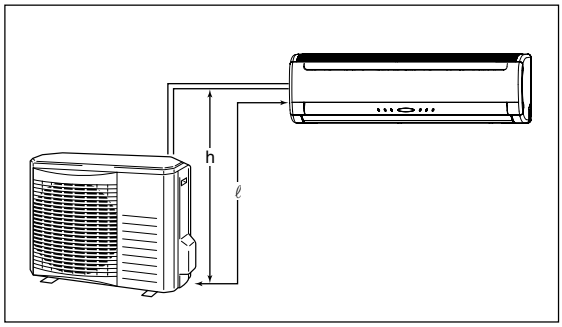
1) Snow-hood on outdoor unit as in drawing, will reduce the frequency of defrost operation.
When installing the snow hood, take care so that the air outlet of the snow hood will not face directly into the most windy direction.

2) Design the base higher than possible snow deposit.



(c) Limitations for one way piping length and vertical height difference.

Item \ Model		All models
One way piping length (ℓ)		25 m
Vertical height difference (h)	Outdoor unit is lower	15 m
	Outdoor unit is higher	15 m

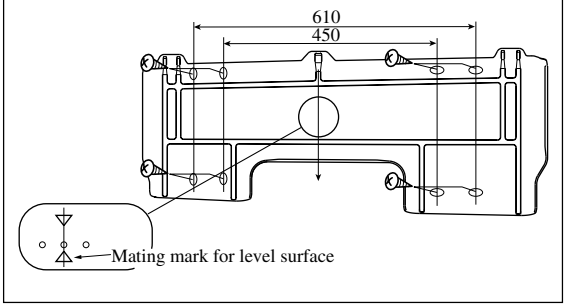


(2) Installation of indoor unit

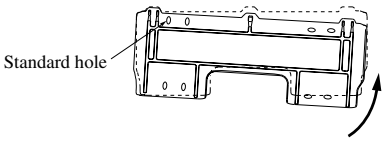
(a) Installation of installation board

(i) Fixing of installation board

checked.)

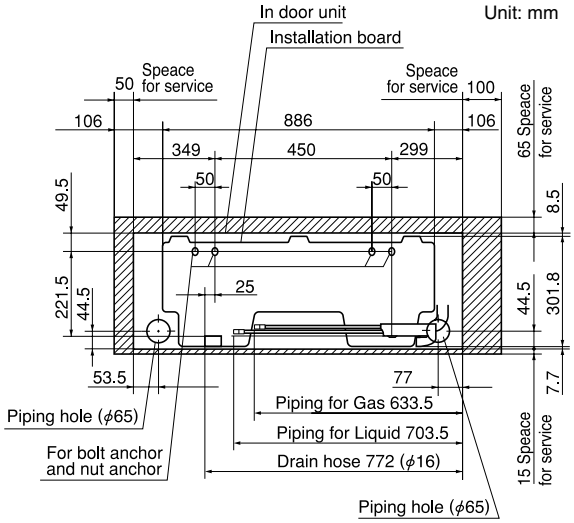


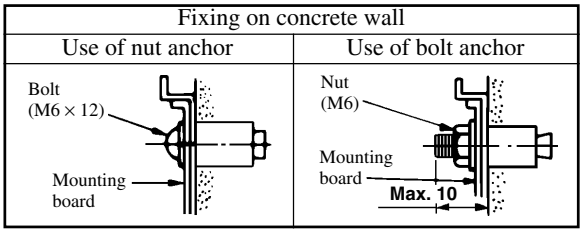
Adjustment of the installation board in the horizontal direction is to be conducted with four screws in a temporary tightened state.



Adjust so that board will be level by turning the board with the standard hole as the center.

FRONT VIEW)

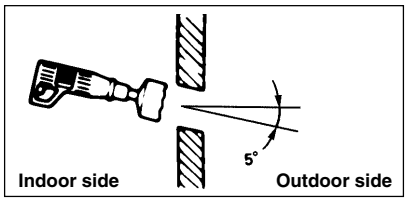




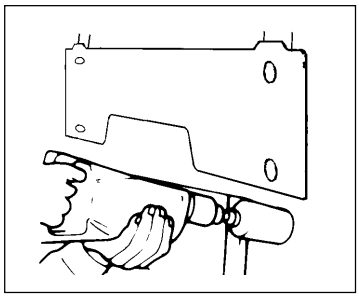
(b) Drilling of holes and fixture sleeve (Option parts)

When drilling the wall that contains a metal lath, wire lath or metal plate, be sure to use pipe hole sleeve sold separately.

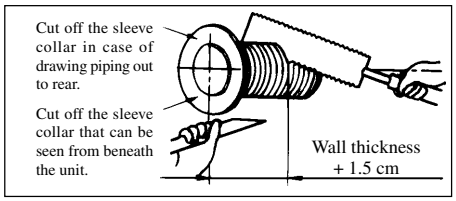
(i) Drill a hole with ø65 whole core drill



Note (1) Drill a hole with incline of 5 degree from indoor side to outdoor side.

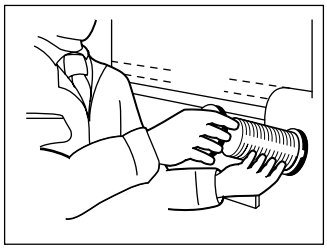


(ii) Adjusting sleeve length

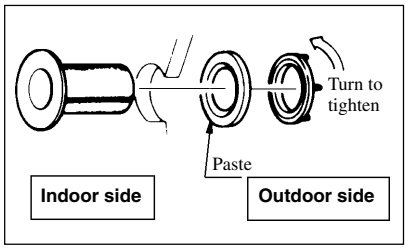


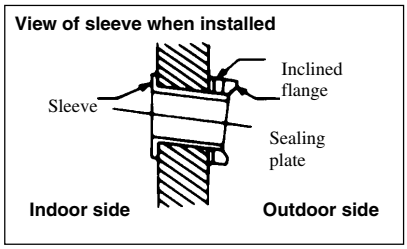
(iii) Install the sleeve

(Inserting sleeve)



(*Sleeve + *Inclined + *Sealing plate)





(c) Preparation of indoor unit

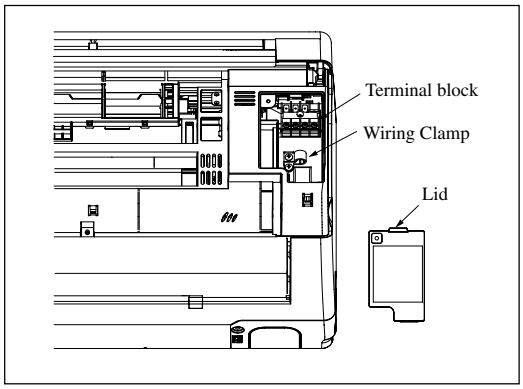
(i) Mounting of connecting wires

1) Open the air inlet panel.

4) Connect the connecting wire securely to the terminal block.

Use cables for interconnection wiring to avoid loosening of the wires.
CENELEC code for cables. Required field cables.
H05RNR4G1.5 (Example)

H	Harmonized cable type
05	300/500 volts
R	Natural-and/or synth, rubber wire insulation
N	Polychloroprene rubber conductors insulation
R	Standed core
4	Number of conductors
G	One conductor of the cable is the earth conductor (yellow/ green)
1.5	Section of copper wire (mm^2)



① Connect the connection wire securely to the terminal block. If the wire is not affixed completely, contact will be poor, and it is dangerous as the terminal block may heat up and catch fire.

② Take care not to confuse the terminal numbers for indoor and outdoor connections.

③ Affix the connection wire using the wiring clamp.

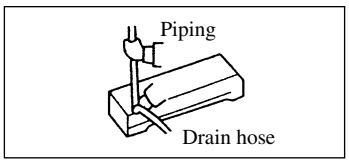
5) Fix the connecting wire by wiring clamp.

6) Attach the lid.

7) Close the air inlet panel.

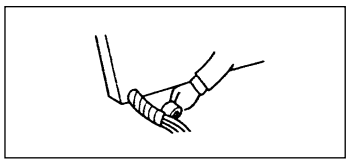
(ii) Installing the support of piping

[Shaping the piping]



- Hold the bottom of the piping and fix direction before stretching it and shaping it.

[Taping of the exterior]



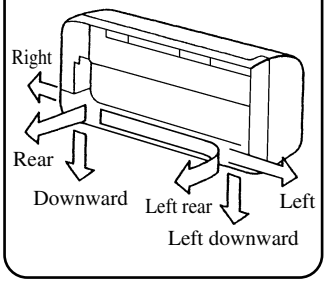
- Tape only the portion that goes through the wall. Always tape the crossover wiring with the piping.

[When the hose is extended to left and taken out from the rear center]

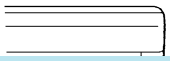
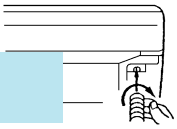
[Top View]

Left-hand-sided-piping	Right-hand-sided-piping
Piping in the left rear direction Piping in the left direction	Piping in the right rear direction Piping in the right direction

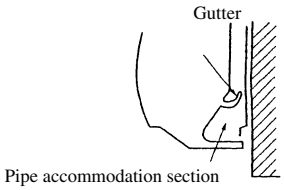
Piping is possible in the rear, left, left lear, left downward, right or downward direction.



[Drain hose changing procedures]

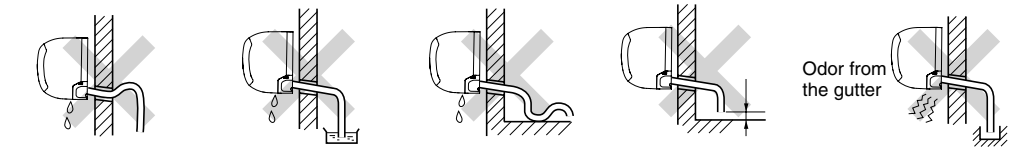
1. Remove the drain hose.	2. Remove the drain cap.	3. Insert the drain cap.	4. Connect the drain hose.
			
● Remove the drain hose, making it rotate.	● Remove it with hand or pliers.	● Insert the drain cap which was removed at proce-dure "2" securely using a hexagonal wrench, etc. Note: Be careful that if it is not inserted securely, water leakage may occur.	● Insert the drain hose securely, makingit rotate. Note: Be careful that if it is not inserted securely, water leakage may occur.

Since this air conditioner has been designed to collect dew drops on the rear surface to the drain pan, do not attach the power cord above the gutter.

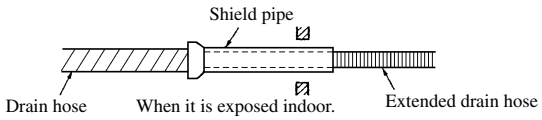


Drainage

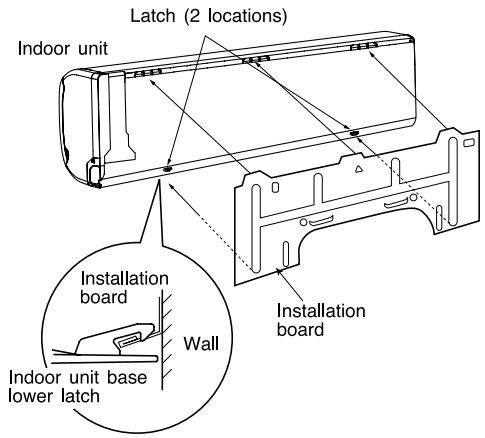
- Arrange the drain hose in a downward angle.
- Avoid the following drain piping.



- Pour water to the drain pan located under the heat exchanger, and ensure that the water is discharged outdoor.
- When the extended drain hose is indoor, always use a shield pipe (to be arranged by the user) and ensure it is thermally insulated.



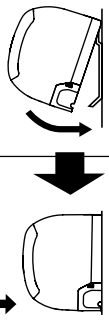
(iii) Fixing of indoor unit



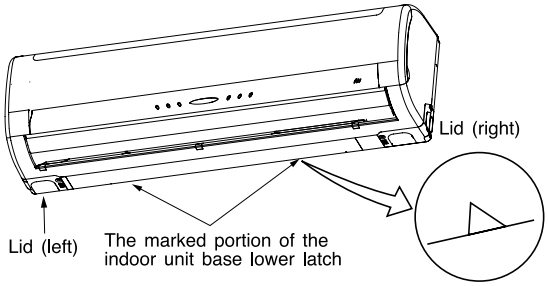
Installation Steps

① Pass the pipe through the hole in the wall, and hook the upper part of the indoor unit to the installation board.

② Gently push the lower part to secure the unit.



- How to remove the indoor unit from the installation board
  ① Push up at the marked portion of the indoor unit base lower latch, and slightly pull it toward you. (both right and left hand sides) (The indoor unit base lower latch can be removed from the installation board)
  ② Push up the indoor unit upward. So the indoor unit will be removed from the installation board.



(3) Installation of outdoor unit

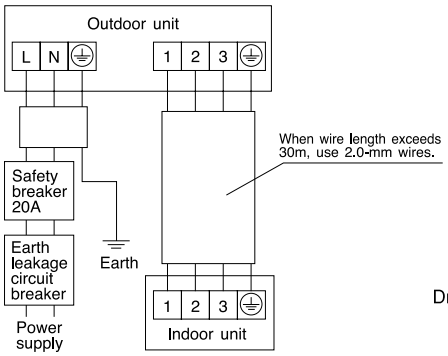
(a) Installation of outdoor unit

(i) Make sure that the unit is stable in installation. Fix the unit to stable base.

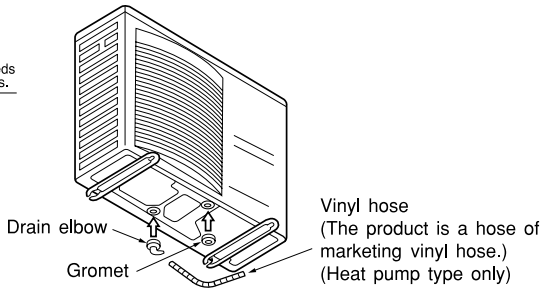
(ii) When installing the unit at a higher place or where it could be toppled by strong winds, secure the unit firmly with foundation

(iv) Connect using ground screw located near ⏚ mark.

(v) In areas where the temperatures drop below 0ºC for several continuous days, do not install a drain elbow. (Water dischange could stop due to freezing.) (Heat pump type only)



Power supply code
CENELEC code for cables requiring field cables
H05RNR3G2.5

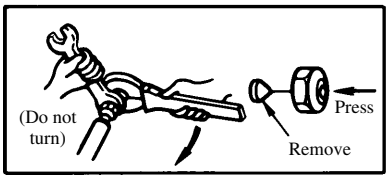


(4) Refrigerant piping

(a) Preparation

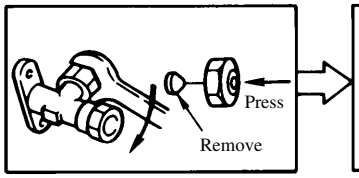
Keep the openings of the pipes covered with tapes etc. to prevent dust, sand, etc. from entering them.

Indoor unit side

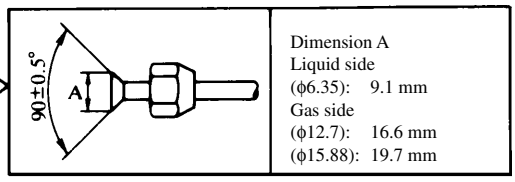


- Remove the flared nuts. (on both liquid and gas sides)

Outdoor unit side



- Remove the flared nuts. (on both liquid and gas sides)

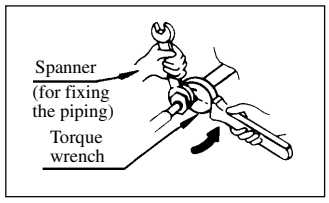


- Install the removed flared nuts to the pipes to be connected, then flare the pipes.

(b) Connection of refrigerant piping

Indoor unit side

- Connect firmly gas and liquid side pipings by Torque wrench.



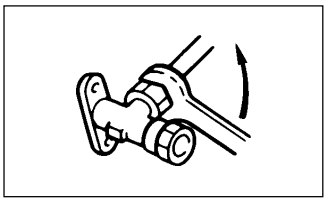
- Specified torquing value:

Liquid side (ø6.35) : 14.0~18.0N·m (1.4~1.8kgf·m)
Gas side (ø12.7) : 49.0~61.0N·m (4.9~6.1kgf·m)
(ø15.88) : 68.0~82.0N·m (6.8~8.2kgf·m)

- Always use a Torque wrench and back up spanner to tighten the flare nut.

Outdoor unit side

- Connect firmly gas and liquid side pipings by Torque wrench.



- Specified torquing value:

Liquid side (ø6.35) : 14.0~18.0N·m (1.4~1.8kgf·m)
Gas side (ø12.7) : 49.0~61.0N·m (4.9~6.1kgf·m)
(ø15.88) : 68.0~82.0N·m (6.8~8.2kgf·m)

- Use one more spanner to fix the valve.

(c) Air purge

(i) Tighten all flare nuts in the pipings both indoor and outside will so as not to cause leak.

(ii) Connect service valve, charge hose, manifold valve and vacuum pump as is illustrated below.

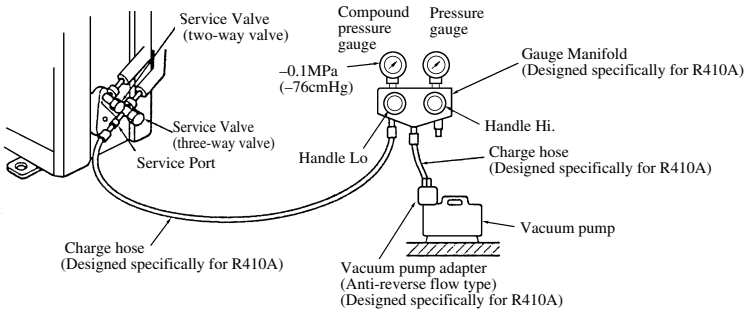
(iii) Open manifold valve handle Lo to its full width, and perform vacuum or evacuation.

Continue the vacuum or evacuation operation for 15 minutes or more and check to see that the vacuum gauge reads – 0.1

ded wrench.

(v) Detach the charge hoses.

(vi) Check for possible leakage of gas in the connection parts of both indoor and outdoor.



- Since the system uses service ports differing in diameter from those found on the conventional models, a charge hose (for R22) presently in use is not applicable.
  Please use one designed specifically for R410A
- Please use an anti-reverse flow type vacuum pump adapter so as to prevent vacuum pump oil from running back into the system.
  Oil running back into an air-conditioning system may cause the refrigerant cycle to break down.

Additional refrigerant charge

When refrigerant piping exceeds 15m conduct additional refrigerant charge by weight after refrigerant piping completion.
Additional charge amount per meter = 25g/m (71 type), 20g/m (63 type)

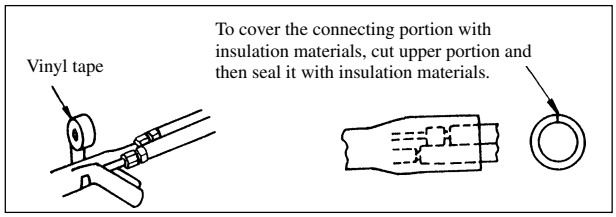
[Example] (71 type)

How much amount of additional charge for 25m piping?

(25 – 15)m × 25g/m = 250g | 250g for additional charge |

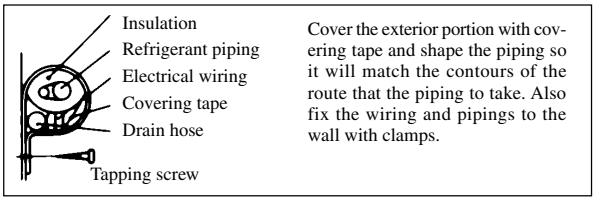
(d) Insulation of connecting portion

(i) Cover the connecting portion of the refrigerant piping with the pipe cover and seal them.
If neglecting to do so, moisture occurs on the piping and water will drip out.



(ii) Finishing and fixing

1) Tie up the piping with wrapping tape, and shape it so that it conforms to which the pipe is attached.
2) Fix them with clamps as right figure.



(5) Test run

(a) Conduct trial run after confirming that there is no gas leaks.

(b) When conducting trial run set the remote controller thermostat to continuous operation position. However when the power source is cut off or when the unit's operation switch is turned off or was turned to fan operation position, the unit will not go into operation in order to protect the compressor.

(c) Insert in electric plug into the electric outlet and make sure that it is not loose.

(i) When there is something wrong with the electric outlet and if the insertion of the electric plug is insufficient, there may occur a burn out.

(ii) It is very important to be careful of above when plugging in the unit to an already furnished electrical outlet.

(d) Explain to the customer on the correct usage of the air conditioner in simple layman's terms.

(e) Make sure that drain flows properly.

(f) Standard operation data

(220/230/240V)

			S1
High pressure (MPa)	Cooling	–	–
	Heating	2.37	2.62
Low pressure (MPa)	Cooling	0.89	0.88
	Heating	–	–
Temp. difference between return air and supply air (°C)	Cooling	12.9	13.4
	Heating	16.2	17.4
Running current (A)	Cooling	10.9/10.5/10.0	11.0/10.6/10.1
	Heating	9.2/8.8/8.5	10.3/9.9/9.5

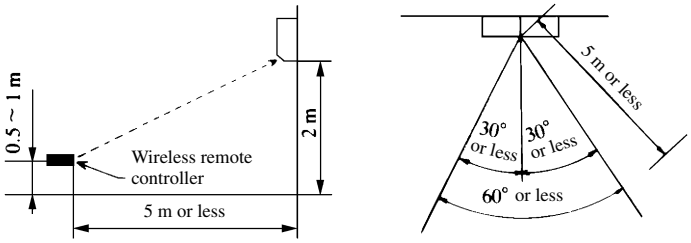
Item \ Model		SRK63CE-S1	SRK71CE-S1
Low pressure (MPa)	Cooling	0.89	0.88
Temp. difference between return air and supply air (°C)	Cooling	12.9	13.4
Running current (A)	Cooling	10.9/10.5/10.0	11.0/10.6/10.1

Note (1) The data are measured at following conditions
Ambient air temperature
Indoor side: Cooling ... 27˚C DB, 19˚C WB, Heating ... 20˚C DB
Outdoor side: Cooling ... 35˚C DB, 24˚C WB, Heating ... 7˚C DB, 6˚C WB

(6) Precautions for wireless remote control installation and operation

(a) Wireless remote control covers the following distances:

(i) When operating facing the air conditioner:

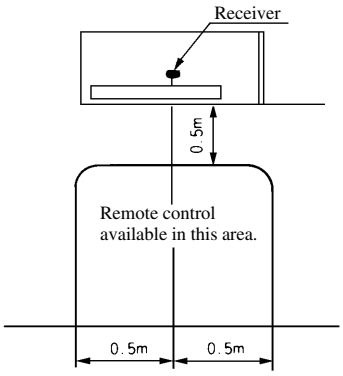


If the distances exceed the area indicated above, be sure to check the receiver status.

Notes (1) The remote control is correctly facing the sensing element of the air conditioner when being manipulated.
(2) The typical coverage is indicated (in the left illustration). It may be more or less depending on the installation.
(3) The coverage may be less or even nil. If the sensing element is exposed to strong light, such as direct sunlight, illumination, etc., or dust is deposited on it or it is used behind a curtain, etc.

(ii) When manipulating the remote control mounted on a wall:

Make sure that it works normally (i.e., transmission/reception signal is audible) before mounting.



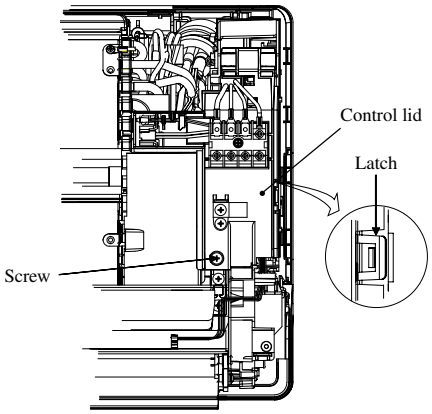
(7) Installation of wired remote control and super link adapter (SC-AD-E) (Optional parts)

(a) Modifying the indoor unit's printed circuit board

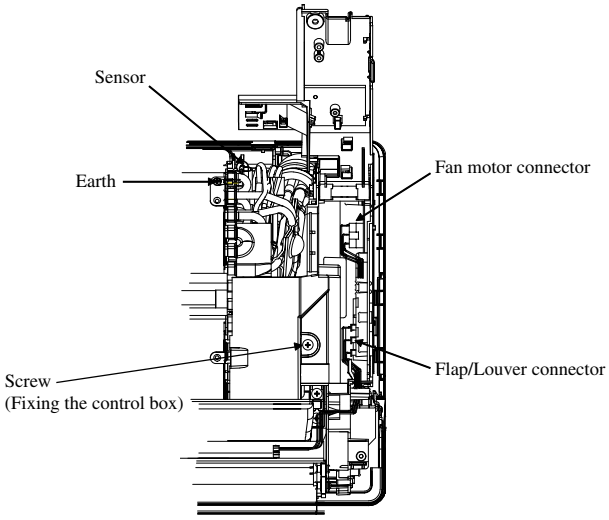
(ii) Remove the front panel (Refer to the installation directions).

(iii) Remove the control box

- Remove the screw and the latch, and open the control lid.

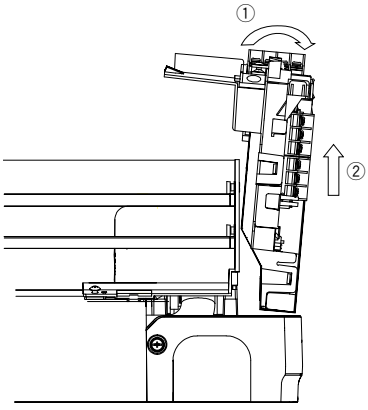


- Remove the flap connector, the louver connector, the fan motor connector, the earth and the sensor.



- Remove the screw fixing the control box.
- Remove the control box from the base .

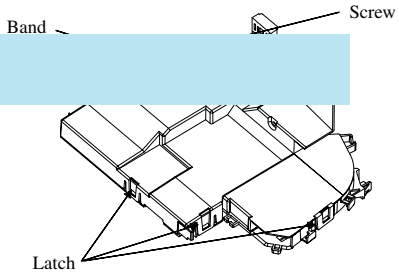
※ It is possible to remove the control box from the base by leaning the control box slightly to right-hand side and pulling it toward you.



(iv) Cut the jumper attached on the board.

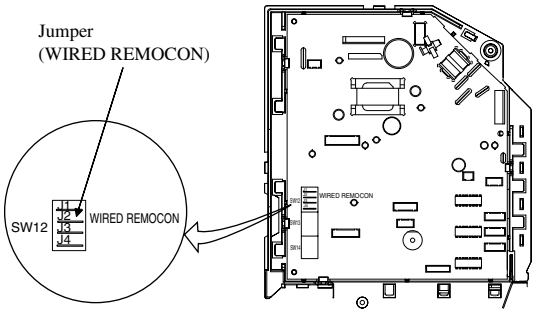
- Remove the upper box.

※ Remove the screw, the latch and the band.



- Cut the jumper (printed "WIRED REMOCON") attached on the board.

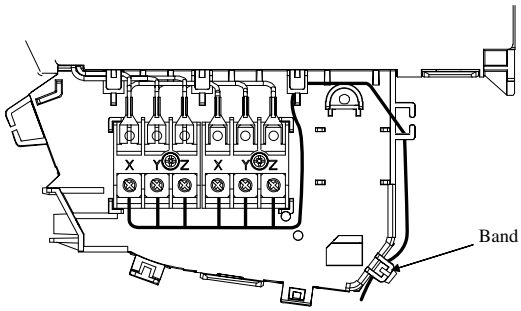
※ It is impossible to control by the wireless remote control after cutting the jumper.



- Install the upper box.

(v) Connect the wire

- Connect the wired remote control and super link wire.
  (Please refer to the installation manual of attachment in wired remote control for details)



※ Each wire can be connected the left or right terminal block.

(vi) Install the control box.

※ Be careful not to bite the wire.

(vii) Install the front panel.

(vii) Install the air inlet panel.

Notes (1) One remote control cannot control two or more indoor units.
(2) To connect the super link, the optional SC-AD-E (super link adapter) is required.

(b) Installation of wired remote control (Optional parts)

(i) Selection of installation location

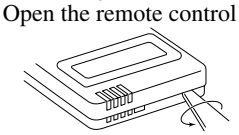
Avoid the following locations

1) Direct sunlight.
2) Close to heating device

(ii) Installation procedure

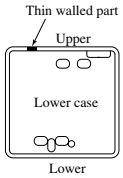
1) Exposed fiting

a) Open the remote control case.



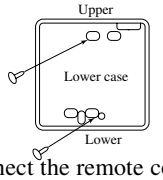
- Put a screw driver (flat-head) into the concavity made on the upper part of a remote control unit and twist it lightly to open the casing.

b) The cord of a remote control unit can only be pulled out in the upward direction.



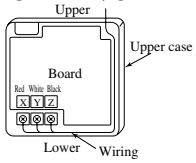
- Cut off with nippers or a knife a thin walled part made on the upper end of the rmote control unit's bottom casing, and then remove burrs with a file or the like.

c) Fix the remote control unit's bottom casing onto a wall with two wood screws supplied as accessories.



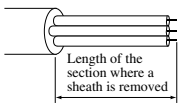
d) Connect the remote control to the terminal block. Connect the terminals of the remote control to the indoor unit with the same numbers. Because the terminal block has polarity, the device becomes inoperative if there are wrong connections.

Terminals: ⓧRed wire, ⓨWhite wire, ⓩBlack wire



- Use a cord of 0.3mm^2 (recommended) - 0.5mm^2 (maximum) for a remote control unit cord. Remove a sheathe of the remote control unit cord for the section laid within the remote control unit casing.

  The length of each wire that should be left after a sheath is removed is as follows:



Black: 195mm, White: 205mm, Red: 215mm

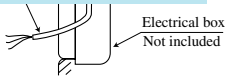
e) Replace the top casing as before.

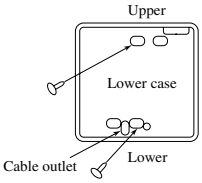
f) Use a cord clamp to attach the remote control cord to the wall.

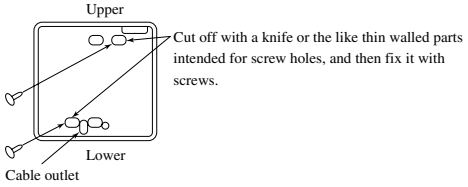
g) Set the functions according to the types of in door unit. See Section "Function Setting".

2) Recessed fitting

a) The Electrical box and remote control (shield wire must be use in case of extension) are first embedded.







b) Remove the upper case to the remote control.

c) Attach the lower case to the Electricl box with two M4 screws. (Head diameter must be 8 mm). Choose either of the following two positions in fixing it with screws.

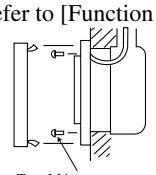
d) Connect the remote cord to the remote control.

Refer to [Exposed Fitting].

e) Installation work is completed by replacing the top casing onto the bottom casing as before.

f) Set the function switch according to the type of the indoor unit.

Refer to [Function setting].



Precation in Extending the Remote control cord

▶ Maximum total extension 600m.

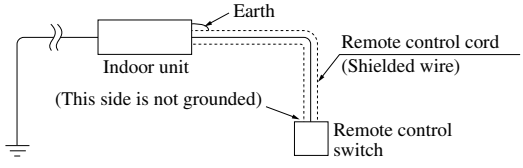
The cord should be a shielded wire.

● For all types : 0.3mm^2×3 cores

Note (1) Use cables up to 0.5mm^2 (maximum) for those laid inside the remote control unit casing and connect to a different size cable at a vicinity point outside the remote control unit, if necessary.

Within 100-200m····· 0.5 mm^2 ×3 cores
Within 300m····· 0.75 mm^2 ×3 cores
Within 400m····· 1.25 mm^2 ×3 cores
Within 600m····· 2.0 mm^2 ×3 cores

● The shielded wire should be grounded at one side only.



(c) Setting functions using the wired remote control

(i) The default settings of this unit's functions are as follows: If you want to charge a setting, follow the procedure found in the installation manual and set to your desired setting.

Function number Ⓐ	Function description Ⓑ	Setting Ⓒ	Default setting
(01)	GRILLE SET (Grille lift panel setting)	INVALID	○
		50Hz AREA ONLY	
		60Hz AREA ONLY	
02	AUTO RUN SET	AUTO RUN ON	○
		AUTO RUN OFF	
03	TEMP S/W	VALID	○
		INVALID	
04	MODE S/W	VALID	○
		INVALID	
05	ON/OFF S/W	VALID	○
		INVALID	
06	FANSPEED S/W	VALID	○
		INVALID	
07	LOUVER S/W	VALID	○
		INVALID	
08	TIMER S/W	VALID	○
		INVALID	
(09)	SENSOR S/W (Remote control sensor setting)	SENSOR OFF (Invalid)	○
		SENSOR ON (Valid)	
10	POWER FAILURE COMPENSATION SET	INVALID	○
		VALID	✻
(11)	VENTI SET	NO VENTI	○
		VENTI LINK SET	
		NO VENTI LINK	○
12	TEMP RANGE SET	DISP CHANGE	○
		NO DISP CHANGE	
13	I/U FAN SPEED (Indoor unit fan speed setting)	3 FAN SPEED	○
		2 FAN SPEED	
		1 FAN SPEED	
14	MODEL TYPE	HEAT PUMP	○
		COOLING ONLY	
15	EXTERNAL CONTROL SET	INDIVIDUAL OPERATION	○
		SAME OPERATION FOR ALL UNITS	
16	ERROR DISP SET	ERROR DISP	○
		NO ERROR DISP	
17	POSITION (Louver control setting)	FIX (1 OF 4) (4 position stop)	○
		IN MOTION (Free stop)	
(18)	˚C/˚F SET	˚C	○
		˚F	

Notes(1) Setting marked with [○] are the default setting.
(2) Setting marked with [✻] are those that are set automatically according to an indoor unit or an outdoor unit connected. Please check default settings with the indoor unit's installation manual.
(3) When Item 17 : POSITION is changed, please also change Item 04 POSITION setting found in Indoor unit functions .
(4) The SRK model cannot set the items described in ( ) in the function number Ⓐ.

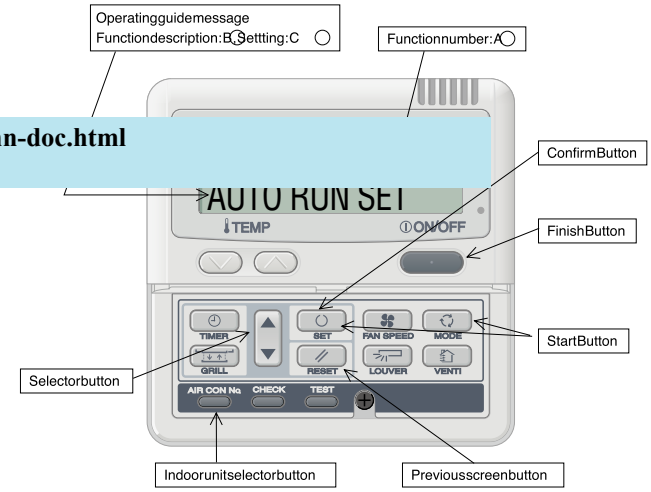
Function number Ⓐ	Function description Ⓑ	Setting Ⓒ	Default setting
(01)	Hi CEILING SET	STANDARD (Mild mode)	✻
		Hi CEILING 1 (Powerful mode)	
(03)	FILTER SIGN SET	NO DISPLAY	✻
		AFTER 180H	
		AFTER 600H	
		AFTER 1000H	
		1000H→STOP	
04	POSITION (Louver control setting)	FIX (1 OF 4) (4 positiion stop)	○
		IN MOTION (Free stop)	
05	EXTERNAL INPUT SET	LEVEL INPUT	○
		PULSE INPUT	
06	OPERATION PERMISSION PROHIBITED	NORMAL OPERATION	○
		VALID	
(07)	ROOM TEMP OFFSET (Heating room temperature offset)	NORMAL OPERATION	○
		TEMP SHIFT +3˚C	
(08)	FAN CONTROL (Heating fan control)	LOW FAN	✻
		STOP→LOW FAN (Intermittent operation)	
(09)	FREEZE PREVENT TEMP	TEMP Hi	
		TEMP Lo	○
(10)	FREEZE PREVENT CONTROL	FAN CONTROL ON	○
		FAN CONTROL OFF	

Notes(1) Setting marked with [○] are the default setting.
(2) Setting marked with [✻] are those that are set automatically according to an indoor unit or an outdoor unit connected. Please check default settings with the indoor unit's installation manual.
(3) The SRK model cannot set the items described in ( ) in the function number Ⓐ.

(ii) Function setting method

1) Stop the air conditioner
2) Press the SET and MODE buttons simultaneously for 3 seconds or longer.

"SET" →
"FUNCTION SET ▼ "



3) Press the SET button.
The unit will enter the function setting mode. The screen display will charge to " FUNCTION ▼".

4) Check which category your desired setting belongs to, " FUNCTION ▼ (Remote control unit function)" or "I/U FUNCTION ▲" (Indoor unit function).

5) Press either ▲ or ▼ button.
Select either " FUNCTION ▼ " or "I/U FUNCTION ▲".

6) Press the SET button.

When " FUNCTION▼ " is selected.

① "DATA LOADING" (blinking) → "FUNCTION"→
"01 GRILLE ↑↓ SET" (Function number: Ⓐ, Function description: Ⓑ)
The screen display will be switched like this.

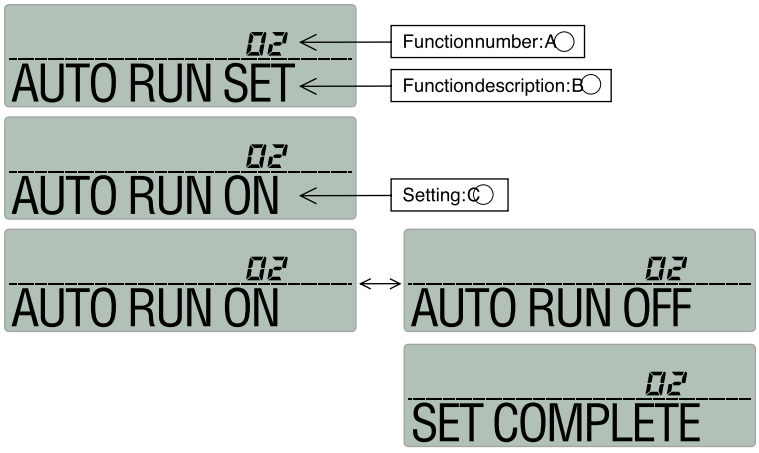
② Press either ▲ or ▼ button.
"Function number: Ⓐ, Function description: Ⓑ "from the list of remote control unit functions will be displayed one by one. Select a desired function.

③ Press the SET button.
The screen display will be switched as follows:
"SETTING" → "Setting: Ⓒ" (ex. "AUTO RUN ON")

④ Press either ▲ or ▼ button.
A list of "Settings: Ⓒ" will be displayed one by one. Select your desired setting.

⑤ Press the SET button.
The selected setting is displayed for 2 seconds, then followed by "SET COMPLETE" and the function setting process is completed.
Then the screen display will be swiched to "Function number: Ⓐ, Function description: Ⓑ," so if you want to continue to set another function, repeat the steps as explained above.
To finish the function setting process, please proceed to Step (iii).

*When" AUTORUNSET"isselected.



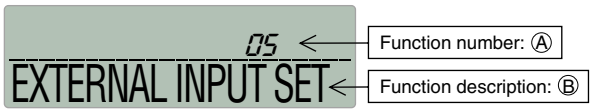
When "I/U FUNCTION ▲" is selected.

① The screen display will be switched as follows:
"◆☝ I/U SELECT" → "○☝ SET" → "I/U No.00" (blinking)

② Press either ▲ or ▼ button.
Select the indoor unit number that you want to change settings. If only one indoor unit is connected, the indoor unit number will not charge, so please proceed to Step ③.
If "ALL I/U ▼ " is selected while indoor group control is in effect, you can set all units to the same settings.

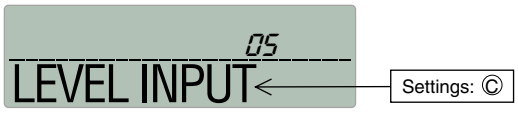
③ Press the SET button.
Indoor unit number indication will change from blinking to lit continuously, The screen display will be switched as follows:
"DATA LOADING" (blinking for about 2 to 23 seconds) → "◆☝ FUNCTION" → "05 EXTERNAL INPUT SET"
(Function number: Ⓐ, Function description: Ⓑ)

* When 05 EXTERNAL INPUT SET is selected.



④ Press either ▲ or ▼ button.
"Function number: Ⓐ, Function description: Ⓑ" from the list of indoor unit functions will be displayed one by one. Select a desired function.

⑤ Press the SET button.
The screen display will be switched as follows: "◆☝ SETTING" → "Setting: Ⓒ" (ex. "LEVEL INPUT")



⑥ Press either ▲ or ▼ button.
A list "Setting: Ⓒ" will be displayed one by one. Select your desired setting.

⑦ Press the SET button.
The selected setting is displayed for 2 seconds, then followed by "SET COMPLETE" and the function setting process is completed.
Then the screen display will be switched to "Function number: Ⓐ, Function description: Ⓑ" so if you want to continue to set another function, repeat the stepa as explained above. To finish the function setting process, please proceed to Step 8.

⑧ Press AIR CON No. button.
The screen display will go back to the indoor unit selection screen (ex. " I/U No.00").

(iii) Press the ON/OFF button.
This ends a function setting process. Even if a function setting process is not completed, this ends the process.
Please note that any setting that is not completed will become void.

- **Pressing the RESET button during a function setting process will allow you to go back the previous step. Please note that any setting that is not completed will become void.**
- **Method of checking the current setting**
  While following the above mentioned step, the setting that appears when the SET button is pressed for each "Function number: Ⓐ, Function description: Ⓑ" is the current setting "Stting: Ⓒ". (When "ALL I/U ▼" is selected, the setting of the indoor unit with the lowest number is displayed)
- **Settings are stored in the controller and not lost even a power outage occurs.**

(iv) Changing the remote control's temperature setting range

1) The temperature setting range of the remote controller can be changed.
Through remote controller button operations, the upper limit and lower limit set temperature values can be changed individually.

eating operation,
id.

Range of Possible Changes
Upper Limit Value: 22~30ºC (valid during heating) Lower Limit Value: 18 ~ 26ºC (valid at times other than during heating)

2) Operation
a) With the remote controller in the stopped state, press the SET and MODE buttons simultaneously for 3 seconds or longer. The display will changed from " SELECT ITEM" → " SET" → "FUNCTION SET ▼ "
b) Press the ▼ button once. The display will change to TEMP RANGE ▲ .
c) Press the SET button to enter the temperature range setting mode.
d) Using the ▲ or ▼ button, select "Hi LIMIT SET ▼ " or "Lo LIMIT SET ▲ ," the press the SET button.
e) If "Hi LIMIT SET" is selected,
① The display changes from " SET UP" → "Hi LIMIT 22ºC " (flashing).
② Using the " " button, select the upper limit value. Display example: "Hi LIMIT 22ºC " (flashing)
③ Press the SET button to fix the setting. Display example: "Hi LIMIT 22ºC" (lighted up)
f) If "Lo LIMIT SET" is selected,
① The display changes from " SET UP" → "Lo LIMIT 26ºC " (flashing).
② Using the " " button, select the upper limit value. Display example: "Lo LIMIT 26ºC " (flashing)
③ Press the SET button to fix the setting. Display example: "Lo LIMIT 26ºC" (lighted up)
g) Press the ON/OFF button to end the setting procedure.
(The procedure also ends if the ON/OFF button is pressed during the setting operation. However, settings which have not been fixed become invalid, so exercise caution.)

- If the RESET button is pressed during a setting operation, the display returns to the previously displayed setting screen. However, settings which have not been fixed become invalid, so exercise caution.
  * If "NO DISP CHANGE" is selected in No. 12, "TEMP RANGE SET" of the remote control's functions, of the function setting modes, the remote control's display does not change even if the temperature range has been changed.

(Example) If the upper limit is set at 28˚C

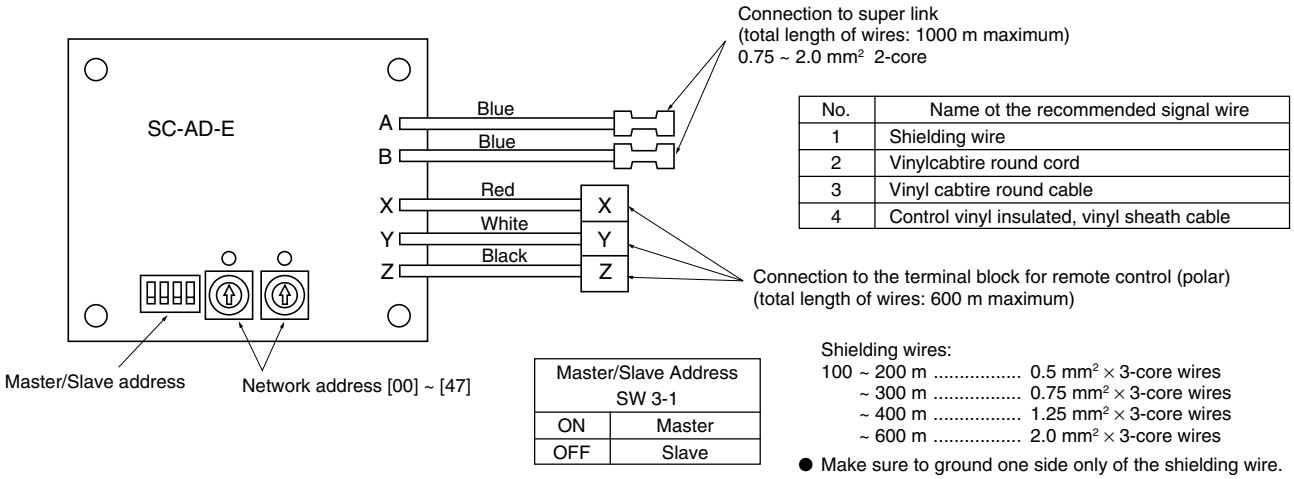
Function No. A	Function Contents B	Setting Contents C	Control Contents
12	TEMP RANGE SET	DISP CHANGE	The remote control's display and sent data upper limit changes to 28°C.
		NO DISP CHANGE	The remote control's display upper limit remains at 30ºC and only the upper limit of the sent data is changed to 28°C.

(d) SUPER LINK ADAPTER (SC-AD-E)

(i) Functions

1) Transmits the settings from the Super link option to the indoor units.
2) Returns the priority indoor unit data in response to a data request from the Super link option.
3) Inspects the error status of connected indoor units and transmits the inspection codes to the Super link option.

(ii) Wiring connection diagram



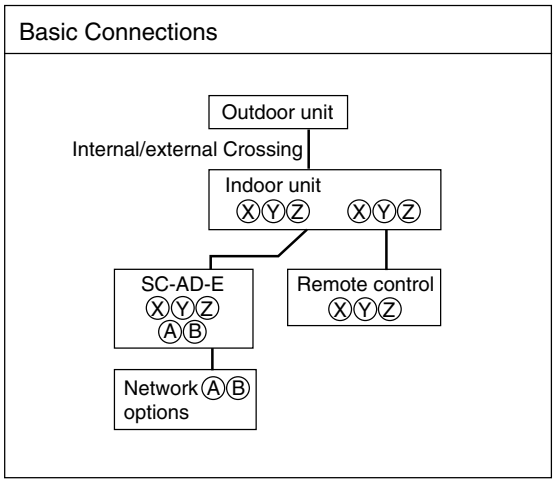
No.	Name ot the recommended signal wire
1	Shielding wire
2	Vinylcabtire round cord
3	Vinyl cabtire round cable
4	Control vinyl insulated, vinyl sheath cable

Master/Slave Address SW 3-1	
ON	Master
OFF	Slave

Shielding wires:
100 ~ 200 m ..... 0.5 mm² × 3-core wires
~ 300 m ..... 0.75 mm² × 3-core wires
~ 400 m ..... 1.25 mm² × 3-core wires
~ 600 m ..... 2.0 mm² × 3-core wires

● Make sure to ground one side only of the shielding wire.

1) Set the super link network address with SW1 (10-position) and SW2 (1-position).
2) Without a remote control (no wired remote control and no wireless remote control), set SC-AD-E SW3-1 to ON (Master).



2.3.6 MAINTENANCE DATA

(1) Troubleshooting procedures for electrical equipment

(a) Cautions

① When working on indoor units, let the unit sit for about 1 minute after turning off the power before you begin work. When working on an outdoor unit, there may be an electrical charge applied to the main circuit (electrolytic condenser), so begin work only after discharging this electrical charge (to DC 10 V or lower).

② When taking out printed circuit boards, be sure to do so without exerting force on the circuit boards or package components.

③ When disconnecting and connecting connectors, take hold of the connector housing and do not pull on the lead wires.

(b) Items to check before troubleshooting

① Have you thoroughly investigated the details of the trouble which the customer is complaining about?

② Is the air conditioner running? Is it displaying any self-diagnosis information?

③ Is a power supply with the correct voltage connected?

④ Are the control lines connecting the indoor and outdoor units wired correctly and connected securely?

⑤ Is the outdoor unit's refrigerant service valve open?

(c) Troubleshooting procedure (If the air conditioner does not run at all)

If the air conditioner does not run at all, diagnose the trouble using the following troubleshooting procedure. If the air conditioner is running but breaks down, proceed to troubleshooting step (d).

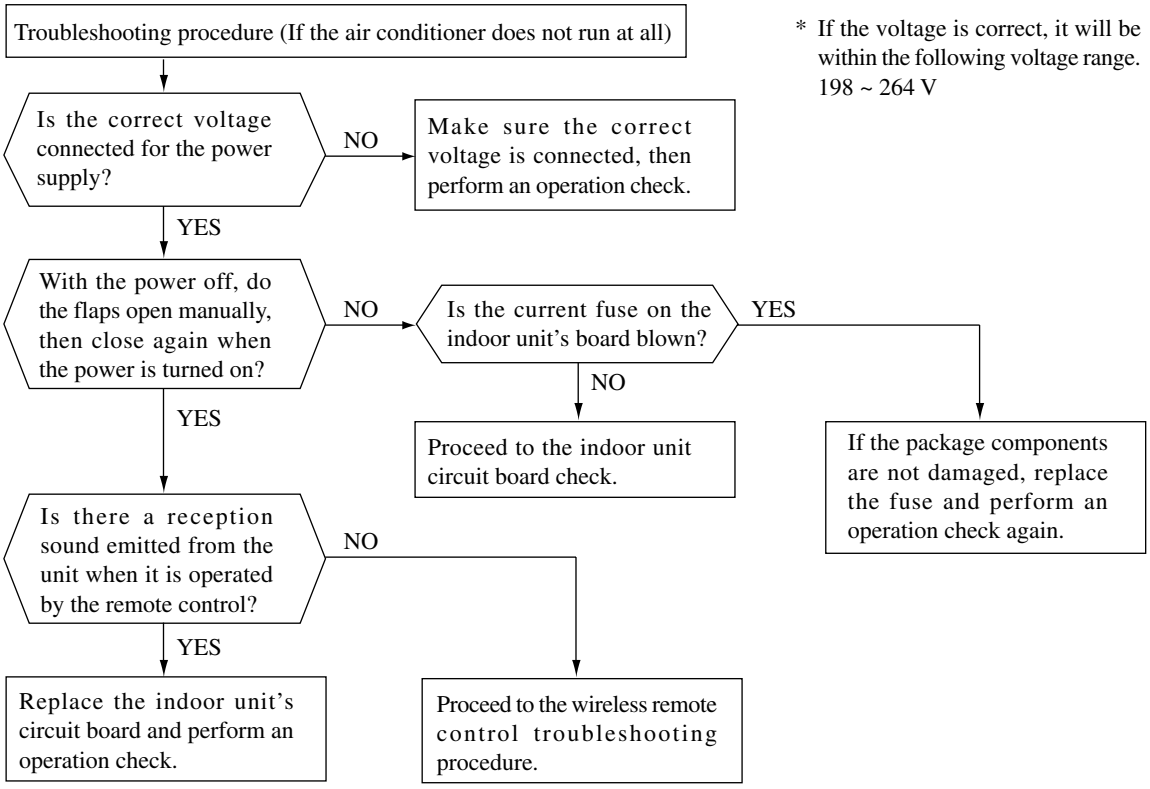
Important When all the following conditions are met, we say that the air conditioner will not run at all.

① The Run light does not light up.

② The flaps do not open.

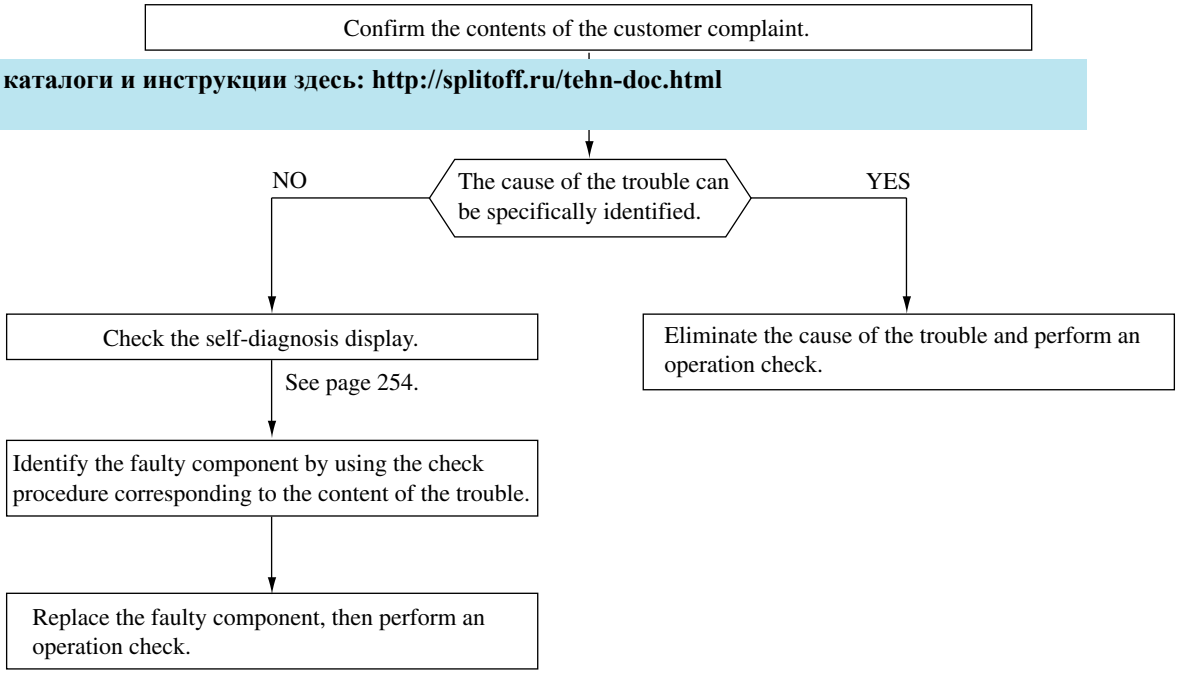
③ The indoor unit fan motors do not run.

④ The self-diagnosis display does not function.



* If the voltage is correct, it will be within the following voltage range.
198 ~ 264 V

(d) Troubleshooting procedure (If the air conditioner runs)



Note (1) Even in cases where only intermittent stop data are generated, the air conditioning system is normal. However, if the same protective operation recurs repeatedly (3 or more times), it will lead to customer complaints. Judge the conditions in comparison with the contents of the complaints.

(e) Self-diagnosis table

When this air conditioner performs an emergency stop, the reason why the emergency stop occurred is displayed by the flashing of display lights. If the air conditioner is operated using the remote control 3 minutes or more after the emergency stop, the trouble

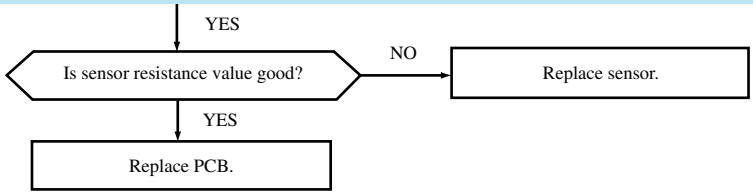
display panel		Wired remote control display	Description of trouble	Cause	Display (flashing) condition
Run light	Timer light				
ON	6 time flash	E 5	Error of signal transmission	• Defective power supply, Broken signal wire, defective in/outdoor unit boards	When there is no signal between the indoor unit's board and outdoor unit's board for 10 seconds or longer (when the power is turned on), or when there is no signal for 1 minute 50 seconds or longer (during operation)(the compressor is stopped).
1 time flash	ON	E 6	Heat exchanger sensor error	• Broken heat exchanger sensor wire, poor connector connection	When a heat exchanger sensor wire disconnection is detected while operation is stopped. (If a temperature of –20ºC or lower is detected for 3 minutes, it is judged that the wire is disconnected.) (Not displayed during operation.)
2 time flash	ON	E 7	Room temperature sensor error	• Broken room temperature sensor wire, poor connector connection	When a room temperature sensor wire disconnection is detected while operation is stopped. (If a temperature of –20ºC or lower is detected for 15 seconds, it is judged that the wire is disconnected.) (Not displayed during operation.)
6 time flash	ON	E 16	Indoor fan motor error	• Defective fan motor, poor connector connection	When conditions for turning the indoor unit's fan motor on exist during air conditioner operation, an indoor unit fan motor speed of 300 rpm or lower is measured for 30 seconds or longer. (The air conditioner stops.)
ON	5 time flash	E 36	Over heat of compressor	• Gas shortage, defective discharge pipe sensor, closed service valve	When the value of the discharge pipe sensor exceeds the set value. (The air conditioner stops.)
Keeps flashing	2 time flash	E 37	Outdoor heat exchanger sensor error	• Broken heat exchanger sensor wire, poor connector connection	When a sensor wire disconnection is detected while operation is stopped. (If a temperature of –64ºC or lower is detected for 15 seconds, it is judged that the wire is disconnected.) (Not displayed during operation.)
Keeps flashing	1 time flash	E 38	Outdoor air temperature sensor error	• Broken outdoor air temp. sensor wire, poor connector connection	When an outdoor air temperature sensor wire disconnection is detected while operation is stopped. (If a temperature of –64ºC or lower is detected for 15 seconds, it is judged that the wire is disconnected.) (Not displayed during operation.)
Keeps flashing	4 time flash	E 39	Discharge pipe sensor error	• Broken discharge pipe sensor wire, poor connector connection	After the compressor has operated for 9 minutes continuously, if there is a disconnected signal for the discharge pipe temperature sensor detected -64°C for 15 seconds.
ON	2 time flash	E 59	Abnormality of outdoor unit	• Broken compressor wire • Broken discharge pipe sensor wire, poor connector connection • Compressor blockage	Cooling operation When the indoor heat exchanger temperature does not fall to 25˚C or below for 40 minutes after 5 minutes have elapsed since the compressor operation start. Heating operation ① The indoor heat exchanger temperature < 5˚C for 5 minutes and more ② 5˚C ≦ the indoor heat exchanger temperature < 30˚C for 40 minutes and more
—	—	E 1	Error of wired remote control wiring	• Broken wired remote control wire, defective in door unit boards	The wired remote control wire Y is open. The wired remote control wires X and Y are reversely connected. Noise is penetrating the wired remote control lines. The wired remote control or indoor control PCB is faulty. (Thhe communications circuit is faulty.)

Notes (1) The air conditioner cannot be restarted using the remote controller for 3 minutes after operation stops.
(2) The wired remote control is optional parts.

(f) Inspection procedures corresponding to detail of trouble

Sensor error

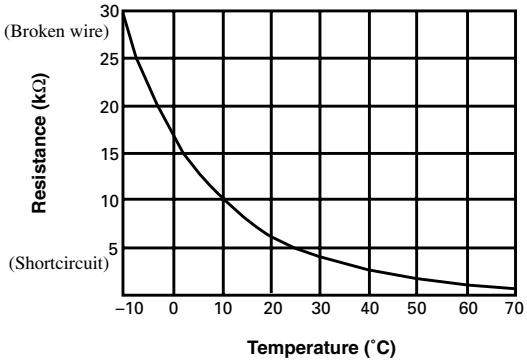
[Broken sensor wire, connector poor connection]



◆ **Discharge pipe sensor temperature characteristics**

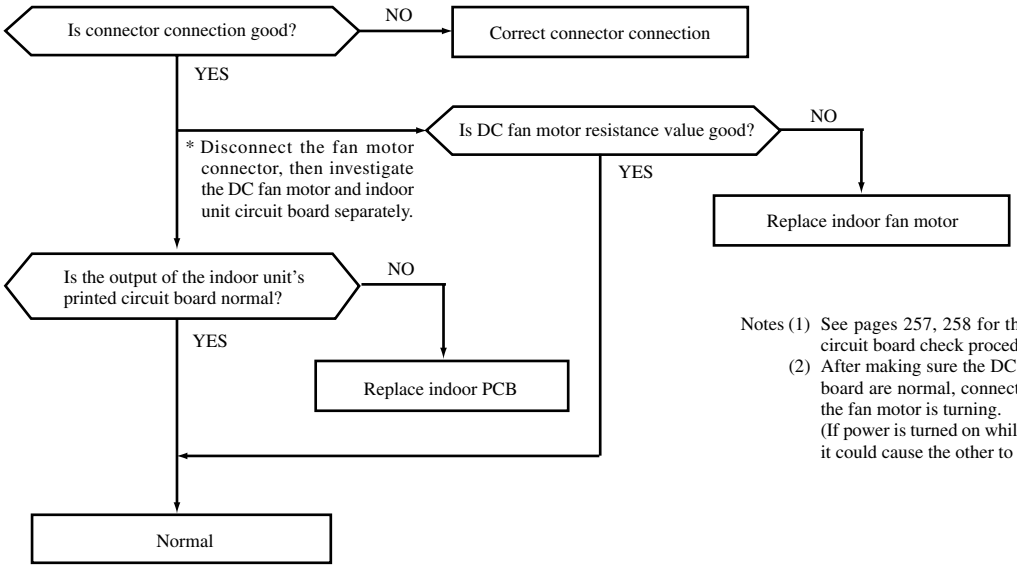
Temperature (˚C)	Resistance (kΩ)	Temperature (˚C)	Resistance (kΩ)
0	164	70	8.7
5	127	75	7.3
10	99	80	6.2
15	78	85	5.3
20	62	90	4.5
25	50	95	3.9
30	40	100	3.3
35	32	105	2.9
40	26	110	2.5
45	21	115	2.2
50	17	120	1.9
55	14	125	1.6
60	12	130	1.4
65	10	135	1.3

◆ **Sensor temperature characteristics (Room temp., indoor unit heat exchanger temp., outdoor unit heat exchanger temp., outdoor air temp.)**



Indoor fan motor error

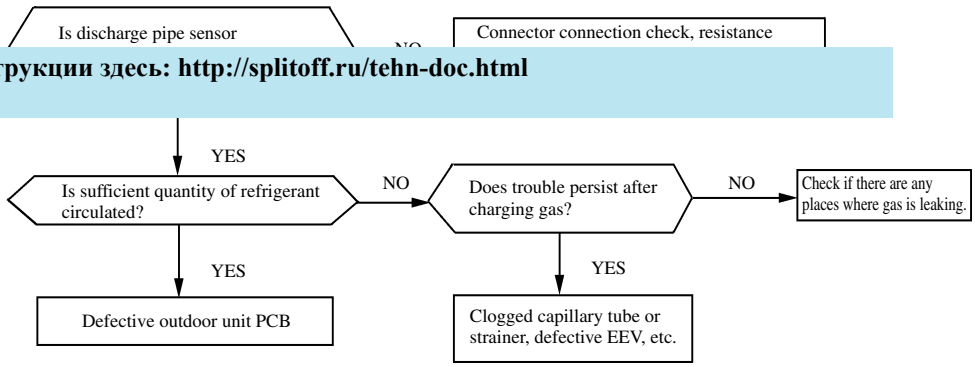
[Defective fan motor, connector poor connection, defective PCB]



Notes (1) See pages 257, 258 for the DC fan motor and indoor unit circuit board check procedure.
(2) After making sure the DC fan motor and indoor unit circuit board are normal, connect the connectors and confirm that the fan motor is turning.
(If power is turned on while one or the other is broken down, it could cause the other to break down also.)

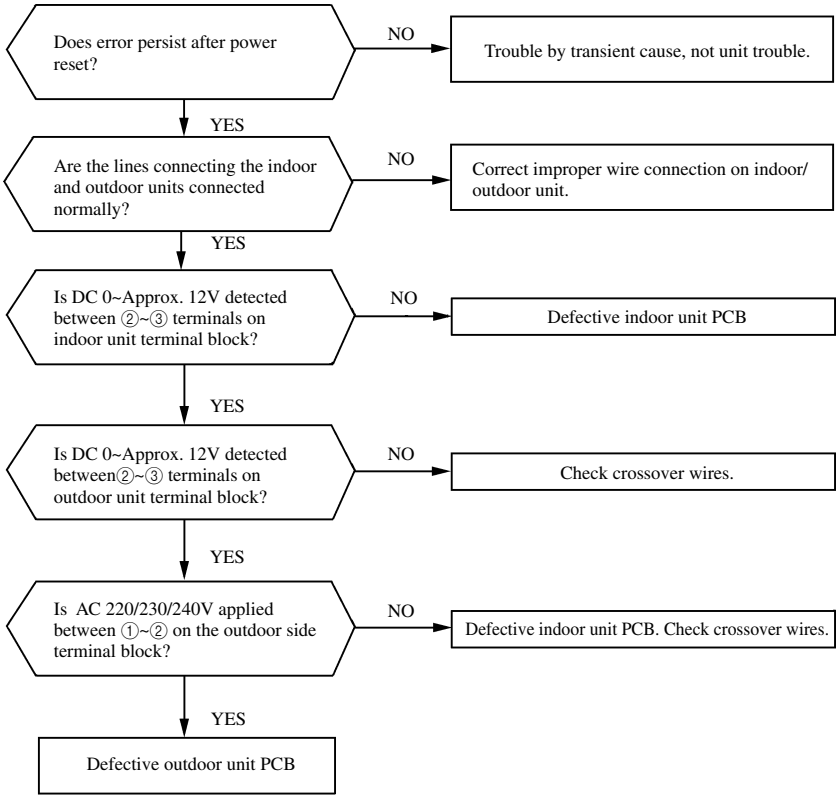
Over heat of compressor

[Gas shortage, defective discharge pipe sensor]



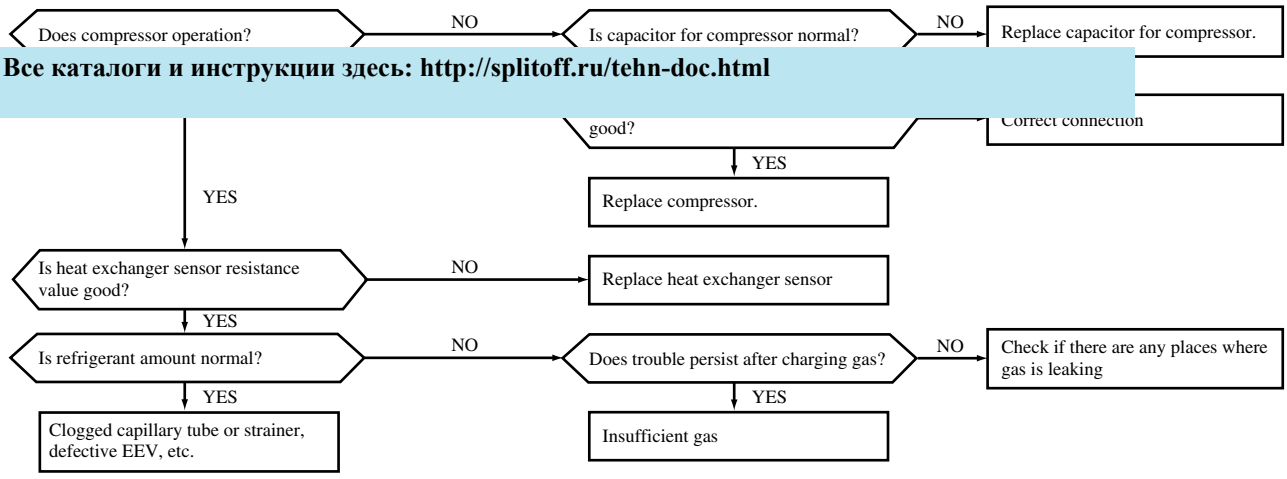
Error of signal transmission

[Wiring error including power cable, defective indoor/ outdoor unit PCB]



Abnormality of outdoor unit

[Compressor malfunction of insufficient gas (refrigerant)]



(g) Phenomenon observed after shortcircuit, wire breakage on sensor.

(i) Indoor unit

Sensor	Operation mode	Phenomenon	
		Shortcircuit	Broken wire
Room temperature sensor	Cooling	Release of continuous compressor operation command	Continuous compressor operation command is not released.
	Heating	Continuous compressor operation command is not released.	Release of continuous compressor operation command
Heat exchanger sensor	Cooling	Compressor stop. (Abnormality of outdoor unit)	Continuous compressor operation command is not released. (Anti-frosting)
	Heating	High pressure control mode	Hot keep (Indoor fan stop)

(ii) Outdoor unit

Sensor	Operation mode	Phenomenon	
		Shortcircuit	Broken wire
Heat exchanger sensor	Cooling	System can be operated normally.	System can be operated normally.
	Heating	Defrosting is not performed.	Defrosting is performed for 10 minutes at approx. 35 minutes.
Outdoor air temperature sensor	Cooling	System can be operated normally.	System can be operated normally.
	Heating	Defrosting is not operated.	Defrosting is performed for 10 minutes at approx. 35 minutes.
Discharge pipe sensor	All modes	Compressor overload protection is disabled. (Can be operated.)	Compressor stop

(h) Checking the indoor electrical equipment

(i) Indoor unit circuit board check procedure

1) Press the unit's ON/OFF button for 5 seconds or longer (a beep which indicates receiving will be emitted). Then check the following items.
   ① The indoor unit's fan motor runs.
   ② The run light lights up.
2) There should be voltage (AC 220-240 V) between terminals ① and ② on the terminal block.
   With the analog tester set in the DC 30 V range, if the voltage at ② (+) and ③ (-) is measured, the needle oscillates at about 12V.
3) It is possible to run and stop the unit using the remote controller. (The hot keep function is activated.)
   If operation is as described above, the indoor unit's board is normal.

Note (1) Check the voltage on the terminal block.
- Power supply : Between ①-② (AC 220-240V)
- Signal : Between ②-③ (Changing between DC 0-Approx. 12V)

(ii) Indoor unit fan motor check procedure

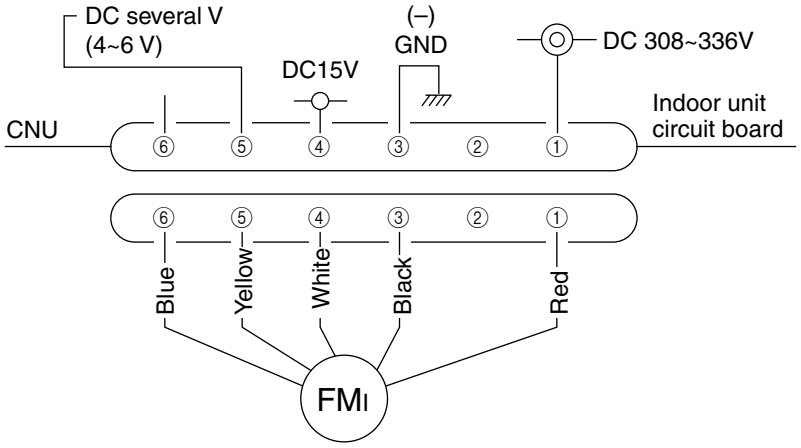
This is a diagnostic procedure for determining if the indoor unit's fan motor or the circuit board is broken down.

1) Indoor unit printed circuit board output check

a) Turn off the power.

er the voltages in the following figure are output for approximately 30 seconds, it means that the circuit board is normal and the fan motor is broken down.

If the voltages in the following figure are not output at connector pins No. ①, ④ and ⑤, the indoor unit's circuit board has failed and the fan motor is normal.

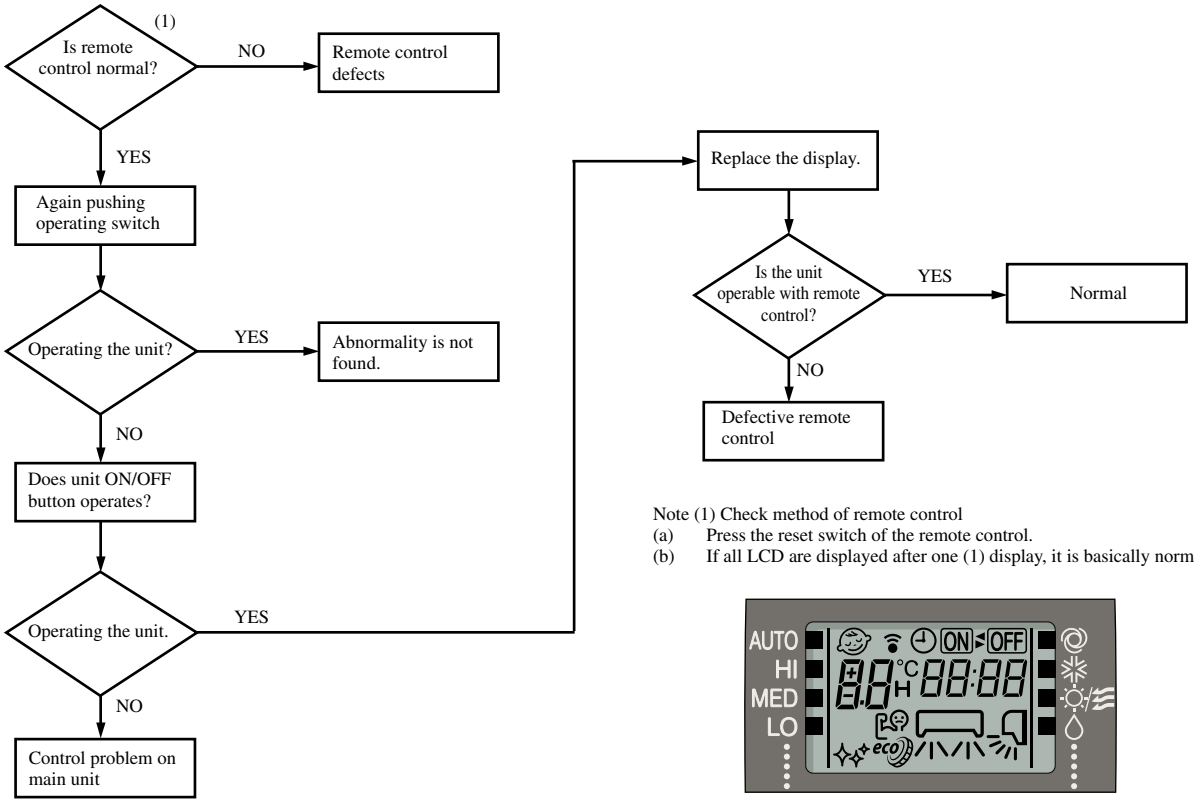


(ii) DC Fan motor resistance check

Measuring Point	Resistance when Normal
① – ③ (Red – Black)	25 MΩ or higher
④ – ③ (White – Black)	30 kΩ or higher

Notes (1) Remove the fan motor and measure it without power connected to it.
(2) If the measured value is below the value when the motor is normal, it means that the fan motor is faulty.

(i) How to make sure of remote control



Note (1) Check method of remote control
(a) Press the reset switch of the remote control.
(b) If all LCD are displayed after one (1) display, it is basically normal.

(2) Servicing

(a) Evacuation

The evacuation is an procedure to purge impurities.....noncondensable gas, air, moisture from the refrigerant equipment by using

 n the refrigerant

equipment with vacuum, causing what is called water clogging.

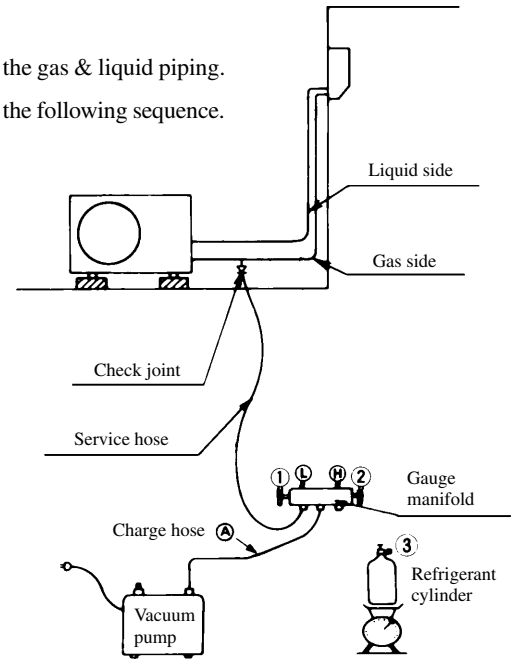
- Evacuation procedure

(i) Check to ensure that there is no internal pressure in the unit. If there is an internal pressure, it should be relieved through the check joint.

(ii) Connect the service hoses of the gauge manifold to the check joint of the gas & liquid piping.

(iii) Connect a vacuum pump to the charge hose Ⓐ. Repeat evacuation in the following sequence.

Start the vacuum pump.
↓
Compound pressure gauge indicates –0.1 MPa (–76 cmHg)
↓
Operate the vacuum pump for more than 15 minutes after –0.1 MPa (–76 cmHg) is indicated.
↓
Close low pressure valve ① of gauge manifold.
↓
Stop the vacuum pump.



Notes (1) Do not use the refrigerant pressure to expel air.
(2) Do not use the compressor for evacuation.
(3) Do not operate the compressor in the vacuum condition.

(b) Refrigerant charge

(i) Discharge refrigerant entirely from the unit and evacuate the unit.
Note: Addition of refrigerant without evacuation is unreasonable, because it will result in low charge or overcharge.

(ii) Keep the gauge manifold and connect a refrigerant cylinder to the unit.

(iii) Record the weight of the refrigerant cylinder on the balance. This is necessary for making sure of the charged refrigerant amount.

(iv) Purge air from the charge hose Ⓐ
Firstly loose the connecting portion of the charge hose Ⓐ at the gauge manihold side and open the valve ③ for a few seconds, and then immediately retighten it after observing that gas is blow out from the loosened portion.

(v) Open the valve ① and ③ after discharging air from the charge hose Ⓐ, then the liquid refrigerant begins flowing from the cylinder into the unit. Be sure to erect the refrigerant cylinder upright to let liquid refrigerant flow into the unit.

(vi) When refrigerant has been charged into the system to some extent, refrigerant flow becomes stagnant, when that happens, start the compressor in cooling cycle until the unit is filled with refrigerant to the specified weight.

(vii) Making sure of the refrigerant amount, close the valve ③

(viii) Disconnect the charge hose from the unit. Cover the valve ports of the refrigerant piping with caps and tighten them securely.

(ix) Check for gas leakage applying a gas leak detector along the piping line.

(x) Start the air conditioner and make sure of its operating condition.....high side and low side pressures and temperature difference between return air and supply air.

2.3.7 REFRIGERANT PIPING INSTALLATION/SERVICING MANUAL FOR AIR CONDITIONERS USING R410A

This is same as chapter 1.1.7. Refer to page 55.

MEMO

3. WALL MOUNTED TYPE ROOM AIR-CONDITIONER

(Split system, air cooled cooling only type)

CONTENTS

3.1.1 GENERAL INFORMATION

(1) Specific features

The “MITSUBISHI HEAVY INDUSTRIES, LTD.” room air-conditioner: SRK series are of split and wall mounted type and the unit

ir cooling equipment with operation control switch and the outdoor unit is composed of condensing unit with compressor.

(a) Remote control flap

The flap can be automatically controlled by operating wireless remote controller.

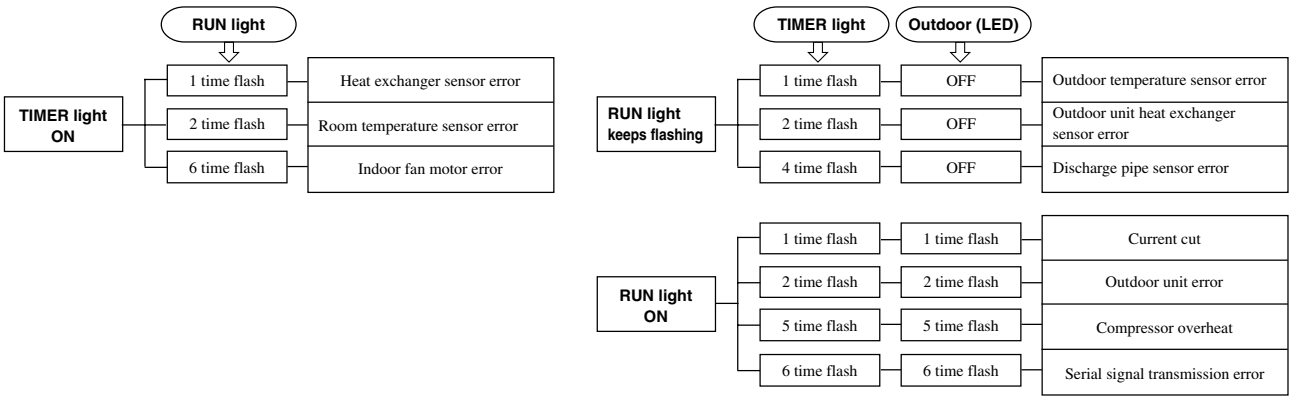
- Air scroll: Flap operation is automatically control.
- Swing: This will swing the flap up and down.
- Memory flap: Once the flap position is set, the unit memorizes the position and continues to operate at the same position from the next time.

(b) Automatic Operation

When the remote control switch is set on “auto(⧋)”, it will either automatically decide operation mode such as cooling and thermal dry, or operate in the operation mode before it has been turned to automatic control.

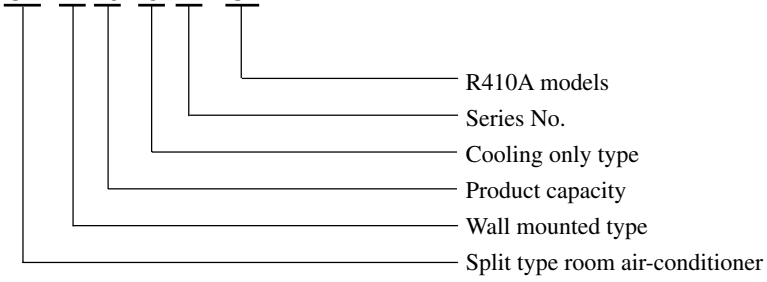
(c) Self diagnosis function

- We are constantly trying to do better service to our customers by installing such judges that show abnormality of operation as follows.



(2) How to read the model name

Example : SR K 40 C D - S1



3.1.2 SELECTION DATA

(1) Specifications

Model SRK20CD-S1 (Indoor unit)

Item						
Cooling capacity[1]				W	2050	
Power source					1 Phase, 220–240V, 50Hz	
Operation data[1]	Cooling input			kW	0.63	
	Running current (Cooling)			A	3.1/3.0/2.9	
	Inrush current			A	18.9	
	COP				Cooling: 3.21	
	Noise level	Cooling	Sound level	dB	Hi 34, Me 28, Lo 26	46
			Power level		52	60
Exterior dimensions Height × Width × Depth				mm	250 × 815 × 249	540 × 720 × 290
Color					Cool white	Stucco white
Net weight				kg	9.0	32
Refrigerant equipment Compressor type & Q'ty					–	RM-B5077MNE4 (Rotary type) × 1
Motor				kW	–	0.65
Starting method					–	Line starting
Heat exchanger					Louver fins & inner grooved tubing	Straight fins & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control					Capillary tubes + Electronic expansion valve	
Refrigerant[3]				kg	R410A 0.9 (Pre-Charged up to the piping length of 15m)	
Refrigerant oil				ℓ	0.35 (MA68)	
Deice control					Microcomputer control	
Air handling equipment Fan type & Q'ty					Tangential fan × 1	Propeller fan × 1
Motor				W	14	12
Air flow (at High)			(Cooling)	CMM	7.5	26
Air filter, Q'ty					Polypropylene net (washable) × 2	–
Shock & vibration absorber					–	Cushion rubber (for compressor)
Electric heater					–	–
Operation control Operation switch					Wireless-Remote controller	–
Room temperature control					Microcomputer thermostat	–
Pilot lamp					RUN (Green), TIMER (Yellow), HI POWER (Green), ECONO (Orange)	
Safety equipment					Compressor: Overheat protection, overcurrent protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection, Frost protection	
Refrigerant piping	O.D			mm (in)	Liquid line: ϕ6.35 (1/4″) Gas line: ϕ9.52 (3/8″)	
	Connecting method				Flare connecting	
	Attached length of piping				Liquid line: 0.4 m Gas line : 0.33 m	–
	Insulation				Necessary (Both sides)	
Drain hose					Connectable	
Power source cord					2.5 m (3 cores with Earth)	
Connection wiring	Size × Core number				1.5 mm² × 4 cores (Including earth cable)	
	Connecting method				Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Accessories (included)					Mounting kit, Clean filter (Natural enzyme filter x1, Photocatalytic washable deodorizing filter x1)	
Optional parts					–	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	Standards
Cooling	27ºC	19ºC	35ºC	24ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612

The piping length is 7.5m.

(2) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively.

(3) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 15 m connecting piping.
(Purging is not required even in the short piping.)

Model SRK28CD-S1 (Indoor unit)
SRC28CD-S1 (Outdoor unit)

(220/230/240V)

Item				Model	SRK28CD-S1	SRC28CD-S1
Cooling capacity[1]				W	2550	
Operation data	Running current (Cooling)			A	3.9/3.7/3.5	
	Inrush current			A	17.2	
	COP				Cooling: 3.21	
	Noise level	Cooling	Sound level	dB	Hi 39, Me 33, Lo 30	46
			Power level		55	60
Exterior dimensions Height × Width × Depth				mm	250 × 815 × 249	540 × 720 × 290
Color					Cool white	Stucco white
Net weight				kg	9.0	32
Refrigerant equipment Compressor type & Q'ty					–	5PS102DAB [Rotary type] × 1
Motor				kW	–	0.7
Starting method					–	Line starting
Heat exchanger					Louver fins & inner grooved tubing	Straight fins & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control					Capillary tubes + Electronic expansion valve	
Refrigerant[3]				kg	R410A 0.9 (Pre-Charged up to the piping length of 15m)	
Refrigerant oil				ℓ	0.35 (RB68A)	
Deice control					Microcomputer control	
Air handling equipment Fan type & Q'ty					Tangential fan × 1	Propeller fan × 1
Motor				W	14	15
Air flow (at High)			(Cooling)	CMM	8.0	30
Air filter, Q'ty					Polypropylene net (washable) × 2	–
Shock & vibration absorber					–	Cushion rubber (for compressor)
Electric heater					–	–
Operation control Operation switch					Wireless-Remote controller	–
Room temperature control					Microcomputer thermostat	–
Pilot lamp					RUN (Green), TIMER (Yellow), HI POWER (Green), ECONO (Orange)	
Safety equipment					Compressor: Overheat protection, overcurrent protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection, Frost protection	
Refrigerant piping	O.D			mm (in)	Liquid line: ϕ6.35 (1/4″) Gas line: ϕ9.52 (3/8″)	
	Connecting method				Flare connecting	
	Attached length of piping				Liquid line: 0.4 m Gas line : 0.33 m	–
	Insulation				Necessary (Both sides)	
Drain hose					Connectable	
Power source cord					2.5 m (3 cores with Earth)	
Connection wiring	Size × Core number				1.5 mm² × 4 cores (Including earth cable)	
	Connecting method				Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Accessories (included)					Mounting kit, Clean filter (Natural enzyme filter x1, Photocatalytic washable deodorizing filter x1)	
Optional parts					–	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	Standards
Cooling	27ºC	19ºC	35ºC	24ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612

The piping length is 7.5m.

(2) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively.

(3) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 15 m connecting piping.
(Purging is not required even in the short piping.)

Model SRK40CD-S1 (Indoor unit)
SRC40CD-S1 (Outdoor unit)

(220/230/240V)

Item				Model	SRK40CD-S1	SRC40CD-S1
Cooling capacity[1]				W	3600	
Operation data	Running current (Cooling)			A	5.3/5.1/4.9	
	Inrush current			A	25.2	
	COP				Cooling: 3.21	
	Noise level	Cooling	Sound level	dB	Hi 40, Me 38, Lo 34	49
			Power level		56	63
Exterior dimensions Height × Width × Depth				mm	250 × 815 × 249	640 × 850 × 290
Color					Cool white	Stucco white
Net weight				kg	9.0	41
Refrigerant equipment Compressor type & Q'ty					–	5KS150DBB [Rotary type] × 1
Motor				kW	–	1.1
Starting method					–	Line starting
Heat exchanger					Louver fins & inner grooved tubing	Straight fins & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control					Capillary tubes + Electronic expansion valve	
Refrigerant[3]				kg	R410A 1.17 (Pre-Charged up to the piping length of 15m)	
Refrigerant oil				ℓ	0.43 (RB68A)	
Deice control					Microcomputer control	
Air handling equipment Fan type & Q'ty					Tangential fan × 1	Propeller fan × 1
Motor				W	14	35
Air flow (at High)			(Cooling)	CMM	9.0	38
Air filter, Q'ty					Polypropylene net (washable) × 2	–
Shock & vibration absorber					–	Cushion rubber (for compressor)
Electric heater					–	–
Operation control Operation switch					Wireless-Remote controller	–
Room temperature control					Microcomputer thermostat	–
Pilot lamp					RUN (Green), TIMER (Yellow), HI POWER (Green), ECONO (Orange)	
Safety equipment					Compressor: Overheat protection, overcurrent protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection, Frost protection	
Refrigerant piping	O.D			mm (in)	Liquid line: ϕ6.35 (1/4″) Gas line: ϕ12.7 (1/2″)	
	Connecting method				Flare connecting	
	Attached length of piping				Liquid line: 0.4 m Gas line : 0.33 m	–
	Insulation				Necessary (Both sides)	
Drain hose					Connectable	
Power source cord					2.5 m (3 cores with Earth)	
Connection wiring	Size × Core number				1.5 mm² × 4 cores (Including earth cable)	
	Connecting method				Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Accessories (included)					Mounting kit, Clean filter (Natural enzyme filter x1, Photocatalytic washable deodorizing filter x1)	
Optional parts					–	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	Standards
Cooling	27ºC	19ºC	35ºC	24ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612

The piping length is 7.5m.

(2) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively.

(3) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 15 m connecting piping.
(Purging is not required even in the short piping.)

Model SRK20CC-S1 (Indoor unit)
SRC20CC-S1 (Outdoor unit) **(220/230/240V)**

Item				Model	SRK20CC-S1	SRC20CC-S1
Cooling capacity(1)				W	2050	
Operation data	Running current (Cooling)			A		
	Inrush current			A	18.9	
	COP				Cooling: 3.21	
	Noise level	Cooling	Sound level	dB	38	48
			Power level		52	60
Exterior dimensions Height × Width × Depth				mm	250 × 815 × 247	540 × 720 × 290
Color					Cool white	Stucco white
Net weight				kg	9.0	32
Refrigerant equipment Compressor type & Q'ty					–	RM-B5077MNE4 (Rotary type) × 1
Motor				kW	–	0.65
Starting method					–	Line starting
Heat exchanger					Louver fins & inner grooved tubing	Straight fins & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control					Capillary tubes + Electric expansion valve	
Refrigerant(3)				kg	R410A 0.9 (Pre-Charged up to the piping length of 15m)	
Refrigerant oil				ℓ	0.35 (MA68)	
Deice control					Microcomputer control	
Air handling equipment Fan type & Q'ty					Tangential fan × 1	Propeller fan × 1
Motor				W	14	12
Air flow (at High)			(Cooling)	CMM	7.5	26
Air filter, Q'ty					Polypropylene net (washable) × 2	–
Shock & vibration absorber					–	Cushion rubber (for compressor)
Electric heater					–	–
Operation control Operation switch					Wireless-Remote controller	–
Room temperature control					Microcomputer thermostat	–
Pilot lamp					RUN (Green), TIMER (Yellow), HI POWER (Green), ECONO (Orange)	
Safety equipment					Compressor: Overheat protection, overcurrent protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection	
Refrigerant piping	O.D			mm (in)	Liquid line: ϕ6.35 (1/4″) Gas line: ϕ9.52 (3/8″)	
	Connecting method				Flare connecting	
	Attached length of piping				Liquid line: 0.4 m Gas line : 0.33 m	–
	Insulation				Necessary (Both sides)	
Drain hose					Connectable	
Power source cord					2.5 m (3 cores with Earth)	
Connection wiring	Size × Core number				1.5 mm² × 4 cores (Including earth cable)	
	Connecting method				Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Accessories (included)					Mounting kit, Clean filter (Natural enzyme filter x2)	
Optional parts					–	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	Standards
Cooling	27ºC	19ºC	35ºC	24ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612

The piping length is 7.5m.

(2) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively.

(3) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 15 m connecting piping.
(Purging is not required even in the short piping.)

Model SRK28CC-S1 (Indoor unit)
SRC28CC-S1 (Outdoor unit) **(220/230/240V)**

Item				Model	SRK28CC-S1	SRC28CC-S1
Cooling capacity(1)				W	2550	
Operation data	Running current (Cooling)			A	3.9/3.7/3.5	
	Inrush current			A	17.2	
	COP				Cooling: 3.21	
	Noise level	Cooling	Sound level	dB	41	48
			Power level		55	60
Exterior dimensions Height × Width × Depth				mm	250 × 815 × 247	540 × 720 × 290
Color					Cool white	Stucco white
Net weight				kg	9.0	32
Refrigerant equipment Compressor type & Q'ty					–	5PS102DBA [Rotary type] × 1
Motor				kW	–	0.7
Starting method					–	Line starting
Heat exchanger					Louver fins & inner grooved tubing	Straight fins & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control					Capillary tubes + Electric expansion valve	
Refrigerant(3)				kg	R410A 0.9 (Pre-Charged up to the piping length of 15m)	
Refrigerant oil				ℓ	0.35 (RB68A)	
Deice control					Microcomputer control	
Air handling equipment Fan type & Q'ty					Tangential fan × 1	Propeller fan × 1
Motor				W	14	15
Air flow (at High)			(Cooling)	CMM	8.0	30
Air filter, Q'ty					Polypropylene net (washable) × 2	–
Shock & vibration absorber					–	Cushion rubber (for compressor)
Electric heater					–	–
Operation control Operation switch					Wireless-Remote controller	–
Room temperature control					Microcomputer thermostat	–
Pilot lamp					RUN (Green), TIMER (Yellow), HI POWER (Green), ECONO (Orange)	
Safety equipment					Compressor: Overheat protection, overcurrent protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection	
Refrigerant piping	O.D			mm (in)	Liquid line: ϕ6.35 (1/4″) Gas line: ϕ9.52 (3/8″)	
	Connecting method				Flare connecting	
	Attached length of piping				Liquid line: 0.4 m Gas line : 0.33 m	–
	Insulation				Necessary (Both sides)	
Drain hose					Connectable	
Power source cord					2.5 m (3 cores with Earth)	
Connection wiring	Size × Core number				1.5 mm² × 4 cores (Including earth cable)	
	Connecting method				Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Accessories (included)					Mounting kit, Clean filter (Natural enzyme filter x2)	
Optional parts					–	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	Standards
Cooling	27ºC	19ºC	35ºC	24ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612

The piping length is 7.5m.

(2) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively.

(3) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 15 m connecting piping.
(Purging is not required even in the short piping.)

Model SRK40CC-S1 (Indoor unit)
SRC40CC-S1 (Outdoor unit)

(220/230/240V)

Item				Model	SRK40CC-S1	SRC40CC-S1
Cooling capacity(1)				W	3600	
Operation data	Running current (Cooling)			A	5.3/5.1/4.9	
	Inrush current			A	25.2	
	COP (Cooling)				Cooling: 3.21	
	Noise level	Cooling	Sound level	dB	42	51
			Power level		56	63
Exterior dimensions Height × Width × Depth				mm	250 × 815 × 247	640 × 850 × 290
Color					Cool white	Stucco white
Net weight				kg	9.0	41
Refrigerant equipment Compressor type & Q'ty					–	5KS150DBB [Rotary type] × 1
Motor				kW	–	1.1
Starting method					–	Line starting
Heat exchanger					Louver fins & inner grooved tubing	Straight fins & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control					Capillary tubes + Electric expansion valve	
Refrigerant(3)				kg	R410A 1.17 (Pre-Charged up to the piping length of 15m)	
Refrigerant oil				ℓ	0.43 (RB68A)	
Deice control					Microcomputer control	
Air handling equipment Fan type & Q'ty					Tangential fan × 1	Propeller fan × 1
Motor				W	14	35
Air flow (at High)			(Cooling)	CMM	9.0	38
Air filter, Q'ty					Polypropylene net (washable) × 2	–
Shock & vibration absorber					–	Cushion rubber (for compressor)
Electric heater					–	–
Operation control Operation switch					Wireless-Remote controller	–
Room temperature control					Microcomputer thermostat	–
Pilot lamp					RUN (Green), TIMER (Yellow), HI POWER (Green), ECONO (Orange)	
Safety equipment					Compressor: Overheat protection, overcurrent protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection	
Refrigerant piping	O.D			mm (in)	Liquid line: ϕ6.35 (1/4″) Gas line: ϕ12.7 (1/2″)	
	Connecting method				Flare connecting	
	Attached length of piping				Liquid line: 0.4 m Gas line : 0.33 m	–
	Insulation				Necessary (Both sides)	
Drain hose					Connectable	
Power source cord					2.5 m (3 cores with Earth)	
Connection wiring	Size × Core number				1.5 mm² × 4 cores (Including earth cable)	
	Connecting method				Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Accessories (included)					Mounting kit, Clean filter (Natural enzyme filter x2)	
Optional parts					–	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	Standards
Cooling	27ºC	19ºC	35ºC	24ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612

The piping length is 7.5m.

(2) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively.

(3) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 15 m connecting piping.
(Purging is not required even in the short piping.)

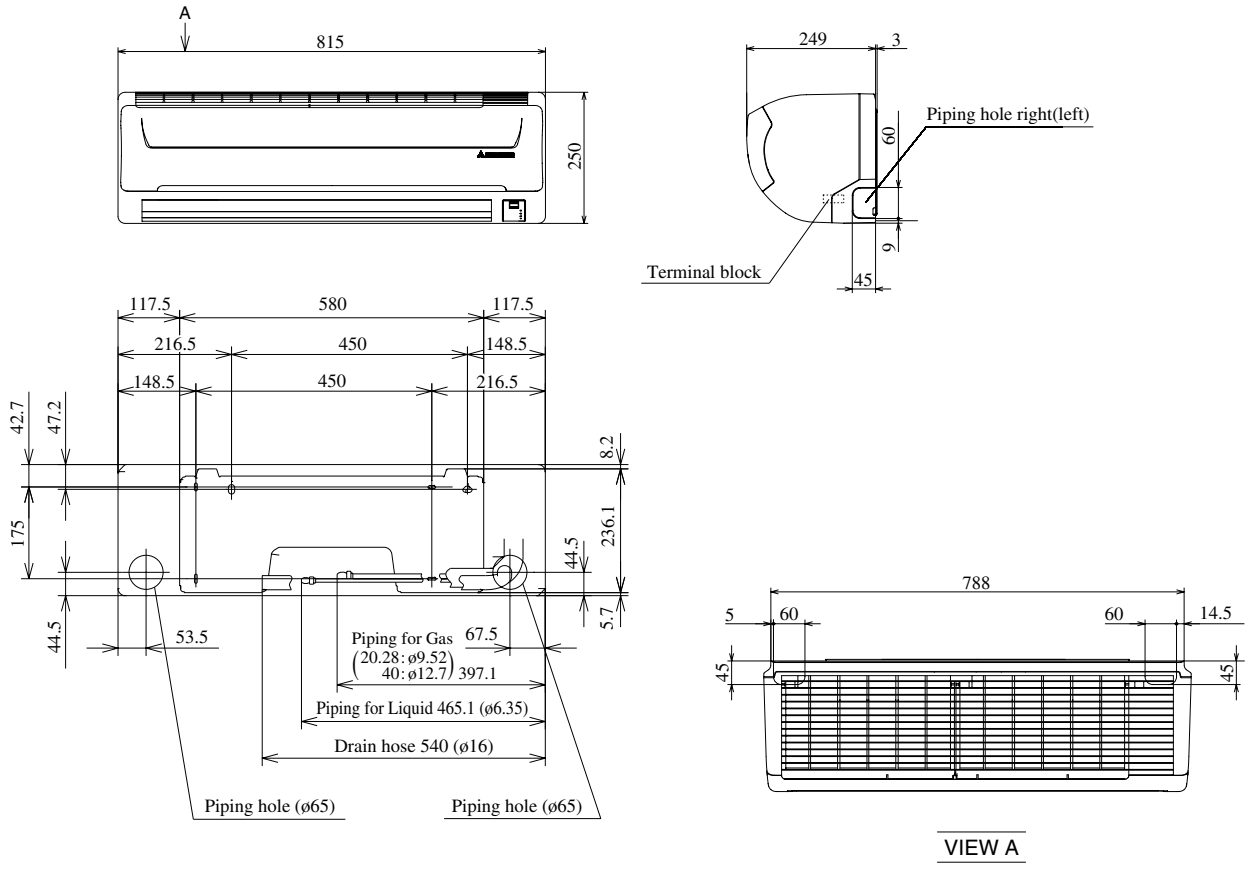
(2) Range of usage & limitations

Item \ Models	All models
Outdoor air temperature (Upper, lower limits)	Cooling operation : Approximately 21 to 43˚C
Refrigerant line (one way) length	Max. 15m
Vertical height difference between outdoor unit and indoor unit	Max. 10m (Outdoor unit is higher) Max. 10m (Outdoor unit is lower)
Power source voltage	Rating ± 10%
Voltage at starting	Min. 85% of rating
Frequency of ON-OFF cycle	Max. 10 times/h
ON and OFF interval	Max. 3 minutes

(3) Exterior dimensions

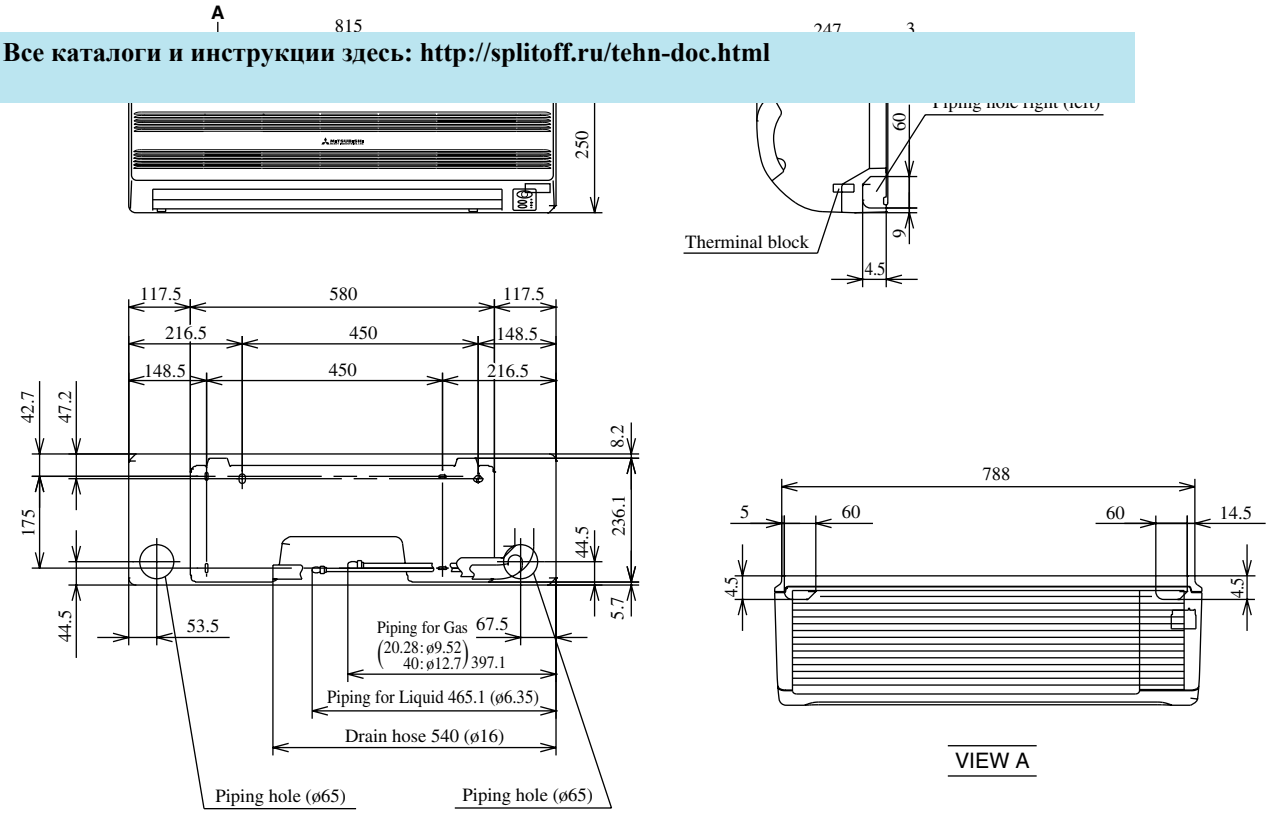
(a) Indoor unit
Models SRK20CD-S1, 28CD-S1,40CD-S1

Unit: mm



Models SRK20CC-S1, 28CC-S1, 40CC-S1

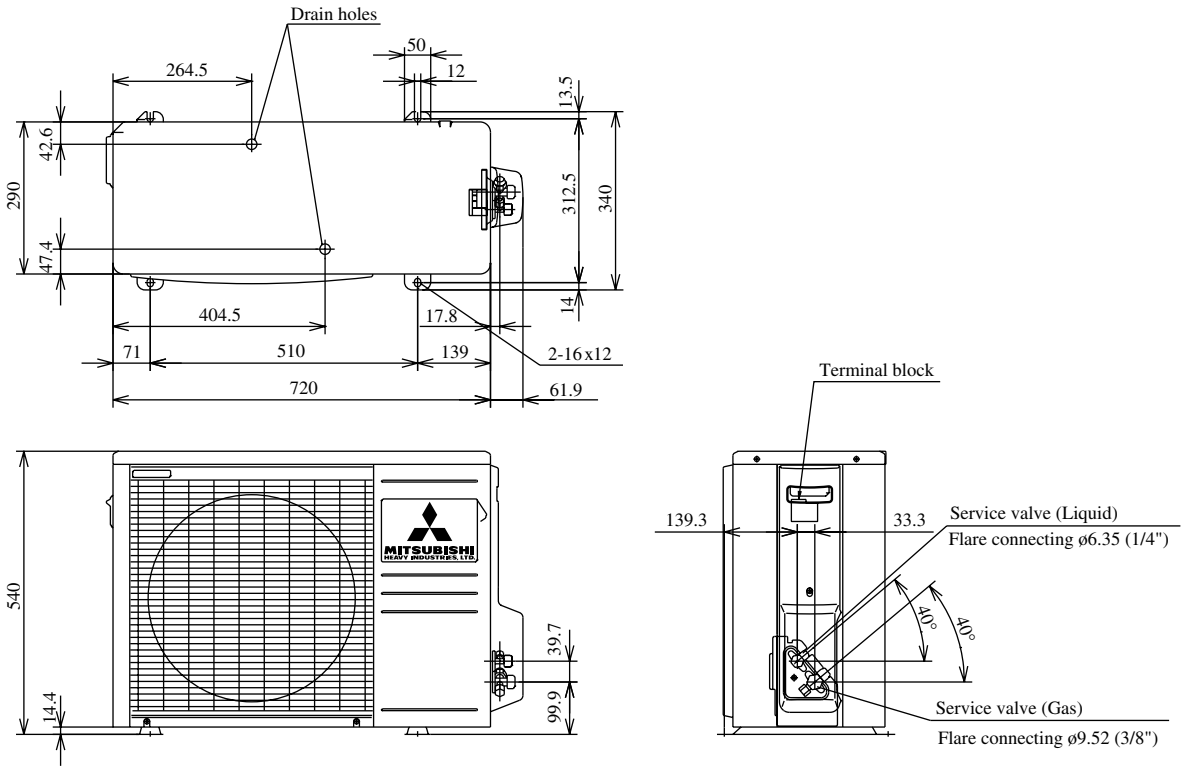
Unit: mm



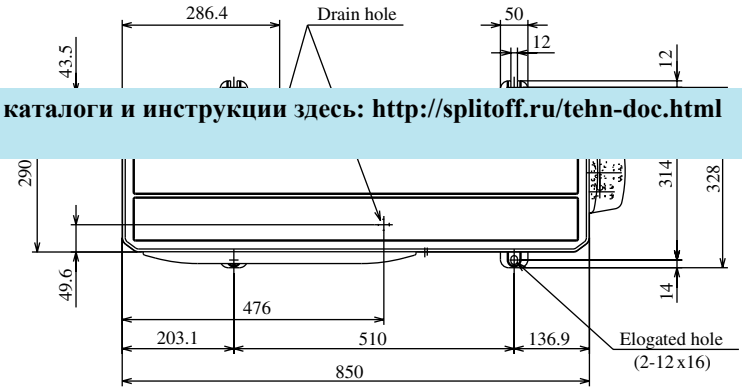
(b) Outdoor unit

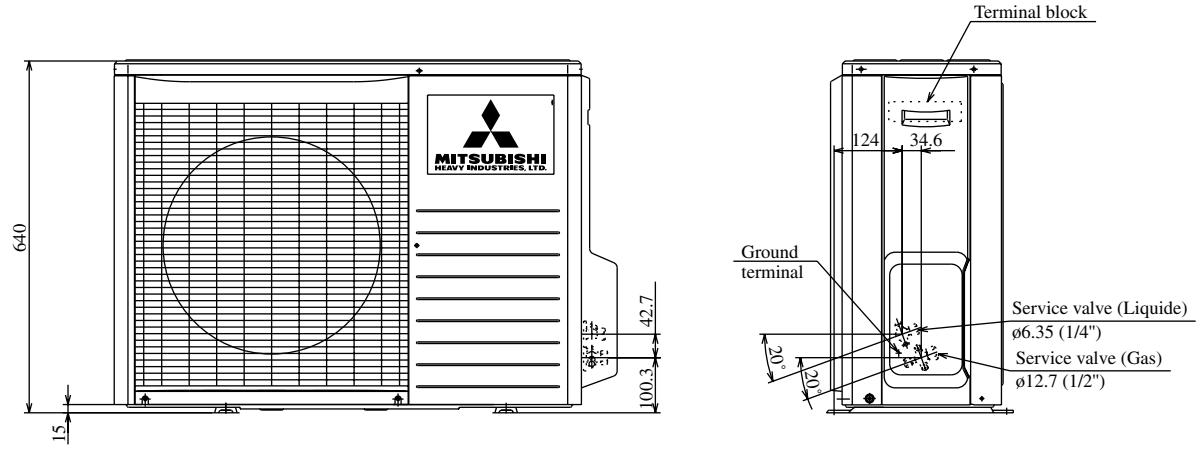
Models SRC20CD-S1, 28CD-S1, 20CC-S1, 28CC-S1

Unit: mm



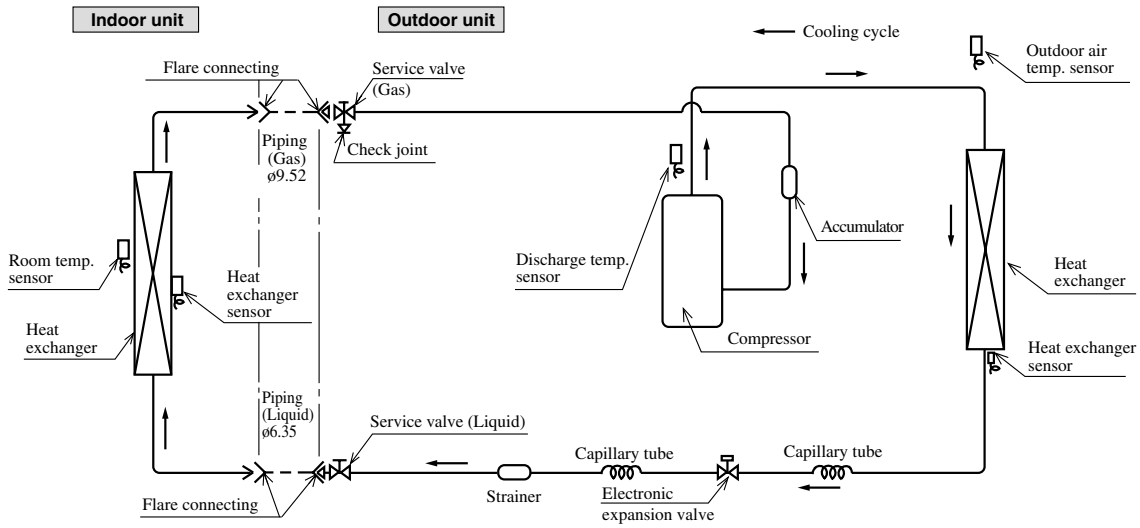
Models SRC40CD-S1, 40CC-S1



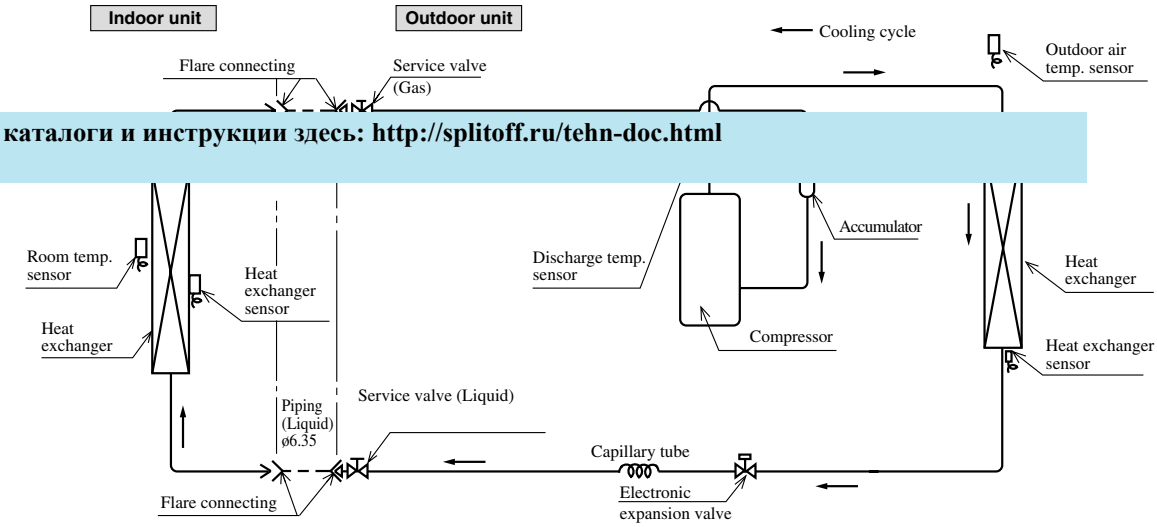


(4) Piping system

Models SRK20CD-S1, 28CD-S1, 20CC-S1, 28CC-S1



Models SRK40CD-S1, 40CC-S1

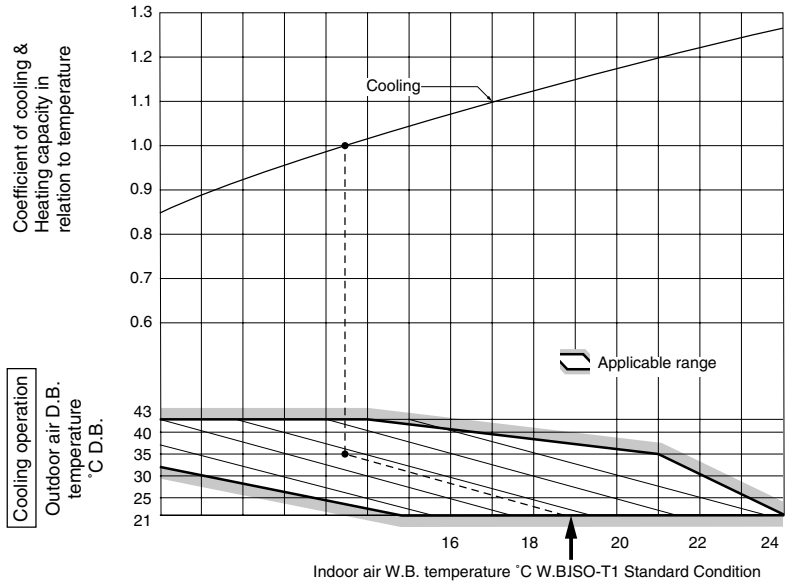


(5) Selection chart

Correct the cooling capacity in accordance with the conditions as follows. The net cooling capacity can be obtained in the following way.

Net capacity = Capacity shown on specification × Correction factors as follows.

(a) Coefficient of cooling capacity in relation to temperatures



(b) Correction of cooling capacity in relation to one way length of refrigerant piping

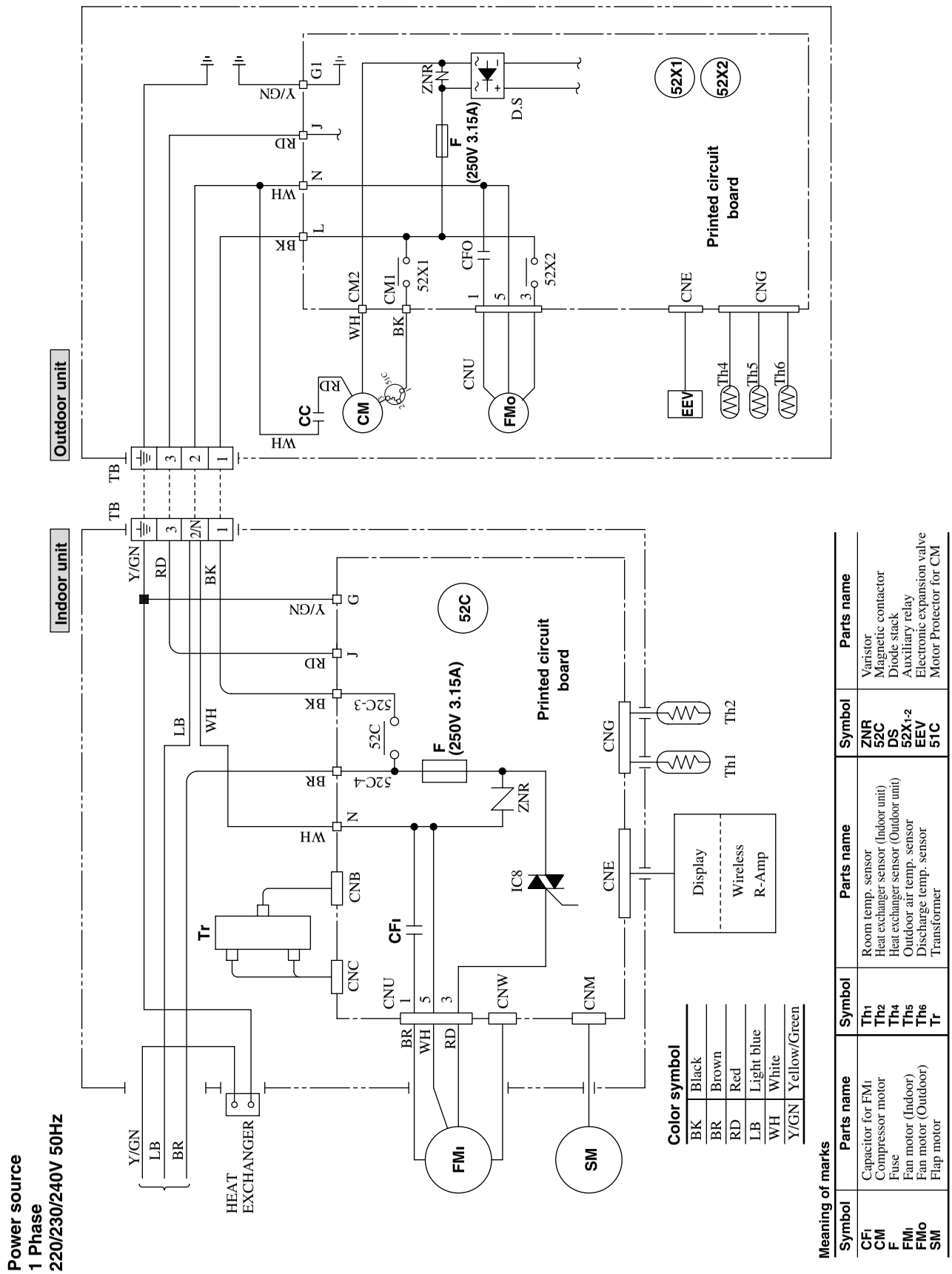
It is necessary to correct the cooling capacity in relation to the one way piping length between the indoor and outdoor units.

Piping length [m]	7	10	15
Cooling	1.0	0.99	0.975

3.1.3 ELECTRICAL DATA

(1) Electrical wiring

Models SRK20CD-S1, 28CD-S1, 40CD-S1, 20CC-S1, 28CC-S1, 40CC-S1



Color symbol

BK	Black
BR	Brown
RD	Red
LB	Light blue
WH	White
Y/GN	Yellow/Green

Meaning of marks

Symbol	Parts name	Symbol	Parts name	Symbol	Parts name
CFI	Capacitor for FMI	Th1	Room temp. sensor	ZNR	Varistor
CM	Compressor motor	Th2	Heat exchanger sensor (Indoor unit)	52C	Magnetic contactor
F	Fuse	Th4	Heat exchanger sensor (Outdoor unit)	DS	Diode stack
FMI	Fan motor (Indoor)	Th5	Outdoor air temp. sensor	52X1-2	Auxiliary relay
FMo	Fan motor (Outdoor)	Th6	Discharge temp. sensor	EEV	Electronic expansion valve
SM	Flap motor	Tr	Transformer	51C	Motor Protector for CM

3.1.4 OUTLINE OF OPERATION CONTROL BY MICROCOMPUTER

Except for function relating to heating, same at the for SRK heat pump modes. Refer to Page 151.

3.1.5 APPLICATION DATA

The application data for the cooling only models are similar to those for the heat pump models. Refer to Page 162.

3.1.6 MAINTENANCE DATA

Same at the cooling/heating equipment SRK heat pump models. Refer to Page 170.

3.1.7 REFRIGERANT PIPING INSTALLATION/SERVICING MANUAL FOR AIR CONDITIONERS USING R410A

This is same as chapter 1.1.7 Refer to Page 55.

CONTENTS

3.2.1 GENERAL INFORMATION

(1) Specific features

The “MITSUBISHI HEAVY INDUSTRIES, LTD.” room air-conditioner: SRK series are of split and wall mounted type and the unit consists of indoor unit and outdoor unit with refrigerant precharged in factory. The indoor unit is composed of room air cooling equipment with operation control switch and the outdoor unit is composed of condensing unit with compressor.

(a) Remote control flap

The flap can be automatically controlled by operating wireless remote controller.

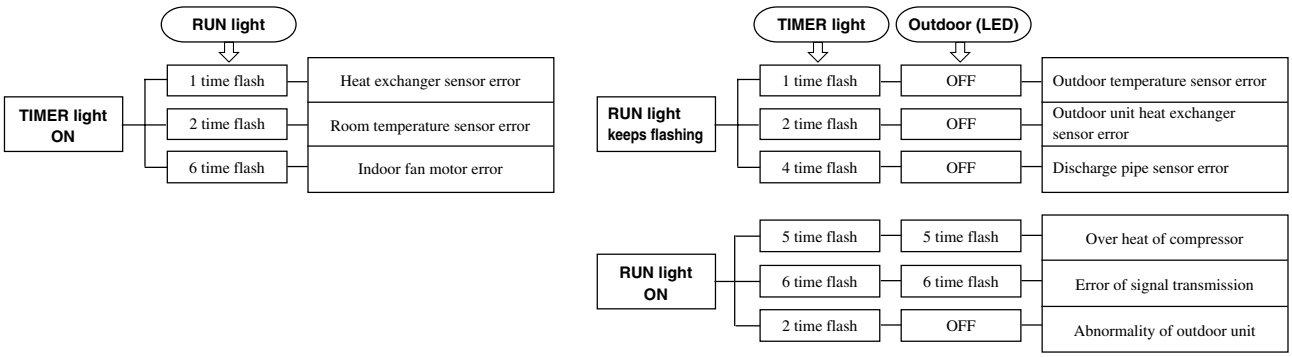
- Air scroll: Flap operation is automatically control.
- Swing: This will swing the flap up and down.
- Memory flap: Once the flap position is set, the unit memorizes the position and continues to operate at the same position from the next time.

(b) Automatic operation

When the remote control switch is set on “auto(⧋)”, it will either automatically decide operation mode such as cooling and thermal dry, or operate in the operation mode before it has been turned to automatic control.

(c) Self diagnosis function

- We are constantly trying to do better service to our customers by installing such judges that show abnormality of operation as follows.



(2) How to read the model name

Example : SR K 50 C E - S1

- S1 — R410A models
- E — Series No.
- C — Cooling only type
- 50 — Product capacity
- K — Wall mounted type
- SR — Split type room air-conditioner

3.2.2 SELECTION DATA

(1) Specifications

Model SRK50CE-S1 (Indoor unit)
SRC50CE-S1 (Outdoor unit)

(220/230/240V)

Item				Model	SRK50CE-S1	SRC50CE-S1
Cooling capacity[1]				W	4700	
Power source					1 Phase, 220-240V, 50Hz	
Operation data[1]	Cooling input			kW	1.41	
	Running current (Cooling)			A	6.5/6.3/6.0	
	Inrush current			A	39.6	
	COP				Cooling: 3.33	
	Noise level	Cooling	Sound level	dB	Hi 43, Me 39, Lo 34	47
			Power level		58	63
Exterior dimensions Height × Width × Depth				mm	298 × 840 × 259	640 × 850 × 290
Color					Cool white	Stucco white
Net weight				kg	12	44
Refrigerant equipment Compressor type & Q'ty					–	RM-B5118MNE5 (Rotary type) × 1
Motor				kW	–	1.4
Starting method					–	Line starting
Heat exchanger					Louver fins & inner grooved tubing	Straight fins & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control					Capillary tubes + Electronic expansion valve	
Refrigerant[3]				kg	R410A 1.4 (Pre-Charged up to the piping length of 15m)	
Refrigerant oil				ℓ	0.7 (MA68)	
Deice control					Microcomputer control	
Air handling equipment Fan type & Q'ty					Tangential fan × 1	Propeller fan × 1
Motor				W	27	35
Air flow (at High)			(Cooling)	CMM	10.0	38.0
Air filter, Q'ty					Polypropylene net (washable) × 2	–
Shock & vibration absorber					–	Cushion rubber (for compressor)
Electric heater					–	–
Operation control Operation switch					Wireless-Remote controller	–
Room temperature control					Microcomputer thermostat	–
Pilot lamp					RUN (Green), TIMER (Yellow), HI POWER (Green), ECONO (Orange)	
Safety equipment					Compressor: Overheat protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection, Frost protection	
Refrigerant piping	O.D			mm (in)	Liquid line: ϕ6.35 (1/4″) Gas line: ϕ12.7 (1/2″)	
	Connecting method				Flare connection	
	Attached length of piping				Liquid line: 0.54 m Gas line : 0.47 m	–
	Insulation				Necessary (Both sides)	
Drain hose					Connectable	
Power source cord					2 m (3 cores with earth)	
Connection wiring	Size × Core number				1.5 mm² × 4 cores (Including earth cable)	
	Connecting method				Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Accessories (included)					Mounting kit, Clean filter (Natural enzyme filter × 1, Photocatalytic washable deodorizing filter × 1)	
Optional parts					–	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	Standards
Cooling	27ºC	19ºC	35ºC	24ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612

The piping length is 7.5m.

(2) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively.

(3) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 15 m connecting piping.
(Purging is not required even for the short piping.)
If the piping length is longer, when it is 15 to 25 m, add 20 g refrigerant per meter.

Model SRK56CE-S1 (Indoor unit)
SRC56CE-S1 (Outdoor unit)

(220/230/240V)

Item				Model	SRK56CE-S1	SRC56CE-S1
Cooling capacity(1)				W	5100	
Power source					1 Phase, 220-240V, 50Hz	
Operation data(1)	Cooling input			kW	1.59	
	Running current (Cooling)			A	7.3/7.1/6.8	
	Inrush current			A	45.2	
	COP				Cooling: 3.21	
	Noise level	Cooling	Sound level	dB	Hi 44, Me 40, Lo 35	49
			Power level		59	64
Exterior dimensions Height × Width × Depth				mm	298 × 840 × 259	640 × 850 × 290
Color					Cool white	Stucco white
Net weight				kg	12	44
Refrigerant equipment Compressor type & Q'ty					–	RM-B5120MNE5 [Rotary type] × 1
Motor				kW	–	1.5
Starting method					–	Line starting
Heat exchanger					Louver fins & inner grooved tubing	Straight fins & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control					Capillary tubes + Electronic expansion valve	
Refrigerant(3)				kg	R410A 1.4 (Pre-Charged up to the piping length of 15m)	
Refrigerant oil				ℓ	0.7 (MA68)	
Deice control					Microcomputer control	
Air handling equipment Fan type & Q'ty					Tangential fan × 1	Propeller fan × 1
Motor				W	27	35
Air flow (at High)			(Cooling)	CMM	11.0	38.0
Air filter, Q'ty					Polypropylene net (washable) × 2	–
Shock & vibration absorber					–	Cushion rubber (for compressor)
Electric heater					–	–
Operation control Operation switch					Wireless-Remote controller	–
Room temperature control					Microcomputer thermostat	–
Pilot lamp					RUN (Green), TIMER (Yellow), HI POWER (Green), ECONO (Orange)	
Safety equipment					Compressor: Overheat protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection, Frost protection	
Refrigerant piping	O.D			mm (in)	Liquid line: ϕ6.35 (1/4″) Gas line: ϕ12.7 (1/2″)	
	Connecting method				Flare connection	
	Attached length of piping				Liquid line: 0.54 m Gas line : 0.47 m	–
	Insulation				Necessary (Both sides)	
Drain hose					Connectable	
Power source cord					2 m (3 cores with earth)	
Connection wiring	Size × Core number				1.5 mm² × 4 cores (Including earth cable)	
	Connecting method				Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Accessories (included)					Mounting kit, Clean filter (Natural enzyme filter × 1, Photocatalytic washable deodorizing filter × 1)	
Optional parts					–	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	Standards
Cooling	27ºC	19ºC	35ºC	24ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612

The piping length is 7.5m.

(2) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively.

(3) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 15 m connecting piping.
(Purging is not required even for the short piping.)
If the piping length is longer, when it is 15 to 25 m, add 20 g refrigerant per meter.

(2) Range of usage & limitations

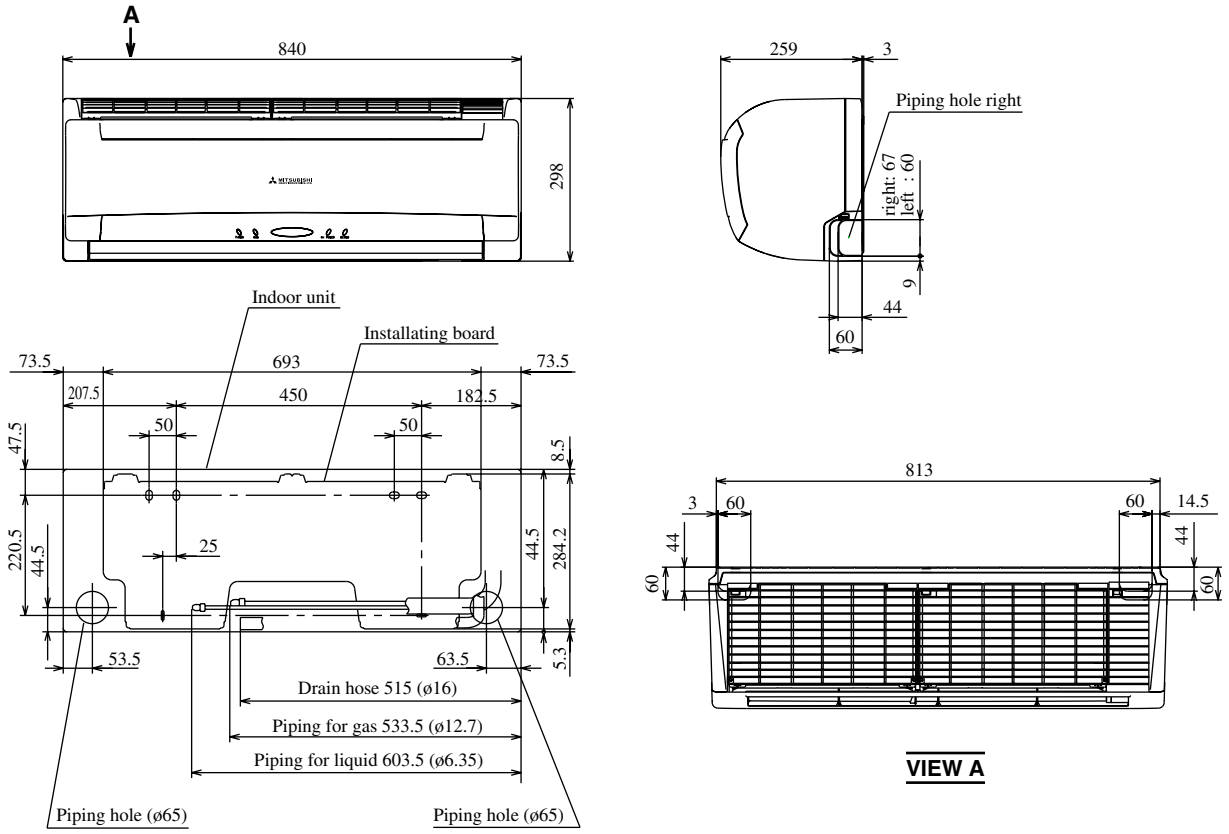
Item \ Models	All models
Indoor return air temperature (Upper, lower limits)	Cooling operation : Approximately 21 to 32˚C
Outdoor air temperature (Upper, lower limits)	Cooling operation : Approximately 21 to 43˚C
Refrigerant line (one way) length	Max. 25m
Vertical height difference between outdoor unit and indoor unit	Max. 15m (Outdoor unit is higher) Max. 15m (Outdoor unit is lower)
Power source voltage	Rating ± 10%
Voltage at starting	Min. 85% of rating
Frequency of ON-OFF cycle	Max. 10 times/h
ON and OFF interval	Max. 3 minutes

(3) Exterior dimensions

(a) Indoor unit

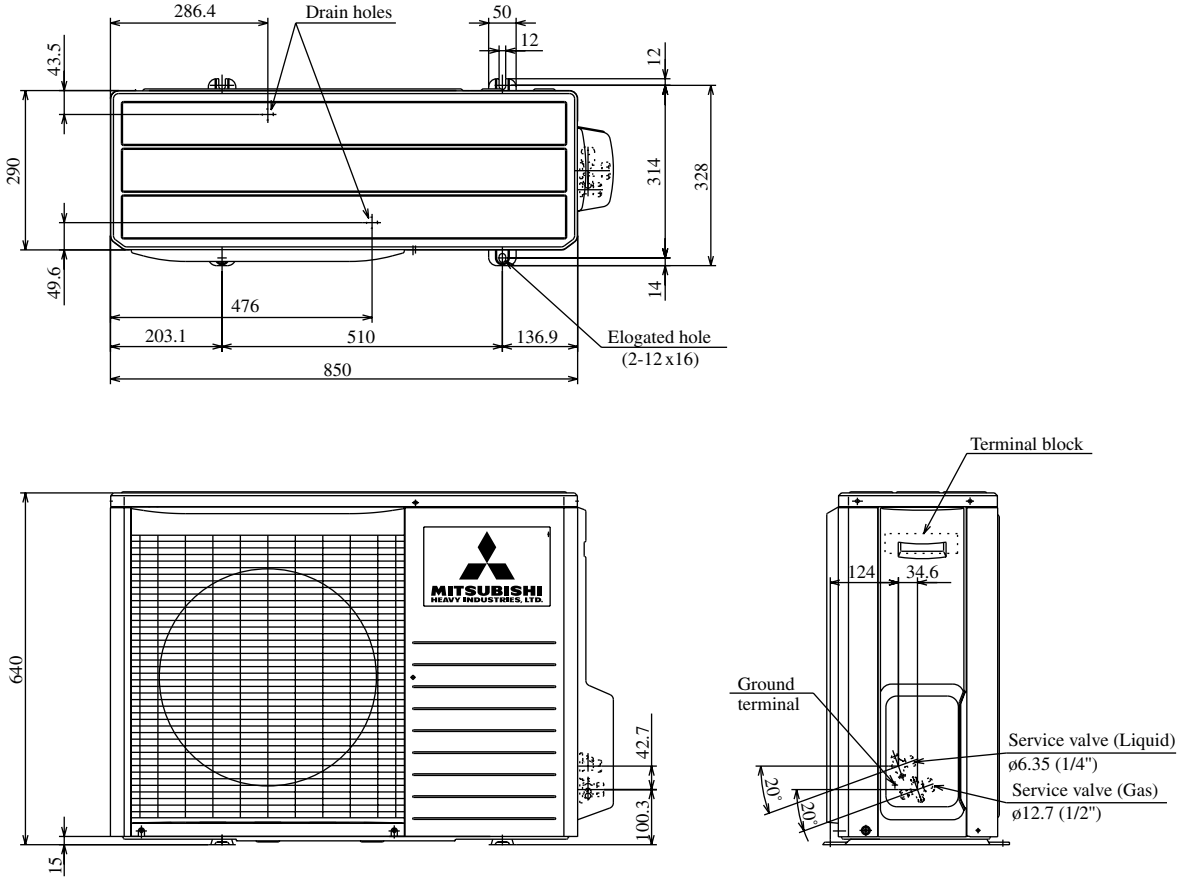
Models All models

Unit: mm



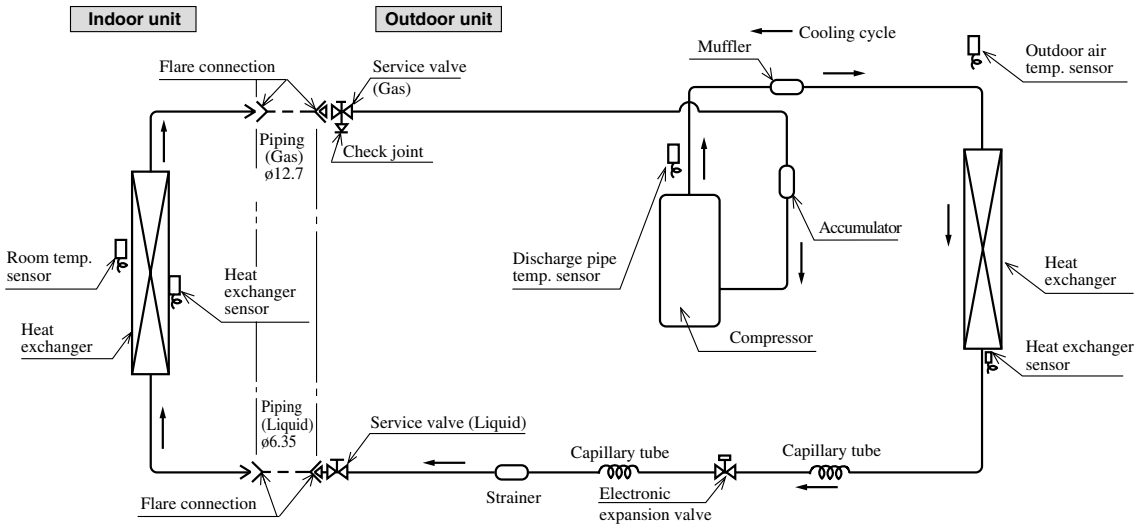
(b) Outdoor unit

Models All models



(4) Piping system

Models SRK50CE-S1, 56CE-S1

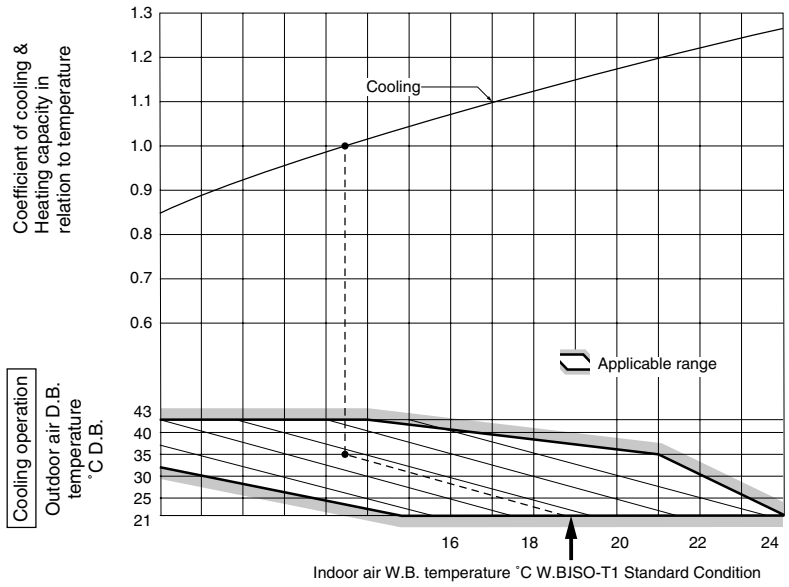


(5) Selection chart

Correct the cooling capacity in accordance with the conditions as follows. The net cooling capacity can be obtained in the following way.

Net capacity = Capacity shown on specification × Correction factors as follows.

(a) Coefficient of cooling capacity in relation to temperatures



(b) Correction of cooling capacity in relation to one way length of refrigerant piping

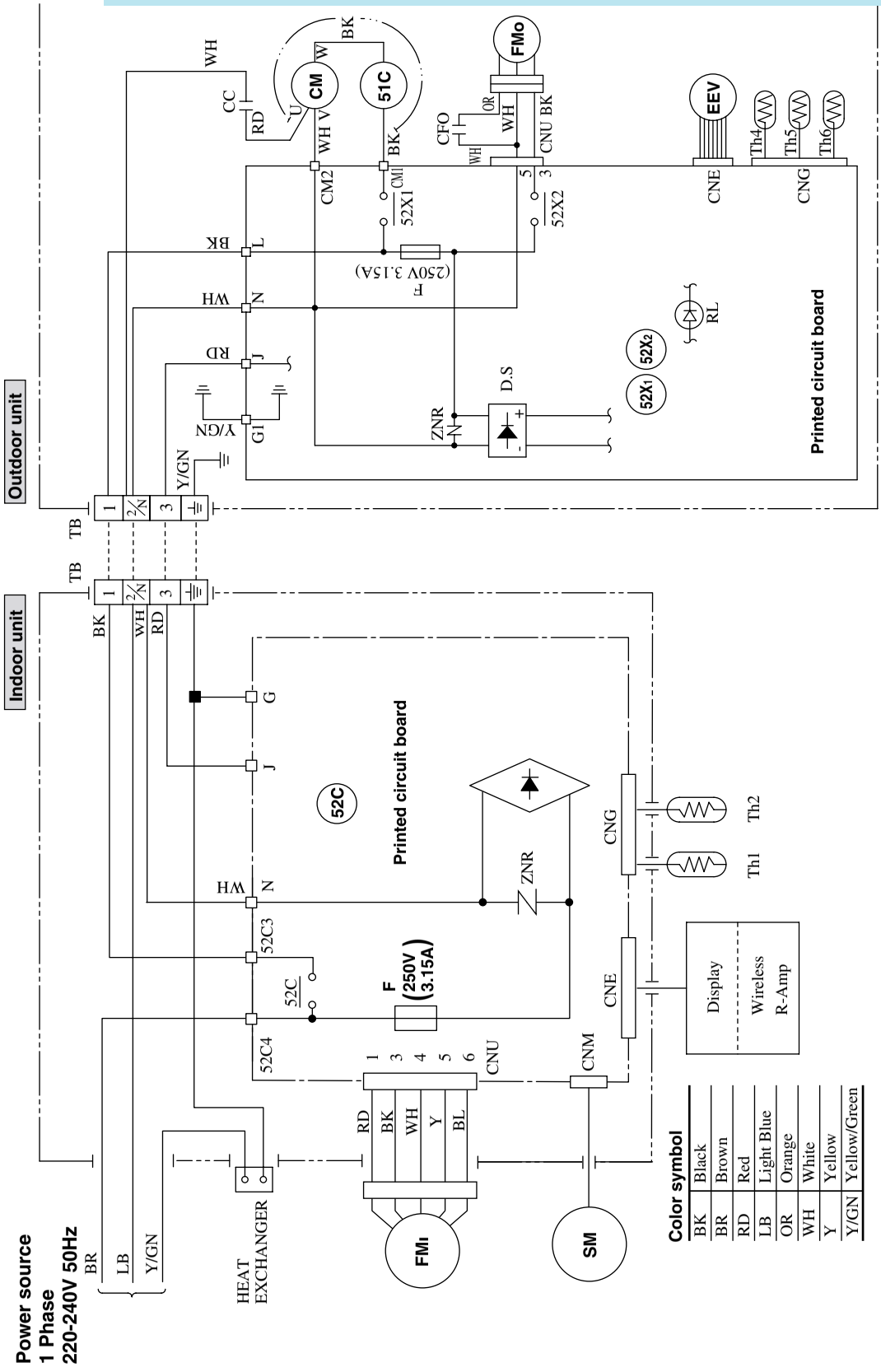
It is necessary to correct the cooling capacity in relation to the one way piping length between the indoor and outdoor units.

Piping length [m]	7	10	15	20	25
Cooling	1.0	0.99	0.975	0.965	0.95

3.2.3 ELECTRICAL DATA

(1) Electrical wiring

Models SRK50CE-S1, 56CE-S1



Meaning of marks

Symbol	Parts name	Symbol	Parts name	Symbol	Parts name
CM	Compressor motor	Th1	Room temp. sensor	52C	Magnetic contactor
F	Fuse	Th2	Heat exchanger sensor (Indoor unit)	DS	Diode stack
FMI	Fan motor (Indoor)	Th4	Heat exchanger sensor (Outdoor unit)	52X1-2	Auxiliary relay
FMo	Fan motor (Outdoor)	Th5	Outdoor air temp. sensor	EEV	Electronic expansion valve
SM	Flap motor	Th6	Discharge pipe sensor	51C	Motor Protector for CM
RL	Inspection lamp	ZNR	Varistor	TB	Terminal block

3.2.4 OUTLINE OF OPERATION CONTROL BY MICROCOMPUTER

Except for function relating to heating, same at the for SRK heat pump models. Refer to Page 184.

3.2.5 APPLICATION DATA

Page 195.

3.2.6 MAINTENANCE DATA

Same at the cooling/heating equipment SRK heat pump models. Refer to Page 203.

3.2.7 REFRIGERANT PIPING INSTALLATION/SERVICING MANUAL FOR AIR CONDITIONERS USING R410A

This is same as chapter 1.1.7. Refer to Page 55.

CONTENTS

3.3.1 GENERAL INFORMATION

(1) Specific features

The “MITSUBISHI HEAVY INDUSTRIES, LTD.” room air-conditioner: SRK series are of split and wall mounted type and the unit

ir cooling equipment with operation control switch and the outdoor unit is composed of condensing unit with compressor.

(a) Remote control flap & louver

The flap & louver can be automatically controlled by operating wireless remote control.

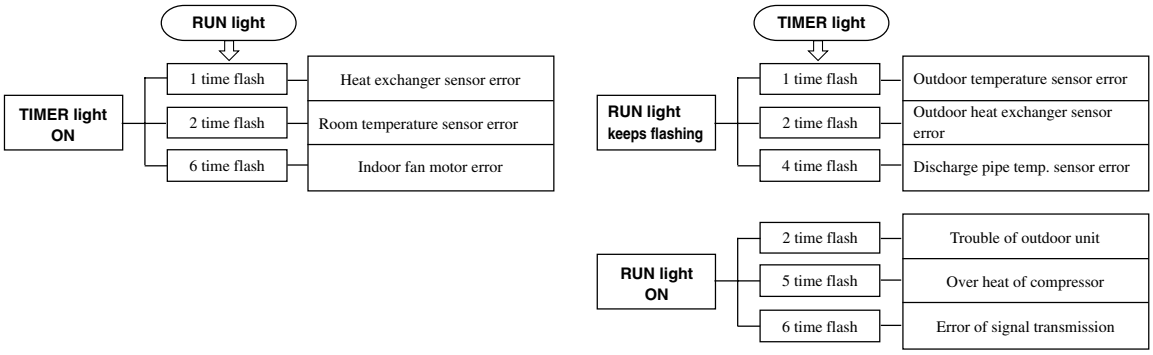
- Flap swing : The flaps swing up and down successively.
- Louver swing : The louvers swing left and right successively.
- Multi-directional Air Flow (up/down air scroll and left/right air scroll) : Activating both up/down air swing and left/right air swing at the same time results in a multi-directional air flow.
- Memory flap : Once the flap & louver position is set, the unit memorizes the position and continues to operate at the same position from the next time.

(b) Automatic operation

When the remote control switch is set on “auto( )”, it will either automatically decide operation mode such as cooling and thermal dry, or operate in the operation mode before it has been turned to automatic control.

(c) Self diagnosis function

- We are constantly trying to do better service to our customers by installing such judges that show abnormality of operation as follows.



(2) How to read the model name

Example : SR K 63 C E - S1

- S1 — R410A models
- E — Series No.
- C — Cooling only type
- 63 — Product capacity
- K — Wall mounted type
- SR — Split type room air-conditioner

3.3.2 SELECTION DATA

(1) Specifications

Model SRK63CE-S1 (Indoor unit)

(220/230/240V)

Item					SRK63CE-S1	SRC63CE-S1
Cooling capacity(1)				W	6300	
Power source					1 Phase, 220-240V, 50Hz	
Operation data(1) (2)	Cooling input			kW	2.19	
	Running current (Cooling)			A	10.9/10.5/10.0	
	Inrush current			A	53	
	COP				Cooling: 2.88	
	Noise level	Cooling	Sound level	dB	Hi 44, Me 40, Lo 37	49
			Power level		59	65
Exterior dimensions Height × Width × Depth				mm	318 × 1098 × 248	640 × 850 × 290
Color					Yellowish white	Stucco white
Net weight				kg	15	47
Refrigerant equipment Compressor type & Q'ty					–	RM-B5125MNE5 (Rotary type) × 1
Motor				kW	–	1.9
Starting method					–	Line starting
Heat exchanger					Slit fins & inner grooved tubing	Straight fin & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control					Capillary tubes + Electric expansion valve	
Refrigerant(3)				kg	R410A 1.5 (Pre-charged up to the piping length of 15m)	
Refrigerant oil				ℓ	0.7 (MA68)	
Deice control					Microcomputer control	
Air handling equipment Fan type & Q'ty					Tangential fan × 1	Propeller fan × 1
Motor				W	46	43
Air flow (at High)			(Cooling)	CMM	18	42
Air filter, Q'ty					Polypropylene net (washable) × 2	–
Shock & vibration absorber					–	Cushion rubber (for compressor)
Electric heater					–	–
Operation control Operation switch					Wireless-Remote controller	–
Room temperature control					Microcomputer thermostat	–
Pilot lamp					RUN (Green), TIMER (Yellow), HI POWER (Green), ECONO (Orange)	
Safety equipment					Compressor: overheat protection, Frost protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection	
Refrigerant piping O.D				mm (in)	Liquid line: ϕ6.35 (1/4″) Gas line: ϕ12.7 (1/2″)	
Connecting method					Flare connecting	
Attached length of piping					Liquid line: 0.70m Gas line : 0.63m	–
Insulation					Necessary (Both sides)	
Drain hose					Connectable	
Power source supply					Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Connection wiring	Size × Core number				1.5 mm² × 4 cores (Including earth cable)	
	Connecting method				Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Accessories (included)					Mounting kit, Clean filter (Natural enzyme filter × 1, Photocatalytic washable deodorizing filter × 1)	
Optional parts					Wired-Remote control	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	Standards
Cooling	27ºC	19ºC	35ºC	24ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612

The piping length is 7.5m.

(2) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively.

(3) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 15 m connecting piping.
(Purging is not required even in the short piping.)
If the piping length is longer, when it is 15 to 25m, add 20g refrigerant per meter.

Model SRK71CE-S1 (Indoor unit)
SRC71CE-S1 (Outdoor unit)

(220/230/240V)

Item				Model	SRK71CE-S1	SRC71CE-S1
Cooling capacity(1)				W	7100	
Operation data	Running current (Cooling)			A	11.0/10.6/10.1	
	Inrush current			A	49	
	COP				Cooling: 3.21	
	Noise level	Cooling	Sound level	dB	Hi 45, Me 41, Lo 38	54
			Power level		59	69
Exterior dimensions Height × Width × Depth				mm	318 × 1098 × 248	750 × 880 × 340
Color					Yellowish white	Stucco white
Net weight				kg	15	68
Refrigerant equipment Compressor type & Q'ty					–	5JS270DAA01
Motor				kW	–	1.8
Starting method					–	Line starting
Heat exchanger					Slit fins & inner grooved tubing	Straight fin & inner grooved tubing
Refrigerant control					Capillary tubes + Electric expansion valve	
Refrigerant(3)				kg	R410A 2.0 (Pre-charged up to the piping length of 15m)	
Refrigerant oil				ℓ	1.13 (RB68A or Freol Alpha 68M)	
Deice control					Microcomputer control	
Air handling equipment Fan type & Q'ty					Tangential fan × 1	Propeller fan × 1
Motor				W	46	85
Air flow (at High)			(Cooling)	CMM	19	60
Air filter, Q'ty					Polypropylene net (washable) × 2	–
Shock & vibration absorber					–	Cushion rubber (for compressor)
Electric heater					–	–
Operation control Operation switch					Wireless-Remote controller	–
Room temperature control					Microcomputer thermostat	–
Pilot lamp					RUN (Green), TIMER (Yellow), HI POWER (Green), ECONO (Orange)	
Safety equipment					Compressor: overheat protection, Frost protection, Serial signal error protection, Indoor fan motor error protection	
Refrigerant piping	O.D			mm (in)	Liquid line: ϕ6.35 (1/4″) Gas line: ϕ15.88 (5/8″)	
	Connecting method				Flare connecting	
	Attached length of piping				Liquid line : 0.70m Gas line : 0.63m	–
	Insulation				Necessary (Both sides)	
Drain hose					Connectable	
Power source supply					Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Connection wiring	Size × Core number				1.5 mm² × 4 cores (Including earth cable)	
	Connecting method				Terminal block (Screw fixing type)	
Accessories (included)					Mounting kit, Clean filter (Natural enzyme filter × 1, Photocatalytic washable deodorizing filter × 1)	
Optional parts					Wired-Remote control	

Notes (1) The data are measured at the following conditions.

Item / Operation	Indoor air temperature DB	Indoor air temperature WB	Outdoor air temperature DB	Outdoor air temperature WB	Standards
Cooling	27ºC	19ºC	35ºC	24ºC	ISO-T1, JIS C9612

The piping length is 7.5m.

(2) The operation data are applied to the 220/230/240V districts respectively.

(3) The refrigerant quantity to be charged includes the refrigerant in 15 m connecting piping.
(Purging is not required even in the short piping.)
If the piping length is longer, when it is 15 to 25m, add 25g refrigerant per meter.

(2) Range of usage & limitations

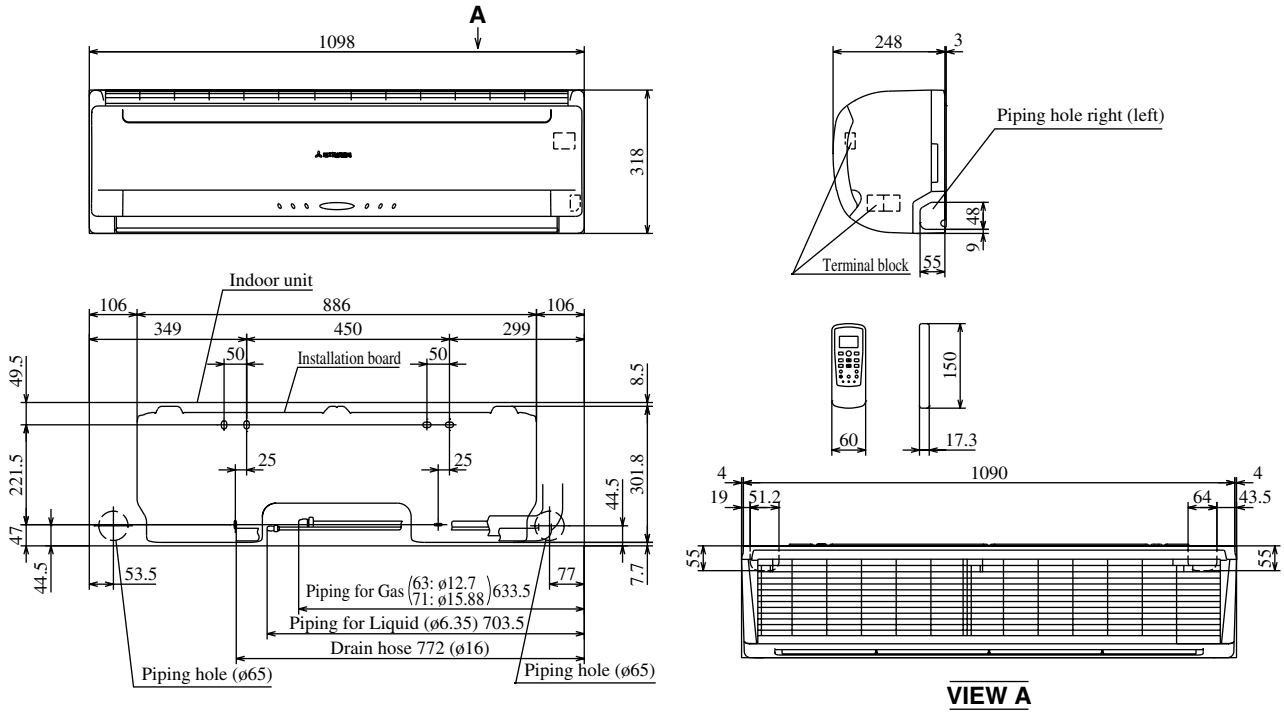
Item \ Models	All models
Outdoor air temperature (Upper, lower limits)	Cooling operation : Approximately 21 to 43˚C
Refrigerant line (one way) length	Max. 25m
Vertical height difference between outdoor unit and indoor unit	Max. 15m
Power source voltage	Rating ± 10%
Voltage at starting	Min. 85% of rating
Frequency of ON-OFF cycle	Max. 10 times/h
ON and OFF interval	Max. 3 minutes

(3) Exterior dimensions

(a) Indoor unit

Models SRK63CE-S1, 71CE-S1

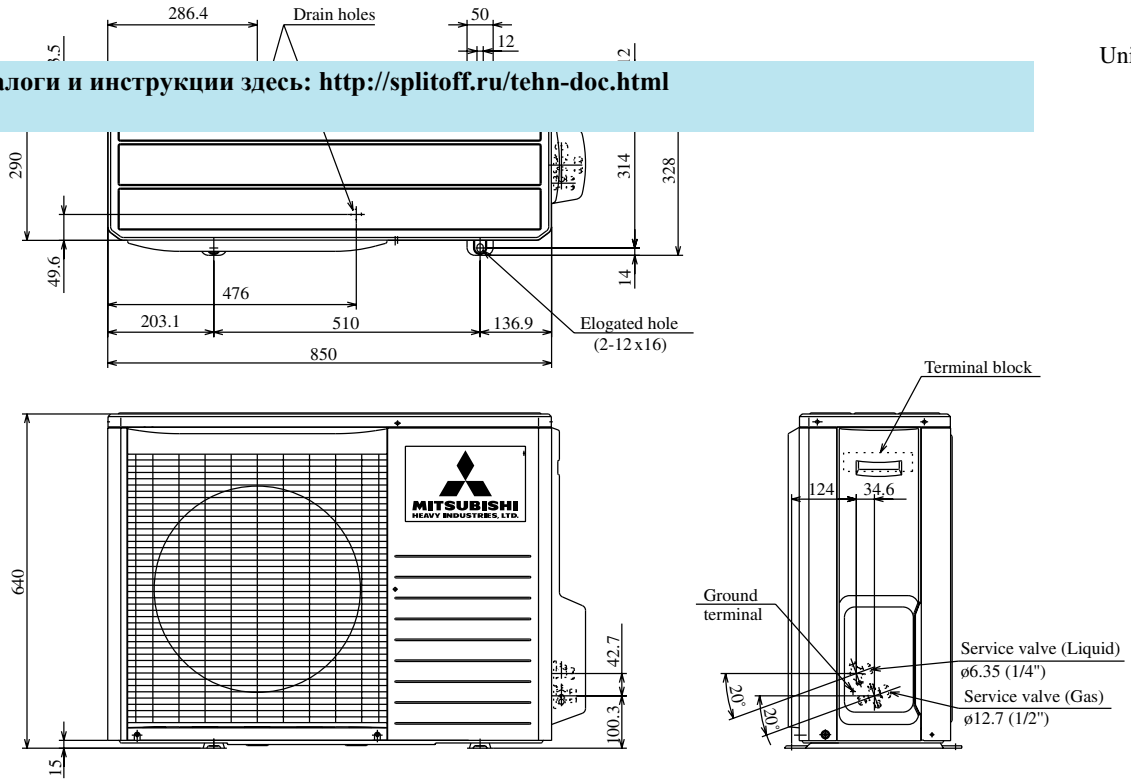
Unit: mm



(b) Outdoor unit

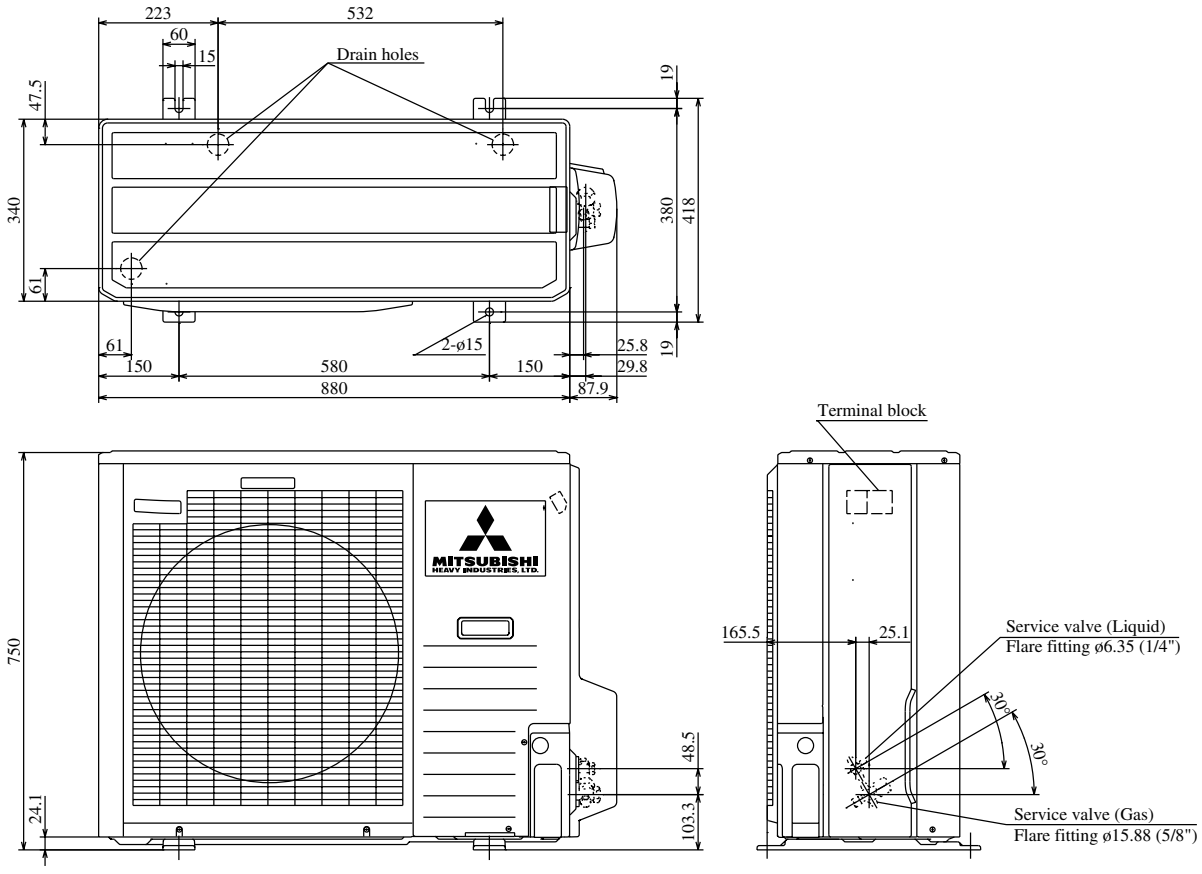
Model SRC63CE-S1

Unit: mm



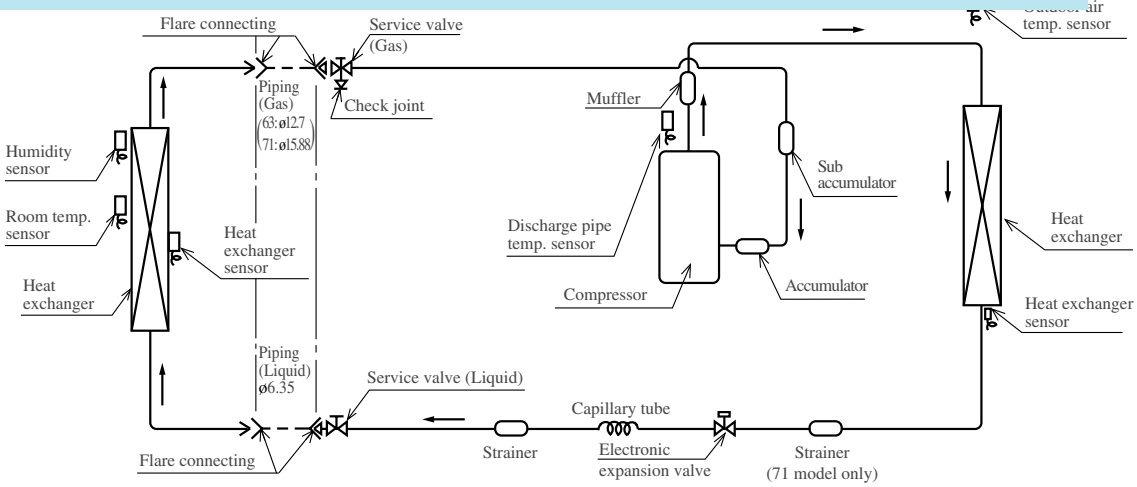
Model SRC71CE-S1

Unit: mm



(4) Piping system

Models SRK63CE-S1, 71CE-S1

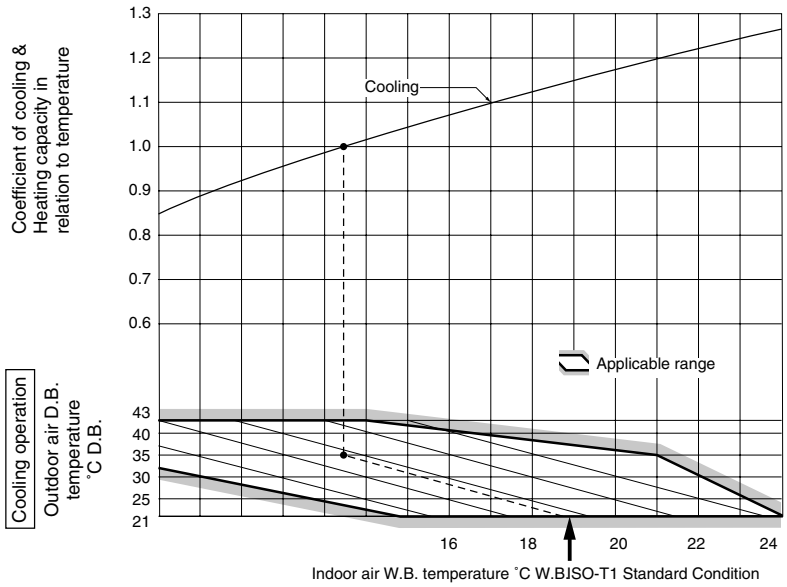


(5) Selection chart

Correct the cooling capacity in accordance with the conditions as follows. The net cooling capacity can be obtained in the following way.

Net capacity = Capacity shown on specification × Correction factors as follows.

(a) Coefficient of cooling capacity in relation to temperatures



(2) Correction of cooling capacity in relation to one way length of refrigerant piping

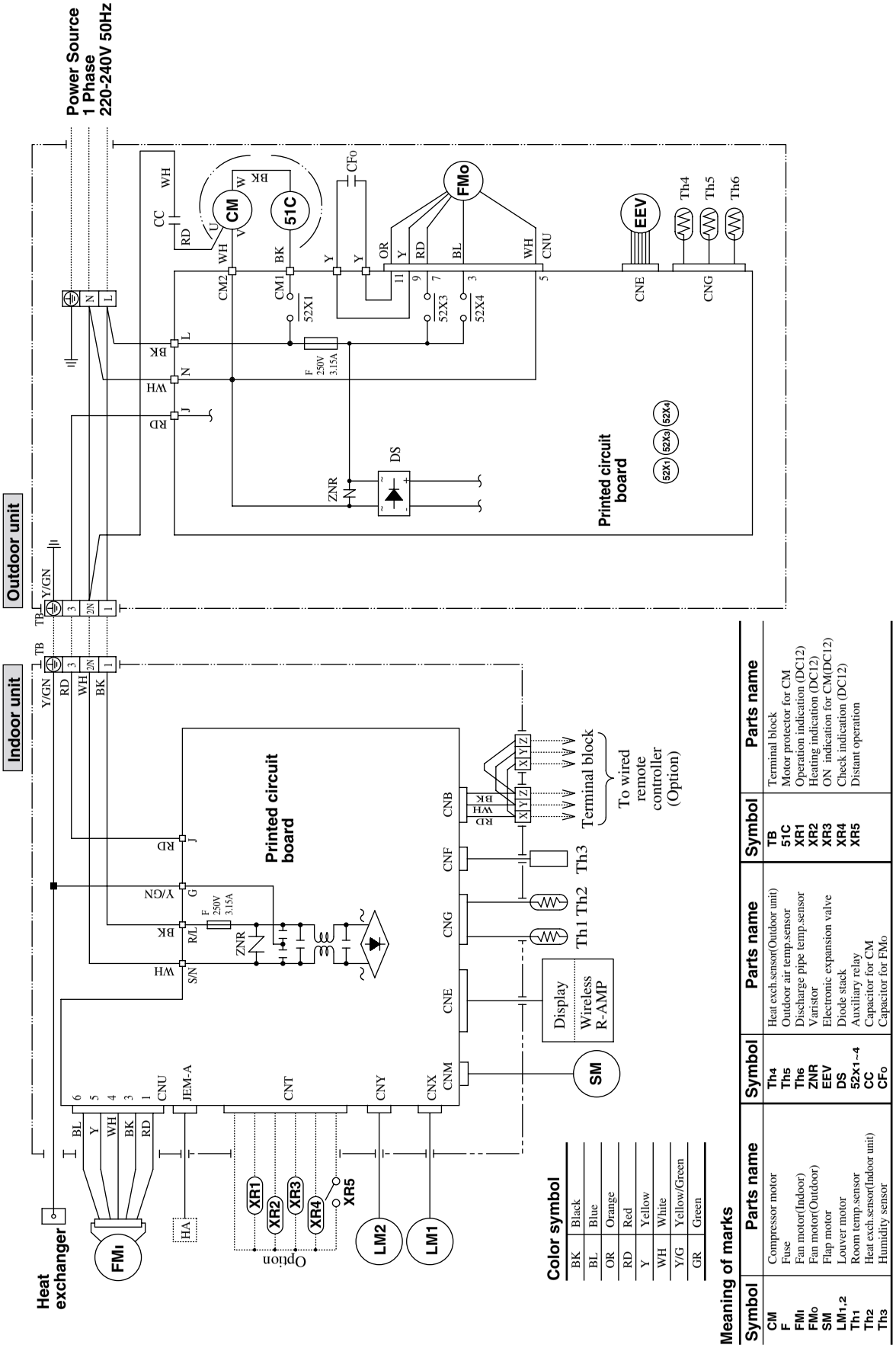
It is necessary to correct the cooling capacity in relation to the one way piping length between the indoor and outdoor units.

Piping length [m]	7	10	15	20	25
Cooling	1.0	0.99	0.975	0.965	0.95

3.3.3 ELECTRICAL DATA

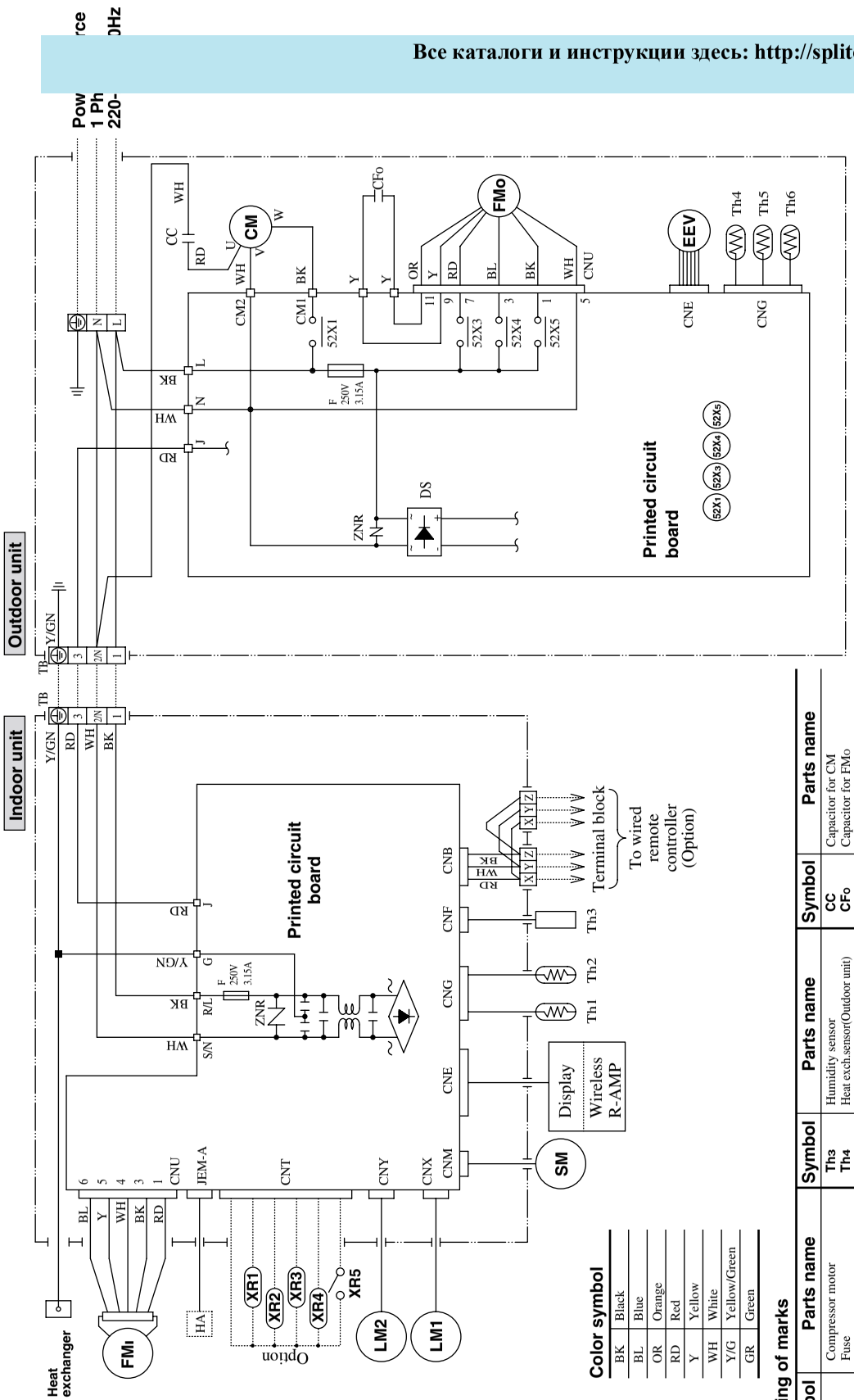
(1) Electrical wiring

Model SRK63CE-S1



Meaning of marks

Symbol	Parts name	Symbol	Parts name	Symbol	Parts name
CM	Compressor motor	Th4	Heat exch.sensor(Outdoor unit)	TB	Terminal block
F	Fuse	Th5	Outdoor air temp.sensor	51C	Motor protector for CM
FMI	Fan motor(Indoor)	Th6	Discharge pipe temp.sensor	XR1	Operation indication (DC12)
FMo	Fan motor(Outdoor)	ZNR	Varistor	XR2	Heating indication (DC12)
SM	Flap motor	EEV	Electronic expansion valve	XR3	ON indication for CM(DC12)
LM1,2	Louver motor	DS	Diode stack	XR4	Check indication (DC12)
Th1	Room temp.sensor	52X1~4	Auxiliary relay	XR5	Distant operation
Th2	Heat exch.sensor(Indoor unit)	CC	Capacitor for CM		
Th3	Humidity sensor	CFo	Capacitor for FMo		



Color symbol

BK	Black
BL	Blue
OR	Orange
RD	Red
Y	Yellow
WH	White
Y/G	Yellow/Green
GR	Green

Meaning of marks

Symbol	Parts name	Symbol	Parts name	Symbol	Parts name
CM	Compressor motor	Th3	Humidity sensor	CC	Capacitor for CM
F	Fuse	Th4	Heat exch.sensor(Outdoor unit)	CFo	Capacitor for FMo
FMI	Fan motor(Indoor)	Th5	Outdoor air temp.sensor	TB	Terminal block
FMo	Fan motor(Outdoor)	Th6	Discharge pipe temp.sensor	XR1	Operation indication (DC12)
SM	Flap motor	ZNR	Varistor	XR2	Heating indication (DC12)
LM1,2	Louver motor	EEV	Electronic expansion valve	XR3	ON indication for CM(DC12)
Th1	Room temp.sensor	DS	Diode stack	XR4	Check indication (DC12)
Th2	Heat exch.sensor(Indoor unit)	52X1~5	Auxiliary relay	XR5	Distant operation

3.3.4 OUTLINE OF OPERATION CONTROL BY MICROCOMPUTER

Except for function relating to heating, same at the for SRK heat pump models. Refer to Page 221.

The application data for the cooling only models are similar to those for the heat pump models. Refer to Page 237.

3.3.6 MAINTENANCE DATA

Some at the cooling/heating equipment SRK heat pump models. Refer to Page 252.

3.3.7 REFRIGERANT PIPING INSTALLATION/SERVICING MANUAL FOR AIR CONDITIONERS USING R410A

This is same as chapter 1.1.7. Refer to Page 55.

MITSUBISHI HEAVY INDUSTRIES, LTD.

Air-Conditioning & Refrigeration Systems Headquarters
16-5, 2-chome, Kounan, Minato-ku, Tokyo, 108-8215, Japan
Fax : (03) 6716-5926